

THE COMPLETE IDIOT'S GUIDE® TO

"What was already a comprehensive approach to learning *la bella lingua* has now become an even more exhaustive resource with new and exciting features that will enrich your Italian language learning experience ...!"

—Michael P. San Filippo, Guide Italian Language at About.com

Learning Italian

SECOND EDITION

- ◆ **Down-to-earth advice** on communicating in Italian
- ◆ **Idiot-proof tips** for enlarging your vocabulary
- ◆ **Handy quick-reference** of commonly used phrases plus an expanded Italian-English glossary

Gabrielle Euvino



THE
COMPLETE
IDIOT'S
GUIDE[®] TO

Learning Italian

Second Edition

by Gabrielle Euvino



A Pearson Education Company

Copyright © 2001 by Gabrielle Euvino

All rights reserved. No part of this book shall be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without written permission from the publisher. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher and author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of information contained herein. For information, address Alpha Books, 201 West 103rd Street, Indianapolis, IN 46290.

THE COMPLETE IDIOT'S GUIDE TO and Design are registered trademarks of Pearson Education.

International Standard Book Number: 0-02-864147-7

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 2001089688

03 02 01 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Interpretation of the printing code: The rightmost number of the first series of numbers is the year of the book's printing; the rightmost number of the second series of numbers is the number of the book's printing. For example, a printing code of 01-1 shows that the first printing occurred in 2001.

Printed in the United States of America

Note: This publication contains the opinions and ideas of its author. It is intended to provide helpful and informative material on the subject matter covered. It is sold with the understanding that the author and publisher are not engaged in rendering professional services in the book. If the reader requires personal assistance or advice, a competent professional should be consulted.

The author and publisher specifically disclaim any responsibility for any liability, loss, or risk, personal or otherwise, which is incurred as a consequence, directly or indirectly, of the use and application of any of the contents of this book.

Publisher

Marie Butler-Knight

Product Manager

Phil Kitchel

Managing Editor

Jennifer Chisholm

Acquisitions Editor

Brandon Hopkins

Development Editor

Amy E. Zavatto

Production Editor

Katherin Bidwell

Copy Editor

Krista Hansing

Illustrator

Jody Schaeffer

Cover Designers

Mike Freeland

Kevin Spear

Book Designers

Scott Cook and Amy Adams of DesignLab

Indexer

Angie Bess

Layout/Proofreading

Angela Calvert

Svetlana Dominguez

Natashia Rardin

Contents at a Glance

Part 1	The Basics	1
1	Why You Should Study Italian <i>Imagine the reality of speaking Italian and see all the reasons.</i>	3
2	Immerse Yourself <i>Learn about dialect, the history of Italian, and using your dictionary. In addition, there's a quick grammar refresher to get your language studies started on the right foot.</i>	11
3	Sound Like an Italian <i>Learn the basic rules of Italian pronunciation.</i>	25
4	You Know More Than You Think <i>Tie English and Italian together using cognates.</i>	39
5	Expressively Yours <i>In this chapter you'll learn the fundamentals: how to say hello and good-bye, your days of the week, and idiomatic expressions.</i>	53
6	Almost Everything You Wanted to Know About Sex <i>In Italian all nouns are assigned a gender—learn what to do about it.</i>	69
7	What's the Subject? <i>Study the different ways of expressing "you" in Italian. Learn how to determine the subject in a sentence.</i>	85
Part 2	You're Off and Running	91
8	An Action-Packed Adventure <i>Learn about the different verb families and regular rules of conjugation.</i>	93
9	Being There <i>See all the different ways of using "to be" with the verbs essere and stare, and learn how to construct several idiomatic expressions using the verb avere (to have).</i>	111
10	Tell Me About Your Childhood <i>Learn how to express possession using adjectives and the preposition di, as well as how to describe things with adverbs.</i>	129
11	Finally, You're at the Airport <i>Now that you've landed, you'll be given helpful vocabulary to enable you to get around. Learn about prepositions and the imperative verb tense.</i>	149
12	Moving Around <i>Drive away with the terms you need to make your journey safe. Study your numbers to log those kilometers and talk about time. Also find out how to use the verb fare (to do/to make).</i>	165
13	Hallelujah, You've Made It to l'Hotel <i>Get comfortable inside your room using the practical vocabulary lists. Express your desires with volere (to want), your potential with potere (to be able to), and what you've got to do with dovere (to have to).</i>	187

14	Rain or Shine <i>Talk about the weather, make a date, and discuss your horoscope.</i>	205
Part 3 Fun and Games		221
15	I Can't Believe My Eyes! <i>See the sights and study the verbs you need to get around and make suggestions, as well as how to use the present progressive tense.</i>	223
16	Shop 'Til You Drop <i>Learn everything you wanted to know about objects and object pronouns while perusing Italy's wonderful shops.</i>	241
17	Bread, Wine, and Chocolate <i>Visit the market and sample the many culinary delights while improving your linguistic abilities. Express your pleasure with the verb piacere.</i>	261
18	Shall We Dine? <i>Chew on the terms and learn how to read an Italian menu and order special meals. See how reflexive verbs work.</i>	281
19	Having Fun Italian Style <i>You can sing, dance, and paint the town red with these terms. Learn how to talk about what you had been doing using the passato prossimo.</i>	303
Part 4 Getting Down to Business		323
20	You're Not Having <i>Un Buon Giorno</i> <i>Cope with life's little nuisances, get your hair done, and learn how to make comparisons.</i>	325
21	Is There a Doctor in the House? <i>Tell the doctor where it hurts with these terms. Learn how to talk about what used to be with the imperfect tense.</i>	341
22	Can You Read Me? <i>Make a telephone call, send a package, and write a letter. See how to use the future tense to talk about what will be.</i>	355
23	Home Sweet Home <i>In the market to own a home? Want to rent a villa? Talk about the conditional and learn how to express what you would like.</i>	369
24	Money Matters <i>Learn the international language of money with these helpful banking terms. Also learn the subjunctive and past absolute.</i>	381
Appendixes		
A	Answer Key	395
B	Glossary	411
C	Map of Italy	441
D	An Idiot's Guide to Additional Resources	443
	Index	445

Contents

Part 1: The Basics	1
1 Why You Should Study Italian	3
You Love Life	4
Get Real	5
Getting Wet	6
<i>Immerse Yourself—Literally!</i>	6
<i>Become a Class Act</i>	6
<i>Hang Out with Sophia</i>	7
<i>Get the Right Tools</i>	7
<i>Tune In!</i>	7
<i>Read the Fine Print</i>	7
<i>Find Birds of a Feather</i>	7
<i>Play It Again, Salvatore</i>	8
There's Nothing to Stop You	8
2 Immerse Yourself	11
Latin Lovers	12
<i>How Do You Say ...? Dialect</i>	13
<i>Tuscan Italian</i>	14
So What's Your Story?	15
How Much Italian Is Enough?	16
Your Dictionary Is Your Best Friend	16
Speak Easy	17
<i>Person, Place, or Pasta</i>	17
<i>Descriptively Speaking</i>	18
<i>Who's He?</i>	18
<i>It's All Relative</i>	18
<i>Where the Action Is</i>	18
It All Depends on How You Look at It	19
<i>Practice Makes Perfetto</i>	19
What's the Object; Who's the Subject?	21
Drawing from Esperienza	21
Read It, Write It, Say It	22
3 Sound Like an Italian	25
Italian Pronunciation	25
Your ABCs	26
<i>Getting the Accent</i>	26
Don't Get Stressed Out	27
Rolling Your R's	28
The Long and the Short of It: Vowels	28
The Hard and Soft of It: Consonants	29
<i>Practice Those Vowels</i>	31
Give Me the Combo	31
<i>C Is for Casa</i>	32
<i>G Is for Gamba</i>	32
<i>S Is for Scandolo</i>	33
Diphthongs	34
Double Consonants	35

A Is for <i>Ancona</i>	36
Get Help!	37
Patience and Practice Pay Off	38

4 You Know More Than You Think 39

Cognates: A Bridge Between Languages	39
<i>A Little Fantasia</i>	40
If It Looks Like a Duck	41
<i>Where in the World: Places</i>	42
<i>It's About Time</i>	43
<i>How Intelligente You Are!</i>	43
<i>Adjectives: How Grande!</i>	44
Nouns	45
<i>Masculine Nouns</i>	45
<i>Feminine Nouns</i>	45
<i>English Words Used in Italian</i>	46
Trojan Horses—False Friends	47
<i>How Much Do You Understand Already?</i>	47
<i>Your Turn</i>	47
Verb Cognates	48
<i>A Piece of Cake</i>	49
Put It All Together	51
<i>Translation Please</i>	51
<i>What's Your Take?</i>	51
<i>Are You Well Read?</i>	52

5 Expressively Yours 53

How Do You Do?	53
<i>You Say Hello and I Say Good-Bye</i>	53
<i>Stranger in a Strange Land</i>	54
<i>The Most Important Phrases in Any Language</i>	55
<i>Informal Greetings and Salutations</i>	56
Communications	57
<i>I Giorni: Days</i>	58
<i>I Mesi: Months</i>	58
Expressing Your Honest Opinion	60
Idiomatically Speaking	61
<i>Happy as a Lark</i>	61
<i>What Is Slang?</i>	62
Idiomatic Expressions in Italian	62
It's All in the Details	63
<i>Practice Makes Perfetto</i>	64
<i>A Good Hour</i>	64
<i>Going Mad</i>	65
What's Your Opinion?	66
Seventh Heaven	67

6 Almost Everything You Wanted to Know About Sex 69

Determining Gender: He Versus She	69
<i>Masculine or Feminine</i>	69
<i>Everyone Must Agree</i>	70
An Article Is Not What You Read in a Newspaper	70
<i>The Definite Article (The)</i>	70
<i>An Indefinite Article (A, An)</i>	71

Singular Nouns	72
<i>Hermaphrodites</i>	73
<i>Nouns Ending in -e</i>	74
Rules Are Made to Be Broken	75
<i>Disconcerting Genders</i>	75
<i>Misbehaving Males</i>	76
<i>Rebellious Females</i>	77
<i>Sex Changers</i>	77
<i>The Apple Doesn't Fall Far</i>	78
<i>Practice Makes Perfetto</i>	78
More Is Better: Making Plurals	78
<i>Do We Agree? Plural Noun Markers</i>	79
<i>The Rules</i>	80
<i>Plural Spelling</i>	81
<i>La Pratica</i>	81
<i>What Does It Mean?</i>	82
<i>Irregular Plural Nouns</i>	82
<i>Always Plural</i>	83
<i>Practice Those Plurals</i>	83
<i>What Have You Learned About Gender?</i>	83
7 What's the Subject?	85
Your Loyal Subject	85
Subject Pronouns	86
<i>When to Use Subject Pronouns</i>	87
<i>Name That Subject</i>	87
<i>Subject to Interpretation</i>	88
You and You and You	88
<i>Hey You!</i>	89
Part 2: You're Off and Running	91
8 An Action-Packed Adventure	93
All in the Family	94
<i>The Anatomy of a Verb</i>	94
<i>The Present-Tense Conjugations</i>	95
The <i>-are</i> Family	96
<i>C Is for Celebrare</i>	96
<i>Regular -are Verbs</i>	97
<i>Exceptions</i>	100
<i>Practice Makes Perfetto</i>	101
The <i>-ere</i> Verbs	102
<i>S Is for Scrivere</i>	102
<i>Regular -ere Verbs</i>	103
Practice Makes <i>Perfetto</i> II	105
The <i>-ire</i> Family	106
<i>D Is for Dormire</i>	106
The <i>-ire</i> Verbs (Group I)	106
More <i>-ire</i> Verbs (Group II)	107
<i>C Is for Capire</i>	107
<i>The -ire Verbs (Group II)</i>	107
Asking Questions	109
<i>The Tags Vero? No? and Giusto?</i>	109

<i>And the Risposta Is ...</i>	109
<i>A Whole Lot of Niente</i>	110
9 Being There	111
The Birds and the Be's	112
The Verb <i>Essere</i>	112
The Verb <i>Stare</i>	113
<i>Essere vs. Stare: What's the Difference?</i>	114
<i>When to Use Essere</i>	114
<i>Come Sei Intelligente!</i>	114
<i>When to Use Stare</i>	115
<i>Chitchat</i>	115
<i>C'è and Ci sono (There Is, There Are)</i>	116
<i>Asking Questions</i>	116
<i>Say It Isn't So</i>	116
<i>Fill in the Blanks</i>	116
<i>It's Time to Have Some Fun: Avere</i>	117
<i>When to Use Avere</i>	118
<i>An Idiot's Guide to Idioms with Avere</i>	118
<i>Express Yourself</i>	119
Professionally Speaking	120
In My Professional Opinion	120
So, What's Your Story?	122
We, the People	123
<i>Nationalities</i>	124
<i>Do You Believe?</i>	125
<i>Back to Your Roots</i>	126
<i>Ecco!</i>	126
<i>Eureka!</i>	127
10 Tell Me About Your Childhood	129
One of the <i>Famiglia</i>	129
Are You Possessed?	131
Using <i>Di</i> to Show Possession	131
<i>Forming Contractions with Di</i>	131
Possessive Adjectives	132
A Sense of Belonging	134
It's Good to Know	134
<i>Sapere: To Know Something</i>	134
<i>Conoscere: To Know Someone/To Be Acquainted</i>	135
Making Introductions	135
<i>This Is My ...</i>	135
<i>This Is My Brother ...</i>	136
Who Is Who	136
Tall, Dark, and Handsome	136
<i>Modifying Adjectives</i>	136
<i>Modifying Those Adjective Endings</i>	137
<i>Character Analysis</i>	138
<i>A Real Wise Guy</i>	138
<i>Take the Good with the Bad</i>	140
I Colori	140
<i>One Yellow Banana, Please</i>	141
<i>It's a Colorful World</i>	142
<i>Everyone's a Poet</i>	142

<i>Bello and Quello</i>	143
<i>Make the Connection</i>	143
<i>Buono</i>	144
How Do You Do: Adverbs	144
<i>Forming Adverbs from Adjectives</i>	144
<i>Take Your Place</i>	145
<i>A Lot of Adverbs</i>	146
<i>Adverbs of Time</i>	146
<i>Adverbs of Place</i>	147
<i>The More Things Change</i>	147
11 Finally, You're at the Airport	149
On the Plane	149
<i>In the Comfort Zone</i>	150
On the Inside	151
Going Crazy: The Verb <i>Andare</i>	152
<i>Going, Going, Gone</i>	154
<i>All Verbed Up and Everywhere to Go</i>	154
Prepositions: Sticky Stuff	154
<i>A Few Points on Prepositions</i>	156
Contractions	157
<i>Switcharoo</i>	159
The Imperative: Giving Directions	159
<i>The Regular Imperative Endings</i>	159
<i>The Imperative Using Tu and Lei</i>	160
<i>Tell Me What to Do</i>	161
Dazed and Confused	161
Passively Yours: <i>Si</i>	162
<i>La Dogana</i> (Customs)	162
12 Moving Around	165
Hoofing and Spinning	165
Which One?	166
On the Road	167
<i>Behind the Wheel</i>	168
<i>Automobile Parts</i>	169
<i>The Road Less Traveled</i>	171
<i>Tell Me Your Worries</i>	172
Baby, I Got Your Number	172
<i>Cardinal Numbers</i>	172
<i>Number Crunching</i>	174
<i>Time Is of the Essence</i>	175
<i>Time Will Tell</i>	177
It's Not What You Do, but with Whom You Do It	177
Questions, Questions	178
Ask Away	178
<i>All Aboard</i>	179
<i>Verbiage</i>	181
<i>Practice Those Conjugations</i>	182
Getting On with <i>Salire</i>	182
Things to Do: The Verb <i>Fare</i> (to Do; to Make)	182
<i>Idiomatic Expressions Using Fare</i>	183
<i>What Are You Doing?</i>	184
<i>What to Do, What to Do</i>	184

13 Hallelujah, You've Made It to l'Hotel	187
A Cave Will Do	187
A Room with a View	188
Simply Said	189
Get Cozy	189
Room Service, Please	191
Is There Room at the Inn?	191
Let's Make a Deal	192
Practice Makes Perfetto	192
Your Firma Here, Please	192
La Manciacia (Tipping)	193
Who's on First?	194
The Ordinal Numbers	194
Feeling Moody: The Modal Verbs	195
I Want What I Want! (Volere)	195
I Think I Can, I Think I Can! (Potere)	196
I Have to ... (Dovere)	197
I'm in the Mood for	198
Infinitive Verbs and Prepositions	198
Alone at Last	199
Oddballs	199
The Preposition A	200
Learning by Example	201
A Review of the Irregular Verbs	201
Practice Makes Perfetto II	202
14 Rain or Shine	205
Talking About the Weather: <i>Che Tempo Fa?</i>	205
<i>Il Clima</i> : The Climate	207
Dipinto di Blu	208
<i>La Temperatura</i> : What's Hot and What's Not	209
The Four Seasons	210
<i>Buon Viaggio!</i>	210
Give Your Mind a Trip	211
It's a Date!	212
Talking About Months	212
What Century?	212
A.D.	212
1,000 Years Later	213
B.C.	214
Do You Have <i>un Appuntamento?</i>	214
About Last Night	214
The Dating Game	215
How Often?	215
Dating Dilemmas	216
Quando Quando Quando?	216
Quale Festa?	217
From What Realm Are You?	217
What's Your Sign?	218
Like a Fish to Water	219

Part 3: Fun and Games	221
15 I Can't Believe My Eyes!	223
Seeing Is Believing	223
Let's Go Visit, Find, See, Look At	225
Critters	225
More Irregular Verbs	226
Uscire (to Go Out/Exit)	227
Venire (to Come)	227
Rimanere (to Remain)	228
Your Turn	229
Practice Makes Perfetto	230
Dire (to Say/Tell)	231
The Power of Suggestion	231
Perché non?	232
Let's	232
How About ...?	232
Using Non to Make Suggestions	233
Yes or No	233
Using Volere to Make Suggestions	233
The Big, Blue Marble	234
Name That Nation	234
I Continenti	235
Once Upon a Time	235
A Refresher	236
Present Progressive Tense (-ing)	237
Making Progress	238
That's the Fact, Giacomo	238
16 Shop 'Til You Drop	241
Stores Galore	241
The Stationery Store: <i>La Cartoleria</i>	243
<i>Diamonds Are a Girl's Best Friend</i>	244
<i>It's in the Jeans</i>	245
Accessories	246
How Do I Look?	247
<i>One Size Does Not Fit All</i>	248
The Florist	250
<i>Smooth as Seta</i>	250
<i>Sock It to Me!</i>	251
Objection!	253
<i>A Little Review</i>	253
Objectify Me, Baby	253
<i>Follow the Rules</i>	254
<i>When to Use the Direct Object Pronoun</i>	255
<i>When to Use Indirect Object Pronouns</i>	255
<i>Verbs That May Use an Indirect Object</i>	256
<i>Who's in Command?</i>	257
<i>Who's Who</i>	257
<i>Who's Who II</i>	258
<i>Who's Who—Final Round</i>	259

17 Bread, Wine, and Chocolate	261
To Market, to Market	261
Dal Negozio (<i>at the Store</i>)	261
<i>I Love Olives</i>	262
<i>An Apple a Day</i>	264
In Macelleria (<i>at the Butcher</i>)	265
<i>Got Milk? La Latteria</i>	267
Di Bocca Buona	268
<i>Fruit of the Sea: La Pescheria</i>	268
<i>What's in a Name?</i>	269
<i>This Drink's on Me</i>	270
Dolcezza!	271
Expressing Quantity	271
<i>It's the Quantity That Counts</i>	271
<i>You Asked for It; You Got It!</i>	273
<i>Give Me Some!</i>	273
<i>Some or Any: The Partitive Ne</i>	273
<i>Some Practice</i>	274
Facciamo La Spesa	274
What's Your Pleasure? The Verb <i>Piacere</i>	275
<i>Using Piacere</i>	275
<i>Using the Verb Piacere</i>	277
<i>Using the Verb Piacere II</i>	277
A Special Treat	278
18 Shall We Dine?	281
So Many Restaurants	281
<i>Two for Dinner, Please</i>	282
<i>What's the House Special?</i>	282
A Table Setting	283
<i>In the Kitchen</i>	284
Il Bar	285
Il Caffè	286
<i>Etiquette for Idiots</i>	286
The Courses	287
<i>What's on the Menu?</i>	287
Ho Una Fame Da Lupo (<i>I'm as Hungry as a Wolf</i>)	289
La Pizza e Il Formaggio	289
<i>That's the Way I Like It</i>	291
<i>Spice Up Your Life</i>	291
<i>Special People Have Special Needs</i>	292
<i>You Call This Food?</i>	293
<i>Fine Wine</i>	294
A Bellini Please	295
<i>What's Your Fancy?</i>	295
La Dolce	295
Double Object Pronouns	296
You've Got Good Reflexes	297
<i>I Call Myself</i>	298
<i>Flexing Those Muscles</i>	299
A Little Reflection	300
Mirror, Mirror	300
<i>Test Your Reflexes</i>	301
Reciprocity	302

19 Having Fun Italian Style 303

Name Your Game	303
<i>You're Playing with My Head</i>	305
<i>Out in Left Field</i>	305
<i>Make a Date</i>	306
The Arts	307
Il Cinema	307
La Musica	309
<i>Life Imitates Art</i>	312
<i>Il Passato Prossimo</i> (the Present Perfect)	313
<i>Constructing the Past Participle</i>	314
<i>Forming the Past with Avere</i>	315
<i>Irregular Past Participles</i>	315
<i>Forming the Past with Essere</i>	316
<i>Verbs Taking Essere</i>	317
<i>Adverbs in Compound Tenses</i>	319
<i>Direct Object Pronouns in Compound Tenses</i>	319
<i>Indirect Object Pronouns and the Passato Prossimo</i>	320
<i>The Passato Prossimo and Double Object Pronouns</i>	321

Part 4: Trouble in Paradise 323

20 You're Not Having *Un Buon Giorno* 325

Get Down to the Basics	325
<i>Mirror Mirror on the Wall ...</i>	327
<i>Do Blondes Really Have More Fun?</i>	328
<i>In Tintoria (at the Dry Cleaner's)</i>	329
<i>Dal Calzolaio (at the Shoemaker's)</i>	330
<i>Dall'Ottica (at the Optician's)</i>	330
<i>Dal Negozio di Fotografia (at the Camera Shop)</i>	331
<i>In Gioielleria (at the Jeweler's)</i>	331
<i>Nel Negozio Elettronico (at the Electronics Store)</i>	332
<i>Help, I Lost My Passport!</i>	332
Stressed Out	333
<i>Stressful Exercise</i>	334
Comparatives and Superlatives	335
<i>Better Than the Best</i>	336
<i>Irregular Comparisons</i>	337
<i>Comparisons of Equality</i>	338
<i>Absolutely, Totally Superlative</i>	339
<i>Ci</i> and <i>Vi</i>	339
<i>Go On and Brag a Little</i>	340

21 Is There a Doctor in the House? 341

What a Bod!	341
Farsi	342
<i>Express Yourself</i>	343
<i>What Ails You?</i>	344
<i>Tell Me Where It Hurts</i>	345
<i>This Isn't Funny Anymore</i>	345
<i>Feeling Funny</i>	346
<i>This Is What You Have</i>	347

Alla Farmacia (<i>at the Pharmacy</i>)	348
Questions	349
La Profumeria (<i>The Cosmetics Store</i>)	349
I Was What I Was: The Imperfect	350
Formation of the Imperfect	351
Fill in the Spazio	352
La Pratica	352
What's Done Is Done	353
A Review	353
22 Can You Read Me?	355
Il Telefono	355
Types of Phone Calls	356
Reach Out	356
Call Me Sometime!	357
Say What?	358
Making Una Telefonata	358
Hello, Operator?	358
Just the Fax	359
Rain or Shine: The Post Office	360
Rain or Shine	361
Getting Service	361
Dear Gianni	362
Che Sarà Sarà: The Future	363
What Will Be Will Be	364
What Will You Have?	364
Look for the Pattern	365
Irregular Stems	365
Back to the Future	366
The Future Perfect	367
23 Home Sweet Home	369
Your Home Away from Home	369
Inside Your Home	370
Buying or Renting	371
Useful Verbs	372
Bright, Spacious, and Cheap	373
How's Your Italian?	373
That Would Be Nice: The Conditional Tense	374
Forming the Conditional Tense	374
What Would You Have?	375
Look for the Pattern II	376
Stem Changing Verbs	377
Coulda, Shoulda, Woulda	377
Practice Makes Perfetto	378
24 Money Matters	381
Bank on It	381
Transactions	384
The Wheel of Life	385

Everyone Has Needs: <i>Il Congiuntivo</i> (The Subjunctive)	386
<i>Using the Subjunctive</i>	386
<i>Oh, So Moody</i>	388
<i>Dependent Clauses and the Subjunctive</i>	388
Practice Makes <i>Perfetto</i>	390
<i>The Past (Present Perfect) Subjunctive</i>	391
<i>Purely Speculation: The Imperfect Subjunctive</i>	392
<i>The Past Was Perfect</i>	392
<i>Once Upon a Time: Il Passato Remoto</i>	392
<i>Ci Fu Una Volta (Once Upon a Time)</i>	393
<i>Cose Da Vedere</i>	394
<i>What Am I?</i>	394

Appendixes

A Answer Key	395
B Glossary	411
C Map of Italy	441
D An Idiot's Guide to Additional Resources	443
Index	445

Foreword

Learn Italian, and you can walk on water. Well, not quite, but I can tell you from personal experience that if you take up *la bella lingua*, miraculous things may happen to you. My own epiphany took place during my initial visit to Venice, when I wanted to practice my first-year Italian. Every year during the third weekend of July, the magical city called *La Serenissima* celebrates the *Festa del Redentore*, which commemorates the end of a particularly devastating plague in the sixteenth century. The festivities are marked with a colorful regatta and a spectacular fireworks display. During the event, a pontoon bridge of boats leads from *Piazza San Marco* to *Il Redentore*, a church across the Giudecca Canal designed and built by Andrea Palladio after the plague, which the faithful cross to attend a thanksgiving mass.

It was while bobbing and weaving across this makeshift bridge, surrounded by thousands of excited Italians with the bright sun sparkling off the water and the melodious church bells ringing, that I was literally swept off my feet. The last half of the trek was effortless, as the throngs of people transported me over the water and into the Church of the Redeemer. Once inside the red velvet-swathed interior, a swell of rapturous emotions overwhelmed me so completely that it wasn't until much later that evening, when darkness enveloped the city and the boats dispersed, that I was finally able to set foot on solid ground again.

If you, too, want to be transported to a timeless place, mesmerized and enchanted with the Italian language as your guide, I suggest starting with *The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian, Second Edition*, by Gabrielle Euvino. There are many ways to describe the book—New and improved! Idiot-proof! Better than ever!—but one thing is certain: What was already a comprehensive approach to learning *la bella lingua* has now become an even more exhaustive resource with new and exciting features that will enrich your Italian language learning experience and motivate you in unimaginable ways.

The new *Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian* is a heavily rewritten version—“updated” is too mild a term—of the author's 1998 volume. Many chapters have been overhauled to reflect thoughtful suggestions and considerable input from a variety of students, educators, and professionals. In this edition, key concepts are introduced earlier, and new sidebars and images have been added that either expand on critical grammatical points or provide additional cultural context.

Because learning about the culture, history, and traditions of Italy is an integral part of learning the language, there are thematic sections that focus on work, food, family, and travel. No topic is left untouched. And because many of you, after whetting your appetite with *The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian* will want to travel to *il Bel Paese* to experience firsthand the passion and vitality that is Italy, there are chapters devoted to art, music, the weather, shopping, eating, and entertainment.

Lest you think that this book is all play and no work, the entire book is based on a solid foundation that includes the basics in language instruction: grammar, usage, parts of speech (remember nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and articles?), verbs and all their many flavors of tenses, and pronunciation—and it has several types of exercises to reinforce what you've learned. Each chapter is structured with an overview of concepts followed by straightforward, uncomplicated lessons, practice exercises, and a review of the key principles. Interspersed throughout the material are sidebars—boxes highlighting definitions of terms, historical facts about Italy, and notes on idiomatic usage.

You *can* learn Italian. But first, forget everything you've ever learned in high school language class. Second, ignore anyone who says you're too old, too young, too stupid, or too busy to

learn Italian. Third, start turning the pages of *The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian* and *fare la pratica con la bocca* (practice with your mouth). In other words, start talking, because isn't that what communicating is all about? This book has simple pronunciation guides, phonetic spellings, accent and dialect pointers, vocabulary lists, and two glossaries, all designed to encourage you to speak Italian.

When I'm retired and living in a Tuscan villa surrounded by vineyards and cypresses, sipping Montepulciano and biting into a big piece of *Pecorino stagionato*, I'll reminisce about the thrill of being able to communicate in another language and the empowerment of being able to exchange *cultura* and *amicizia* with friends and family in another land—and I'll remember the first time I walked on water in Italy.

Looking for an exhilarating romance? Grab yourself a full-bodied Tuscan red wine, a loaf of *pane toscano*, and *The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian!*

Tante belle cose!

Michael P. San Filippo

Guide

Italian Language at About.com

<http://italian.about.com>

italian.guide@about.com

Michael P. San Filippo earned a Master of Arts degree in Italian Studies at the Middlebury College Italian School Abroad program in Florence, Italy. He conducts private tutoring in Italian for students of all levels and was an editor for the lifestyle/e-commerce Web site Virtual Italy. In 1999, Michael founded Vespucci Ventures, a company that leads walking tours of Florence and Tuscany, and is the guide for the About.com Italian Language Web site, one of the leading destinations for exploring the topic on the Internet. Michael makes his home in New York City, where he nourishes his enthusiasm for all things Italian by participating in The Italian Table, a club for people passionate about Italian food and culture, and the Istituto di Cultura, a social organization promoting Italian art, history, and language.

Introduction

Whether you are too busy to take a class or merely want to supplement your language learning experience with additional materials, *The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian, Second Edition*, was written specifically for the independent study of Italian.

Any idiot can speak Italian, and lots of them do. The word “idiot” comes from the Greek root *idios* and means “of a particular person, private, own.” In Latin, an *idiota* simply refers to a private person. You see this root in the words “idiom” and “idiosyncrasy.”

Beware of the idiots! Lame and suffering from a speech impediment, Claudius (10 B.C.–54 A.D.) is remembered as a scholar and a competent administrator during the time he reigned. Against all odds, this “idiot” rose up to become Roman Emperor, making a fool of everyone.

The fact is, you're not an idiot, or you wouldn't be reading this book.

It's in the Program

Speaking a language seems to be the one thing we can almost all do with some degree of proficiency; it's in our programming. Amazingly, you learned how to speak long before you understood what a noun was. This book will show you how to speak Italian using what you already know.

The average English speaker knows about 50,000 words. Your brain is a living computer, and whenever it hears a foreign word, it goes to the foreign language section and pulls out whatever “comes to mind.” Don't be surprised if the first thing that comes out of your mouth is French or Spanish (or whatever the last language you studied might have been).

Grammar Isn't Fun, but It Helps

This book outlines the most important aspects of grammar and idiomatic expressions. Using real-life situations, it guides you through the various elements of the Italian language, comparing and contrasting English and Italian with clear, idiot-proof explanations.

Live It Up!

Alas, one cannot live on grammar alone. You need to hear Italian every chance you get. Eat, breathe, drink, sleep, laugh, love, listen, sing, scream, and dance Italian. You'll learn a lot faster if you're enjoying yourself.

As your studies progress, why not reward yourself with a monthly (or weekly) night out in an authentic Italian restaurant? If you're plugged in, try doing an online search and subscribe to an Italian language bulletin. Visit a music library and listen to *Rigoletto* sung by five different artists. Start a collection of children's books. Read the Italian fashion magazines—whatever you do, make it fun, and you'll find that you can't get enough.

How to Use This Book

The best way to use *The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian* is by adopting it. Tuck it into your backpack, briefcase, or bag, and bring it with you everywhere you go. Contrary to what you were taught, this author encourages you to write in the margins, dog-ear the pages, and scribble on the cover. Read it from front to back and back to front.

Exposure and repetition are essential to learning the language. By the time you have thoroughly gone through this book (utilizing the helpful suggestions offered), you will be able to speak Italian. It's that simple.

What You'll Find in These Pages

Part 1, "The Basics," lays the foundation of your Italian-language learning experience, bringing you in-depth definitions and explanations of key grammatical forms, verbs, and parts of speech. You'll learn about cognates (a foreign word that retains the same sound and meaning) and how to connect the dots between Latin, Italian, and English. You'll get examples of the spoken poetry of slang and a few idiomatic expressions. You'll learn your manners—*per favore, grazie, mi scusi*—and how to properly address strangers in Italian.

Part 2, "You're Off and Running," should be sipped slowly and savored as though it were a glass of red wine. Here you'll learn about the marvels of conjugating verbs, the parts of speech that get you moving. You'll also get a lot of how-tos: how to introduce yourself and your family, how to catch a taxi or bus, and how to make your way from the airport to the hotel. Skip through the chapters that don't grip you, but continue to come back to the material until you have mastered it.

In Part 3, "Fun and Games," you'll be given keys to the Fiat and handed a map. If you love to hunt for treasure or want to pick up a pair of beautifully tailored trousers, you'll find all the terms you need. You'll learn how to order in a *ristorante*, choose a wine, and pick a super movie for your Italian *serata*. You'll also hear about the artists and composers that move you.

Part 4, "Getting Down to Business," prepares you for the inevitable challenges that are a part of the human experience. You'll learn how to describe the different aches and pains in your body to a *dottore*, where to go to get your glasses fixed, and how to find a good dry cleaner. You'll also learn how to make a phone call and deal with the post office—two things that can bring the most sane person to the edge. Included in this part are practical money and banking terms.

Appendix A, "Answer Key," gives you the answers to the exercises offered throughout the book. Find out how *intelligente* you really are.

Appendix B, "Glossary," has been updated and improved, with the addition of hundreds of helpful vocabulary words. Nouns have been marked with the appropriate definite articles. To aid you, irregular plurals and participles are given. In addition, you'll find cultural references and exclamations used by the Italians. This glossary should not substitute for a good Italian/English dictionary, but it can help you develop a working vocabulary.

Use Appendix C, "Map of Italy," to kick around ideas (like taking a trip).

Appendix D, "An Idiot's Guide to Additional Resources," gives further reading to enhance your study of Italian.

Extras

As an extra perk, featured throughout the book are interesting sidebars highlighting relevant aspects of the Italian language and culture. You'll see the following sidebars:



As a Rule

These sidebars highlight or expand on aspects of Italian grammar.



What's What

Here you'll find definitions of terms.



Attenzione!

These boxes highlight particularly ambiguous or irregular elements of the Italian language.



Did You Know?

These boxes provide cultural and historical facts about Italy.



La Bella Lingua

These are notes on dialect, idioms, and helpful vocabulary, which may or may not pertain directly to the lesson.

Acknowledgments

This book is dedicated to my great aunt Clara Kaye, who at the time of printing is 87 years old and remembers *everything*.

To the team that made this book happen: my development editor, Amy Zavatto, for keeping the boat on course during the storm—thank you; Brandon Hopkins for his steady availability;

Kathy Bidwell, for her artistic expertise; Krista Hansing, the copy editor, for her queries and edits; Angela Calvert, Svetlana Dominguez, and Jody Schaeffer for their skill in producing a book that exceeded my expectations.

A big *grazie* to my friend and technical editor Stefano Spadoni, my Jiminy Cricket.

A special welcome aboard to Michael San Filippo, who kindly shared his enthusiasm and knowledge of everything Italian.

Grazie to John and Marie Cataneo at ciaonewyork.com for reaching out through cyberspace with their fabulous Web site.

Warm thanks to Cristina Melotti for her eyes and contributions to the book, my life, and my spirit.

To my *famiglia* Herby, Sandy, and TL, the clowns; Rob and Frank; Andrea, David, and Rose; Shelly, Virgil, and Sharon; Barbara, Steve, and Miriam; and Anne, my adopted mom, for your encouragement and artistry.

A special thanks to Dr. Glenn Chiarello for taking such good care of my smile.

Thanks to all the people, my students and friends, both old and new, past and present, that have given their love and support so freely over the years:

Amy; Anna; Anne; Anne Mary; Anthony; Arthur; Beth; Bill; Bob; Carl; Carla; Carol; Catherine; Cathy; Chris; Cole; Colin; David H.; David S.; Debbie, Joe, and Joanna; the Ellison family; Deborah; Dipes; Donna; Elaine; Ellen, Tom, and John; Flo; Frannie; Gina; Giovanni; Glenn; Gloria; Hege; Jeff; Jen; Jessica; Joanne; John; Kilian; Kimmie; Laurie; Leslie; Lisa; Lyn; Maggie, Marc, and Tony; Marissa; Michelle; Monica; Peter; Ralph; Ricardo; Rich; Rob; Sandy; Sasha; Scott; Soheil; Susan; Teal; Tom; Trish; Wendy; and Wen Wen

The author gratefully acknowledges the friendship and support received from the law offices of Seyfarth, Shaw, especially from Michael J. Album, Ray Anderson, Mara Anzalone, Margot Boyd, Edward Cerasia, and Devorah Serafini.

There can be no greater privilege than to be able to put words to print. I thank the heavens and the stars for listening.

Special Thanks to the Technical Reviewer

The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian, Second Edition, was reviewed by an expert who double-checked the accuracy of what you'll learn here, to help us ensure that this book gives you everything you need to know about learning the Italian language. Special thanks are extended to Stefano Spadoni for his expertise on this subject.

Trademarks

All terms mentioned in this book that are known to be or are suspected of being trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Alpha Books and Pearson Education cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this book should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.

Part 1

The Basics

You're ready to go. You've purchased this book and have taken the first step to learning Italian. There's no better time than the present to begin your study, and whether it takes you five months or five years, remember: It's the journey that counts.

To accompany you on this trip, Part 1 gives you the fundamentals of Italian, focusing on important elements of grammar, verbs, and pronunciation.

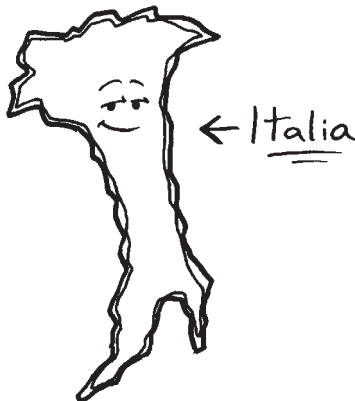
Chapter 1, "Why You Should Study Italian," warms you up with a few reasons to learn Italian. In Chapter 2, "Immerse Yourself," you'll be given a mini grammar review to help prime your brain for the upcoming lessons. You'll also be offered suggestions on how you can begin practicing your new skills immediately.

Chapter 3, "Sound Like an Italian," gets you rolling your R's with an easy-to-read pronunciation guide to assist you. In Chapter 4, "You Know More Than You Think," you'll be shown cognates (similar-sounding words) and how you can use these to tie the Italian language to English. Chapter 5, "Expressively Yours," offers you a few basic greetings and salutations along with a sampling of idioms and idiomatic expressions used in Italian.

In Chapter 6, "Almost Everything You Wanted to Know About Sex," you'll learn about Italian nouns and the notion of gender. You'll discover several different ways to express the incredible, amazing individual that is you in Chapter 7, "What's the Subject?"

For now, skim through the materials and familiarize yourself with the different aspects of Italian. Interact with the pages; let your mind visit the places mentioned. Do the exercises. Later, come back and read through the book with more attention to detail.

When you undertake learning a new language, you are like a child again—so much to learn! Get your ego out of the way and play! Buon viaggio!





Why You Should Study Italian

In This Chapter

- The many virtues of the Italian language
- Where you can use Italian
- Developing a learning strategy
- There's no reason to be afraid!

It's recognizable immediately: the gentle cadence of words as melodic as *musica*, the sexy rolling of *R*'s, the soothing, sensual lilt of voices that move you as does an *opera*, *una poesia*, or a beautiful work of *arte*. It's the *la bella lingua* of Italian, and there's nothing quite like it.

You've always wanted to learn *Italiano*, but until now, it's been something you wished you could do but never dared. Maybe you took a high school Italian class and remember the word *spaghetti* but not much else. Perhaps you come from an Italian *famiglia* and feel a desire to satisfy a primordial urge. You get weak-kneed when you hear an opera. You're an incurable romantic and want to murmur sweet nothings to your *amante* in Italian. You love traveling and want to follow in the *tradizione* of the great writers, from Shakespeare to Henry James to Goethe. Could it be that you want to learn *la lingua* because it will connect you to something wonderfully *misterioso*, ancient, and rich? Whatever your reason, that small peninsula in the center of the *Mediterraneo* has been affecting the lives of people, both great and ordinary, for as long as our *calendario* has existed and then some, and you want to be a part of it.

If you still need to ask "Why learn Italian?" read on for a few more reasons.

You Love Life

The Complete Idiot's Guide to Learning Italian, Second Edition, is *un libro* written for you. You sense this as soon as you pull it off the shelf. You can feel it almost vibrate with potential. *Sì*, this time you're going to stick to your *promessa* to learn Italian. You're not going to procrastinate any longer; you've been wanting this for a very long time and *la vita* is too short to spend wishing you had done something fully within your powers to do. The time is right, the *momento* is now, and with this *libro*, you will be one large step closer to making a dream come true.

Remember, every great accomplishment starts as an *idea*. *Immagina* the *realtà* of speaking Italian. You'll be able to ...

- Order your favorite *piatto* in the local Italian *ristorante*, the one with the *pane fresco*, *buon vino*, and great *ospitalità*.
- Watch Fellini films without reading the subtitles.
- Have an accent! Didn't you always want one?
- Understand what your in-laws are saying about you while they smile and wipe the tomato sauce off their chins.
- Go beyond feeling the *passione* of one of Puccini's operas, and genuinely understand Mimi's tortured heart in *La Bohème*.
- Read the soccer scores from the Italian newspapers.
- Understand the labels on those incredible designer clothes that make otherwise even-keeled adults weep.
- Feel sexy.
- Sound *intelligente*.



Did You Know?

Italy's population has grown to almost 58 million. According to one myth, a vestal virgin gave birth to twin boys, Remus and Romulus. Saved from drowning by a she-wolf who suckled the children until they were old enough to go out on their own, Romulus later killed his brother and, sometime around 753 B.C., founded Rome. Another myth involves the Trojan Aeneas, who came to Italy after escaping Troy. The great Latin poet Virgil used this as the basis for the *Aeneid*, unquestionably the single greatest epic poem of classical literature.

Get Real

Now let's get down to some real reasons to speak Italian:

- ▶ Leonardo da Vinci, Michelangelo, Giotto, Galileo, San Francesco d'Assisi, and Dante (to name just a few) did.
- ▶ You're studying *storia d'arte*. So far, the closest you've actually been to the masterpiece is the slide projector in the back of the auditorium. You're thinking of spending a *semestre* in *Firenze* to study the works of the great Renaissance *artisti*—including Botticelli, Raffaello, Caravaggio, Pisano, Masaccio, and Ghirlandaio—and you want to follow the lectures offered in the local *università*.
- ▶ Think Verdi and Puccini.
- ▶ You love Italian food and want to go beyond *al dente*. You've found an adorable cooking school tucked away in the Tuscan countryside among the silvery leaves of the olive trees. You're ready to take the next step and learn the terms.
- ▶ You are an amateur wine connoisseur and plan to spend your next vacation visiting all the major Italian vineyards. You can sample a different *vino* every day while discussing the variables that contribute to the fine art of juicing a grape.
- ▶ Gardens! Visit the formal Renaissance *giardino* of the *Villa Lante di Bagnaia* (near Viterbo) and learn how the pros have been doing it for centuries.
- ▶ You're fascinated by ancient burial rituals and want to visit the *catacombe*. If you're not afraid of dark, moldy tunnels and love the sound of bats, Italy has an assortment of bones, skulls, and preserved body parts that can be viewed at a church near you. Just don't get lost in the *labirinto* of secret passages and chambers that once held the remains of early Christian martyrs.
- ▶ You love driving. Imagine motoring along the Amalfi coast in a cherry-red Ferrari. Sunlight sparkles off the emerald waters, and the legendary Franco Corelli is sitting beside you singing a private performance of Puccini's exotic *Turandot*. (Okay, so it's only the stereo.) You understand that life is as much about the journey as it is the destination. Enjoy your ride.
- ▶ You love walking. You want to amble through the winding *vie* of Siena, stroll past the limpid waters of Venice's canals, hike along the Appian way, and meander the ruins of Pompeii, where, in 79 A.D., Mt. Vesuvius buried 2,000 people under a layer of dust, lava, and stone. You'll walk so much you won't feel a twinge of guilt when the delicious food starts coming, and you'll say *sì* to dessert every time.
- ▶ You want to learn the secret that Italians have known for centuries—the healing elements of mud and mineral baths. You won't believe how something so stinky (the hot springs often smell like sulfur) could make your body feel so *vivo*, so *fresco*, so *puro*!

- You just bought your first digital camera and have decided to take a course in *fotografia*. What better place to take pictures than Italy?
- You've got to see for yourself the juicy Battle of the Oranges held every year in the town of Ivrea during the *carnevale* season.
- You're getting married. Where else than Italy should you spend your honeymoon?

Getting Wet

Whatever your reason is for wanting to learn *la bella lingua* of Italian, you need to begin somewhere. You'll never learn to swim if you don't get wet; the same principle applies to learning a language. Before you even get to Italy, your *viaggio* begins with your intent. You've already made a great start by picking up this *libro*. However, you also might want to consider some of the following tips.

Immerse Yourself—Literally!

The key is to familiarize yourself with the language by reading it. When you buy books of Italian *poesia* or a copy of Pirandello's plays, for example, buy the versions where the Italian *traduzione* is given alongside the English so that your eyes can move back and forth between the two. This saves you the effort of looking up every *parola* you don't understand and gives you a general *idea* of what is being communicated. Context is key: Absorb the significance of a *parola* by looking at the words surrounding it.

Speaking of the power of words, inspiration often comes from the unexpected. Go to your bookstore and leaf through several books in the Italian language section. See what interests you. Barrons has a terrific book that concentrates exclusively on verbs, aptly called *501 Italian Verbs*. Children's books are another fun way of building *vocabolario*. If you're in Italy, visit the *libreria* (bookstore) and pick up a few.

Italian publications, especially magazines, are usually quite entertaining, full of glossy, color ads and interesting facts. The elegant world of *la moda* (fashion), *il viaggio* (travel), and *la cucina* (food) are three popular topics. Pick up a copy and figure out the contents by studying the titles. *La Cucina*, *L'Espresso*, *Oggi*, *Panorama*, and *Vogue Italia* are but a few. Italian newspapers include *La Repubblica*, *Il Corriere della Sera*, and *La Stampa*. Also, the next time a friend takes a trip to Italy, ask him or her to bring back the in-flight magazine if it has both Italian and English. Alitalia produces a wonderful publication that has the Italian and the English side by side. You'll be surprised at how much you can pick up.

Become a Class Act

Call your local *università* and investigate whether it has an Italian department. Find out if it has a mailing list for events, and make a point of meeting other "Italophiles."

Hang Out with Sophia

Rent Italian movies! Every week, make it a ritual to sit in front of your *televisione* (for educational purposes, naturally). Needless to say, you want the subtitled versions (stay away from anything dubbed—a character is his voice). Listen to the actors and mimic them, or simply read the translations and enjoy. You will absorb far more if you are relaxed and having fun. Try to make out the different words within each *frase*. Isolate words that are repeated. Make it a challenge and see how many words you understand.

Get the Right Tools

Invest in a good bilingual dictionary, preferably one printed in *Italia* that offers various features, such as stress accentuation (many dictionaries will indicate irregularly stressed syllables) and parts of speech. Bigger is not necessarily better—choose a *dizionario* that isn't too cumbersome so you'll be more likely to bring it with you. Don't skimp on price here—a good dictionary is something you'll keep for a long time.

Flash cards are also a good resource. You can pick up a box of flash cards at any bookstore, or you can make your own. That unused box of business cards from your old job, or unused pages from your last address book are *perfetto*. Punch holes in them and put 10 or 20 on a key ring so you can put them in your pocket or bag for “study quickies.” Five minutes stolen here and there, waiting in line at the *ufficio postale*, at the *banca*, or when stuck in *traffica* can add up to more than you imagine.

Tune In!

Find out what station has Italian news. RAI, the Italian television and radio network, airs programs every day. Even though it will sound as though they are speaking a million miles a *minuto*, exposing your ears to the *lingua* will evolve into understanding it.

Read the Fine Print

Keep the owner's manual to any appliances, electronics, or cameras that include multilingual instructions. This is a great way to learn technical terms—and, once more, you don't need to pick up a dictionary; the English translation is probably already there.

Find Birds of a Feather

Study the *lingua* with a friend. There's nothing like having a partner to keep you motivated and on your toes. Practice together, and maybe invest in a private tutor to meet with you every couple of weeks. The *costo* is usually reasonable considering the kind of *attenzione* you will receive, and it will be good incentive to keep up with your studies.

While you're at it, make some Italian friends—or, better yet, an Italian lover (assuming you don't already have one, that is). There's nothing like a good *conversazione* (or quarrel) to hone your skills.

Play It Again, Salvatore

Make tapes of yourself speaking Italian, and then play these tapes to a native Italian speaker (your new friends, the waiter in the local *ristorante*, your *nonna*, or anyone who will listen). Ask them to evaluate your linguistic strengths and weaknesses.

There's Nothing to Stop You

Learning *la bella lingua* will not occur overnight. Many people find that, as with all new projects, they are hard-working and organized for the first few lessons, but then life gets in the way ... and you know the rest. Even if it's for only five minutes a day, be committed.

You can learn Italian; I've taught hundreds of people and know from *esperienza* it does not have to remain a dream. There is nothing to stop you from obtaining this goal. At times, your *progresso* will be obvious; other times, you will wonder what, if anything, is being accomplished. Remember, it's the *viaggio* that counts, not just the *destinazione*. The following *lista* outlines a few things to keep in mind that will make your journey a little easier:

- **Set realistic goals.** Whether you devote 10 *minuti* a day every *giorno*, or two hours a week on Sundays, stick to your *programma*. If you can't do it one week, no guilt trips. Make it up the next week.
- **Grammar isn't for geeks.** Grammar is simply a tool for learning a language. You figured out how to communicate your needs and understand what your *mamma* was telling you long before you could identify an adjective, noun, or verb. It probably started with a simple word, such as "cookie," which you mispronounced as *coo-coo*. As you matured, you began expressing your likes and dislikes with words such as "No!" or "Me!" Your mother did not follow you around saying, "That's a noun!" or "What a great verb you used!" She responded to your needs as best she could, based on your *abilità* to communicate. Grammar is simply the *vocabolario*, as any trade will have, used in language learning. Fear not.
- **Make mistakes.** Lots of them. You never know what mistake might end up being a discovery. Did the great Renaissance man Leonardo da Vinci draw the *Mona Lisa* (also titled *La Gioconda* in Italian) the first time he picked up a piece of charcoal? Would we recognize Christopher Columbus if he had made it to India? As the result of a major wrong turn, he stumbled upon the Americas.
- **Don't be intimidated.** The Italians are among the most warm, hospitable, easy-going, open-minded people you will ever meet. Your attempt to speak Italian,

even in the most basic of ways, will elicit nothing less than enthusiasm and delight. Say *buon giorno* (good day) every time you walk into an establishment, and watch the response. They are listening to what you are trying to express, not what mistakes you may have made. Put yourself in their *scarpe* and remember the last time someone speaking English as a second language impressed you with her command of the language, the whole time murmuring, “I don’t speak so good.” “Are you kidding?” you wanted to ask. “You speak very well!”

Italian is an easy language to learn. It’s another story to master this rich, complicated tongue, but you can cross that *ponte* when you come to it. You start at the beginning. One foot in front of the other, an entire *continente* can be traversed, step by step.

Now, as a fun exercise, go back through this chapter and count how many new Italian words you learned just for showing up here—and without even trying! *Bravi!*

The Least You Need to Know

- There’s no time like the present to learn *la bella lingua* of Italian.
- Italian is an accessible language that anyone can learn.
- You can communicate even if your pronunciation and grammar are less than *perfetto*. Remember that *la lingua* is simply a means to communicate your thoughts to another *persona*. If you can learn to speak one language, you can learn to speak another.
- You have nothing to fear but fear itself. Whether it takes you three months or three years, one step in front of the other is the way you will achieve your goals. Find your pace. Stick with it.



Immerse Yourself

In This Chapter

- A history of the Italian language
- What's a dialect?
- Using your bilingual dictionary
- Why grammar is the key to *la bella lingua*

In an increasingly international *comunità*, it seems that Italian has permeated every aspect of our *cultura*. Italian *ristoranti* specializing in different regional tastes have cropped up in just about every *villaggio* and *città*. Italian films have made us laugh so hard our sides hurt, yet we can never escape the *teatro* without having dabbled at the corners of our eyes at least once.

Advertisers have hooked into the enormous appeal that *l'Italia* has for almost every *prodotto* imaginable, and there is more than one commercial using the Italian language to make its point. Italian lingo (*ciao, bravo, ancora!*) has crept into English—not surprising since so much of the English language has its origins in Latin, Italian's *madre lingua* (mother tongue).

This chapter offers you a different eye on the Italian language and compares it with English. It also gives a summary of different parts of *grammatica* and attempts to take away some of the intimidation factor that often accompanies learning a new *lingua*.



La Bella Lingua

Latin originally developed in Central Italy in the area known as Latium. Within the Italian peninsula lived the Etruscans (giving Tuscany its name), Faliscans, Oscans, Umbrians, and a slew of other tribes. These Italic languages all contributed to the eventual development of the language we now recognize as Italian. It is not clear when Italian became a distinct language from Latin, since no Italian text has been recorded before the tenth century; however, we do know that by the fourth century, St. Jerome had translated the Bible from Latin into the language spoken by the common people.

Latin Lovers

The history of the Italian language spans centuries and begins with classical Latin, the literary language of ancient *Roma* and the language used principally by the upper classes, the educated, and later the clergy—hence the term Romance languages (from which French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Rumanian are also derived). These languages were all offshoots, or dialects. Italian is the Romance language closest to Latin.



La Bella Lingua

Set aside a predetermined amount of study time that you can realistically commit toward your goal of learning Italian. Whether it's eight *minuti* a day or *un'ora* twice a week, stick to it.

Languages are like seeds that drift from one area into another, germinating wherever there is ripe soil. Latin made its way into English during the seventh century as England was converting to Christianity, and later during a revival in classical scholarship stemming from the Renaissance (*Rinascimento*, literally meaning “rebirth”). During the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, hundreds of Latin words were incorporated into English, resulting in much of today's legal and medical *terminologia*.

As a result, many small words in modern English have their origins in Latin, a hop from Italian. Chapter 4, “You Know More Than You Think,” presents you with a more thorough listing of those similar words, or *cognates*. Keep in mind that English is a much broader language than Italian in terms of the sheer number of words it possesses.

You will see that in Italian it is sometimes much easier to express certain *diminutives* and *superlatives* than in English. For example, English has the pair “cat/kitten.” The word “kitten” is quite different from the word “cat.” In Italian, it’s much easier to express a small cat: By adding the ending *-ino* to the word *gatto*, we create the word *gattino*. You’re already familiar with the word *zucchini*, which comes from the Italian word *zucca* (pumpkin/squash).

A commonly used superlative in English is *-est* which is attached to adjectives to describe the smallest, biggest, or best. In Italian, this would be expressed with the ending *-issimo*, as in the adjective *bellissimo* (very beautiful, gorgeous).

In spite of the fact that Italian has fewer words than English, Italians have no difficulty expressing themselves, as you will find out for yourself.



What’s What

A **diminutive** is a suffix, or ending, that denotes smallness, youth, or familiarity, such as *caro* (dear) and *carino* (cute), *ragazzo* (boy) and *ragazzino* (small boy). A **superlative** expresses the extreme, or highest degree of something, such as *bello* (beautiful) and *bellissimo* (gorgeous).

How Do You Say ...? Dialect

A dialect is a variation of a language, usually particular to a region and often quite different from the standard spoken vernacular. Due to its shape and long history of outside influences, Italy has hundreds of different dialects, many of which are still used today. Some dialects are virtually identical to Italian, but with particular colloquialisms and idiomatic expressions understood only by those familiar with the dialect.

Other dialects are like different languages. For example, up north in Lombardia, you’ll hear a specifically German accent and a softening of the R’s, a result of the district’s rule by Austria at one time. In the Piedmont region, you can hear the French influence. Down south near Napoli, you can hear Spanish and French, whereas in Calabria, certain expressions are quite clearly Greek (*kalimera* means literally “Good day” in modern Greek) or Albanian in nature. The islands of *Sardegna* and *Sicilia* also have their own languages.

Many Italian immigrants brought their dialects to the United States, where they were further influenced by factors such as culture, English, and other dialects. This partly explains why the Italian spoken by many immigrants often differs greatly from the Italian presented in this book—and why you may still have difficulty communicating with your grandmother after having mastered the basics. Many variations or dialects of Italian are spoken around the world today, in such places as Switzerland and many parts of South America.



La Bella Lingua

The poet **Dante Alighieri** (1265–1321) is to the Italian language what Shakespeare is to English. It was his poetry that legitimized the Italian language as we know it today, since all his predecessors wrote exclusively in Latin. His most famous work, *La Divina Commedia*, is an epic poem depicting an imaginary journey through Hell, Purgatory, and Paradise. That work was actually influenced by another of the world's greatest poets, *Virgilio* (Virgil), who served as Dante's guide both literally, as a writer, and figuratively, in the story itself.

Tuscan Italian

In modern Italy, the standard language taught in schools and spoken on television is Tuscan Italian, primarily because this was the regional dialect used by the great medieval writers Dante, Petrarca, and Boccaccio, all of whom used what was then only a spoken language. Modern Italian is often quite different from the Italian used during the Middle Ages, but, as when you compare modern English to Old English, there are also striking similarities.

Look at this excerpt from Dante's *Inferno*:

*Nel mezzo del cammin di nostra vita
mi ritrovai per una selva oscura,
che la diritta via era smarrita.*

Note the translation:

In the middle of our life's journey
I found myself in a dark wood,
out of which the straight way was lost.

The Italian has a wonderful rhyme quality—the word *vita* working with the word *smarrita*. Although the translation to English loses some of the flow and meaning of the poem, you can still get a sense of what is being communicated; and you certainly can gain an understanding of the musicality of the language. It's like looking at a photograph of a bright, sunny day where you can see the *colori* but you can't feel the warmth of the sun, experience the expanse of blue sky, or hear the *vento* rustle the leaves in the trees.



La Bella Lingua

The works of **Francesco Petrarca** (1304–1374) differed from those of Dante. As an early Humanist, Petrarca’s ideas focused more on love and other earthly concerns, making him very popular during the Renaissance. His major works, *I Trionfi* and *Il Canzoniere*, were both written in the vernacular, or in everyday (as opposed to formal) speech.

Giovanni Boccaccio (1313–1375) has been rated one of the greatest literary figures of Italy. A contemporary of Petrarca, he is most known for *The Decameron*. Written around the time of the Black Death of 1348, *The Decameron* is a collection of 100 novellas, many comic, some bawdy, a few tragic—and all captivating and engaging.

So What’s Your Story?

“Etymology” is a fancy term used to describe the study of words, but you don’t need to be a linguist to appreciate the *origine* of a word. By using your powers of deduction, it’s often *possibile* to figure out a word’s *significato* simply by looking at its root. *Per esempio*, the word *pomodoro* means “tomato” in Italian. Coming from the Latin words *pomum* (“apple” or “fruit”) and *oro* (signifying “gold”), the word derives from the Latin *aurum* (connected to the word *aurora*, meaning “dawn” or “redness”). Thus the word *pomodoro* breaks down to literally mean “golden apple.”

The English words “Vermont” and “verdant” both share a common root: *vert* (coming from Latin *viridis* and meaning “green”). In Italian, the word for the season spring is *primavera*, virtually meaning “first green.” The words *carnivore*, *carnal*, *charnel*, and *carnival* all derive from the Latin stem *carn*, meaning “flesh.” Are you a verbose person? Think verb, or in Latin, *verbum*, meaning “word.”

There’s no need to rush out and take a course in *Latino*. Rather than memorizing a list of words, try creating associations with words you already know. Sometimes it’s as *semplice* as adding a vowel here and there, or tacking on an Italian ending. Your cognitive *abilità* to make sense will do the rest. Once you have an understanding of how the endings change from English to Italian, you’ll be able to switch from one *lingua* to the other in no time at all.

How Much Italian Is Enough?

Understanding what your motives are for learning Italian is key to accomplishing your goals. Having a destination will help you map out the journey. It will help you to gloss over certain *lezioni* (lessons) that may be less relevant to your purpose, while concentrating on those elements of the language more suited to fit your needs. Here are some examples:

- If you're learning Italian to pass your art history exam, you might not need to spend a lot of time on idiomatic expressions, cognates, and helpful expressions. Instead, you should focus on verbs and their tenses, nouns, and adjectives.
- If you're learning Italian to be able to converse with your Italian business associates, you should aim to develop an "ear" for the language. Here, pronunciation is essential, and a knowledge of some common idiomatic expressions is helpful to break the ice.
- If food and travel are your passions, a strong *vocabolario* is *importante*. Developing a sizable repertoire of words related to your interests will make your *viaggio* to Italy that much more interesting as you seek new *ristoranti* and hidden treasures. It's good to know a few verb infinitives just to get you pointed in the right direction, but it might not be *necessario* to spend too much time on the many tenses. The point is to be able to meet your needs and express your thoughts.



La Bella Lingua

Expand your horizons! Many Italian streets are named after historical and religious figures, such as *Corso Vittorio Emanuele II* and *Via Savonarola*. Use the street signs as opportunities to gain insight about Italy and its rich culture.

Your Dictionary Is Your Best Friend

Having a good bilingual *dizionario* is essential to learning a new language, whatever your purpose may be. Use your dictionary as an adventurer would use a map. Keep it handy, somewhere where you do most of your studying so that you don't have far to reach every time a new word pops up. You'll be amazed at how often you'll use it if you're not climbing a ladder to get to the top shelf of your bookcase whenever a need arises. Most good English/Italian dictionaries indicate what kind of word it is. You should understand the significance of the abbreviations used in the definitions. The following table lists a few of them.

Dictionary Abbreviations

English Abbreviation	Italian Abbreviation	Meaning
adj.	<i>agg.</i>	Adjective
adv.	<i>avv.</i>	Adverb
—	<i>f.</i>	Singular feminine noun
—	<i>m.</i>	Singular masculine noun
s.	—	Singular noun
prep.	<i>prep.</i>	Preposition
pron.	<i>pron.</i>	Pronoun
v.i.	<i>v.i.</i>	Intransitive verb
v.t.	<i>v.t.</i>	Transitive verb
—	<i>v.rifl.</i>	Reflexive verb
fam.	<i>fam.</i>	Familiar/colloquial

Also take advantage of any tables, charts, or specialized vocabulary offered in your dictionary. There is often a handy summary of the language tucked away somewhere in the front or back pages. Read the small print.

Speak Easy

Some of you may not remember seventh-grade grammar as well as you would like. After all, at the time, you could see no practical purpose; you never envisioned that you would actually choose to learn a language on your own, and you were much too busy writing notes to your best friend to pay attention to your teacher. You're older now, your hormones are in check, and you're a little wiser, so take a trip down memory lane and review some of those parts of speech.

Person, Place, or Pasta

Nouns are people, places, things, and ideas. *Poet*, *Pompei*, *pasta*, and *principle* are all nouns. In Italian, all nouns have a gender: They are either masculine (m.) or feminine (f.). In addition, all nouns in Italian indicate number: They are either singular (s.) or plural (p.).



La Bella Lingua

If an explanation given in this book still leaves you confused, refer to that same topic in a grammar book such as *Italian Verbs and Essentials of Grammar*, by Carlo Graziano (Passport Books). Sometimes it takes two different explanations to fully grasp a new concept.

Descriptively Speaking

Adjectives describe nouns. They are big, little, pretty, ugly, and all the colors of the rainbow. Unlike English, Italian adjectives agree in number and gender (sex) with the nouns they modify. For example, if the noun is singular and masculine, as in *il vino* (the wine), then the adjective must also be singular and masculine, as in *il vino rosso* (the red wine).

In Italian, the adjective is almost always placed after the noun it modifies, as in *la casa bianca* (the house white), but exceptions exist, as in *il bravo ragazzo* (the good boy). You'll get a much clearer idea of how adjectives work in a little while.

Adverbs describe verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. They move us quickly and happily toward our goal of learning Italian. Most adverbs in English end in *-ly*. In Italian, many adverbs end in *-mente*, such as *rapidamente* and *allegramente*.

Who's He?

Pronouns substitute for nouns and refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. For example: *We* ate a lot of food in the restaurant, and *it* (the food) cost quite a penny. In Italian, pronouns are a little more complicated because they must, like nouns, reflect sex and number. There is no neuter *it* in Italian. There are several kinds of pronouns, of which the most important to remember are subject pronouns (*he, she, and so on*), direct object pronouns, and indirect object pronouns (*it*).

It's All Relative

Prepositions are words (such as *above, along, beyond, before, through, in, on, at, to, for, and so on*) that are placed before nouns to indicate a relationship to other words in a sentence. Prepositions are best learned in connection with the expressions in which they are used. For example, you may think *about* someone, but you can also think *of* going on vacation.

Where the Action Is

Verbs indicate action. An infinitive verb is a verb that has not been conjugated, as in *to be, to eat, or to travel*. A conjugated verb is simply a form of the verb that agrees with the subject. You conjugate verbs in English all the time when you say "I am," "you are," and "he is." Verb conjugations will be discussed in greater depth later.

Intransitive verbs can stand alone, without a direct object, as "sing" does in the sentence "I sing." You can sing a song or just sing.

Transitive verbs can be followed by a direct object or require a reflexive pronoun, as in "We kissed *one another*," or "Robert is going to the party." You see, Robert can't just "go"—he must "go" somewhere.

It All Depends on How You Look at It

You don't have to be a rocket scientist to use a bilingual dictionary, but a little inside knowledge of grammar doesn't hurt. It's important to remember how versatile words can be, and you do that by looking at the entire sentence. This is essential to extrapolating the meaning of the text or even a word that you don't recognize. Look at the word *inside*. Watch how the meaning changes in the following sentences:

The plane should arrive *inside* of an hour. (adverb)

The *inside* walls of the church are covered with art. (adjective)

It is very dark *inside* the tunnel. (preposition)

The *inside* of the Coliseum was once quite beautiful. (noun)

Change *inside* to the plural, and its meaning changes:

She laughed until her *insides* hurt. (colloquial, noun)

The following is what a listing in a good Italian/English dictionary might look like:

inside (in'said) 1. *avv.* dentro, in casa, entro; 2. *agg.* interno, interiore;
3. *prep.* in, dentro; 4. *n.* interno, parte interna (*fam.*), stomaco; informazioni riservate.



Did You Know?

If there's more than one translation listed in your dictionary for a given word, it's important to take your time and skim through the list. After you have found your word, if you are still not sure of whether it is the appropriate translation, look up the word you just chose in its opposite language. For example, if you are looking up the word *mean*, ask yourself whether you want the adjective *mean* (as in nasty) or the verb *to mean* (as in "to signify").

Practice Makes Perfetto

Using the Italian definitions just given, figure out the part of speech for "inside" in each of the following sentences, and complete the translated sentences in Italian:

1. We live inside the walls of the city.
Abitiamo _____ le mura della città.
2. The woman's insides hurt.
Alla donna fa male lo _____.
3. We will arrive home inside an hour.
Arriviamo a casa _____ un'ora.
4. He has inside information on the *Palio*.
Lui ha _____ sul Palio.
5. The inside of the church is dark.
L' _____ della chiesa è scuro.



La Bella Lingua

Keep an eye out for English movies that have an Italian theme. You can improve your Italian without having to read a thing. Some titles include these:

Avanti
Big Night
Down by Law
The Godfather
Good Morning Babylon
Indiscretion of an American Housewife
Moonstruck
Queen of Hearts
Stealing Beauty
Summertime

Chapter 19, "Having Fun Italian Style," offers you additional suggestions.

What's the Object; Who's the Subject?

Okay, let's go back to the seventh grade again. The sun is shining outside the school windows, and the teacher is droning on about objects and subjects. As she's speaking, you're on the verge of falling asleep. The room is too hot, you're bored, and you're thinking, "I'm never going to need this to do anything!"

Of course, in retrospect, you know better. But you still aren't quite sure what an object is, unless it's something unidentified and coming from parts unknown.

Use a sentence from your first-grade book to look at what an object is ...

Jack throws Jane a ball.

First things first. Take a *minuto* to find the *verbo* in this sentence. Remember, verbs are where the action is.

Did you figure out it was the verb "to throw"? *Bravi!* You're on your way. Next question: Who threw the ball? Answer: Jack did, that's who—and he is your subject.

The million-*lire* question now is, what did Jack throw? Answer: The ball! That's the direct object. A direct object is the recipient of the verb's action.

In sentences with two nouns following the verb, the first is generally the indirect object, the word that tells to whom or for whom the action was done (Jane).

Let's continue with Jack and Jane. Jane, never one to say no to a challenge, decides to keep the ball rolling. Analyze the next sentence for its subject and object pronouns:

She throws it back to him.

Did you figure out that "she" is the subject pronoun (substituting for "Jane") and "it" (substituting for "ball") is the object pronoun? So you see, there's nothing to worry about. You know everything you need to get this ball rolling and learn the language you've always dreamed of knowing.



La Bella Lingua

Make a list of 10 topics you would like to be able to talk about in Italian. Put the list at the front of your notebook so that you're reminded of your goals.

Drawing from *Esperienza*

Have you ever studied another *lingua*? Perhaps you took *spagnolo* when you were in high school. At the urging of your parents, you might have studied *Latino*, and after three semesters of it, all you can remember are the words *veni, vedi, vici* (came, saw, conquered). Whatever the last language was that you studied, whether it was *francese, russo, ebreo* (Hebrew), or *cinese*, it will be the first *lingua* to come out of your mouth



La Bella Lingua

If you can't think of the Italian word, use the word you remember from the last *lingua* you studied. If your *frase* comes out one-third *italiano*, one-third *francese*, and one-third *inglese*, it's still better than nothing.



La Bella Lingua

Pull out your old notes from the last time you studied a foreign *lingua*. If you've been out of *scuola* for a while, they will be a good reminder. You may be surprised to see that you actually learned something back then, even if your heart wasn't in it. As you wallow in nostalgic longing for those years, remind yourself that there's no time like the *presente* to begin something new.

when you try mustering up some Italian. It's *naturale*—your brain retains everything, although some of the *informazione* ends up stored away until you decide to dust off the cobwebs and reopen the files.

Your pronunciation may initially reflect those first language classes, but you'll soon be rounding your R's and wooing your partner Italian-style in no time flat. If you have studied another Romance language, you'll already be familiar with the basic *struttura* of Italian. Let's take a look at some of those basic *regole* (rules):

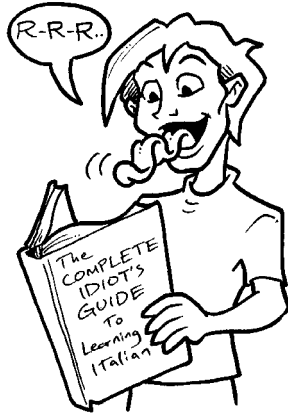
- All Romance languages possess masculine and feminine nouns.
- The definite article (the) agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies.
- All adjectives must agree in both gender and plurality with the nouns they modify. *Per esempio*, if a noun is feminine singular, its adjective must also be feminine singular, as in *la lingua italiana*.
- As a general rule, most adjectives come after the noun, as with *il vino buono* and *la casa bianca*.
- All Romance languages possess a polite as well as a familiar form of "you." The polite form, *Lei*, is capitalized to distinguish it from *lei*, meaning "she," and should be used with strangers, authority figures, and elders. The familiar form, *tu*, is used with friends and children.

Read It, Write It, Say It

Writing things down helps you to retain the things you have read or heard. Your body will remember in ways your mind will not. Studying aloud will get your mouth into the habit of helping you to *ricordare*. If you read the words, write them down, and read aloud, you'll be speaking in no time.

The Least You Need to Know

- Italian comes from Latin and is connected to a history steeped in *tradizione*.
- You have no reason to be intimidated by grammar. Understanding the different parts of speech takes away the mystery of learning a second language.
- A bilingual *dizionario* is essential to language learning and can help you identify different parts of speech and understand common Italian expressions.
- Dante, Boccaccio, and Petrarca are three of Italy's greatest writers.



Sound Like an Italian

In This Chapter

- Italian pronunciation
- Your ABCs
- To stress or not to stress
- Different letter combinations
- Spelling your name in Italian

Learning a new language is like having a box filled with puzzle pieces that haven't been fit together. At first, it's all just a jumble of sounds and letters and words, but slowly, almost imperceptibly, your *confusione* is replaced with *comprensione* as a clear picture emerges.

Italian Pronunciation

Initially, it seems as though anyone speaking Italian is singing. There is a continuity and fluidity that reminds you of a beautifully sustained note. This has a great deal to do with the fact that almost all Italian words end in a vowel and are often pronounced as if joined together.

With few exceptions, Italian pronunciation is very easy to learn. As a phonetic language, what you see is what you say—at least most of the time. Once you learn how to read the music, you'll be able to play along with anyone.

The key is to understand the basic differences between the English and Italian rules of pronunciation. For example, in Italian, the word *cinema* is written exactly the same as



Attenzione!

When pronouncing Italian words, keep your tongue and mouth alert. Emphasize double consonants without overstressing letters or syllables; otherwise you'll end up sounding like someone trying a little too hard.

in English; however, in Italian it is pronounced *chee-nee-mah*. The same *ci* is used in the word *ciao*.

You'll find that certain Italian sounds may initially present a challenge to the English speaker, most notably the rolled *R* and the letter combination *gli* (pronounced *ylee*, like "million"). Nonetheless, after some time even these sounds will come easily to the attentive listener.

Italian requires clean diction with clearly pronounced vowels and *s*. Double consonants in words such as *anno* (year), *birra* (beer), and *gatto* (cat) should be emphasized. Avoid sounding overly nasal or guttural.

You will see less of the pronunciation in later chapters. Flip back to this chapter if you are not sure of how a word should be pronounced.

Your ABCs

The Italian language uses the Latin alphabet. Unlike English, however, the Italian alphabet contains only 21 letters, borrowing the letters *j*, *k*, *w*, *x*, and *y* for words of foreign origin.

As you read, you'll discover that the spelling of Italian words follows a logical pattern.

Getting the Accent

In this case, we're not talking about what Sofia Loren and Roberto Benigni have when speaking English. Italian uses the grave accent (`), pronounced *grav*, on words where the stress falls on the final syllable: *caffè*, *città*, *università*.

With Italians being who they are, and Italian being what it is, you may also see the acute accent used (especially in older text and phrasebooks), particularly with the words *benché* (although) and *perché* (because/why). Don't be surprised to find conflicting examples.

The written accent is also used to distinguish several Italian words from others that have the same spelling but a different meaning.

<i>è</i>	is	<i>e</i>	and
<i>sì</i>	yes	<i>si</i>	oneself
<i>dà</i>	gives	<i>da</i>	from
<i>sè</i>	himself	<i>se</i>	if
<i>là</i>	there	<i>la</i>	the
<i>né</i>	nor	<i>ne</i>	some



La Bella Lingua

In Italian, the apostrophe is generally used to indicate the dropping of the final vowel:

l'animale instead of *lo animale*

d'Italia instead of *di Italia*

dov'è instead of *dove è*

Don't Get Stressed Out

As a rule, most Italian words are stressed on the next-to-last syllable, such as *signorina* (*see-nyoh-ree-nah*), and *minestrone* (*mee-neh-stroh-neh*).

Exceptions exist, making rules rather difficult to follow. Some words are stressed on the third-to-last syllable, such as *automobile* (*ow-toh-moh-bee-leh*) and *dialogo* (*dee-ah-loh-goh*).

Other words—mostly verb forms—are stressed on the fourth-to-last syllable, such as *studiano* (*stoo-dee-ah-noh*), and *telefonano* (*teh-leh-foh-nah-noh*).

Finally, stress should be placed on the last syllable when you see an accent mark at the end of a word, such as *città* (*chee-tah*), *università* (*oo-nee-ver-see-ta*), and *virtù* (*veer-too*).

I've indicated in the early chapters where to put the stress in words of three syllables or more, and in words of two syllables with an accented (and thus stressed) syllable. In the future, consult a good dictionary when you are unclear about which syllable should be emphasized. Generally, you will see either an accent placed above, or a dot placed below the stressed vowel.



Attenzione!

Some Italian letter combinations are seldom found in English. These sounds include the *gl* combination in words such as *figlio* (son) (pronounced *fee-lyoh*); the word *gli* (the) (pronounced *ylee*, like the *ll* in the English word *million*); and the *gn* combination, seen in words such as *gnocchi* (potato dumplings) (pronounced *nyoh-kee*), and *bagno* (bathroom) (pronounced *bah-nyoh*, like the *ny* sound in *canyon* or the *ni* sound in *onion*).



As a Rule

For the purposes of clarity, the pronunciation used in this text is designed to be read phonetically.

Always remember to enunciate vowels clearly and not to slur your words. Say what you see.

Double *RR*'s should be held and emphasized when trilled.

Double consonants should always be emphasized—but never as separate sounds. They should be joined and slide into one another, as in the word *pizza* (*pee-tsah*).

Rolling Your *R*'s

There are a few sounds in Italian that are not found in English, the most obvious being the rolled *R*. Some people can roll their *R*'s forever, but if you are not one of them, here's a mini-guide on rolling your *R*: place the tip of your tongue so that it's touching the roof of your mouth just behind your front teeth. Now curl the tip of your tongue and exhale. You should get the beginning trill of a rolled *R*. Once you get it, be subtle—a little trill will do.



La Bella Lingua

In linguistic parlance, the term "rhotacism" is defined, among other things, as the incorrect or overuse of *R*'s in pronunciation.

The Long and the Short of It: Vowels

The Italian word for "vowel"—*vocale*—is almost the same as the English word "vocal," a good reminder that Italian vowels should always be pronounced clearly. If you can master the vowels, you're already halfway to the point of sounding Italian. The following table shows how the vowels are pronounced. Read aloud to practice.

Pronouncing Vowels Properly

Vowel	Sound	Example	Pronunciation
a	<i>ah</i>	<i>artista</i>	<i>ar-tee-stah</i>
e	<i>eh</i>	<i>elefante</i>	<i>eh-leh-fahn-teh</i>
i	<i>ee</i>	<i>isola</i>	<i>ee-zoh-lah</i>
o	<i>oh</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>oh-peh-rah</i>
u	<i>oo</i>	<i>uno</i>	<i>oo-noh</i>

The Hard and Soft of It: Consonants

The following table contains a list of consonants and includes letters recognized in foreign languages. Once you get the hang of it, Italian is so easy to pronounce that it would be just as simple to read the words without the pronunciation guide. Most Italian consonants are pronounced like the English ones. It's the different letter combinations that take a little study. Roll on.

Pronouncing Consonants Properly

Letter	Sound	Example	Pronunciation	Meaning
b	<i>bee</i>	<i>bambino</i>	<i>bahm-bee-noh</i>	child, m.
c + a, o, u	hard <i>c</i> (as in "cat")	<i>candela</i>	<i>kahn-deh-lah</i>	candle
c + e, i	<i>ch</i> (as in "chest")	<i>centro</i>	<i>chen-troh</i>	center/downtown
ch	hard <i>c</i> (as in "cat")	<i>Chianti</i>	<i>kee-ahn-tee</i>	Chianti (a red wine)
d	<i>dee</i>	<i>due</i>	<i>doo-eh</i>	two
f	<i>eff</i>	<i>frase</i>	<i>frah-zeh</i>	phrase
g + a, o, u	hard <i>g</i> (as in "go")	<i>gatto</i>	<i>gah-toh</i>	cat
g + e, i	<i>j</i> (as in "gem")	<i>gentile</i>	<i>jen-tee-leh</i>	kind
gli	<i>ylee</i> (as in "million")	<i>figlio</i>	<i>fee-lyoh</i>	son
gn	<i>nya</i> (as in "onion")	<i>gnocchi</i>	<i>nyoh-kee</i>	potato dumplings
h	silent	<i>hotel</i>	<i>oh-tel</i>	hotel
j*	<i>juh</i> (hard j)	<i>jazz</i>	<i>jaz</i>	jazz
k*	<i>kuh</i> (hard k)	<i>koala</i>	<i>koh-ah-lah</i>	koala
l	<i>ell</i>	<i>lingua</i>	<i>leen-gwah</i>	language
m	<i>em</i>	<i>madre</i>	<i>mah-dreh</i>	mother

continues

Pronouncing Consonants Properly (continued)

Letter	Sound	Example	Pronunciation	Meaning
n	<i>en</i>	<i>nido</i>	<i>nee-doh</i>	nest
p	<i>pee</i>	<i>padre</i>	<i>pah-dreh</i>	father
q	<i>kew</i>	<i>quanto</i>	<i>kwahn-toh</i>	how much
r	<i>er</i> (slightly rolled)	<i>Roberto</i>	<i>roh-ber-toh</i>	Robert
rr	<i>err</i> (really rolled)	<i>birra</i>	<i>bee-rah</i>	beer
s (at beginning of word)	<i>ess</i> (as in “see”)	<i>serpente</i>	<i>ser-pen-teh</i>	snake
s	<i>s</i> (as in “rose”)	<i>casa</i>	<i>kah-zah</i>	house
sc + a, o	<i>sk</i>	<i>scala</i>	<i>skah-lah</i>	stair
sc + e, i	<i>sh</i>	<i>scena</i>	<i>sheh-nah</i>	scene
t	<i>tee</i>	<i>tavola</i>	tah -voh-lah	table
v	<i>v</i>	<i>vino</i>	<i>vee-noh</i>	wine
w*	<i>wuh</i>	<i>Washington</i>	wash -eeng-ton	Washington
x*	<i>eeks</i>	<i>raggi-x</i>	<i>rah-jee eeks</i>	x-ray
y*	<i>yuh</i>	<i>yoga</i>	<i>yoh-gah</i>	yoga
z	<i>z</i>	<i>zebra</i>	<i>zeh-brah</i>	zebra
zz	<i>ts</i>	<i>pazzo</i>	<i>pah-tsoh</i>	crazy

*These letters are used in words of foreign origin.



La Bella Lingua

The best way to remember how a particular letter combination should be pronounced is to simply recall a word that you already know. *Per esempio*, the word *ciao* is pronounced with the soft *c*, as in “chow.” Other words with the *c* + *i* combination include *cinema*, *bacio*, and *amici*.

The word *Chianti* is pronounced with a hard *c*, as in *kee-ahn-tee*. When you come across other words (such as *chi* and *perchè*) with this combination, you’ll know just how they’re pronounced.

Practice Those Vowels

Now try to pronounce these words, focusing just on the vowels.

A

Say *ah*, as in “father”:

madre	fila	canto	casa	strada	mela
<i>mah-dreh</i>	<i>fee-lah</i>	<i>kahn-toh</i>	<i>kah-zah</i>	<i>strah-dah</i>	<i>meh-lah</i>
(mother)	(line)	(song)	(home)	(street)	(apple)

E

Say *eh*, as in “make” or “let”:

padre	sera	festa	bene	età	pensione
<i>pah-dreh</i>	<i>seh-rah</i>	<i>fes-tah</i>	<i>beh-neh</i>	<i>eh-tah</i>	<i>pen-see-oh-neh</i>
(father)	(evening)	(party)	(well)	(age)	(motel)

I

Say *ee*, as in “feet”:

idiota	piccolo	pulire	in	idea	turista
<i>ee-dee-oh-tah</i>	<i>pee-koh-loh</i>	<i>poo-lee-reh</i>	<i>een</i>	<i>ee-deh-ah</i>	<i>too-ree-stah</i>
(idiot)	(small)	(to clean)	(in)	(idea)	(tourist)

O

Say *oh*, as in “note” or “for”:

donna	bello	cosa	albero	gatto	uomo
<i>doh-nah</i>	<i>beh-loh</i>	<i>koh-zah</i>	<i>ahl-beh-roh</i>	<i>gah-toh</i>	<i>woh-moh</i>
(woman)	(beautiful)	(thing)	(tree)	(cat)	(man)

U

Say *oo*, as in “crude”:

luna	una	cubo	lupo	tuo
<i>loo-nah</i>	<i>oo-nah</i>	<i>koo-boh</i>	<i>loo-poh</i>	<i>too-oh</i>
(moon)	(a)	(cube)	(wolf)	(your)

Give Me the Combo

Italian pronunciation follows a pretty consistent, easy-to-remember format. The rules change depending on what vowel is connected to what consonant. By remembering even one word’s pronunciation that follows a given rule, you can always fall back on that word as a way of checking yourself.

The following examples illustrate many letter combinations you’ll find in Italian.

C Is for Casa

Look at all that you can do with the letter c.

Letter Combination		Sound	Pronunciation Guide
c + a, o, u		k	Say <i>c</i> , as in “camp”
casa <i>kah-zah</i> (house)	amico <i>ah-mee-koh</i> (friend)	caro <i>kah-roh</i> (expensive/dear)	bocca <i>boh-kah</i> (mouth)
colore <i>koh-loh-reh</i> (color)	conto <i>kohn-toh</i> (bill/check)	cultura <i>kool-too-rah</i> (culture)	giacca <i>jah-kah</i> (jacket)

Letter Combination		Sound	Pronunciation Guide
c + h		k	Say <i>c</i> , as in “camp”
chiamare <i>kee-ah-mah-reh</i> (to call)	occhio <i>oh-kee-yoh</i> (eye)	perché <i>per-keh</i> (why)	Machiavelli <i>mah-kee-ah-veh-lee</i> (Machiavelli)
chiaro <i>kee-ah-roh</i> (clear/light)	chiuso <i>kee-yoo-zoh</i> (closed)	macchina <i>mah-kee-nah</i> (car)	ricchi <i>ree-kee</i> (rich, m.p.)

Letter Combination		Sound	Pronunciation Guide
c + e, i		ch	Say <i>ch</i> , as in “cherry”
accento <i>ah-chen-toh</i> (accent)	cena <i>che-nah</i> (dinner)	città <i>chee-tah</i> (city)	ceramica <i>cheh-rah-mee-kah</i> (ceramic)
ciao <i>chow</i> (hi/bye)	bacio <i>bah-choh</i> (kiss)	Francia <i>frahn-chah</i> (France)	cioccolata <i>choh-koh-lah-tah</i> (chocolate)

G Is for Gamba

Practice getting your g’s right.

Letter Combination		Sound	Pronunciation Guide
g + a, o, u		g	Say <i>g</i> , as in “great”
gamba <i>gahm-bah</i> (leg)	lago <i>lah-goh</i> (lake)	gufo <i>goo-foh</i> (owl)	prego <i>preh-goh</i> (you’re welcome)

gambero <i>gahm-beh-roh</i> (shrimp)	mago <i>mah-goh</i> (wizard)	strega <i>streh-gah</i> (witch)	gusto <i>goo-stoh</i> (taste)
--	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

The letter combination *gh* is also pronounced like the *g* in *go*, as in *funghi* (mushrooms).

Letter Combination		Sound		Pronunciation Guide
g + e, i		j		Say <i>g</i> as in “gem”
gelato <i>jeh-lah-toh</i> (ice cream)	giovane <i>joh-vah-neh</i> (young)	giacca <i>jah-kah</i> (jacket)	viaggio <i>vee-ah-joh</i> (voyage)	
formaggio <i>for-mah-joh</i> (cheese)	gente <i>jen-teh</i> (people)	giorno <i>jor-noh</i> (day)	maggio <i>mah-joh</i> (May)	

Letter Combination		Sound		Pronunciation Guide
g + n		ny		Say “onion”
lavagna <i>lah-vah-nyah</i> (blackboard)	signore <i>see-nyoh-reh</i> (sir, Mr.)	legno <i>leh-nyoh</i> (wood)	gnocchi <i>nyoh-kee</i> (potato dumplings)	
ragno <i>rah-nyoh</i> (spider)	compagna <i>kohm-pah-nyah</i> (countryside)	signora <i>see-nyoh-rah</i> (Mrs., Ms.)	guadagno <i>gwah-dah-nyoh</i> (earnings)	

S Is for Scandolo

The letter *s* is quite slippery.

Letter Combination		Sound		Pronunciation Guide
sc + a, h, o, u		sk		Say <i>sk</i> , as in “skin”
sconto <i>skohn-toh</i> (discount)	scusa <i>skoo-zah</i> (excuse)	scandalo <i>skahn-dah-loh</i> (scandal)	pesca <i>pes-kah</i> (peach)	
scuola <i>skwoh-lah</i> (school)	schifo <i>skee-foh</i> (disgust)	fiasco <i>fee-ah-skoh</i> (fiasco)	schizzo <i>skee-tsoh</i> (sketch)	

Letter Combination		Sound		Pronunciation Guide
sc + e, i		sh		Say <i>sh</i> , as in “sheet”
sci	pesce	scena	lasciare	
<i>shee</i>	<i>peh-sheh</i>	<i>sheh-nah</i>	<i>lah-shah-reh</i>	
(skiing)	(fish)	(scene)	(to leave something)	
scioppo	sciocco	sciopero	scelto	
<i>shee-roh-poh</i>	<i>shee-oh-koh</i>	<i>shoh-peh-roh</i>	<i>shel-toh</i>	
(syrup)	(fool)	(strike)	(choice)	



As a Rule

Try using this expression the next time you want to ask someone how to say something in Italian:

Come si dice ...? (How do you say ...?)

Question: *Come si dice ice cream in italiano?*

Answer: *Si dice gelato.*

Did you notice any similarity between the words you just read and their English counterparts? You know more than you think! It’s important to see how much Italian and English share. Remember that a lot of English derives from Latin. It helps to make associations with familiar words. Each time you do this, you are creating a bridge from one shore to another. For example, the word *luna* (moon) comes from Latin, as we see in the English word “lunatic.” It was once believed that “lunacy” came from the full moon. All sorts of associations can be made to “illuminate” (in Italian, *illuminare*) these connections.



Attenzione!

Say “Ah!” The real key to success is to make sure you are pronouncing your vowels correctly: *a* (*ah*), *e* (*eh*), *i* (*ee*), *o* (*oh*), and *u* (*oo*).

Diphthongs

No, a diphthong is not a teeny-weeny bikini. The term “diphthong” refers to any pair of vowels that begins with one vowel sound and ends with a different vowel sound within the same syllable. The term literally means “two voices” (*di* = “two”; *thong* = “tongue/voice”) and originally comes from Greek.

Italian utilizes many diphthongs such as *olio* (pronounced *ohl-yoh*), *quanto* (*kwahn-toh*), and *pausa* (*pow-sah*). Keep in mind that not all pairs of vowels form diphthongs.

Double Consonants

Anytime you see a double consonant in a word, such as *birra* (beer) or *anno* (year), it is important to emphasize that consonant, or you may be misunderstood. Take a look at a few words whose meanings change when there is a double consonant. As you will see, in some cases you *definitely* want to emphasize those double consonants:

ano (*ah-noh*): anus

casa (*kah-zah*): house

pena (*peh-nah*): pity

pene (*peh-neh*): penis

sete (*seh-teh*): thirsty

sono (*so-noh*): I am

anno (*ahn-noh*): year

cassa (*kaht-sah*): cash register

penna (*pehn-nah*): pen

penne (*pen-neh*): pens

sette (*set-teh*): seven

sonno (*sohn-noh*): sleepy



As a Rule

Unless beginning a word, a single *s* is pronounced like *z*, as in the name *Gaza*, or *s*, as in “busy” and the Italian word *casa* (house).

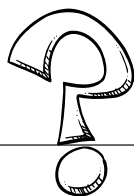
A double *ss* is pronounced like the *s* in the English word “tassel” and the Italian word *passo* (pass).

A single *z* is pronounced like the *z* in the word “zebra.”

A double *zz* is pronounced like the *ts* in the English word “cats” and the Italian word *piazza* (plaza).

Double consonants will not be highlighted in the pronunciation. It’s up to you to emphasize them. Practice pronouncing the following words, remembering to slide the syllables together:

mamma	sorella	cappello	atto	pazzo	bocca	Anna
<i>mah-mah</i>	<i>soh-reh-lah</i>	<i>kah-peh-loh</i>	<i>ah-toh</i>	<i>pah-tsoh</i>	<i>boh-kah</i>	<i>ah-nah</i>
(mom)	(sister)	(hat)	(act)	(crazy)	(mouth)	(Ann)



What's What

In Italian, two vowels do not necessarily produce a diphthong. The word *zia* (*zee-ah*) maintains two distinct, separate sounds and consequently does not produce a diphthong.

On the other hand, the word *Italia* (*ee-tahl-yah*) does produce a diphthong.

Keep in mind that diphthongs are always pronounced as one sound.

A Is for Ancona

When spelling out words, rather than using proper names like you do in English (*T* as in *Tom*), Italians often use the names of Italian cities. For example, *A come Ancona*, *I come Imola*, *T come Torino* (*A* as in *Ancona*, *I* as in *Imola*, *T* as in *Torino*), and so on. A practical way of remembering the alphabet is to learn how to spell your name in Italian. The name of the Italian letter is given beside the letter. The stressed syllable is in bold. Examples of foreign letters are given with commonly used nouns.

Letter	Italian Name of Letter	Example	Pronunciation
A	<i>a</i>	<i>Ancona</i>	<i>ahn-koh-nah</i>
B	<i>bi</i>	<i>Bologna</i>	<i>boh-loh-nyah</i>
C	<i>ci</i>	<i>Cagliari</i>	kahl-yah-ree
D	<i>di</i>	<i>Domodossola</i>	<i>doh-moh-doh-soh-lah</i>
E	<i>e</i>	<i>Empoli</i>	em-poh-lee
F	<i>effe</i>	<i>Firenze</i>	<i>fee-ren-zeh</i>
G	<i>gi</i>	<i>Genova</i>	jeh-noh-vah
H	<i>acca</i>	<i>hotel</i>	<i>oh-tel</i>
I	<i>i</i>	<i>Imola</i>	ee-moh-lah
J*	<i>i lunga</i>	<i>jolly</i>	<i>jah-lee</i>
K*	<i>cappa</i>	<i>kaiser</i>	<i>ky-zer</i>
L	<i>elle</i>	<i>Livorno</i>	lee-vor-noh
M	<i>emme</i>	<i>Milano</i>	mee-lah-noh
N	<i>enne</i>	<i>Napoli</i>	nah-poh-lee
O	<i>o</i>	<i>Otranto</i>	<i>oh-tran-toh</i>
P	<i>pi</i>	<i>Palermo</i>	pah-ler-moh

Letter	Italian Name of Letter	Example	Pronunciation
Q	<i>cu</i>	<i>quaderno</i> (notebook)	<i>kwah-der-noh</i>
R	<i>erre</i>	<i>Roma</i>	<i>roh-mah</i>
S	<i>esse</i>	<i>Sassari</i>	<i>sah-sah-ree</i>
T	<i>ti</i>	<i>Torino</i>	<i>toh-ree-noh</i>
U	<i>u</i>	<i>Udine</i>	<i>oo-dee-neh</i>
V	<i>vu</i>	<i>Venezia</i>	<i>veh-neh-zee-ah</i>
W*	<i>doppia vu</i>	<i>Washington</i>	<i>wash-eeng-ton</i>
X*	<i>Iċṡ</i>	<i>raggi-x</i>	<i>rah-jee eek-seh</i>
Y*	<i>ipsilon</i>	<i>York</i>	<i>york</i>
Z	<i>zeta</i>	<i>Zara</i>	<i>zah-rah</i>

*These letters have been borrowed from other languages.

Get Help!

The best way to learn how to speak another language is to spend time listening to it. If you don't have live entertainment, some suggestions include these:

- **Audiocassettes.** Visit your local *biblioteca* (library) or *libreria* (bookstore) to see what they have on hand. Audio cassettes are excellent for developing listening skills. You may want to see if your local *università* has a language lab you can use.



La Bella Lingua

Expand your vocabulary. Play the Italian name game with friends interested in learning Italian. Using the letters of a famous Italian name, see how many Italian words you can come up with. Keep your Italian dictionary close by.

For example: Leonardo Di Caprio

<i>leone</i> (lion)	<i>capra</i> (goat)
<i>lepra</i> (hare)	<i>rana</i> (frog)
<i>principe</i> (prince)	<i>cena</i> (dinner)
<i>onore</i> (honor)	<i>delirio</i> (delirium)

- **Language CDs for the computer.** If you're computer-savvy, invest in an Italian/English *dizionario* or educational translation program appropriate for your computer and purposes. Some even have "talking" programs that will pronounce the words for you.
- **Internet.** There are many wonderful sites now offering audio samples.
- **Music.** Listen to the Italian radio station or invest in some music you've never heard before. Aside from opera, you'll find Italian hip-hop, rock and roll, and traditional folk songs, often with lyrics. Listen to the different dialects.

Patience and Practice Pay Off

Anyone who has ever studied—or even heard someone studying—a new musical instrument knows that the first time you pick up a violin, you're not going to sound like a *virtuoso* (yet another Italian word). Fortunately, learning Italian is much easier than playing a *violino*. With a dash of *pazienza*, a dollop of dedication, and a pinch of *pratica*, you'll be rolling your *R*'s and sounding like a true Italian speaker in no time. Keep renting films, listening to *musica*, and getting out there. Practice makes *perfetto*.

The Least You Need to Know

- Let your tongue do the talking. Tickle a single *R*, but rrrrrroll your double *RR*'s. Rev them like an engine, purr like a cat, or growl like a bear.
- Don't slur—enunciate vowels, yet keep your Italian from sounding forced and unnatural.
- Fluidity is key. Slide those syllables together!
- Look for interesting Italian Web sites and language cassettes to support your language studies.
- Practice, practice, practice!



You Know More Than You Think

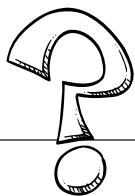
In This Chapter

- ▶ Bridging the gap between languages by using cognates
- ▶ You know a lot more Italian than you think
- ▶ Breaking it down: the nouns, verbs, and adjectives you already know
- ▶ Why you should beware of false friends (in the Italian language, that is!)

What if you were told that you were already halfway to speaking Italian? The fact is, you are. Remember that English, although a Germanic language, contains many words of Latin origin. The list of Italian words you already know is longer than you can imagine. Some are virtually the same, whereas most are easily identified by their similarity to English. *Telefono, attenzione, università, automobile, studente*—the list goes on and on.

Cognates: A Bridge Between Languages

Cognates show how seemingly different languages are connected. Any words that are similar to and look the same as other words in a foreign language are called *cognates*, or, in Italian, *parole simili* (literally, “similar words”). By the end of this chapter, you will be in the know for one of the mysteries of language learning—and with this key, many doors will be opened. *Andiamo!* (Let’s go!)



What's What

Cognates are words in different languages that derive from the same root and are similar in both spelling and meaning, such as with the words “familiar” and *familiare*, “possible” and *possibile*, and so on. False cognates can be misleading: in Italian, the word *parenti* means “relatives,” not “parents,” as one might think.

A Little Fantasia

You get off the *aeroplano* in Roma and push your way through *la dogana*—no, you’re not declaring anything. You hail a *tassi* and tell the driver you want to go to *centro*, where an adorable *pensione* that a friend recommended awaits your *arrivo*. As you race away from the chaos of the *aeroporto* and onto the *autostrada*, you are amazed by how *veloce* the *automobili* travel; everyone seems to be in such a hurry!

The driver of the *tassi* asks *È la Sua prima volta in Italia?* You smile and nod your head: *Sì*. You saw the word *primo* from the last time you ordered a plate of pasta in your local Italian *ristorante* and remember that it means “first,” like the word “primary.” You guess that the driver is asking you if this is your first time in Italy, and you are amazed at how this *comunicazione* seems so *naturale*. It’s a strange *sensazione*, but you feel as though you’ve been here before. How could that be?



As a Rule

Many English words can be made into Italian simply by changing the endings. Look what happens with the following examples:

English to Italian Endings	English to Italian Examples
-ty → -tà	identity → <i>identità</i>
-ble → -ibile	possible → <i>possibile</i>
-tion → -zione	action → <i>azione</i>
-ous → -oso	famous → <i>famoso</i>
-ent → -ente	president → <i>presidente</i>
-ence → -enza	essence → <i>essenza</i>
-ism → -ismo	socialism → <i>socialismo</i>



As a Rule

English has only one definite article: the. Italian has several definite articles, all of which indicate gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural). When you look at the following list of cognates, you'll notice that all Italian nouns are marked by a definite article. Although the gender of nouns is easily identifiable in Italian, it is best to learn the noun with its appropriate definite article. It might seem confusing at first. For now, keep in mind the following:

- *Il* is for masculine singular nouns.
- *Lo* is for masculine singular nouns beginning with *s* + consonant, or *z*.
- *L'* is for any singular noun that begins with a vowel.
- *La* is for feminine singular nouns.

If It Looks Like a Duck ...

The Italian language has only a few perfect cognates—such as the words “banana,” “opera,” “panorama,” “pizza,” “via,” and “zebra.” Although the endings and pronunciation may be slightly different, near cognates are essentially the same.



La Bella Lingua

Collect menus from your favorite Italian *ristorante* and study the *ingredienti* for each *piatto*. Often, what sounds exotic is simply a description of the food. Angel hair pasta, called *capellini*, literally means “thin hairs.” The ear-shaped pasta called *orecchiette* refers to “little ears.” *Calzone* comes from the word *calza*, due to its resemblance to a cheese-filled “sock.”

Let's start out with cognates of place and time. Study the places and the time and dates in the following two tables to get *un'idea* of how many *parole simili* exist between Italian and English. Nine out of ten times, your initial gut response will be correct—trust it!

Where in the World: Places

Where to begin? Wherever you are. Look at the cognates in the following table. Each noun is given with the appropriate definite article to get you started understanding gender.



La Bella Lingua

Why memorize a hundred words when you can study a handful of endings? The *possibilità* are endless!

Although exceptions exist, it's amazing how many English words can be easily converted into Italian by substituting a little letter:

English		Italian	Examples
al	→	o	practical → <i>pratico</i>
c	→	z	force → <i>forza</i>
k, ck	→	c, cc	sack → <i>sacco</i>
ph	→	f	telephone → <i>telefono</i>
th	→	t	theater → <i>teatro</i>
x	→	s, ss	external → <i>esterno</i>
xt	→	st	extreme → <i>estremo</i>
y	→	i	style → <i>stile</i>

Places

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>l'aeroporto</i>	the airport	<i>l'appartamento</i>	the apartment
<i>l'agenzia</i>	the agency	<i>la banca</i>	the bank

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>il bar</i>	the bar	<i>l'oceano</i>	the ocean
<i>il caffè</i>	the café	<i>l'ospedale</i>	the hospital
<i>il castello</i>	the castle	<i>il paradiso</i>	the paradise
<i>la cattedrale</i>	the cathedral	<i>la piazza</i>	the plaza
<i>il centro</i>	center/downtown	<i>il ristorante</i>	the restaurant
<i>il cinema</i>	the cinema	<i>lo stadio</i>	the stadium
<i>il circo</i>	the circus	<i>la stazione</i>	the station
<i>la città</i>	the city	<i>lo studio</i>	the studio/office
<i>la corsa</i>	the course/track	<i>il supermercato</i>	the supermarket
<i>la discoteca</i>	the discoteque	<i>il teatro</i>	the theatre
<i>la farmacia</i>	the pharmacy	<i>la terrazza</i>	the terrace
<i>il giardino</i>	the garden	<i>l'ufficio</i>	the office
<i>il mercato</i>	the market	<i>l'ufficio postale</i>	the post office
<i>la montagna</i>	the mountain	<i>il villaggio</i>	the village
<i>il museo</i>	the museum		

It's About Time

You don't know what time it is? Sure you do—the following table lists some cognates related to time.

Time and Dates

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>l'anniversario</i>	the anniversary	<i>il minuto</i>	the minute
<i>annuale</i>	annual	<i>la notte</i>	the night
<i>biennale</i>	biannual	<i>l'ora</i>	the hour
<i>la data</i>	the date	<i>il secondo</i>	the second
<i>la festa</i>	the holiday (as in “festive”)	<i>il tempo</i>	the time (also, weather)
<i>il millennio</i>	the millennium		

How Intelligente You Are!

Convert the following words into Italian by changing the endings accordingly.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------------------|----------------|-------|
| 1. position | _____ <i>posizione</i> _____ | 6. pessimism | _____ |
| 2. incredible | _____ | 7. prudent | _____ |
| 3. nation | _____ | 8. continent | _____ |
| 4. presence | _____ | 9. religious | _____ |
| 5. identity | _____ | 10. difference | _____ |

Adjectives: How Grande!

Thinking about everything you've learned so far in this chapter on cognates, cover the English translation in the following table with a piece of paper, and try to guess the meanings of these adjective cognates.

Cognate Adjectives

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>alto</i>	tall	<i>moderno</i>	modern
<i>ambizioso</i>	ambitious	<i>naturale</i>	natural
<i>biondo</i>	blond	<i>necessario</i>	necessary
<i>bruno</i>	brunette	<i>nervoso</i>	nervous
<i>calmo</i>	calm	<i>normale</i>	normal
<i>cortese</i>	courteous	<i>numeroso</i>	numerous
<i>curioso</i>	curious	<i>onesto</i>	honest
<i>delizioso</i>	delicious	<i>organizzato</i>	organized
<i>differente</i>	different	<i>popolare</i>	popular
<i>divorziato</i>	divorced	<i>possibile</i>	possible
<i>eccellente</i>	excellent	<i>povero</i>	poor
<i>elegante</i>	elegant	<i>pratico</i>	practical
<i>energico</i>	energetic	<i>rapido</i>	rapid
<i>falso</i>	false	<i>ricco</i>	rich
<i>famoso</i>	famous	<i>romantico</i>	romantic
<i>forte</i>	strong (as in "fortitude")	<i>saggio</i>	wise (as in "sage")
<i>fortunato</i>	fortunate	<i>serio</i>	serious
<i>frequente</i>	frequent	<i>sicuro</i>	secure, sure
<i>geloso</i>	jealous	<i>sincero</i>	sincere
<i>generoso</i>	generous	<i>splendido</i>	splendid
<i>gentile</i>	kind, gentle	<i>sposato</i>	married (think "spouse")
<i>grande</i>	big, grand	<i>strano</i>	strange
<i>ignorante</i>	ignorant	<i>stupendo</i>	stupendous
<i>importante</i>	important	<i>stupido</i>	stupid
<i>impossibile</i>	impossible	<i>terribile</i>	terrible
<i>incredibile</i>	incredible	<i>tropicale</i>	tropical
<i>intelligente</i>	intelligent	<i>ultimo</i>	last, ultimate
<i>interessante</i>	interesting	<i>violento</i>	violent
<i>lungo</i>	long	<i>virtuoso</i>	virtuous
<i>magnifico</i>	magnificent		

Nouns

While I'm listing cognates, I thought I'd save you the trouble and throw in some nouns as a bonus. Additionally, they are listed according to their gender. Your job is to simply write down what they mean in English.



As a Rule

The letter *e* is actually a word, meaning "and." The accented letter *è* is also a word, meaning "is."

Masculine Nouns

Study the different articles used in front of these masculine nouns. Do you see a pattern beginning to emerge?

Masculine Cognates

Italian Masculine Nouns	English Translation	Italian Masculine Nouns	English Translation
<i>l'aeroplano</i>	_____	<i>il motore</i>	_____
<i>l'anniversario</i>	_____	<i>il museo</i>	_____
<i>l'arco</i>	_____	<i>il naso</i>	_____
<i>l'attore</i>	_____	<i>l'odore</i>	_____
<i>l'autobus</i>	_____	<i>il paradiso</i>	_____
<i>il caffè</i>	_____	<i>il presidente</i>	_____
<i>il colore</i>	_____	<i>il profumo</i>	_____
<i>il comunismo</i>	_____	<i>il programma</i>	_____
<i>il continente</i>	_____	<i>il rispetto</i>	_____
<i>il cotone</i>	_____	<i>il salario</i>	_____
<i>il direttore</i>	_____	<i>il servizio</i>	_____
<i>il dizionario</i>	_____	<i>il socialismo</i>	_____
<i>il dottore</i>	_____	<i>lo spirito</i>	_____
<i>l'elefante</i>	_____	<i>lo studente</i>	_____
<i>il fatto</i>	_____	<i>il tassì</i>	_____
<i>il gruppo</i>	_____	<i>il tè</i>	_____
<i>l'idiota</i>	_____	<i>il telefono</i>	_____
<i>il limone</i>	_____	<i>il treno</i>	_____
<i>il meccanico</i>	_____		

Feminine Nouns

Try the same thing with these feminine nouns in the following table.

Feminine Nouns

Italian Feminine Nouns	English Translation	Italian Feminine Nouns	English Translation
<i>l'arte</i>	_____	<i>l'identità</i>	_____
<i>la bicicletta</i>	_____	<i>l'inflazione</i>	_____
<i>la carota</i>	_____	<i>l'insalata</i>	_____
<i>la chitarra</i>	_____	<i>la lampada</i>	_____
<i>la classe</i>	_____	<i>la lettera</i>	_____
<i>la condizione</i>	_____	<i>la lista</i>	_____
<i>la conversazione</i>	_____	<i>la medicina</i>	_____
<i>la cultura</i>	_____	<i>la musica</i>	_____
<i>la curiosità</i>	_____	<i>la nazione</i>	_____
<i>la depressione</i>	_____	<i>la persona</i>	_____
<i>la dieta</i>	_____	<i>la possibilità</i>	_____
<i>la differenza</i>	_____	<i>la probabilità</i>	_____
<i>la discussione</i>	_____	<i>la professione</i>	_____
<i>l'emozione</i>	_____	<i>la regione</i>	_____
<i>l'esperienza</i>	_____	<i>la religione</i>	_____
<i>l'espressione</i>	_____	<i>la rosa</i>	_____
<i>la festa</i>	_____	<i>la scultura</i>	_____
<i>la figura</i>	_____	<i>la temperatura</i>	_____
<i>la fontana</i>	_____	<i>la turista</i>	_____
<i>la forma</i>	_____	<i>l'università</i>	_____
<i>la fortuna</i>	_____	<i>la violenza</i>	_____
<i>l'idea</i>	_____		

Now you're using that *cervello* of yours! Go ahead, tell the world you're studying Italian. My, aren't you proud?

English Words Used in Italian

Many English nouns have been incorporated into Italian. In Italian, these words are given a gender and, with a few exceptions, are pronounced similarly. Each word is shown with the appropriate Italian definite article.

<i>l'antenna</i>	<i>il cinema</i>	<i>l'hotel</i>	<i>o shock</i>
<i>l'area</i>	<i>il cocktail</i>	<i>il jazz</i>	<i>lo shopping</i>
<i>l'autobus</i>	<i>il computer</i>	<i>i jeans</i>	<i>lo snob</i>
<i>il bar</i>	<i>l'idea</i>	<i>la radio</i>	<i>lo sport</i>
<i>il blues</i>	<i>il film</i>	<i>il rock and roll</i>	<i>il weekend</i>
<i>il camping</i>	<i>l'hamburger</i>	<i>lo shampoo</i>	<i>lo zoo</i>

Trojan Horses—False Friends

A false cognate is a word in Italian that sounds like an English word but means something different. Fortunately, in Italian there aren't many false cognates, or *falsi amici*. The following table shows you a few false cognates of which you should be aware.

False Friends

Italian Word	Meaning	Italian Word	Meaning
<i>ape</i>	bee	<i>lunatico</i>	moody
<i>argomento</i>	issue	<i>magazzino</i>	department store
<i>camera</i>	room	<i>marrone</i>	brown
<i>come</i>	how	<i>morbido</i>	soft
<i>con</i>	with	<i>pesante</i>	heavy
<i>commozione</i>	emotion	<i>rumore</i>	noise
<i>fabbrica</i>	factory	<i>sano</i>	healthy
<i>fattoria</i>	farm	<i>sensibile</i>	sensitive (not “sensible”)
<i>firma</i>	signature	<i>stampa</i>	press (not “stamp”)
<i>grosso</i>	large	<i>testa</i>	head
<i>libreria</i>	bookstore		

How Much Do You Understand Already?

You've unpacked your bags and are ready to hit the town. Read the following sentences and try to determine their meaning. Check your pronunciation guide (especially with those *c*'s and *g*'s) to make sure you sound like a native:

1. *La città è bella.*
2. *Il ristorante è terribile.*
3. *La giacca è grande.*
4. *Il museo è interessante.*
5. *Il servizio è buono.*
6. *La montagna è alta.*

Your Turn

Now write and say the following sentences in Italian. Look back at your cognate list to make sure you are using the appropriate article. The equivalent of *is* in Italian is *è*.

1. The doctor is elegant.
2. The president is famous.
3. The bank is rich.
4. The violence is terrible.
5. The discussion is important.
6. The idiot is intelligent.



As a Rule

In Italian, adjectives must agree in number and gender with the nouns they modify or describe. In general, masculine nouns use adjectives ending in *-o*, and feminine nouns use adjectives ending in *-a*. Everything has to agree, as in *la lingua italiana* or *il dizionario italiano*.

Verb Cognates

Many Italian verbs are so similar to their English counterparts that you will recognize their *significato* almost immediately. *Per fortuna*, it is easy to identify an infinitive *verbo* in Italian because of the endings. Take a look at the following table and see if you can *determinare* the meanings of the verb cognates listed.

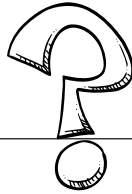
Verb Cognates

Verb Cognates	Pronunciation	English
<i>accompagnare</i>	<i>ah-kom-pah-nyah-reh</i>	to accompany
<i>adorare</i>	<i>ah-doh-rah-reh</i>	to adore
<i>anticipare</i>	<i>ahn-tee-chee-pah-reh</i>	to anticipate
<i>arrivare</i>	<i>ah-ree-vah-reh</i>	to arrive
<i>assistere</i>	<i>ah-see-steh-reh</i>	to assist
<i>celebrare</i>	<i>cheh-leh-brah-reh</i>	to celebrate
<i>contare</i>	<i>kohn-tah-reh</i>	to count
<i>controllare</i>	<i>kohn-troh-lah-reh</i>	to control
<i>conversare</i>	<i>kohn-ver-sah-reh</i>	to converse
<i>cooperare</i>	<i>koo-oh-peh-rah-reh</i>	to cooperate
<i>costare</i>	<i>koh-stah-reh</i>	to cost
<i>creare</i>	<i>kreh-yah-reh</i>	to create
<i>danzare</i>	<i>dan-zah-reh</i>	to dance
<i>decidere</i>	<i>deh-chee-deh-reh</i>	to decide
<i>descrivere</i>	<i>deh-skree-veh-reh</i>	to describe
<i>desiderare</i>	<i>deh-zee-deh-rah-reh</i>	to desire
<i>diminuire</i>	<i>dee-mee-noo-ee-reh</i>	to diminish

Verb Cognates	Pronunciation	English
<i>disignare</i>	<i>dee-zee-nyah-reh</i>	to design/draw
<i>dividere</i>	<i>dee-vee-deh-reh</i>	to divide
<i>donare</i>	<i>doh-nah-reh</i>	to donate/give
<i>elevare</i>	<i>eh-leh-vah-reh</i>	to elevate
<i>eliminare</i>	<i>eh-lee-mee-nah-reh</i>	to eliminate
<i>entrare</i>	<i>ehn-trah-reh</i>	to enter
<i>finire</i>	<i>fee-nee-reh</i>	to finish
<i>ignorare</i>	<i>ee-nyoh-rah-reh</i>	to ignore
<i>immaginare</i>	<i>ee-mah-jee-nah-reh</i>	to imagine
<i>invitare</i>	<i>een-vee-tah-reh</i>	to invite
<i>istruire</i>	<i>ee-stroo-ee-reh</i>	to instruct
<i>modificare</i>	<i>moh-dee-fee-kah-reh</i>	to modify
<i>negare</i>	<i>neh-gah-reh</i>	to negate
<i>obbedire</i>	<i>oh-beh-dee-reh</i>	to obey
<i>osservare</i>	<i>oh-ser-vah-reh</i>	to observe
<i>passare</i>	<i>pah-sah-reh</i>	to pass
<i>perdonare</i>	<i>per-doh-nah-reh</i>	to forgive/pardon
<i>praticare</i>	<i>prah-tee-kah-reh</i>	to practice
<i>preferire</i>	<i>preh-feh-ree-reh</i>	to prefer
<i>preparare</i>	<i>preh-pah-rah-reh</i>	to prepare
<i>presentare</i>	<i>preh-zen-tah-reh</i>	to present
<i>prevenire</i>	<i>preh-veh-nee-reh</i>	to prevent
<i>riparare</i>	<i>ree-pah-rah-reh</i>	to repair/fix
<i>riservare</i>	<i>ree-zer-vah-reh</i>	to reserve
<i>rispettare</i>	<i>ree-speh-tah-reh</i>	to respect
<i>scrivere</i>	<i>skree-veh-reh</i>	to write
<i>studiare</i>	<i>stoo-dee-ah-reh</i>	to study
<i>telefonare</i>	<i>tel-eh-foh-nah-reh</i>	to telephone
<i>usare</i>	<i>oo-zah-reh</i>	to use
<i>vendere</i>	<i>ven-deh-reh</i>	to sell (as in “vend”)
<i>verificare</i>	<i>veh-ree-fee-kah-reh</i>	to verify
<i>visitare</i>	<i>vee-zee-tah-reh</i>	to visit

A Piece of Cake

Try to determine the meaning of the following verb cognates. If you can't figure out a particular verb's significance, refer to the verb chart in Chapter 8, “An Action-Packed Adventure.”



What's What

The infinitive of a verb is simply a verb in its unconjugated form, as in "to eat," "to study," or "to travel." With few exceptions, there are three kinds of verb endings (also known as verb families) in Italian: *-are*, *-ere*, and *-ire*.

When you look up a verb in a dictionary, it is important to look it up under its infinitive form. Verbs are perhaps the trickiest aspect of learning any language because they have so many forms, or tenses, such as the present, simple past, future, conditional, and so on. Many Italian verbs change significantly after they are conjugated. As in English, if you do not know that the infinitive form of the word ate is "to eat," you cannot find it in the dictionary.

A Piece of Cake

Verb Cognates	English Translation	Verb Cognates	English Translation
<i>alludere</i>	_____	<i>glorificare</i>	_____
<i>attribuire</i>	_____	<i>implicare</i>	_____
<i>cascare</i>	_____	<i>indicare</i>	_____
<i>consistere</i>	_____	<i>intendere</i>	_____
<i>convertire</i>	_____	<i>navigare</i>	_____
<i>corrispondere</i>	_____	<i>occupare</i>	_____
<i>deliberare</i>	_____	<i>offendere</i>	_____
<i>detestare</i>	_____	<i>offrire</i>	_____
<i>difendere</i>	_____	<i>operare</i>	_____
<i>discendere</i>	_____	<i>pronunziare</i>	_____
<i>discutere</i>	_____	<i>raccomandare</i>	_____
<i>disgustare</i>	_____	<i>rappresentare</i>	_____
<i>dissolvere</i>	_____	<i>resistere</i>	_____
<i>esaminare</i>	_____	<i>ricevere</i>	_____
<i>formare</i>	_____	<i>rispondere</i>	_____
<i>funzionare</i>	_____		

Put It All Together

It's time for you to test yourself and see where you stand. How much have you learned so far? Test the waters with the following exercises.

Translation Please

You shouldn't have too much of a problem deciphering the meaning of these cognate-rich sentences:

1. *L'Italia fa parte del continente europeo.* _____
2. *Lo studente studia la matematica e storia.* _____
3. *L'attore è molto famoso nel cinema.* _____
4. *Il meccanico ripara l'automobile.* _____
5. *Il cuoco prepara un'insalata e un antipasto.* _____
6. *Il dottore conversa con il paziente.* _____
7. *La famiglia desidera un appartamento moderno e grande.* _____
8. *La turista giapponese visita il museo e la cattedrale.* _____
9. *Il presidente presenta il programma.* _____
10. *Roberto preferisce la musica classica.* _____

What's Your Take?

Imagine that you have just arrived in Italy, and you want to express your opinions to a fellow traveler. Use what you have learned in this chapter and try to express the following:

1. The chocolate is delicious. _____
2. The restaurant is excellent. _____
3. The city is splendid and magnificent. _____
4. The perfume is elegant. _____
5. The conversation is interesting. _____
6. The doctor is sincere. _____
7. The student is intelligent. _____
8. The museum is important. _____
9. The cathedral is high. _____
10. The train is fast. _____



Attenzione!

Italian adjectives ending in *-e* are used for both masculine and feminine singular nouns:

La grammatica è interessante.

Grammar is interesting.

Leggo un libro importante.

I'm reading an important book.

Are You Well Read?

The following literary titles here all contain cognates. Give their English equivalents:

Dante—*La Divina Commedia* _____

Di Lampedusa—*Il Gattopardo* _____

Eco—*Il Nome della Rosa* _____

Machiavelli—*Il Principe* _____

Morante—*La Storia* _____

Pirandello—*6 Personaggi in Cerca d'Autore* _____

The Least You Need to Know

- Italian and English share many common roots.
- Come up with other words that can express your meaning, and you may find a cognate more often than you think. For example, *guardare* is “to look at.” Think of a “guard” standing at his post looking over the landscape.
- Beware of false friends. You may think you are saying one thing when you actually are saying another.



Expressively Yours

In This Chapter

- ▶ Common greetings and salutations
- ▶ Days and months
- ▶ Numbers
- ▶ Exclamations
- ▶ An explanation of idioms
- ▶ Idiomatic expressions in Italian

The only way to learn a foreign language is to fumble and mumble your way through it. In Chapter 4, “You Know More Than You Think,” you saw how many cognates exist in Italian. That should give you a lift—it’s time to go to the next level.

How Do You Do?

You should be looking for ways to practice your new salutations whenever there’s an opportunity. Maybe it’s when you speak to the elegant *signora* who greets you every Friday night at your local Italian *ristorante*. Perhaps it’s with your *nonna*, if you can get her to speak in Italian. But if you have no friends or family to practice with, then it’ll have to be the television screen as you watch Fellini’s *Amarcord* for the fifth time.

You Say Hello and I Say Good-Bye

To start, it helps to know the basics. These are the first things (after the swear words) anyone learns in a foreign language. You want to know how to introduce yourself and be able to say, “Hello, I come in peace.”



La Bella Lingua

Try using these expressions the next time you're in Italian-speaking company:

<i>Cosa vuole dire?</i>	What do you mean?
<i>Che cosa significa?</i>	What does it mean?
<i>Come si dice ...?</i>	How do you say ...?
<i>Non capisco.</i>	I don't understand.

Stranger in a Strange Land

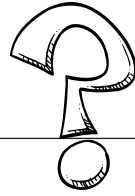
You almost always want to begin a *conversazione* with a stranger in the polite form of address. It gives you a chance to warm up to someone and then switch into the *tu* once a relationship has been established. You'll learn more about the different ways of expressing that incredible being that is *you* in Chapter 7, "What's the Subject?"

The following table offers you some helpful greetings and salutations you can use with anyone. As you read aloud, try to sound *naturale*. To help you with the pronunciation, the stress has been indicated in words of three syllables and more. If it has not been indicated, each syllable should be pronounced equally. Emphasize those doubled consonants when you see them.

Formal and Generic Salutations and Expressions

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>Buon giorno.</i>	<i>bwon jor-noh</i>	Good morning/Good day/Good afternoon/ Hello (use until early afternoon).
<i>Buona sera.</i>	<i>bwoh-nah seh-rah</i>	Good evening (begin using after 3:00 P.M.).
<i>Buona notte.</i>	<i>bwoh-nah noh-teh</i>	Good night/Good-bye.
<i>Signore</i>	<i>see-nyoh-reh</i>	Mr./Sir
<i>Signora</i>	<i>see-nyoh-rah</i>	Mrs./Ms.
<i>Signorina</i>	<i>see-nyoh-ree-nah</i>	Miss
<i>Come sta?</i>	<i>koh-meh stah</i>	How are you?
<i>Sto bene, e Lei?</i>	<i>stoh beh-neh, eh leh?</i>	I am well, and you?
<i>Molto bene.</i>	<i>mol-toh beh-neh</i>	Very well.
<i>Non c'è male.</i>	<i>nohn cheh mah-leh</i>	Not bad.

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>Abbastanza bene.</i>	<i>ah-bah-stahn-zah beh-neh</i>	Pretty well.
<i>Come si chiama?</i>	<i>koh-meh see kee-ah-mah</i>	What is your name?
<i>Mi chiamo ...</i>	<i>mee kee-ah-moh</i>	My name is (literally, "I call myself") ...
<i>Piacere.</i>	<i>pee-ah-cheh-reh</i>	It's a pleasure.
<i>ArrivederLa.</i>	<i>ah-ree-veh-der-lah</i>	Until next time.



What's What

Arrivederci literally means "to re-see one another"; the word is commonly used to say good-bye to friends or colleagues. **ArrivederLa** is used under more formal circumstances.

Ci vediamo is also used often to express "see you later."

Ciao is similar to saying "hi" and "bye." The term **salve** is used in a similar fashion.

The Most Important Phrases in Any Language

The following table summarizes the most important phrases you should learn in any language.

Pleasantries

English	Italian	Pronunciation
Greetings.	<i>Salve.</i>	<i>sal-veh</i>
Yes.	<i>Sì.</i>	<i>see</i>
No.	<i>No.</i>	<i>no</i>
Please.	<i>Per favore.</i>	<i>per fah-voh-reh</i>
	<i>Per piacere.</i>	<i>per pee-ah-cheh-reh</i>
Thank you.	<i>Grazie.</i>	<i>grah-tsee-yeh</i>
Excuse me.	<i>Mi scusi.</i>	<i>mee skoo-zee</i>
You're welcome.	<i>Prego.</i>	<i>pray-goh</i>
I'm sorry.	<i>Mi dispiace.</i>	<i>me dees-pee-ah-cheh</i>

continues

Pleasantries (continued)

English	Italian	Pronunciation
Help!	<i>Aiuto!</i>	<i>ah-yoo-toh</i>
Where is ...?	<i>Dov'è ...?</i>	<i>doh-veh</i>
How much?	<i>Quanto?</i>	<i>kwahn-toh</i>



La Bella Lingua

All the ways to say "Thank you" ...

<i>Grazie.</i>	Thank you.
<i>Mille grazie.</i>	Thanks a million.
<i>Tante grazie.</i>	Thanks so much.

... and to say "You're welcome":

<i>Prego.</i>	You're welcome.
<i>Niente.</i>	It's nothing.

Informal Greetings and Salutations

Some useful informal greetings and phrases you can use in more casual, friendly situations are given in the following table. Mix and match.

Informal Salutations

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>Ciao!</i>	<i>chow</i>	Hi/Bye-bye!
<i>Saluti!</i>	<i>sah-loo-tee</i>	Greetings!
<i>Salve!</i>	<i>sahl-veh</i>	Hello!
<i>Come stai?</i>	<i>koh-meh stah-ee</i>	How are you?
<i>Come va?</i>	<i>koh-meh vah</i>	How's it going?
<i>Va bene.</i>	<i>vah beh-neh</i>	Things are good.
<i>Va benissimo.</i>	<i>vah beh-nee-see-moh</i>	Things are great.

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>Non c'è male.</i>	<i>nohn cheh mah-leh</i>	Not bad.
<i>Okay.</i>	<i>oh-kay</i>	Okay.
<i>Così così.</i>	<i>koh-zee koh-zee</i>	So-so.
<i>Arrivederci.</i>	<i>ah-ree-veh-der-chee</i>	See you later.
<i>A più tardi.</i>	<i>ah pyoo tar-dee</i>	Until later.
<i>A domani.</i>	<i>ah doh-mah-nee</i>	See you tomorrow.
<i>A presto.</i>	<i>ah pres-toh</i>	See you soon.



La Bella Lingua

Here are a few exclamations you might hear:

<i>Ahi!</i>	Ouch!
<i>Caspita!</i>	Wow!
<i>Zitto!</i>	Shut up!
<i>Via!</i>	Go away!
<i>Ladro!</i>	Thief!

Communications

You'll want to explain that you're studying Italian. The following expressions will tell you how to tell them what you're doing.

Communications

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>Capisco.</i>	<i>kah-pee-skoh</i>	I understand.
<i>Non capisco.</i>	<i>non kah-pee-skoh</i>	I don't understand.
<i>Non parlo italiano.</i>	<i>non par-loh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh</i>	I don't speak Italian.

continues

Communications (continued)

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>Studio italiano.</i>	<i>stoo-dee-oh ee-tah-lee-ah-noh</i>	I am studying Italian.
<i>Parla inglese?</i>	<i>par-lah een-gleh-zeh</i>	Do you speak English?
<i>Capisce?</i>	<i>kah-pee-sheh</i>	Do you understand?
<i>Che cosa significa?</i>	<i>keh koh-zah seeg-nee-fee-kah</i>	What does it mean?
<i>Che?</i>	<i>keh</i>	What?
<i>Come?</i>	<i>koh-meh</i>	How?
<i>Dov'è ...?</i>	<i>doh-veh</i>	Where is ...?
<i>Lo ripeta per favore.</i>	<i>loh ree-peh-tah per fah-voh-reh</i>	Please repeat that.
<i>Non lo so.</i>	<i>non loh soh</i>	I don't know.
<i>Parli lentamente per piacere.</i>	<i>par-lee len-tah-men-teh per pee-ah-cheh-reh</i>	Please speak slowly.

I Giorni: Days

When pronouncing days of the week, the accent tells you to emphasize the last syllable. Italians have adopted the English way of expressing the end of the week by using our word “weekend,” but you will also hear *il fine della settimana*.

Days of the Week

Day of the Week	Italian	Pronunciation
Monday	<i>lunedì</i>	<i>loo-neh-dee</i>
Tuesday	<i>martedì</i>	<i>mar-teh-dee</i>
Wednesday	<i>mercoledì</i>	<i>mer-koh-leh-dee</i>
Thursday	<i>giovedì</i>	<i>joh-veh-dee</i>
Friday	<i>venerdì</i>	<i>ven-er-dee</i>
Saturday	<i>sabato</i>	<i>sah-bah-toh</i>
Sunday	<i>domenica</i>	<i>doh-meh-nee-kah</i>
the weekend	<i>il fine settimana</i>	<i>eel fee-neh seh-tee-mah-nah</i>

I Mesi: Months

If you're planning your next trip or want to talk astrology, knowing the month is important. Like the days of the week, the months are not capitalized in Italian. Find that special date in the following table.



Attenzione!

Unlike English, Italian days of the week and months are not capitalized unless beginning a sentence. Proper names, cities, and titles are capitalized.



La Bella Lingua

April showers bring May flowers. Italians have a similar saying, *Aprile, ogni goccia un bacile.* (April, every drop a kiss.)

I Mesi (The Months)

Month	<i>Mese</i>	Pronunciation
January	<i>gennaio</i>	<i>jeh-nah-yoh</i>
February	<i>febbraio</i>	<i>feb-rah-yoh</i>
March	<i>marzo</i>	<i>mar-zoh</i>
April	<i>aprile</i>	<i>ah-pree-leh</i>
May	<i>maggio</i>	<i>mah-joh</i>
June	<i>giugno</i>	<i>joo-nyoh</i>
July	<i>luglio</i>	<i>loo-lyoh</i>
August	<i>agosto</i>	<i>ah-goh-stoh</i>
September	<i>settembre</i>	<i>seh-tem-breh</i>
October	<i>ottobre</i>	<i>oh-toh-breh</i>
November	<i>novembre</i>	<i>noh-ven-breh</i>
December	<i>dicembre</i>	<i>dee-chem-breh</i>



Did You Know?

Here's a little trivial pursuit for you: The original calendar used by the Romans was based on a 10-month year. What two months were added to the calendar?



La Bella Lingua

The days of the week correspond to these planets.

lunedì: la luna (the Moon)

martedì: Marte (Mars)

mercoledì: Mercurio (Mercury)

giovedì: Giove (Jupiter)

venerdì: Venere (Venus)

sabato: Saturno (Saturn)

domenica: (Sunday; refers to "God's day")

Expressing Your Honest Opinion

You can sound like a veritable Italian with just a few exclamations. Start with *Che bello!*

Exclamations

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>Che bello!</i>	<i>keh beh-loh</i>	How beautiful!
<i>Che brutto!</i>	<i>keh broo-toh</i>	How ugly!
<i>Che chiasso!</i>	<i>keh kee-ah-soh</i>	What a ruckus!

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>Che disastro!</i>	<i>keh dee-sas-troh</i>	What a disaster!
<i>Eccellente!</i>	<i>eh-cheh-len-teh</i>	Excellent!
<i>Fantastico!</i>	<i>fan-tas-tee-koh</i>	Fantastic!
<i>Favoloso!</i>	<i>fah-voh-loh-zoh</i>	Fabulous!
<i>Magnifico!</i>	<i>mag-nee-fee-koh</i>	Magnificent!
<i>Meraviglioso!</i>	<i>meh-rah-vee-lyoh-zoh</i>	Marvelous!
<i>Orribile!</i>	<i>oh-ree-bee-leh</i>	Horrible!
<i>Ridicolo!</i>	<i>ree-dee-koh-loh</i>	Ridiculous!
<i>Stupendo!</i>	<i>stoo-pen-doh</i>	Stupendous!
<i>Terribile!</i>	<i>teh-ree-bee-leh</i>	Terrible!

Idiomatically Speaking

Okay, now that you've learned the hellos and the good-byes, it's time to move on to the big-people stuff: idioms.

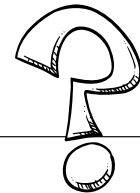
Idioms are important for a complete and correct understanding of a language. They are the spice that makes language interesting. If verbs and grammar are the brain of a language, then idioms are the personality. They express the various idiosyncrasies of the speaker's customs, values, and social mores.

Happy as a Lark

Idiomatic expressions are speech forms that cannot be understood through literal translation; they must be learned and memorized along with their meaning. Many idiomatic expressions find their roots in the truth. For example, common sense dictates that you really shouldn't put all your eggs in one basket.

Often, but not necessarily, there is an allusion to something else, as with the expression "Happy as a lark." If you were a foreigner studying English, would you understand how happy that actually was?

It's the same with Italian. Most idioms cannot be translated without losing their meaning, although occasionally, the same idiom can exist in two or more languages. In Italian, you can ask, *Posso dare una mano?* (literally translating to "Can I give you a hand?") However, in Italian you would not be able to say that it's raining dogs and cats without raising an eyebrow. Do you get the picture?



What's What

An **idiomatic expression** is a speech form or expression that cannot be understood through literal translation.

Our speech is peppered with idiomatic expressions or colloquialisms, such as these:

He was caught red-handed.

No strings attached.

Don't hold your breath.

It runs in the family.

I'm in seventh heaven.

It's raining cats and dogs.

Naked as a jay bird.

Once in a blue moon.

Practice makes perfect.

It's up in the air.



Did You Know?

You probably already know a handful of dirty words, aptly called “vulgarity” in grammatical parlance, but did you know that the word “vulgar” comes from Latin and translates to mean “of the people”?

What Is Slang?

Slang is generally regional and refers to unconventional, popular words or phrases that are used in everyday speech. In many respects, slang develops to express what is new and undefined. It sticks a word to a meaning that hadn't necessarily been there before. Of course, obscenities and vulgarities are considered slang. Being in the know, however, is another element of slang. If you speak the same language with someone, there's a natural bond. You can think of slang as a very specialized vocabulary spoken by a small segment of a population. Teenagers use slang. Truckers use slang. Computer geeks use slang. Mothers use slang.

What's up?

Give it up.

What a scene.

Awesome!

You're playing with my head.

Hang out.

Idiomatic Expressions in Italian

The Italian language is packed with idioms—so many, in fact, that it is impossible for even an Italian to know all of them. An innocent word in one region might have a completely different idiomatic usage in another part of the country (often accompanied by a great deal of snickering and laughing).

Although every Italian child is schooled in the standard language spoken on television and used in writing, that child has also been exposed to the idioms, nuances, dialects, and slang particular to the region in which he or she lives. As a result, standard grammar is taught from early on. And make no mistake—the Italians love their language! Not only do they love to talk *in* Italian, but they love to talk *about* Italian. Ask anyone from any walk of life, young or old, about parts of speech, idioms, conjugations, and they'll tick off a dozen examples for you, offering involved explanations and elaborate elucidation.

Lucky for you, many of those idioms are presented in this book. You can start using them immediately, or you can come back to them after you have studied the upcoming chapters.



Did You Know?

March 8 is celebrated internationally as *Il Giorno della Donna* (Woman's Day) to commemorate the Triangle Shirtwaist Fire. On March 25, 1911, this tragic event in New York City took the lives of 146 factory workers, mostly young Italian and Jewish immigrant women. The tragedy led to the creation of many labor laws governing the welfare and safety of workers.

It's All in the Details

Sometimes it's all in the details. For instance, a simple preposition can completely change the significance of an expression.

Study the following idiomatic expressions that describe various modes of transportation and travel. Whereas English speakers use the preposition "by" to describe how they are going somewhere, in Italian, the preposition changes. You'll learn more about how these are used in Chapter 11, "Finally, You're at the Airport."

Idioms for Travel and Transportation

English	Italian	Pronunciation
by bicycle	<i>in bicicletta</i>	een bee-chee- kleh -tah
by boat	<i>in barca</i>	een bar-kah
by bus	<i>in autobus</i>	een ow -toh-boos
by car	<i>in macchina</i>	een mah -kee-nah
by foot	<i>a piedi</i>	ah pee- eh -dee
by plane	<i>in aereo</i>	een eh- reh -roh
by scooter	<i>in moto</i>	een moh-toh
by subway	<i>in metro</i>	een met-roh
by taxi	<i>in tassì</i>	een tah-see
by train	<i>in treno</i>	een treh-noh
on horseback	<i>a cavallo</i>	ah kah- vah -loh



Attenzione!

Although they often impart bits of allegorical wisdom, idioms are not necessarily politically correct. Aside from making everyday speech more interesting, some idioms—such as jokes—can be downright rude, sexist, racist, or elitist.



La Bella Lingua

Why not get out your Italian-English dictionary and pick an interesting word to see how many idiomatic expressions are associated with it? You'll be amused to find all sorts of treats hidden within those pages.

Practice Makes Perfetto

A little repetition and practice can go a long way. Familiarize yourself with idioms by telling how you would get to the following places from your home.

Example: *al museo* (to the museum)

If you lived only five blocks away from the Metropolitan Museum, your answer would probably be *Vado a piedi*.

If you had to drive across the George Washington Bridge into Manhattan, you would say *Vado in macchina*.

If you took the subway from Brooklyn, you would say *Vado in metro*.

1. *a scuola* (to school)
2. *al cinema* (to the movies)
3. *dal dottore* (to your doctor)
4. *in ospedale* (to the hospital)
5. *in Europa* (to Europe)
6. *al parco* (to the park)
7. *in un'isola tropicale* (to a tropical island)
8. *a pescare* (to go fishing)
9. *in farmacia* (to the pharmacy)
10. *in biblioteca* (to the library)

A Good Hour

The following idioms all deal with an hour. Simply shifting the placement of an adjective can affect the significance of an idiom.

Timely Expressions

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>di buon ora</i>	<i>dee bwon oh-rah</i>	early
<i>un'ora buona</i>	<i>oh-rah bwoh-nah</i>	a full hour
<i>un'oretta</i>	<i>oon oh-reh-tah</i>	about an hour
<i>a tutte le ore</i>	<i>ah too-teh leh oh-reh</i>	at any time

Expression	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>essere in orario</i>	<i>eh-seh-reh een oh-rah-ree-yoh</i>	to be on time
<i>nelle prime ore</i>	<i>neh-leh pree-meh oh-reh</i>	in the early afternoon
<i>le ore piccole</i>	<i>leh oh-reh pee-koh-leh</i>	the wee hours
<i>l'ora di punta</i>	<i>loh-rah dee poon-tah</i>	rush hour
<i>ora legale</i>	<i>oh-rah leh-gah-leh</i>	daylight savings time

Going Mad

The following table shows you all the things you can do with the verb *andare* (to go). You'll see this verb in Chapter 11.

Idioms with *Andare*

Idiom	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>andare bene</i>	<i>ahn-dah-reh beh-neh</i>	to go well
<i>andare male</i>	<i>ahn-dah-rah mah-leh</i>	to go poorly
<i>andare in giro</i>	<i>ahn-dah-reh een jee-roh</i>	to go around
<i>andare in pezzi</i>	<i>ahn-dah-reh een peh-tsee</i>	to go to pieces
<i>lasciare andare</i>	<i>lah-shah-reh ahn-dah-reh</i>	to let something go



As a Rule

In Italian, you use the verb *fare* (to do/make) most often when you would use the English verb “to take.” You take a shower in English, but you “do a shower” (*fare la doccia*) in Italian. This also applies to taking a photo, a nap, and so on. The reverse is true for the expression “make a decision.” In Italian, you would use the verb *prendere* (to take) *una decisione*.



As a Rule

Note that the verb *avere* (to have) is used to describe physical conditions, whereas in English, we use “to be.” Feelings that are expressed with the verb *essere* (to be) are followed by an adjective. Feelings that are expressed with the verb *avere* (to have) are followed by a noun. You’ll learn more about these irregular verbs in Chapter 9, “Being There.”

Ho fame. I am hungry.
Sono stanco. I am tired.

What’s Your Opinion?

Everyone has an opinion, whether they admit it or not. It may be some time before you feel confident enough to use the idioms in the next table, but if you listen carefully, you’ll hear them used a great deal. The first four examples all utilize an important verb you’ll be learning in Chapter 9: the irregular verb *avere* (to have). Later, as your Italian skills increase, flip back to this chapter and see how much more you understand. You’ll be pleasantly surprised.

If You Ask Me

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>Ho capito.</i>	oh kah- pee -toh	I understand.
<i>Ha capito?</i>	ah kah- pee -toh	Do you understand?
<i>Hai ragione.</i>	ay rah- joh -neh	You are right. (fam.)
<i>Hai torto.</i>	ay tor-toh	You are wrong. (fam.)
<i>Che peccato!</i>	keh peh- kah -toh	What a shame!
<i>Credo di sì/no.</i>	kreh-doh dee see/no	I believe so/not.
<i>Penso di sì/no.</i>	pen-soh dee see/no	I think so/not.
<i>Non importa.</i>	non eem- por -tah	It doesn’t matter.
<i>Per carità!</i>	per kah-ree-tah	No way!
<i>al contrario</i>	al kon- trah -ree-oh	on the contrary
<i>allora</i>	ah-loh-rah	now then, well
<i>comunque</i>	koh- moon -kweh	anyhow
<i>d’accordo</i>	dah- kor -doh	agreed
<i>dunque</i>	doon-kweh	now then/so

Italian	Pronunciation	English
<i>naturalmente</i>	<i>nah-too-rah-l-mehn-teh</i>	naturally
<i>per dire la verità</i>	<i>per dee-reh lah veh-ree-tah</i>	to tell the truth
<i>secondo me</i>	<i>seh-kohn-doh meh</i>	in my opinion
<i>senza dubbio</i>	<i>sen-zah doo-bee-oh</i>	without a doubt

Seventh Heaven

In Italian, to wish someone luck, we say *in bocca al lupo* (in the mouth of the wolf). Anyone familiar with the expression would respond *Crepi!* (That he dies!) This idiomatic sampler is just the tip of the iceberg. The English translation is offered with its idiomatic equivalent as well.

Idiomatic Expressions and Colloquialisms

Italian Expression	Literal Translation	Equivalent English
<i>al settimo cielo</i>	In seventh heaven	*
<i>andare all'altro mondo</i>	To go to the other world	To go to the other side
<i>andare in giro</i>	To go around	To take a spin
<i>avere una fame da lupo</i>	To be hungry as a wolf	To be hungry as a bear
<i>Basta!</i>	That's enough!	*
<i>Che cavolata!</i>	What cabbage!	What bull!
<i>Che cretino!</i>	What a cretin!	*
<i>Chi dorme non piglia pesci.</i>	Those that sleep won't catch fish.	The early bird gets the worm.
<i>come mamma l'ha fatto</i>	Like mamma made him	Naked as a jay bird
<i>costare un occhio della testa</i>	To cost an eye from your head	To cost an arm and a leg
<i>dare una mano</i>	To give a hand	*
<i>Di mamma c'è n'è una sola.</i>	Of mothers, there is only one.	*
<i>due gocce d'acqua</i>	Two drops of water	Two peas in a pod
<i>essere nei guai</i>	To be in trouble	*
<i>essere nelle nuvole</i>	To be in the clouds	To have your head in the clouds
<i>essere solo come un cane</i>	To be alone as a dog	To be without a soul in the world
<i>essere un pesce fuor d'acqua</i>	To be a fish out of water	*
<i>Fa un freddo cane.</i>	It's dog cold.	It's freezing out.
<i>fare alla Romana</i>	To go Roman	To go Dutch
<i>fare finta</i>	To pretend	To fake
<i>fare il furbo</i>	To be clever	*
<i>fare le ore piccole</i>	To do the wee hours	To burn the midnight oil

continues

Idiomatic Expressions and Colloquialisms (continued)

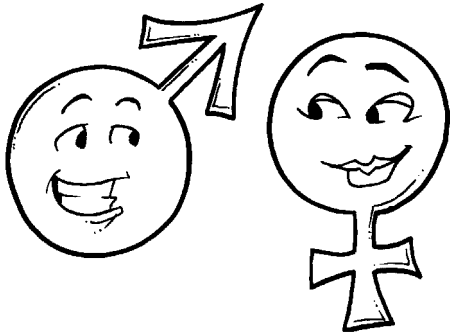
Italian Expression	Literal Translation	Equivalent English
<i>fare lo spiritoso</i>	To be spirited	To be a wise-guy
<i>fare una vita da cani</i>	To live like a dog	*
<i>fumare come un turco</i>	To smoke like a Turk	To smoke like a chimney
<i>fuori moda</i>	Out of fashion	Out of style
<i>girare la testa</i>	To spin one's head	*
<i>Le bugie hanno le gambe corte.</i>	Lies have short legs.	Lies always catch up to you.
<i>mancino</i>	Little hand	South paw
<i>mangiare come una bestia</i>	To eat like a beast	To eat like a pig
<i>non sapere nulla di nulla</i>	To know nothing about nothing	*
<i>nudo e crudo</i>	Nude and crude	The plain truth
<i>prendere in giro</i>	To take around	To tease/joke with
<i>Santo cielo!</i>	Holy heaven!	Good heavens!
<i>sfumare nel nulla</i>	To fade into nothing	To go up in smoke
<i>Sogni d'oro</i>	Dreams of gold	Sweet dreams
<i>stanco da morire</i>	Dead tired	*
<i>stringere la cinghia</i>	To tighten the belt	*
<i>toccare ferro</i>	To touch iron	To knock on wood
<i>volere la botte piena e la moglie ubriaca</i>	To want the bottle full and the wife drunk	To have your cake and eat it, too

*The literal translation of the idiom is the same in Italian and English.

Whether lonely dogs, hungry wolves or depressed potatoes, Italian possesses thousands of idiomatic expressions and colloquialisms.

The Least You Need to Know

- It's best to use the polite salutations and expressions with strangers. You can let your hair down in more casual situations.
- All languages have idiomatic expressions that are particular to them.
- Certain terms, phrases, and expressions in Italian will be useful to you in practical, everyday situations—such as when you want to express location, direction, or opinion. You'll learn many of these along the way.
- The answer to the riddle is: July and August, named after Julius and Augustus Caesar.



Almost Everything You Wanted to Know About Sex

In This Chapter

- ▶ How to determine gender
- ▶ Definite and indefinite articles
- ▶ Producing plurals

Once upon a time, the masculine energy of *il sole* (the Sun) ruled the Earth during the day, and the feminine energy of *la luna* (the Moon) ruled the night. When politically correct English speakers came across the land, they called this sexism and made everything neuter. Not so in Italian. In this chapter, you might not learn everything you wanted to know about sex, but you *will* learn about gender.

Determining Gender: He Versus She

Unlike English, where women are women and men are men, and everything else is a nongender, in Italian, every single noun (person, place, thing, or idea) is designated as masculine or feminine. The sun, the stars, and the moon all have a specific gender. How is this determination made? Sometimes it's obvious, sometimes there are clues, and sometimes it's just downright tricky. A *dizionario* comes in handy during these times of confusion, and if you imagine yourself as a mystic unveiling the mysteries of the *mondo*, determining gender can be an adventure you never imagined.

Masculine or Feminine

All Italian nouns are either masculine or feminine. Whether you're talking about *il gatto* (the cat), *il cane* (the dog), or *la macchina* (the car), all nouns are one gender or the other.

The reason *why* a particular noun is masculine or feminine is not always obvious. Determining a noun's gender, however, is quite easy in Italian. The clue is in the endings. Whether a noun is masculine or feminine, the endings are almost always consistent. Remember this basic rule of thumb: Nouns ending in *-o* (*libro, ragazzo, gatto*) are generally masculine, while nouns ending in *-a* (*casa, scuola, pizza*) are feminine.



As a Rule

If a word ends in *-a*, it is generally feminine. If a word ends in *-o*, it is masculine. Some words end in *-e* and require memorization. The article always reflects gender.

Occasionally, you will come across a word that does not conform to this rule (*animale, cane, computer*), making memorization necessary, but even then, the article preceding the noun will often indicate its gender.

Everyone Must Agree

The gender of a noun affects its relationship with other words in a *frase*, including adjectives (a word that describes a noun). If you learn the definite articles along with the nouns, it is easier for you to form sentences correctly later.

The key word here is “agreement.” Everyone and everything has to get along. Nouns and adjectives must always agree. For example, if we want to say “the small cat” (*il gatto piccolo*), the adjective “small” (*piccolo*) must agree in gender with the word “cat” (*il gatto*). We’ll get to adjectives later; just keep in mind that they follow the same rules.

An Article Is Not What You Read in a Newspaper

Before you get into Italian nouns, there’s one little challenge you must face: the noun marker that precedes the noun. The term *noun marker* refers to an article or adjective that tells us whether a noun is masculine (m.) or feminine (f.), singular (s.) or plural (p.). The noun markers shown in the following table are singular, definite articles expressing “the” and indefinite articles expressing “a,” “an,” or “one.”

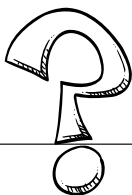
Singular Noun Markers

English	Masculine	Feminine
the	<i>il, lo, l'</i>	<i>la, l'</i>
a, an, one	<i>un, uno</i>	<i>una, un'</i>

The Definite Article (The)

What?! Five different singular definite articles? You’re probably thinking this is a little too much grammar for you. Rest assured; it’s not as confusing as you think. Here’s how these definite articles work in the singular:

- *Il* is used in front of singular, masculine nouns beginning with a consonant (other than *z* or *s* + a consonant), such as *il ragazzo* (the boy), *il sole* (the sun), and *il vino* (the wine).
- *Lo* is used in front of all singular, masculine nouns that begin with a *z* or an *s* followed by a consonant, such as *lo zio* (the uncle), *lo studio* (the study), and *lo sci* (the ski/skiing).
- *L'* is used in front of all singular nouns, both masculine and feminine, that begin with a vowel, such as *l'uomo* (the man), *l'opera* (the opera), and *l'atleta* (the female athlete).
- *La* is used in front of all other singular, feminine nouns, such as *la ragazza* (the girl, the girlfriend), *la musica* (the music), and *la luna* (the moon).



What's What

Definite articles are the singular masculine (*il, lo, l'*) and feminine (*la, l'*) articles that precede Italian nouns and correspond with “the” in English. Unlike the English “the,” these articles show the gender of a noun. The plural masculine (*i, gli*) and plural feminine (*le*) articles reflect gender and plurality.

A **noun marker** can be any of a variety of articles, such as *il, lo, l', la, i, gli, le* (the equivalent of “the” in English) and *uno, una, un'* (the equivalent of “a” in English).

An Indefinite Article (A, An)

Indefinite articles are simple to use. Remember that they are used only before *singular* nouns.

Masculine:

- *Un* is used before singular masculine nouns beginning with either a consonant or a vowel, such as *un palazzo* (a building), *un signore* (a gentleman), and *un animale* (animal). This does not include those nouns beginning with a *z* or an *s* followed by a consonant.
- *Uno* is used just like the definite article *lo* before singular masculine nouns beginning with a *z* or an *s* followed by a consonant, such as *uno zio* (an uncle) and *uno stadio* (a stadium).

Feminine:

- *Una* is used before any feminine noun beginning with a consonant, such as *una farfalla* (a butterfly), *una storia* (a story), and *una strada* (a street).
- *Un'* is the equivalent of *an* in English and is used before all feminine nouns beginning with a vowel, such as *un'italiana* (an Italian woman), *un'amica* (a friend), and *un'opera* (an opera).

Singular Nouns

Some nouns in Italian are easy to mark because they obviously refer to masculine or feminine people. Pay special attention to their endings.



La Bella Lingua

You use the definite article in front of a day to describe something you always do:

*Andiamo in chiesa **la domenica.***

We go to church **on Sundays.**

*Faccio yoga **il mercoledì.***

I do yoga **on Wednesdays.**

Gender-Obvious Nouns

Masculine Noun	Feminine Noun	Pronunciation	English
<i>il padre</i>		<i>eel pah-dreh</i>	the father
	<i>la madre</i>	<i>lah mah-dreh</i>	the mother
<i>il marito</i>		<i>eel mah-ree-toh</i>	the husband
	<i>la moglie</i>	<i>lah mol-yeh</i>	the wife
<i>il nonno</i>		<i>eel noh-noh</i>	the grandfather
	<i>la nonna</i>	<i>lah noh-nah</i>	the grandmother
<i>il fratello</i>		<i>eel frah-teh-loh</i>	the brother
	<i>la sorella</i>	<i>lah soh-reh-lah</i>	the sister
<i>il cugino</i>		<i>eel koo-jee-noh</i>	the cousin (m.)
	<i>la cugina</i>	<i>lah koo-jee-nah</i>	the cousin (f.)
<i>il ragazzo</i>		<i>eel rah-gah-tsoh</i>	the boy
	<i>la ragazza</i>	<i>lah rah-gah-tsah</i>	the girl

Masculine Noun	Feminine Noun	Pronunciation	English
<i>lo zio</i>		<i>loh zee-oh</i>	the uncle
	<i>la zia</i>	<i>lah zee-ah</i>	the aunt
<i>l'uomo</i>		<i>lwoh-moh</i>	the man
	<i>la donna</i>	<i>lah doh-nah</i>	the woman
<i>l'amico</i>		<i>lah-mee-koh</i>	the friend (m.)
	<i>l'amica</i>	<i>lah-mee-kah</i>	the friend (f.)

Pretty soon you'll be watching Fellini films and won't have to read *i sottotitoli* (subtitles) anymore. Let's add a few more words to your *vocabolario*.

Hermaphrodites

A few nouns can be either masculine or feminine. All you have to do is change the identifier—without altering the spelling—to refer to either gender. Nouns beginning with a vowel, such as *artista*, make determining their gender difficult to determine (except in context), since the noun marker *l'* is used. Study the following sentences to see how this works:

Il dentista mangia la cioccolata.

La dentista mangia la frutta.

L'artista è molto brava.

The following table shows several examples of either-gender nouns.



La Bella Lingua

The word *ragazzo* can mean "boy" or "boyfriend." The word *ragazza* can mean "girl" or "girlfriend."



Attenzione!

All nouns, with the exception of one's immediate family members, require an article in front of them.

Either-Gender Nouns

Italian	English
<i>l'artista</i>	the artist
<i>l'atleta</i>	the athlete
<i>il/la cantante</i>	the singer
<i>il/la dentista</i>	the dentist
<i>il/la dirigente</i>	the director/executive
<i>l'erede</i>	the heir
<i>il/la giovane</i>	the youth
<i>il/la nomade</i>	the nomad
<i>il/la parente</i>	the relative
<i>il/la turista</i>	the tourist



La Bella Lingua

You might want to create tricks to help you remember the gender of a noun; for example, *la notte* (the night) belongs to the feminine, as does *la luna* (the Moon). Be creative—maybe you'll remember the metaphor given at the beginning of this chapter, where the day is ruled by the masculine energy of *il sole* (the Sun). When we say *la macchina* or *l'automobile* (a car) runs well, we say *she* runs smoothly. Again, any association you can make to help you remember a word is acceptable, no matter how strange. It's your brain. Work it. Even if you make a gender bender, it's really not that serious—as long as you've chosen the correct noun, you'll be understood.

Nouns Ending in *-e*

Some nouns ending in *-e* may be masculine or feminine. You must memorize the gender of these nouns. See the following table for common nouns ending in *-e* and their genders.

Nouns Ending in -e

Masculine	English	Feminine	English
<i>il cane</i>	the dog	<i>l'automobile</i>	the car
<i>il sole</i>	the sun	<i>la nave</i>	the ship
<i>il nome</i>	the name/noun	<i>la notte</i>	the night
<i>il mare</i>	the ocean	<i>la stazione</i>	the station

Rules Are Made to Be Broken

Just to drive you *pazzo*, there are a few exceptions to these rules. Remember that rules are man-made, designed by linguists to make sense of an otherwise chaotic *universo*. All languages, including Italian, are dynamic. They evolve, expand, and contract with time, in accordance with trends, other cultural influences, and values.

Disconcerting Genders

Sometimes the ending of a word completely changes that word's significance. The only way to remember these oddities is to memorize them. In any event, fear not: Even if you get the gender wrong, 99 percent of the time, the person to whom you are speaking will know what you're saying. The following table provides a list of words whose meanings change according to the ending.

Disconcerting Genders

Masculine	Feminine
<i>il ballo</i> (dance)	<i>la balla</i> (bundle, bale)
<i>il collo</i> (neck)	<i>la colla</i> (glue)
<i>il colpo</i> (blow)	<i>la colpa</i> (fault, guilt)
<i>il costo</i> (cost)	<i>la costa</i> (coast)
<i>il filo</i> (thread)	<i>la fila</i> (line)
<i>il foglio</i> (sheet of paper)	<i>la foglia</i> (leaf)
<i>il legno</i> (wood)	<i>la legna</i> (firewood)
<i>il manico</i> (handle)	<i>la manica</i> (sleeve)
<i>il mento</i> (chin)	<i>la menta</i> (mint)



As a Rule

Italian words ending in *-azione* are often the equivalent of English words ending in *-tion*, such as *occupazione* (occupation). These words are always feminine. Most words of foreign origin ending in a consonant are masculine, such as *l'autobus*, *il bar*, *il computer*, *il film*, and *lo sport*.

continues

Disconcerting Genders (continued)

Masculine	Feminine
<i>il partito</i> (political party)	<i>la partita</i> (sports match)
<i>il porto</i> (port)	<i>la porta</i> (door)
<i>il posto</i> (place)	<i>la posta</i> (mail)
<i>il punto</i> (detail, dot)	<i>la punta</i> (tip)
<i>il torto</i> (mistake)	<i>la torta</i> (cake)
<i>il velo</i> (veil)	<i>la vela</i> (sail, sailing)

Words are like the colors on a painter's palette, allowing us to express our thoughts to others. The more colors you have to paint with, the more you can say. Just as there are many more colors than there are words for them, there are many nouns that just won't conform to the rules but exist anyway.



Did You Know?

Although Ms. is a common feminine form of address in the United States, an Italian woman can be addressed only as either *signorina* (Miss) or *signora* (Mrs.). However, the Italian women, progressively minded as they are, have decided to use *signora* in lieu of Ms. In any case, it is still a compliment for a woman to be referred to as *signorina*.

Misbehaving Males

Look at the following table for a few of these misbehaving masculine nouns.

Masculine Nouns That End in *-a*

Noun	Pronunciation	English
<i>il clima</i>	<i>eel klee-mah</i>	the climate
<i>il cruciverba</i>	<i>eel kroo-chee-ver-bah</i>	the crossword (puzzle)
<i>il dramma</i>	<i>eel drah-mah</i>	the drama
<i>il pianeta</i>	<i>eel pee-ah-neh-tah</i>	the planet
<i>il problema</i>	<i>eel proh-bleh-mah</i>	the problem
<i>il programma</i>	<i>eel proh-grah-mah</i>	the program

Rebellious Females

Feminine nouns can be troublemakers, too. The following table mentions some of them.

Feminine Nouns That End in -o

Noun	Pronunciation	English
<i>la foto</i> (short for <i>fotografia</i>)	<i>lah foh-toh</i>	the photo
<i>la mano</i>	<i>lah mah-noh</i>	the hand
<i>la moto</i> (short for <i>motocicletta</i>)	<i>lah moh-toh</i>	the motorcycle
<i>la radio</i>	<i>lah rah-dee-yoh</i>	the radio

Sex Changers

Certain words can be made feminine by changing the ending to *-a*, *-essa*, or *-ice*, depending on the gender of the person performing the action. You'll learn more about professions in Chapter 9, "Being There."

Noun Endings

Masculine	Feminine	English
<i>l'attore</i>	<i>l'attrice</i>	actor/actress
<i>l'avvocato</i>	<i>l'avvocata</i>	lawyer
<i>il cameriere</i>	<i>la cameriera</i>	waiter/waitress
<i>il direttore</i>	<i>la direttrice</i>	director
<i>il dottore</i>	<i>la dottoressa</i>	doctor
<i>il maestro</i>	<i>la maestra</i>	teacher
<i>il padrone</i>	<i>la padrona</i>	boss
<i>il pittore</i>	<i>la pittrice</i>	painter
<i>il poeta</i>	<i>la poetessa</i>	poet
<i>il professore</i>	<i>la professoressa</i>	professor
<i>lo studente</i>	<i>la studentessa</i>	student

In modern usage, the feminine endings of professionals such as actors, doctors, professors, and lawyers are used with less frequency than they used to be. It is appropriate, for example, to refer to a male or female lawyer as *l'avvocato*.

The Apple Doesn't Fall Far

Fruit is almost always referred to in the feminine as *la frutta*, but a piece of fruit is referred to as *un frutto*. When a specific fruit is made masculine, it becomes the fruit tree.

l'arancia (the orange) → *l'arancio* (the orange tree)

la ciliegia (the cherry) → *il ciliegio* (the cherry tree)

la mela (the apple) → *il melo* (the apple tree)

la pera (the pear) → *il pero* (the pear tree)

Practice Makes Perfetto

Determine the gender by placing the appropriate definite article in front of the following nouns. You might have to consult a dictionary for a couple of them. Don't forget to look at the endings!

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ___ <i>casa</i> (house) | 6. ___ <i>estate</i> (summer) |
| 2. ___ <i>cane</i> (dog) | 7. ___ <i>chiesa</i> (church) |
| 3. ___ <i>albero</i> (tree) | 8. ___ <i>straniero</i> (foreigner) |
| 4. ___ <i>piatto</i> (plate) | 9. ___ <i>cattedrale</i> (cathedral) |
| 5. ___ <i>lezione</i> (lesson) | 10. ___ <i>pianeta</i> (planet) |

More Is Better: Making Plurals

In English, it's relatively easy to talk about more than one thing; usually, you just add an *-s* to the word, although there are many plurals that confuse people learning English as a second language. How many "childs" do you have, or rather, "children"? Fortunately, forming plural nouns in Italian is as easy as floating in a gondola. Yes, you do have to memorize the endings, and again, the ending must always reflect gender. But you don't have to memorize a hundred different words just to say more than one. The following table illustrates how the ending should change in the plural.

Plural Endings

Singular		Plural	Singular		Plural
<i>-o</i>	→	<i>-i</i>	<i>ragazzo</i>	→	<i>ragazzi</i>
<i>-a</i>	→	<i>-e</i>	<i>donna</i>	→	<i>donne</i>
<i>-ca</i>	→	<i>-che</i>	<i>amica</i>	→	<i>amiche</i>
<i>-e</i>	→	<i>-i</i>	<i>cane</i>	→	<i>cani</i>



Attenzione!

In certain cases, the plural of certain nouns and adjectives follows different rules:

1. Singular feminine nouns and adjectives ending in *-ca* or *-ga* form the plural by changing the endings to *-che* or *-ghe*.

amica → *amiche*

bianca → *bianche*

2. Singular feminine nouns ending in *-cia* and *-gia* form the plural with ...

... *cie/gie* (if a vowel precedes the singular ending)

camicia → *camicie*

valigia → *valigie*

... *ce/ge* (if a consonant precedes the singular ending)

arancia → *arance*

pioggia → *piogge*

3. Singular masculine nouns and adjectives ending in *-co* and *-go* generally form the plural by replacing the singular endings with *-chi* and *-ghi*.

pacco → *pacchi*

bianco → *bianchi*

lago → *laghi*

largo → *larghi*

Do We Agree? Plural Noun Markers

When an Italian noun refers to more than one thing, you must change the noun marker.

The following table outlines the definite articles and demonstrates how singular noun markers change in the plural. Remember that funny rule about the definite article *lo*, which is used only in front of words beginning with *s* (or *z*) + a consonant. The same applies to *gli*.

The Definite Article (The)

Gender	Singular	Plural	When It's Used	Examples	
Masculine	<i>lo</i>	→	<i>gli</i>	In front of all masculine nouns beginning with a z or s + consonant	<i>lo zio</i> → <i>gli zii</i> <i>lo studente</i> → <i>gli studenti</i>
	<i>l'</i>	→	<i>gli</i>	In front of all masculine nouns beginning with a vowel	<i>l'amico</i> → <i>gli amici</i>
	<i>Il</i>	→	<i>i</i>	In front of all other masculine nouns	<i>il nonno</i> → <i>i nonni</i>
Feminine	<i>l'</i>	→	<i>le</i>	In front of all feminine nouns beginning with a vowel	<i>l'amica</i> → <i>le amiche</i>
	<i>la</i>	→	<i>le</i>	In front of all other feminine nouns	<i>la sorella</i> → <i>le sorelle</i>



As a Rule

Family names do not change endings in the plural. Use the article to indicate plurality. For example, if you were talking about the Leonardo family, you would say *i Leonardo* (the Leonardos).

Nouns ending in a consonant (such as many words of foreign origin) or accented on the last vowel do not change form in the plural. Only the article changes. For example:

<i>l'autobus</i>	→	gli <i>autobus</i>
il <i>caffè</i>	→	i <i>caffè</i>
la <i>città</i>	→	le <i>città</i>
<i>l'università</i>	→	le <i>università</i>

The Rules

The following summarizes everything you could ever want to know about making plurals:

- *Gli* is used in front of all plural, masculine nouns beginning with a *z* or an *s* followed by a consonant, and plural, masculine nouns beginning with a vowel, such as *gli studenti* (the students), *gli zii* (the uncles), *gli animali* (the animals), and *gli amici* (the friends).
- *I* is used in front of all plural, masculine nouns beginning with all other consonants, such as *i ragazzi* (the boys) and *i vini* (the wines).
- *Le* is used in front of all plural, feminine nouns, such as *le ragazze* (the girls), *le donne* (the women), and *le automobili* (the cars).

Plural Spelling

Look at what happens to the nouns in the following table when made plural.

Singular and Plural Nouns

Singular Noun	English	Plural Noun	English
<i>la monaca</i>	the nun	<i>le monache</i>	the nuns
<i>l'amica</i>	the friend (f.)	<i>le amiche</i>	the friends (f.)
<i>l'amico</i>	the friend (m.)	<i>gli amici</i>	the friends (m.)
<i>il nemico</i>	the enemy (m.)	<i>i nemici</i>	the enemies (m.)
<i>l'ago</i>	the needle	<i>gli aghi</i>	the needles
<i>il luogo</i>	the place	<i>i luoghi</i>	the places

You already know one plural—*spaghetti!* Because you could never eat one *spaghetto*—which isn't a real word—you must always use it in the plural. Let's try a sentence: *In Italia, i turisti mangiano gli spaghetti al pomodoro.*

La Pratica

Try making the following nouns plural using the rules you just learned. I've done the first one for you:

1. *il libro* (the book) → *i libri* (the books)
2. *il gatto* (the cat) → _____ (the cats)
3. *la ragazza* (the girl) → _____ (the girls)
4. *la stazione* (the station) → _____ (the stations)
5. *l'amico* (the friend, m.) → _____ (the friends)
6. *l'amica* (the friend, f.) → _____ (the friends)



La Bella Lingua

Both gods and men are irregular in the plural.

il dio (the god) *gli dei* (the gods)
l'uomo (the man) *gli uomini* (the men)

What Does It Mean?

Without knowing the significance of a word, it is still easy to determine whether it is singular or plural. Look at the following words and determine their gender and plurality. Place the appropriate noun marker in front of the word and guess at their meanings. Remember that some nouns end in *-e* in the singular.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. ____ <i>aeroplani</i> | 9. ____ <i>odore</i> |
| 2. ____ <i>bambini</i> | 10. ____ <i>ragazze</i> |
| 3. ____ <i>birra</i> | 11. ____ <i>scuole</i> |
| 4. ____ <i>dollari</i> | 12. ____ <i>stranieri</i> |
| 5. ____ <i>invenzione</i> | 13. ____ <i>supermercati</i> |
| 6. ____ <i>libro</i> | 14. ____ <i>tavole</i> |
| 7. ____ <i>nome</i> | 15. ____ <i>vacanza</i> |
| 8. ____ <i>notte</i> | 16. ____ <i>viaggi</i> |

Irregular Plural Nouns

Some masculine nouns become plural in the feminine. As you can see, many parts of the body are included.

Irregular Plural Nouns

Singular	Plural
<i>il braccio</i> (the arm)	<i>le braccia</i> (the arms)
<i>il dito</i> (the finger)	<i>le dita</i> (the fingers)
<i>il ginocchio</i> (the knee)	<i>le ginocchia</i> (the knees)

Singular	Plural
<i>il labbro</i> (the lip)	<i>le labbra</i> (the lips)
<i>la mano</i> (the hand)	<i>le mani</i> (the hands)
<i>il miglio</i> (the mile)	<i>le miglia</i> (the miles)
<i>il paio</i> (the pair)	<i>le paia</i> (the pairs)
<i>l'uovo</i> (the egg)	<i>le uova</i> (the eggs)

Always Plural

Some nouns are only used in the plural. For instance, when you look for your glasses, it is assumed that you are referring to the ones you see with.

Always Plural Nouns

Italian	English
<i>le forbici</i>	scissors
<i>le pinzette</i>	tweezers
<i>le redini</i>	reins
<i>i pantaloni</i>	pants
<i>le mutande</i>	underwear
<i>gli occhiali</i>	eyeglasses

Practice Those Plurals

You've just arrived in Rome, and you need to pick up a few odds and ends. You're in a *negozio* (store) and want to buy more than one of the following items. Start by saying *Cerco ...* (I am looking for ...) and the plural of the item. Don't forget to use the appropriate article.

Example: *il regalo* (gift)

Cerco i regali. (I am looking for the gifts.)

- la cartolina* (postcard)
- la rivista* (magazine)
- la collana* (necklace)
- il profumo* (perfume)
- la cravatta* (tie)
- la penna* (pen)

What Have You Learned About Gender?

You've always wanted to be in a movie. You remember watching all those spaghetti westerns where tall men wore big hats and the women always looked pretty, even



Attenzione!

When talking about the time, Italians use a comma. For example, midnight would be written 12,00 (12:00). Breakfast would be at 7,30 (7:30) and you would take an afternoon stroll around 3,15 (3:15).

with dirt smudged across their cheeks. You're in Rome visiting the famous movie studio *Cinecittà* where those films were made, and you see a listing for auditions. Determine whether the part requires a male or female role.

Attrice matura (40–50 anni), cercasi con la capacità di parlare l'inglese e il francese per interpretare il ruolo di una contessa. Aspetto distinto. Inviare curriculum con foto a Via Garibaldi 36, Roma.

Attore forte, atletico, giovane, cercasi con i capelli chiari per interpretare il ruolo di Cesare. Presentarsi il 25 giugno ore 9,00 alla palestra Superforte, secondo piano.

Uomini e donne veramente sexy, cercasi per apparire nudi in una scena sulla spiaggia: Varie età. Esperienza non necessaria. Telefonare al 06/040357.

The Least You Need to Know

- Certain endings are almost always masculine (*o, i, consonants*) or feminine (*a, e*).
- Some nouns can be changed from masculine to feminine by adding an appropriate ending.
- Always look at the article to determine the gender and plurality of a noun.
- Plural nouns end in either *-i* or *-e*.



What's the Subject?

In This Chapter

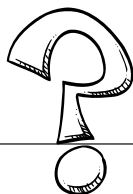
- ▶ Subject pronouns: the key to smooth communication in *la bella lingua*
- ▶ Friendly or polite? Formal and informal pronouns in Italian
- ▶ You or all of you? How Italians directly address one person or lots of people

In the previous chapter, you learned about nouns—how to determine their gender and make them plural. You can take *mela* (apple) and make it *mele* (apples), and you enjoy not just one *libro* (book), but many *libri* (books). (And you thought there could be no greater thrill.) To add to your plate, this chapter discusses the titillating world of subject pronouns. Beware: The next two chapters are power chapters—meat and potatoes chapters (or if you're a vegetarian, rice and beans chapters). Come back to them as often as you need until you are using verbs without pause.

Your Loyal Subject

As you learned in Chapter 4, “You Know More Than You Think,” an infinitive verb is a verb in its unconjugated form, as in *cucinare* (to cook), *mangiare* (to eat), *dormire* (to sleep), and *viaggiare* (to travel). Determining the subject of a verb is essential to conjugation. To determine the subject, you need to ask the simple question, “What or who is doing the action?” The subject may be a person, a thing (such as the car), or a pronoun replacing the noun (such as he or it).

Look at the following sentences to better understand what is the subject of the verb.

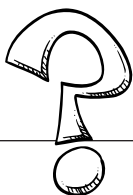


What's What

The pronouns *egli* (he) and *ella* (she) often replace the pronouns *lui* and *lei* in writing. Instead of using the pronouns *lui*, *lei*, and *loro*, you may also hear—depending on gender and number—the pronouns *esso*, *essi*, *essa*, and *esse* used in reference to people, animals, and inanimate objects.

Determining the Subject

Sentence	Subject
I want to visit Venice.	I
You want to learn Italian.	You
The bus is leaving at 4:30.	The bus <i>or</i> it
Eat, drink, and be merry!	You
Robert and I are brother and sister.	Robert and I <i>or</i> we
You are all very intelligent.	You (plural)
The Italians love life.	The Italians <i>or</i> they



What's What

There are two kinds of objects: direct and indirect. The **direct object** of a sentence is the recipient of a verb's action. The **indirect object** of a sentence tells *to whom* or *for whom* the action was done.

Subject Pronouns

There are six ways to describe persons (or, in the third person, things) as pronouns: I, you, he or she, we, you (plural), and they. There are no other options. The linguists decided to call these *persons*. Look at the subject pronouns in the following table.

Subject Pronouns

Person	Singular	Plural
First	<i>io</i> (I)	<i>noi</i> (we)
Second	<i>tu</i> (you, informal)	<i>voi</i> (you)
Third	<i>lui/lei/Lei</i> (he/she/You)	<i>loro</i> (they)

**The pronoun Lei (with a capital "L") signifies "You" (polite or formal); the pronoun lei signifies "she." Both, however, are third person.*



La Bella Lingua

In Italian, subject pronouns are used much less frequently than in English and other languages because the verb endings usually indicate the subject quite clearly. It is not necessary to use a subject pronoun to say the sentence *Mangio la pasta* (I eat the pasta) because the ending *-o* already tells us it's the first person.

When to Use Subject Pronouns

Subject pronouns are useful for:

- **Clarity:** To differentiate who the subject is in cases where verb forms are the same and when there is more than one subject:
Lui parla l'italiano ma lei parla il francese.
(He speaks Italian but she speaks French.)
- **Emphasis:** To clearly underline the fact that the subject will be performing the action:
Tu viaggi in Italia; io sto qui. (You travel to Italy; I'm staying here.)
- **Politeness:** To show respect and maintain a formality with another person.
Lei è molto gentile. (You are very kind.)



What's What

An **object pronoun** replaces the object in a sentence. In English, this is equivalent to *it*. In Italian, all object pronouns must reflect *gender and plurality*.

Name That Subject

Just to make sure you're on track, determine the subject of the verb in the following sentences; then ascertain the appropriate subject pronoun for each sentence:

1. The stars twinkled brightly.
2. Jessica knows how to have fun.
3. Leslie travels a lot.
4. My mother was a painter.
5. Louis was an engineer.
6. The food is delicious.
7. Italian is easy to learn.
8. Anna flies a plane.

Subject to Interpretation

Now that you're cooking with gas, let's take this one step further: Determine the subject in the following Italian sentences. If you're feeling brave, try translating them:

1. *Davide prende l'autobus.*
2. *Io mangio il pesce.*
3. *Patrizia e Raffaella studiano arte.*
4. *L'insalata è fresca.*
5. *La farmacia è aperta.*
6. *Lo studente conversa con il professore.*
7. *Io e Gianni andiamo in Italia.*
8. *La ragazza va a casa.*



Attenzione!

In English, the subject pronoun “I” is always capitalized, regardless of its position in the sentence. In Italian, *io* is capitalized only at the beginning of a sentence.

The Italian polite “you” subject pronoun *Lei* is always capitalized to distinguish it from *lei*, meaning “she.” At the beginning of a sentence, there is no distinction between the two pronouns, requiring the reader to determine the significance through the context of the sentence.

You and You and You

Have you ever addressed a group of people and not known quite how to acknowledge all of them? In the southern United States, you might say, “Y’all.” In the North, you might say, “All of you.”

Italian solves this problem by having a separate, plural form of “you” (the second-person plural). It also has an informal “you” (second-person singular) used specifically with friends and family members and a separate form of “you” used in formal situations, which we call the *polite* form (third-person singular). You’ve already seen these pronouns in an earlier table. Take a look at them again in the following table, just to make sure you understand.

Forms of "You"

English	Italian	When to Use	Person
you (informal)	<i>tu</i>	Informal, used with family, friends, and children	Second singular
You (polite)	<i>Lei</i>	Polite, used to show respect to strangers, authority figures, and elders; always capitalized	Third singular
you (plural)	<i>voi</i>	Plural, used when addressing more than one person	Second plural
You (plural polite)	<i>Loro*</i>	Plural, polite; used in extreme cases (as when addressing the pope)	Third plural

**This form, although plural, would be used to address the pope as the polite form of *voi*. It probably stems from the notion that when speaking to the pope, one is also addressing God. Although Pope John Paul II often uses the first-person singular form when giving his own personal opinion, he may also use the plural *noi* (we) form of the verb, as in *pensiamo* (we think), which is the traditional form used by popes.*

Hey You!

What subject pronouns would you use when speaking to the following people?

- Your best friend
- Mr. and Mrs. Carini
- Giorgio and Filippo
- Your in-laws
- Pope John Paul II
- Your baby brother
- Your boss



La Bella Lingua

Pope John Paul II, formerly Karol Wojtyła, will go down in history as being the first pope to launch his own comic book series. The Vatican-approved *Il Giornalino* (The Little Paper) is available on newsstands and depicts the pontiff's life and times.



Did You Know?

Each region has its own particularities. In Rome, it is not uncommon to use the *tu* form of a verb when addressing a stranger in an informal setting, such as a small shop or while waiting for a bus.

In Italian, using the *Lei* form is equal to our using a last name to address someone, as in “Mr. Rossi.”

In parts of the south and in older movies, the *voi* form of a verb may be commonly used in lieu of *Lei*.

The Least You Need to Know

- Determining the subject of a verb is essential to conjugation—and, therefore, speaking.
- Subject pronouns are used much less frequently in Italian than in English because the verb endings usually indicate the subject; however, you will sometimes hear subject pronouns used for clarity, emphasis, or courtesy.
- There are four forms of “you” in Italian: the second-person plural, the second-person singular, the third-person singular, and the third-person plural.

Part 2

You're Off and Running

Every house needs a foundation, and Part 1, "The Basics," focused on giving you the fundamentals. You've learned about parts of speech, cognates, and idiomatic expressions. You studied the notion of gender, and learned some common introductory phrases used by Italian speakers.

Part 2 is loaded with useful information that can't be absorbed in one sitting; you'll probably want to have a little bite, savor the flavor, and let your mind digest the material before going too far ahead. Take your time and really absorb the lessons.

You're going to learn your verbs in this part. Chapter 8, "An Action-Packed Adventure," outlines the regular rules of conjugation, offering you hundreds of verbs that you will read or hear spoken. Use it as a convenient reference section that you can come back to as necessary. In Chapter 9, "Being There," you'll learn the most important verbs of all: *essere* and *stare*, both of which mean "to be." You'll also be served the verb *avere* (to have), with a few idiomatic expressions on the side.

Chapter 10, "Tell Me About Your Childhood," shows you how to modify adjectives, use adverbs, and tie it all together with prepositions and prepositional phrases.

In Chapter 11, "Finally, You're at the Airport," you'll look at the imperative, the tense used for giving directions and making requests. You'll be given practical vocabulary to help you go from the airport to the hotel. In Chapter 12, "Moving Around," you'll master telling time and learn about an important verb used in myriad situations: *fare* (to do; to make). In Chapter 13, "Hallelujah, You've Made It to l'Hotel," you'll study the modal verbs *volere* (to want), *potere* (to be able to), and *dovere* (to have to). Chapter 14, "Rain or Shine," talks about that universal conversation topic: *il tempo* (the weather).

As you study the next few chapters, remember that there's nothing like exposure to help you learn Italian. Use the book as a map, but don't hesitate to support your study with other tools such as language cassettes and films.





An Action-Packed Adventure

In This Chapter

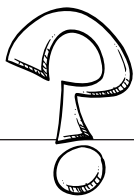
- ▶ Verb families and conjugation
- ▶ Common regular Italian verbs
- ▶ Taking conjugation a step further: asking questions
- ▶ Forming negative statements

Verbs are where the action is, so study them closely. *I verbi* are the skeleton of a *lingua*. Without *i verbi*, nothing would get done; nothing could happen. Verbs are what move us, shape us, and allow us to convey messages.

You've already studied some verbs in Chapter 4, "You Know More Than You Think." As you know, it is important to be able to recognize verb infinitives in order to look them up in your *dizionario* (verb conjugations are generally not included). The infinitive form of a verb is simply the unconjugated verb, as in to love, to dance, and to dream, or loving, dancing, and dreaming.

An infinitive, however, doesn't tell us who is doing the action. This is where conjugation comes in. Every time you speak, you conjugate verbs to reflect the subject of the verb. In the previous chapter, you studied the subject pronouns. It's time to put it all together.

Included in this chapter are many regular verbs you may want to use as your Italian language skills progress. The list is long—rather than trying to learn all the verbs at once, use this chapter as a reference section you can come back to as *necessario*.



What's What

Infinitive form refers to a verb in its unconjugated form. In Italian, the infinitive form can also be used as a subject, object, or predicate, as in **Mangiare** la pasta è buono. (To eat [Eating] pasta is good.) All verbs are listed in the dictionary in the infinitive form.

All in the Family

Most of the time, Italian verbs follow certain rules. We call these regular verbs. We'll get to irregular verbs later.

All verbs in Italian belong to one of three families, easily identified by their endings. The rules are the same for each family, so after you've learned the pattern for one verb, you know how to conjugate all the verbs in that family.

Also called the first conjugation, the *-are* family is the largest and most regular. The *-ere* family—known as the second conjugation—has its own set of rules. The *-ire* family has two methods of conjugation and is called the third conjugation. These verb families include infinitive verbs such as *parlare* (to speak), *rispondere* (to respond), *partire* (to depart), and *capire* (to understand).

The Anatomy of a Verb

Understanding the anatomy of a verb will help you conjugate. Keep in mind that every infinitive verb has a *stem* that can be distinguished from its *infinitive ending*. Most infinitive verbs end in *-are*, *-ere*, or *-ire*.

To conjugate any regular verb in the present tense, keep the stem, drop the infinitive ending, and replace it with the appropriate conjugation. Following this formula, you should be able to conjugate any regular verb (whether you understand its meaning or not).



La Bella Lingua

In English, the present tense can be expressed in three different ways:

The simple present: "I study."

The present progressive: "I am studying."

The emphatic present: "I do study."

The Italian present tense expresses all three of these meanings, as in *Studio*.

The Anatomy of a Verb

Conjugation	Infinitive Verb	Stem	Infinitive Ending
First	<i>parlare</i> (to speak)	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-are</i>
Second	<i>rispondere</i> (to respond)	<i>rispond-</i>	<i>-ere</i>
Third	<i>partire</i> (to depart)	<i>part-</i>	<i>-ire</i>
Third	<i>capire</i> (to understand)	<i>cap-</i>	<i>-ire</i>

The Present-Tense Conjugations

For a general overview, the following table outlines the correct endings for all three verb families, as represented by the verbs *parlare* (to speak), *rispondere* (respond), *partire* (to depart), and *capire* (to understand). (Note the two different conjugations for *-ire* verbs.)

Regular Verb Endings

Subject Pronoun	<i>Parlare</i>	<i>Rispondere</i>	<i>Partire</i>	<i>Capire</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>parlo</i>	<i>rispondo</i>	<i>parto</i>	<i>capisco</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>parli</i>	<i>rispondi</i>	<i>parti</i>	<i>capisci</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>parla</i>	<i>risponde</i>	<i>parte</i>	<i>capisce</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>parliamo</i>	<i>rispondiamo</i>	<i>partiamo</i>	<i>capiamo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>parlate</i>	<i>rispondete</i>	<i>partite</i>	<i>capite</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>parlano</i>	<i>rispondono</i>	<i>partono</i>	<i>capiscono</i>



What's What

The **stem** of a word or verb is the base from which other words are formed. In regular verbs, the stem remains the same when conjugated. In **irregular verbs**, the stem may change form once it has been conjugated. This is called a **stem-changing verb**, as with the verb *bere* (to drink), whose stem changes to *bev-* when conjugated.

The *-are* Family

The largest family in the batch, the *-are* verbs, are also the most regular.

C Is for Celebrare

Take a look at the verb *celebrare* (to celebrate) and see how it conjugates. (And you're going to celebrate when you finish this chapter!) Break down the verb to its infinitive stem by detaching the *-are* ending, and attach the endings you just saw.

***Celebrare* (to Celebrate)**

Italian	English
<i>io celebro</i>	I celebrate
<i>tu celebri</i>	you celebrate
<i>lui/lei/Lei celebra</i>	he/she celebrates; You celebrate
<i>noi celebriamo</i>	we celebrate
<i>voi celebrate</i>	you celebrate
<i>loro celebrano</i>	they celebrate



La Bella Lingua

As you know, pronouncing Italian is easy; the challenge is knowing where to place the stress. When pronouncing all forms of the verbs, note that—except for *noi* and *voi*—stress should be placed on the stem of the verb, *not* the ending. Although there are exceptions, this is particularly helpful to recall when you're pronouncing the third-person plural (*loro*) conjugations:

<i>mangiano</i>	mahn-jah-noh	they eat
<i>parlano</i>	par-lah-noh	they speak
<i>vedono</i>	veh-doh-noh	they see

Remember that double consonants should be emphasized but not separated, and all syllables should slide together in a flow of melodic *musica!*

Regular –are Verbs

The following table is a fairly comprehensive list of the –are verbs. Don't be intimidated by the sheer number of verbs there are—think of them as *colori* for your palette. The more you know, the better you will express yourself. For now, carefully study the verbs listed. Later, cover the translations with a piece of paper and see if you can ascertain their meaning by associating them with English words you already know. Look for cognates.

Regular –are Verbs

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>abbronzare</i>	<i>ah-brohn-zah-reh</i>	to tan
<i>abitare</i>	<i>ah-bee-tah-reh</i>	to live
<i>abusare</i>	<i>ah-boo-zah-reh</i>	to abuse
<i>accompagnare</i>	<i>ah-kohm-pah-nyah-reh</i>	to accompany
<i>adorare</i>	<i>ah-doh-rah-reh</i>	to adore
<i>affermare</i>	<i>ah-fer-mah-reh</i>	to affirm
<i>affittare</i>	<i>ah-fee-tah-reh</i>	to rent
<i>aiutare</i>	<i>ah-yoo-tah-reh</i>	to help
<i>alzare</i>	<i>ahl-tsah-reh</i>	to raise/lift up
<i>amare</i>	<i>ah-mah-reh</i>	to love
<i>ammirare</i>	<i>ah-mee-rah-reh</i>	to admire
<i>anticipare</i>	<i>ahn-tee-chee-pah-reh</i>	to anticipate/wait
<i>arrestare</i>	<i>ah-reh-stah-reh</i>	to stop/arrest
<i>arrivare</i>	<i>ah-ree-vah-reh</i>	to arrive
<i>aspettare</i>	<i>ah-speh-tah-reh</i>	to wait/expect
<i>avvisare</i>	<i>ah-vee-sah-reh</i>	to inform/advise
<i>ballare</i>	<i>bah-lah-reh</i>	to dance
<i>bloccare</i>	<i>bloh-kah-reh</i>	to block
<i>bussare</i>	<i>boo-sah-reh</i>	to knock
<i>buttare</i>	<i>boo-tah-reh</i>	to throw
<i>calcolare</i>	<i>kal-koh-lah-reh</i>	to calculate
<i>camminare</i>	<i>kah-mee-nah-reh</i>	to walk
<i>cancellare</i>	<i>kahn-cheh-lah-reh</i>	to cancel
<i>cantare</i>	<i>kahn-tah-reh</i>	to sing
<i>causare</i>	<i>kow-zah-reh</i>	to cause
<i>celebrare</i>	<i>cheh-leb-rah-reh</i>	to celebrate
<i>cenare</i>	<i>cheh-nah-reh</i>	to dine
<i>chiamare</i>	<i>kee-ah-mah-reh</i>	to call
<i>comprare</i>	<i>kohm-prah-reh</i>	to buy

continues

Regular *-are* Verbs (continued)

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>consumare</i>	<i>kohn-soo-mah-reh</i>	to consume
<i>contare</i>	<i>kohn-tah-reh</i>	to count
<i>controllare</i>	<i>kohn-troh-lah-reh</i>	to control/to check
<i>conversare</i>	<i>kohn-ver-sah-reh</i>	to converse
<i>costare</i>	<i>koh-stah-reh</i>	to cost
<i>cucinare</i>	<i>koo-chee-nah-reh</i>	to cook
<i>deliberare</i>	<i>deh-lee-beh-rah-reh</i>	to deliberate/to resolve
<i>depositare</i>	<i>deh-poh-zee-tah-reh</i>	to deposit
<i>desiderare</i>	<i>deh-zee-deh-rah-reh</i>	to desire
<i>determinare</i>	<i>deh-ter-mee-nah-reh</i>	to determine
<i>detestare</i>	<i>deh-teh-stah-reh</i>	to detest
<i>dimostrare</i>	<i>dee-moh-strah-reh</i>	to demonstrate
<i>disegnare</i>	<i>dee-zen-yah-reh</i>	to draw/design
<i>disgustare</i>	<i>dee-sgoo-stah-reh</i>	to disgust
<i>disperare</i>	<i>dee-speh-rah-reh</i>	to despair
<i>diventare</i>	<i>dee-ven-tah-reh</i>	to become
<i>domandare</i>	<i>doh-mahn-dah-reh</i>	to question
<i>donare</i>	<i>doh-nah-reh</i>	to donate/give
<i>elevare</i>	<i>eh-leh-vah-reh</i>	to elevate
<i>eliminare</i>	<i>eh-lee-mee-nah-reh</i>	to eliminate
<i>entrare</i>	<i>ehn-trah-reh</i>	to enter
<i>esaminare</i>	<i>eh-zah-mee-nah-reh</i>	to examine
<i>evitare</i>	<i>eh-vee-tah-reh</i>	to avoid
<i>firmare</i>	<i>feer-mah-reh</i>	to sign
<i>formare</i>	<i>for-mah-reh</i>	to form/create
<i>fumare</i>	<i>foo-mah-reh</i>	to smoke
<i>funzionare</i>	<i>foon-zee-oh-nah-reh</i>	to function
<i>gettare</i>	<i>jeh-tah-reh</i>	to throw
<i>gridare</i>	<i>gree-dah-reh</i>	to yell/scream
<i>guardare</i>	<i>gwar-dah-reh</i>	to look at something
<i>guidare</i>	<i>gwee-dah-reh</i>	to drive
<i>immaginare</i>	<i>ee-mah-jee-nah-reh</i>	to imagine
<i>imparare</i>	<i>eem-pah-rah-reh</i>	to learn
<i>informare</i>	<i>een-for-mah-reh</i>	to inform
<i>invitare</i>	<i>een-vee-tah-reh</i>	to invite
<i>lavare</i>	<i>lah-vah-reh</i>	to wash
<i>lavorare</i>	<i>lah-voh-rah-reh</i>	to work

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>liberare</i>	<i>lee-beh-rah-reh</i>	to liberate/to set free
<i>limitare</i>	<i>lee-mee-tah-reh</i>	to limit
<i>lottare</i>	<i>loh-tah-reh</i>	to struggle, to fight
<i>mandare</i>	<i>mahn-dah-reh</i>	to send
<i>meritare</i>	<i>meh-ree-tah-reh</i>	to deserve
<i>misurare</i>	<i>mee-zoo-rah-reh</i>	to measure
<i>modificare</i>	<i>moh-dee-fee-kah-reh</i>	to modify
<i>nuotare</i>	<i>nwoh-tah-reh</i>	to swim
<i>occupare</i>	<i>oh-koo-pah-reh</i>	to occupy
<i>odiare</i>	<i>oh-dee-ah-reh</i>	to hate
<i>operare</i>	<i>oh-peh-rah-reh</i>	to operate
<i>ordinare</i>	<i>or-dee-nah-reh</i>	to order
<i>organizzare</i>	<i>or-gah-nee-zah-reh</i>	to organize
<i>osservare</i>	<i>oh-ser-vah-reh</i>	to observe
<i>parlare</i>	<i>par-lah-reh</i>	to speak
<i>partecipare</i>	<i>par-teh-chee-pah-reh</i>	to participate
<i>passare</i>	<i>pah-sah-reh</i>	to pass
<i>pensare</i>	<i>pen-sah-reh</i>	to think
<i>perdonare</i>	<i>per-doh-nah-reh</i>	to forgive, to pardon
<i>pesare</i>	<i>peh-zah-reh</i>	to weigh
<i>pettinare</i>	<i>peh-tee-nah-reh</i>	to comb
<i>portare</i>	<i>por-tah-reh</i>	to bring, to carry, to wear
<i>pranzare</i>	<i>prahn-zah-reh</i>	to eat lunch, to dine
<i>pregare</i>	<i>preh-gah-reh</i>	to pray, to request
<i>prenotare</i>	<i>preh-noh-tah-reh</i>	to reserve
<i>preparare</i>	<i>preh-pah-rah-reh</i>	to prepare
<i>presentare</i>	<i>preh-zen-tah-reh</i>	to present
<i>prestare</i>	<i>preh-stah-reh</i>	to lend
<i>provare</i>	<i>proh-vah-reh</i>	to try
<i>raccomandare</i>	<i>rah-koh-mahn-dah-reh</i>	to recommend, to register
<i>raccontare</i>	<i>rah-kohn-tah-reh</i>	to tell, to recount
<i>rappresentare</i>	<i>rah-preh-zehn-tah-reh</i>	to represent
<i>respirare</i>	<i>reh-spee-rah-reh</i>	to breathe
<i>rifiutare</i>	<i>ree-fyoo-tah-reh</i>	to refuse, to reject
<i>rilassare</i>	<i>ree-lah-sah-reh</i>	to relax
<i>riparare</i>	<i>ree-pah-rah-reh</i>	to repair, to fix
<i>riservare</i>	<i>ree-zer-vah-reh</i>	to reserve, to put aside
<i>rispettare</i>	<i>ree-speh-tah-reh</i>	to respect

continues

Regular *-are* Verbs (continued)

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>ritornare</i>	<i>ree-tor-nah-reh</i>	to return
<i>saltare</i>	<i>sahl-tah-reh</i>	to jump
<i>salvare</i>	<i>sahl-vah-reh</i>	to save
<i>scusare</i>	<i>skoo-zah-reh</i>	to excuse
<i>soddisfare</i>	<i>soh-dee-sfah-reh</i>	to satisfy
<i>sognare</i>	<i>sohn-yah-reh</i>	to dream
<i>sposare</i>	<i>spoh-zah-reh</i>	to marry
<i>suonare</i>	<i>swoh-nah-reh</i>	to play an instrument, to sound
<i>telefonare</i>	<i>teh-leh-foh-nah-reh</i>	to telephone
<i>terminare</i>	<i>ter-mee-nah-reh</i>	to terminate
<i>trovare</i>	<i>troh-vah-reh</i>	to find
<i>usare</i>	<i>oo-zah-reh</i>	to use
<i>vietare</i>	<i>vee-eh-tah-reh</i>	to forbid/prohibit
<i>visitare</i>	<i>vee-zee-tah-reh</i>	to visit
<i>volare</i>	<i>voh-lah-reh</i>	to fly
<i>votare</i>	<i>voh-tah-reh</i>	to vote

Exceptions

Here are a few exceptions to keep in mind:

- Most verbs ending in *-iare*, such as *cominciare* (to begin) and *studiare* (to study), drop the extra *-i* when conjugating to the *tu* and *noi* forms of the endings.

Subject	<i>Cominciare</i>	<i>Studiare</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>comincio</i>	<i>studio</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>cominci</i>	<i>studi</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>comincia</i>	<i>studia</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>cominciamo</i>	<i>studiamo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>cominciate</i>	<i>studiate</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>cominciano</i>	<i>studiano</i>

Other verbs falling under this category include:

abbracciare (to hug)

assaggiare (to taste)

baciare (to kiss)

cambiare (to change)
cominciare (to begin)
lasciare (to leave something)
mangiare (to eat)
tagliare (to cut)
viaggiare (to travel)

- Many verbs ending in *-care* and *-gare* add an *-h* to the stem in front of the vowels *i* and *e* to maintain the hard *c* and *g* sounds. Look at the verbs *cercare* (to search for) and *spiegare* (to explain) to see how this works.

Subject	<i>Cercare</i>	<i>Spiegare</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>cerco</i>	<i>spiego</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>cerchi</i>	<i>spieghi</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>cerca</i>	<i>spiega</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>cerchiamo</i>	<i>spieghiamo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>cercate</i>	<i>spiegate</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>cercano</i>	<i>spiegano</i>

Other verbs falling under this category include:

comunicare (to communicate)
giocare (to play)
indicare (to indicate)
navigare (to navigate)
notificare (to notify)
pagare (to pay)
toccare (to touch)
verificare (to verify)

Practice Makes Perfetto

Use the correct form of the verb in the following sentences. If the subject is not identified in the sentence, it is given in parenthesis. Don't forget to determine what your subject is and whether the verb should be conjugated in its singular or plural form:

1. Paolo _____ (*lavorare*) in ufficio.
2. Luca ed io _____ (*aspettare*) il treno.
3. _____ (*abitare*) in una casa splendida. (*tu*)

4. _____ (parlare) la lingua italiana. (io)
5. _____ (passare) la notte in una bella pensione. (voi)
6. Antonella e Dina _____ (preparare) la cena.



As a Rule

For many verbs ending in *-iare*, such as *baciare* (to kiss), you must drop the additional *-i* if it occurs during conjugation. This serves to avoid a doubling of the vowel *-i* in the *tu* and *noi* forms.

Tu baci. (You kiss.)

Noi baciamo. (We kiss.)

Other affected verbs include these:

mangiare (to eat)

studiare (to study)

tagliare (to cut)

viaggiare (to travel)

An exception to this rule is the verb *odiare* (to hate), which retains the double *-ii*.

The *-ere* Verbs

In most cases, *-ere* verbs are conjugated similarly to the *-are* verbs. Drop the infinitive ending from your stem and add the endings from the “Regular *-ere* Verbs” table.

S Is for Scrivere

Notice how this works with the verb *scrivere* (to write).

Scriver (to Write)

Italian	English
<i>io scrivo</i>	I write
<i>tu scrivi</i>	you write
<i>lui/lei/Lei scrive</i>	he/she writes; You write

Italian	English
<i>noi scriviamo</i>	we write
<i>voi scrivete</i>	you write
<i>loro scrivono</i>	they write

Regular –ere Verbs

As you can see from the list in the following table, there are fewer regular verbs in the –ere family. Study the verbs in the table.

Regular –ere Verbs

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>accendere</i>	<i>ah-chen-deh-reh</i>	to light/turn on
<i>affliggere</i>	<i>ah-flee-jeh-reh</i>	to afflict
<i>aggiungere</i>	<i>ah-joon-jeh-reh</i>	to add
<i>alludere</i>	<i>ah-loo-deh-reh</i>	to allude/refer
<i>ammettere</i>	<i>ah-meh-teh-reh</i>	to admit/let in
<i>apprendere</i>	<i>ah-pren-deh-reh</i>	to learn
<i>assistere</i>	<i>ah-see-steh-reh</i>	to assist
<i>assumere</i>	<i>ah-soo-meh-reh</i>	to hire
<i>attendere</i>	<i>ah-ten-deh-reh</i>	to attend/to wait for
<i>cadere</i>	<i>kah-deh-reh</i>	to fall
<i>chiedere</i>	<i>kee-yeh-deh-reh</i>	to ask
<i>chiudere</i>	<i>kee-yoo-deh-reh</i>	to close
<i>commettere</i>	<i>koh-meh-teh-reh</i>	to commit/join
<i>commuovere</i>	<i>kohm-woh-veh-reh</i>	to move/touch/affect
<i>comprendere</i>	<i>kohm-pren-deh-reh</i>	to understand
<i>concedere</i>	<i>kohn-cheh-deh-reh</i>	to concede/grant/award
<i>concludere</i>	<i>kohn-kloo-deh-reh</i>	to conclude
<i>confondere</i>	<i>kohn-fon-deh-reh</i>	to confuse
<i>conoscere</i>	<i>koh-noh-sheh-reh</i>	to know someone
<i>consistere</i>	<i>kohn-see-steh-reh</i>	to consist
<i>convincere</i>	<i>kohn-veen-cheh-reh</i>	to convince
<i>correggere</i>	<i>koh-reh-jeh-reh</i>	to correct
<i>correre</i>	<i>koh-reh-reh</i>	to run
<i>corrispondere</i>	<i>koh-ree-spohn-deh-reh</i>	to correspond
<i>credere</i>	<i>kreh-deh-reh</i>	to believe
<i>crescere</i>	<i>kreh-sheh-reh</i>	to grow

continues

Regular *-ere* Verbs (continued)

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>decidere</i>	<i>deh-chee-deh-reh</i>	to decide
<i>descrivere</i>	<i>deh-skree-veh-reh</i>	to describe
<i>difendere</i>	<i>dee-fen-deh-reh</i>	to defend
<i>dipendere</i>	<i>dee-pen-deh-reh</i>	to depend
<i>dipingere</i>	<i>dee-peen-jeh-reh</i>	to paint
<i>discutere</i>	<i>dee-skoo-teh-reh</i>	to discuss
<i>dissolvere</i>	<i>dee-sohl-veh-reh</i>	to dissolve
<i>distinguere</i>	<i>dee-steen-gweh-reh</i>	to distinguish
<i>distruggere</i>	<i>dee-stroo-jeh-reh</i>	to destroy
<i>dividere</i>	<i>dee-vee-deh-reh</i>	to divide
<i>emergere</i>	<i>eh-mer-jeh-reh</i>	to emerge
<i>esistere</i>	<i>eh-zee-steh-reh</i>	to exist
<i>esprimere</i>	<i>es-pree-meh-reh</i>	to express
<i> fingere</i>	<i>feen-geh-reh</i>	to pretend
<i>godere</i>	<i>goh-deh-reh</i>	to enjoy
<i>includere</i>	<i>een-kloo-deh-reh</i>	to include
<i>insistere</i>	<i>een-see-steh-reh</i>	to insist
<i>intendere</i>	<i>een-ten-deh-reh</i>	to intend
<i>interrompere</i>	<i>een-teh-rom-peh-reh</i>	to interrupt
<i>invadere</i>	<i>een-vah-deh-reh</i>	to invade
<i>leggere</i>	<i>leh-jeh-reh</i>	to read
<i>mettere</i>	<i>meh-teh-reh</i>	to put/place/set
<i>muovere</i>	<i>mwoh-veh-reh</i>	to move
<i>nascondere</i>	<i>nah-skon-deh-reh</i>	to hide
<i>offendere</i>	<i>oh-fen-deh-reh</i>	to offend
<i>perdere</i>	<i>per-deh-reh</i>	to lose
<i>permettere</i>	<i>per-meh-teh-reh</i>	to permit
<i>piangere</i>	<i>pee-yahn-jeh-reh</i>	to cry
<i>prendere</i>	<i>pren-deh-reh</i>	to take
<i>proteggere</i>	<i>proh-teh-jeh-reh</i>	to protect
<i>rendere</i>	<i>ren-deh-reh</i>	to render/give back
<i>resistere</i>	<i>reh-zee-steh-reh</i>	to resist
<i>ricevere</i>	<i>ree-cheh-veh-reh</i>	to receive
<i>ridere</i>	<i>ree-deh-reh</i>	to laugh
<i>riflettere</i>	<i>ree-fleh-teh-reh</i>	to reflect
<i>ripetere</i>	<i>ree-peh-teh-reh</i>	to repeat
<i>risolvere</i>	<i>ree-zol-veh-reh</i>	to resolve

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>rispondere</i>	<i>ree-spon-deh-reh</i>	to respond
<i>rompere</i>	<i>rom-peh-reh</i>	to break
<i>scendere</i>	<i>shen-deh-reh</i>	to descend
<i>scrivere</i>	<i>skree-veh-reh</i>	to write
<i>sorridere</i>	<i>soh-ree-deh-reh</i>	to smile
<i>sospendere</i>	<i>soh-spen-deh-reh</i>	to suspend
<i>spendere</i>	<i>spen-deh-reh</i>	to spend
<i>succedere</i>	<i>soo-cheh-deh-reh</i>	to happen/occur
<i>uccidere</i>	<i>oo-chee-deh-reh</i>	to kill
<i>vedere</i>	<i>veh-deh-reh</i>	to see
<i>vendere</i>	<i>ven-deh-reh</i>	to sell
<i>vincere</i>	<i>veen-cheh-reh</i>	to win
<i>vivere</i>	<i>vee-veh-reh</i>	to live

Practice Makes *Perfetto* II

Your plate is full and your eyes are bloodshot from the feast of verbs. Refer to the previous table and provide the correct verb form that best completes the sentences:

prendere

accendere

risolvere

vedere

spendere

scrivere

1. (Loro) _____ *molti soldi.*
2. (Io) _____ *una lettera.*
3. (Tu) _____ *la luce.*
4. (Noi) _____ *il film, Cinema Paradiso.*
5. (Lei) _____ *il problema.*
6. (Voi) _____ *il treno.*



As a Rule

Some verbs are only used in the third person: *piovere* (to rain), *nevicare* (to snow).



As a Rule

When two verbs appear together in series, the first is conjugated and the second remains in its infinitive form.

Giovanni preferisce studiare. (Giovanni prefers to study.)

The *-ire* Family

There are two groups of *-ire* verbs. The first group follows conjugation rules that are similar to those for the *-ere* verbs. As a matter of fact, they are the same except for the second-person plural (*voi*), as shown in the following table.



As a Rule

Two kinds of infinitive verbs end in *-ire*, both of which follow separate rules of conjugation. The first group includes verbs such as *aprire*, *dormire*, and *partire*. The second group includes the verbs *capire*, *finire*, and *pulire*. How do you determine which rules of conjugation to follow? The old-fashioned way: Practice and memorize the rules!

D Is for Dormire

As an example of the first group, see how this works with the verb *dormire* (to sleep).

Dormire (to Sleep)

Italian	English
<i>io dormo</i>	I sleep
<i>tu dormi</i>	you sleep
<i>lui/lei/Lei dorme</i>	he/she sleeps; You sleep
<i>noi dormiamo</i>	we sleep
<i>voi dormite</i>	you sleep
<i>loro dormono</i>	they sleep

The *-ire* Verbs (Group I)

A handful of verbs fall under this category. The following table shows you some of them.

Group I: Regular *-ire* Verbs

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>aprire</i>	<i>ah-pree-reh</i>	to open
<i>bollire</i>	<i>boh-lee-reh</i>	to boil
<i>convertire</i>	<i>kohn-ver-tee-reh</i>	to convert
<i>coprire</i>	<i>koh-pree-reh</i>	to cover
<i>dormire</i>	<i>dor-mee-reh</i>	to sleep
<i>fuggire</i>	<i>foo-jee-reh</i>	to escape
<i>mentire</i>	<i>men-tee-reh</i>	to lie
<i>offrire</i>	<i>oh-free-reh</i>	to offer
<i>partire</i>	<i>par-tee-reh</i>	to depart
<i>seguire</i>	<i>seh-gwee-reh</i>	to follow
<i>servire</i>	<i>ser-vee-reh</i>	to serve

More *-ire* Verbs (Group II)

The second group of *-ire* verbs is still considered regular but must be conjugated differently from other *-ire* verbs. Once you learn the endings, you'll have no problem conjugating them.

C Is for Capire

A commonly used verb from this family is the verb *capire* (to understand). Look at how this verb conjugates. If you can remember this verb, the others follow quite easily:

Capire (to Understand)

Italian	English
<i>io capisco</i>	I understand
<i>tu capisci</i>	you understand
<i>lui/lei/Lei capisce</i>	he/she understands; You understand
<i>noi capiamo</i>	we understand
<i>voi capite</i>	you understand
<i>loro capiscono</i>	they understand

The *-ire* Verbs (Group II)

The second group of *-ire* verbs includes interesting verbs such as *capire* (to understand), *impazzire* (to go crazy), and *tradire* (to betray)—all the verbs you'll need for a good juicy opera like *La Traviata*.



As a Rule

To make a negative statement, as in "I don't understand," add the word *non* in front of the verb.

Non capisco la lezione. I don't understand the lesson.

Antonio **non mangia** la carne. Antonio doesn't eat meat.

Non partiamo per l'America. We're not leaving for America.

Double negatives are acceptable in Italian, as in *No, non desidero niente*, which literally translates to "No, I don't want *nothing*." (Of course, in English you would say, "No, I don't want *anything*.")

Group II: *-ire* Verbs

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>aderire</i>	ah-deh-ree-reh	to adhere
<i>attribuire</i>	ah-tree-boo-ee-reh	to attribute
<i>capire</i>	kah-pee-reh	to understand
<i>colpire</i>	kol-pee-reh	to hit/strike
<i>costruire</i>	kohs-troo-wee-reh	to construct
<i>definire</i>	deh-fee-nee-reh	to define
<i>digerire</i>	dee-jeh-ree-reh	to digest
<i>diminuire</i>	dee-mee-noo-wee-reh	to diminish
<i>esaurire</i>	eh-zow-ree-reh	to exhaust
<i>fallire</i>	fah-lee-reh	to fail/go bankrupt
<i>finire</i>	fee-nee-reh	to finish
<i>garantire</i>	gah-rahn-tee-reh	to guarantee
<i>gestire</i>	jeh-stee-reh	to manage/administrate
<i>guarire</i>	gwah-ree-reh	to heal/recover
<i>impazzire</i>	eem-pah-tsee-reh	to go crazy
<i>istruire</i>	ee-stroo-wee-reh	to instruct/teach
<i>obbedire</i>	oh-beh-dee-reh	to obey
<i>preferire</i>	preh-feh-ree-reh	to prefer
<i>proibire</i>	pro-ee-bee-reh	to prohibit/forbid

Verb	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>pulire</i>	<i>poo-lee-reh</i>	to clean
<i>punire</i>	<i>poo-nee-reh</i>	to punish
<i>riunire</i>	<i>ree-yoo-nee-reh</i>	to reunite
<i>spedire</i>	<i>speh-dee-reh</i>	to send
<i>stabilire</i>	<i>sta-bee-lee-reh</i>	to establish
<i>suggerire</i>	<i>soo-jeh-ree-reh</i>	to suggest
<i>tradire</i>	<i>trah-dee-reh</i>	to betray/deceive
<i>trasferire</i>	<i>tras-feh-ree-reh</i>	to transfer
<i>unire</i>	<i>oo-nee-reh</i>	to unite

Asking Questions

No one knows everything. The curious mind wants to understand, so it needs to ask questions. In Italian, it is very easy to ask a question. This section shows you how to ask basic questions.

The Tags *Vero?* *No?* and *Giusto?*

Another way to ask a simple yes/no *domanda* (question) is to add the tags *vero?* (“true?” or “right?”), *no?* and *giusto?* (“is that so?” or “is that correct?”) to the end of a sentence:

<i>Partiamo alle otto, no?</i>	We’re leaving at 8:00, no?
<i>Capisci la lezione, vero?</i>	You understand the lesson, right?



Attenzione!

Be careful of sounding like a robot when you read aloud. Say it like you mean it! When asking questions, be sure to change your intonation. Your voice should start out lower and gradually rise until the end of a sentence, as you do in English: *Parla l’italiano?* (Do you speak Italian?)

And the *Risposta* Is ...

To answer a question affirmatively (yes), use *sì* and give your *risposta* (response).

To answer a question negatively (no), use *no* attached to *non* before the conjugated verb form. This is equivalent to our “don’t,” as in, “No, I don’t smoke.”

Question	Affirmative Answer	Negative Answer
<i>Lei fuma le sigarette?</i> Do you smoke cigarettes?	<i>Sì, fumo le sigarette.</i> Yes, I smoke cigarettes.	No, non fumo le sigarette. No, I don’t smoke cigarettes.
<i>Capisci la lezione?</i> Do you understand the lesson?	<i>Sì, capisco la lezione.</i> Yes, I understand the lesson.	No, non capisco la lezione. No, I don’t understand the lesson.

A Whole Lot of Niente

If you are answering a question and starting your sentence with “No,” these negative expressions generally come directly after the conjugated verb. Try to determine the meaning of these examples. If you have difficulty determining the significance of the verbs, find the stem of the verb and use the charts to find the infinitive form.

Italian	English	Example
<i>mai</i>	never	<i>Non fumo mai.</i>
<i>niente</i>	nothing	<i>Non desidero niente.*</i>
<i>nulla</i>	nothing	<i>Non compra nulla.*</i>
<i>nessuno</i>	no one	<i>Nessuno arriva.</i>

* Unlike English, Italian allows for double negatives.

Take a deep breath and let it out. Crack your spine, stretch your arms, and roll your head around a couple of times.

If you're finding the lessons increasingly challenging, it's because you're in the thick of the woods right now. Even if you went no further than this chapter, you would have enough Italian to get by. However, you might want to browse your bookstore for a good verb book, such as Barron's *501 Italian Verbs*, to deepen your understanding of them.

After you've had time to digest this rather heavy meal, come back to this chapter as you progress in your studies. It will serve you well.

The Least You Need to Know

- Any verb that follows a subject noun or pronoun must be properly conjugated.
- There are three verb families: *-are*, *-ere*, and *-ire*. Each has its own set of conjugation rules.
- The verbs are the most essential aspect of learning a foreign language. Take your time and learn the verbs that you'll use the most.



Being There

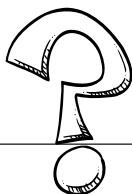
In This Chapter

- ▶ To be or not to be: the verbs *essere* and *stare*
- ▶ What you have: the verb *avere*
- ▶ Idiomatic expressions using *essere* and *avere*
- ▶ Professions
- ▶ Nationalities and religions
- ▶ *Ecco*
- ▶ *C'è* and *ci sono*

Your commitment and discipline are beginning to pay off. In Chapter 5, “Expressively Yours,” you learned how to say hello and good-bye. In Chapter 6, “Almost Everything You Wanted to Know About Sex,” you learned everything you ever wanted to know about gender issues. In Chapter 7, “What’s the Subject?” you became clear on how to address strangers and what to call your friends and family. In the last chapter, you learned all about regular verbs. You may have noticed an essential verb missing from the list, the *most* essential verb: *to be*. This chapter is going to tell you everything you ever wanted to know—and maybe a little more—about the different ways to be.

You’ll also learn about another important verb: *to have*. You’ll find out that there’s a lot to be had with this versatile verb.

In short, it’s time to learn your first irregular verbs.



What's What

A **helping verb** is used to form other tenses, including compound tenses such as the *present perfect* tense. In English, we usually use the **auxiliary verb** *to have*, as in "I have eaten." In Italian, there are three helping verbs: *essere* (to be), *avere* (to have), and *stare* (to be), the latter being principally to create the *present progressive* tense (as in "I am leaving").

The Birds and the Be's

Two different *verbi* are used to express "to be" in Italian: *essere* and *stare*.

When you ask someone, *Come stai?* (How are you?), you're using the verb *stare*.

When you say, *L'Italia è bella* (Italy is beautiful), you're using the verb *essere*. Because the two verbs mean the same thing, the difference between the two concerns usage. Both verbs can stand on their own, but they can also be used as *helping* or *auxiliary* verbs. You'll need helping verbs when you want to talk about the past and when you want to form compound tenses.



Attenzione!

Don't be confused between *è* (is) and *e* (and)—the accent tells you when it's the verb.

The Verb *Essere*

Look at how the highly irregular verb *essere* conjugates in the following table. It might be a good idea to refer back to Chapter 7 to review the many ways of expressing "you" in Italian. You'll get a lot of mileage out of this one verb—learn it like the back of your hand.

The Verb *Essere*

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>io sono</i>	I am	<i>noi siamo</i>	we are
<i>tu sei</i>	you are	<i>voi siete</i>	you are
<i>lui/lei/Lei è</i>	he/she (it)* is; You are	<i>loro sono</i>	they are

*Italian has no neuter "it"—it uses the verb form alone to refer to things or animals.



As a Rule

The verb *essere* uses the same conjugation for the first-person singular as the third-person plural—*sono*. To ascertain the subject (“I” or “they”), look for clues such as a subject pronoun (*io* or *loro*), or infer the subject through the context of the statement by looking at the articles, nouns, or adjective endings (which must always reflect gender and plurality).

Sono una donna sincera.

I am a sincere woman.

Sono donne sincere.

They are sincere women.

The Verb *Stare*

The verb *stare* is easy to learn. Study the following table to see how it is conjugated.

The Verb *Stare*

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>io sto</i>	I am	<i>noi stiamo</i>	we are
<i>tu stai</i>	you are	<i>voi state</i>	you are
<i>lui/lei/Lei sta</i>	he/she (it) is; You are	<i>loro stanno</i>	they are



Attenzione!

You should always address a man as *Signore* (Mr./Sir) and a woman as *Signora* (Mrs./Ms.); young girls can be addressed as *Signorina* (Miss). When asking someone how they are, you should err on the side of formality and use the polite form of the verb *stare*, as in:

Come sta?

How are you?

The response will generally be:

Sto bene, grazie, e Lei?

I am well, thanks, and you?

Essere vs. Stare: What's the Difference?

Although the verbs *essere* and *stare* both mean “to be,” each verb follows specific rules of usage.

When to Use Essere

The verb *essere* is used in several different ways:

- To describe nationalities, origins, and inherent unchanging qualities:

Maurizio è di Verona.

Maurizio is from Verona.

I Gambini sono italiani.

The Gambinis are Italian.

La banana è gialla.

The banana is yellow.

- To identify the subject or describe the subject's character traits:

Maria è bionda.

Maria is blond.

Sono io.

It's me.

- To talk about the time:

Che ore sono?

What time is it?

Sono le tre e mezzo.

It is 3:30.

- To talk about the date:

Natale è il 25 dicembre.

Christmas is December 25.

Che giorno è?

What day is it?

Oggi è lunedì.

Today is Monday.

- To indicate possession:

Questo è lo zio di Anna.

This is Anna's uncle.

Quella è la mia casa.

That is my house.

- For certain impersonal expressions:

È una bella giornata.

It is a beautiful day.

È molto importante studiare.

It is very important to study.

Come Sei Intelligente!

Now, prove how smart you are. Use the correct form of *essere* in the following phrases:

1. Luisa _____ una bella persona.
2. Grazie per i fiori! Tu _____ romantico.
3. Abelardo e Antonella _____ di Firenze.
4. Gli occhi _____ le finestre dell'anima.
5. Voi _____ generosi.

When to Use Stare

You're already familiar with the most commonly used expression in Italian, *Come sta?* With few exceptions, the verb *stare* is also used in the following ways:

- To describe a temporary state or condition of the subject:

<i>Come sta?</i>	How are you?
<i>Sto bene, grazie.</i>	I am well, thanks.
- To express a location:

<i>Stiamo in albergo.</i>	We are staying in a hotel.
<i>Patrizia sta a casa.</i>	Patricia is at home.
- In many idiomatic expressions:

<i>Stia attento!</i>	Pay attention!
<i>Stia zitto!</i>	Be quiet!
- To form the progressive tenses (see Chapter 15, "I Can't Believe My Eyes!"):

<i>Stiamo andando al cinema.</i>	We are going to the movies.
<i>Sto studiando il mio libro.</i>	I am studying my book.



As a Rule

The preposition *di* (of, from) is often used to show origin or possession, or to describe what something is made of. If the noun preceding *di* begins with a vowel, the *i* is dropped and a contraction is formed.

Di is always preceded by the verb *essere*:

<i>Siamo di Napoli.</i>	We are from Naples.
<i>Questa macchina è di Beppino.</i>	This car is Beppino's.
<i>L'anello è d'argento.</i>	The ring is (made of) silver.

Chitchat

You're having a *conversazione* with the person sitting next to you on the plane. Should you use the verb *essere* or *stare*? Complete the following *frasi* with the correct form of the necessary *verbo*:

1. Noi _____ nella pensione Paradiso per due giorni.
2. Come _____ Lei?
3. Io _____ bene, grazie.
4. Loro _____ turisti.
5. Il ristorante Caffè Greco _____ famoso.
6. Villa Borghese _____ molto bella.



As a Rule

Use this formula to express
"there is" or "is there ...?":
ci + è = c'è.

C'è and Ci sono (There Is, There Are)

The word *ci* used with the third person of *essere* indicates "there is" and "there are." This important little adverb states the existence or presence of something or someone. When *ci* is used with the third-person singular *è*, the contraction *c'è* is created:

C'è tempo; non c'è fretta. There is time; there is no hurry.

Ci sono molti turisti a Roma. There are many tourists in Rome.

Asking Questions

When asking a question, intonation is everything. When using *c'è* in a question, the word order stays the same. Like in English, you should raise your voice at the end of the sentence:

C'è una banca?

Is there a bank?

Ci sono letti?

Are there beds?

Say It Isn't So

To make negative statements, simply add the word *non* in front of the sentence:

Non c'è problema.

There is no problem.

Non ci sono letti.

There are no beds.

Fill in the Blanks

Study the following phrases and fill in the blanks with either *c'è* or *ci sono*. Translate the sentences. Don't forget to look at the endings to determine whether the subject is singular or plural. If you're unsure about the meaning of a word, consult the glossary in the back of the book.

Example: _____ *un supermercato?*

Answer: C'è *un supermercato?*

1. _____ *un museo?*
2. _____ *58.000.000 abitanti in Italia.*
3. _____ *due piazze.*
4. _____ *un bagno privato in camera?*
5. _____ *molti ristoranti a Roma.*
6. _____ *quattro stagioni.*
7. _____ *molti treni?*
8. *Non* _____ *benzina.*

It's Time to Have Some Fun: *Avere*

The irregular verb *avere* (to have) is used in myriad situations and idiomatic *espressioni* and is virtually unrecognizable from its infinitive when it has been conjugated. The following table outlines this useful verb.



La Bella Lingua

The verb *avere* is one of the few verbs with a silent letter that is used primarily to distinguish the conjugations from other Italian words. For example, take the *h* out of *ho* and you have *o*, meaning “or.” Take the *h* out of *hai* and you have the contraction *ai*, meaning “to the.” Take the *h* out of *ha* and you have the preposition *a*, meaning “to”; take the *h* out of *hanno* and you have the word *anno*, meaning “year.”

Avere

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>io ho</i>	I have	<i>noi abbiamo</i>	we have
<i>tu hai</i>	you have	<i>voi avete</i>	you have
<i>lui/lei/Lei ha</i>	he/she has; You have	<i>loro hanno</i>	they have

If you're interested in understanding just how many more ways you can communicate with *avere*, check out that friendly companion, your *dizionario*, or better yet, invest in a book such as *2001 Italian and English Idioms*, published by Barron's Educational Series.



Attenzione!

Always use the verb *avere* to indicate when you are feeling hot or cold. Never use the verb *essere* (to be). Otherwise, it may come out that you are either a cold, unfeeling person or its opposite, as in "hot-to-trot."

When to Use Avere

Aside from meaning "to have," the verb *avere* is used to express when you are hungry, when you feel cold, and when you want to talk about how old you are. You use *avere* in these situations:

- To ask someone his or her age.
- With idiomatic expressions. Many Italian expressions are metaphors. For example, if you're really hungry, you can say, *Ho una fame da lupo!* (I am hungry as a wolf!)
- As an auxiliary—or helping—verb. Use this verb to form the present perfect tense, as in *Ho mangiato* (I have eaten). You'll learn more about this tense in Chapter 19, "Having Fun Italian Style."

An Idiot's Guide to Idioms with Avere

Translations are not always literal. The idiomatic expressions in the following table will help you express your needs and feelings. The infinitive form of the verb is given in parenthesis; it is up to you to conjugate it.

Needs and Feelings

Italian	English
(<i>avere</i>) <i>l'abitudine di</i>	to have the habit of
(<i>avere</i>) ____ <i>anni</i>	to be ____ years old
(<i>avere</i>) <i>bisogno di</i>	to need
(<i>avere</i>) <i>caldo</i>	to be hot (literally, to feel hot)
(<i>avere</i>) <i>colpa</i>	to be at fault, to be guilty
(<i>avere</i>) <i>fame</i>	to be hungry
(<i>avere</i>) <i>la fortuna di</i>	to have the fortune to/of
(<i>avere</i>) <i>freddo</i>	to be cold (literally, to feel cold)
(<i>avere</i>) <i>l'intenzione di</i>	to have the intention of
(<i>avere</i>) <i>mal di</i>	to have pain/to be sick
(<i>avere</i>) <i>l'occasione di</i>	to have the chance to

Italian	English
(avere) l'opportunità di	to have the opportunity to
(avere) paura	to be afraid
(avere) la possibilità di	to have the possibility to
(avere) ragione	to be right
(avere) sete	to be thirsty
(avere) sonno	to be sleepy
(avere) torto	to be wrong
(avere) vergogna	to be ashamed
(avere) voglia di	to be in the mood, to feel like



La Bella Lingua

In Italian, you would never ask how *old* someone is. *Old* never enters the equation. Instead, ask how many years a person has:

Quanti anni hai?

How many years do you have?

Express Yourself

Express your needs. Start by using either *ho* (I have) or *sono* (I am), and add the appropriate Italian word to say the following:

Example: When you are afraid, you say ... *Ho paura*.

1. When you are hungry, you say ... _____.
2. When the temperature drops below freezing and you don't have a coat, you say ... _____.
3. When your legs feel like lead weights and you can't keep your eyes open, you say ... _____.
4. When you want to indicate your age, you say ... _____.
5. When you are embarrassed, you might say ... _____.

Professionally Speaking

As you learned back in Chapter 6, in English, most professional *titoli* (titles) are neuter (doctor, lawyer, teacher), with a few exceptions such as waiter/waitress and actor/actress. Italian professions must reflect the gender of the subject. Exceptions include professions ending in *-a*, such as *dentista* (dentist) and *artista* (artist). In these cases, you will have to pay attention to the article preceding the *professione* to know whether the subject is *maschile* or *femminile*.



Did You Know?

If you're in a major city like New York or Washington, you can visit your local Italian consulate, embassy, or Italian tourist board to gather free maps, pamphlets, and travel guides. You can also find out who is doing business in your field. You may be permitted to leave your company's promotional materials with them.

- Many professions ending in *-o* or *-e* often change to *-a* to reflect gender:

l'archeologo becomes *l'archeologa*
(archeologist)

lo scienziato becomes *la scienziata* (scientist)

- Certain Italian professions have gender-specific endings such as *-ice*:

l'attore becomes *l'attrice* (actor/actress)

lo scrittore becomes *la scrittrice* (writer)

- Other professions end in *-essa*:

il dottore becomes *la dottoressa* (doctor)

il poeta becomes *la poetessa* (poet)

il professore becomes *la professoressa*
(professor)

In My Professional Opinion

The following table lists several common professions. If you have a *professione* that is atypical, such as a dog walker or floral designer, you may want to consult your *dizionario*. Note that some words such as *il* (or *la*) *contabile* and *il* (or *la*) *dentista* can be used for either gender. I have also indicated when there are separate words such as *attore* and *attrice* (actor and actress) for the same *professione*.

Professions

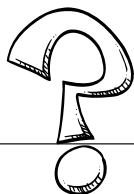
Profession	Professione	Pronunciation
accountant	<i>il/la contabile</i>	<i>eel/lah kon-tah-bee-leh</i>
actor	<i>l'attore</i>	<i>lah-toh-reh</i>
actress	<i>l'attrice</i>	<i>lah-tree-cheh</i>
archeologist	<i>l'archeologo</i> <i>l'archeologa</i>	<i>lar-keh-oh-loh-goh</i> <i>lar-keh-oh-loh-gah</i>

Profession	Professione	Pronunciation
architect	<i>l'architetto</i>	<i>lar-kee-teh-toh</i>
	<i>l'architetta</i>	<i>lar-kee-teh-tah</i>
artist	<i>l'artista</i>	<i>lar-tees-tah</i>
banker	<i>il bancario</i>	<i>eel bahn-kah-ree-yoh</i>
	<i>la bancaria</i>	<i>lah bahn-kah-ree-yah</i>
barber	<i>il barbiere</i>	<i>eel bar-bee-yeh-reh</i>
cashier	<i>il cassiere</i>	<i>eel kah-see-eh-reh/</i>
	<i>la cassiera</i>	<i>lah kah-see-eh-rah</i>
consultant	<i>il/la consulente</i>	<i>eel/lah kon-soo-len-teh</i>
dentist	<i>il/la dentista</i>	<i>eel/lah den-tees-tah</i>
doctor	<i>il dottore</i>	<i>eel doh-toh-reh</i>
	<i>la dottoressa</i>	<i>lah doh-toh-reh-sah</i>
editor	<i>l'editore</i>	<i>leh-dee-toh-reh</i>
	<i>l'editrice</i>	<i>leh-dee-tree-cheh</i>
electrician	<i>l'elettricista</i>	<i>eh-leh-tree-chee-stah</i>
environmentalist	<i>l'ecologo</i>	<i>eh-koh-loh-goh</i>
	<i>l'ecologa</i>	<i>eh-koh-loh-goh</i>
firefighter	<i>il pompiere</i>	<i>eel pom-pee-yeh-reh</i>
	<i>il/la vigile del fuoco</i>	<i>eel/lah vee-jeh-leh del fwoh-koh</i>
hair dresser	<i>il parrucchiere</i>	<i>eel pah-roo-kee-eh-reh</i>
	<i>la parrucchiera</i>	<i>lah pah-roo-kee-eh-rah</i>
housewife	<i>la casalinga</i>	<i>lah kah-zah-leen-gah</i>
jeweler	<i>il/la gioielliere</i>	<i>eel joh-yeh-lee-eh-reh</i>
lawyer	<i>l'avvocato</i>	<i>lah-voh-kah-toh</i>
manager	<i>il/la dirigente</i>	<i>eel/lah dee-ree-jen-teh</i>
mechanic	<i>il meccanico</i>	<i>eel meh-kah-nee-koh</i>
musician	<i>il/la musicista</i>	<i>eel/lah moo-zee-chee-stah</i>
nurse	<i>l'infermiere</i>	<i>leen-fer-mee-eh-reh</i>
	<i>l'infermiera</i>	<i>leen-fer-mee-eh-rah</i>
plumber	<i>l'idraulico</i>	<i>lee-drow-lee-koh</i>
police officer	<i>il vigile</i>	<i>eel vee-jee-leh</i>
	<i>la vigilessa</i>	<i>lah vee-jee-leh-sah</i>
professor	<i>il professore</i>	<i>eel proh-feh-soh-reh</i>
	<i>la professoressa</i>	<i>lah proh-feh-soh-reh-sah</i>
scientist	<i>lo scienziato</i>	<i>loh shee-en-zee-ah-toh</i>
	<i>la scienziata</i>	<i>lah shee-en-zee-ah-tah</i>
secretary	<i>il segretario</i>	<i>eel seh-greh-tah-ree-oh</i>
	<i>la segretaria</i>	<i>lah seh-greh-tah-ree-ah</i>

continues

Professions (continued)

Profession	Professione	Pronunciation
stock broker	<i>l'agente di borsa</i>	<i>lah-jen-teh dee bor-sah</i>
student	<i>lo studente</i> <i>la studentessa</i>	<i>loh stoo-den-teh</i> <i>lah stoo-den-teh-sah</i>
teacher	<i>l'insegnante</i>	<i>leen-sen-ahn-teh</i>
waiter	<i>il cameriere</i>	<i>eel kah-meh-ree-eh-reh</i>
waitress/maid	<i>la cameriera</i>	<i>lah kah-meh-ree-eh-rah</i>
worker	<i>l'operaio</i> <i>l'operaia</i>	<i>loh-per-ay-oh</i> <i>loh-per-ay-ah</i>
writer	<i>lo scrittore</i> <i>la scrittrice</i>	<i>loh skree-toh-reh</i> <i>lah skree-tree-cheh</i>



What's What

In Italian, one way to show possession is with the use of **possessive adjectives** (my, your, his, her, its, our, and their). They're considered adjectives (unlike in English, where they're considered pronouns) because they must agree in gender and number with the noun possessed, *not* with the possessor. The definite article must usually precede the possessive adjective. For example:

<i>la mia casa</i>	my house
<i>il suo libro</i>	his book

You're most certainly familiar with this common Italian expression that utilizes a possessive adjective:

<i>Mamma mia!</i>	Mother of mine!
-------------------	-----------------

You'll see more of these in Chapter 10, "Tell Me About Your Childhood."

So, What's Your Story?

You can only go so far with the niceties; it's time to get into the nitty-gritty. You want to ask about someone else, and the first thing that comes to mind is profession. This is where the verb *essere* comes in handy. You'll learn more about asking

questions in Chapter 12, “Moving Around,” but for now, give it a shot. Begin your response with *sono* (I am), as in “*Sono dentista*.”

Qual è la Sua professione? What is your profession?

If the other person is a peer and you feel comfortable enough to use the *tu* form, note how the possessive changes:

Qual è la tua professione? What is your profession?



La Bella Lingua

If you're lucky enough to be self-employed, you can say, *Lavoro in proprio*.

We, the People

It's *impossibile* not to meet people from different nationalities and backgrounds when you are traveling. Aside from the guidebook you carry in your right hand and the camera hanging from your neck, it's obvious that you are a *straniero* (foreigner), and the Italians are going to be curious about why you have come to Italy. Don't be surprised if you are asked your origins when you visit Italy.

Lei è d'origine italiana? (polite) Sì, sono d'origine italiana.
 Are you of Italian origin? Yes, I am of Italian origin.
Sei d'origine italiana? (familiar) No, sono d'origine russa.
 Are you of Italian origin? No, I am of Russian origin.

Nationalities

The following table provides a general listing of nationalities. With only a few exceptions, most of these should be easy to remember because they're similar to their English counterparts. Nationalities are adjectives; gender must be reflected in the ending. You'll learn everything you need to know about adjectives in Chapter 10.

Nationalities

English	Italian	Pronunciation
African	<i>africano(a)</i>	<i>ah-free-kah-noh(ah)</i>
American	<i>americano(a)</i>	<i>ah-meh-ree-kah-noh(ah)</i>
Belgian	<i>belga</i>	<i>bel-gah</i>
Canadian	<i>canadese</i>	<i>kah-nah-deh-zeh</i>
Chinese	<i>cinese</i>	<i>chee-neh-zeh</i>
Danish	<i>danese</i>	<i>dah-neh-zeh</i>
Dutch	<i>olandese</i>	<i>oh-lan-deh-zeh</i>

continues

Nationalities (continued)

English	Italian	Pronunciation
Egyptian	<i>egiziano(a)</i>	<i>eh-jee-zee-ah-noh(ah)</i>
English	<i>inglese</i>	<i>een-gleh-zeh</i>
European	<i>europeo(a)</i>	<i>eh-oo-roh-peh-oh(ah)</i>
French	<i>francese</i>	<i>frahn-cheh-zeh</i>
German	<i>tedesco(a)</i>	<i>teh-des-koh(ah)</i>
Greek	<i>greco(a)</i>	<i>greh-koh(ah)</i>
Indian	<i>indiano(a)</i>	<i>een-dee-ah-noh(ah)</i>
Israeli	<i>israeliano(a)</i>	<i>ees-rah-eh-lee-ah-noh(ah)</i>
Irish	<i>irlandese</i>	<i>eer-lahn-deh-zeh</i>
Italian	<i>italiano(a)</i>	<i>ee-tah-lee-yah-noh(ah)</i>
Japanese	<i>giapponese</i>	<i>jah-poh-neh-zeh</i>
Korean	<i>coreano(a)</i>	<i>koh-ree-ah-noh(ah)</i>
Mexican	<i>messicano(a)</i>	<i>meh-see-kah-noh(ah)</i>
Norwegian	<i>norvegese</i>	<i>nor-veh-jeh-zeh</i>
Polish	<i>polacco(a)</i>	<i>poh-lah-koh(ah)</i>
Russian	<i>russo(a)</i>	<i>roo-soh(ah)</i>
Spanish	<i>spagnolo(a)</i>	<i>spahn-yoh-loh(ah)</i>
Swedish	<i>svedese</i>	<i>sveh-deh-zeh</i>
Swiss	<i>svizzero(a)</i>	<i>svee-tseh-roh(ah)</i>
Turkish	<i>turco(a)</i>	<i>toor-koh(ah)</i>



As a Rule

In Italian, nationalities are *not* capitalized. Countries, however, are always capitalized. Countries should always be preceded with the definite article.

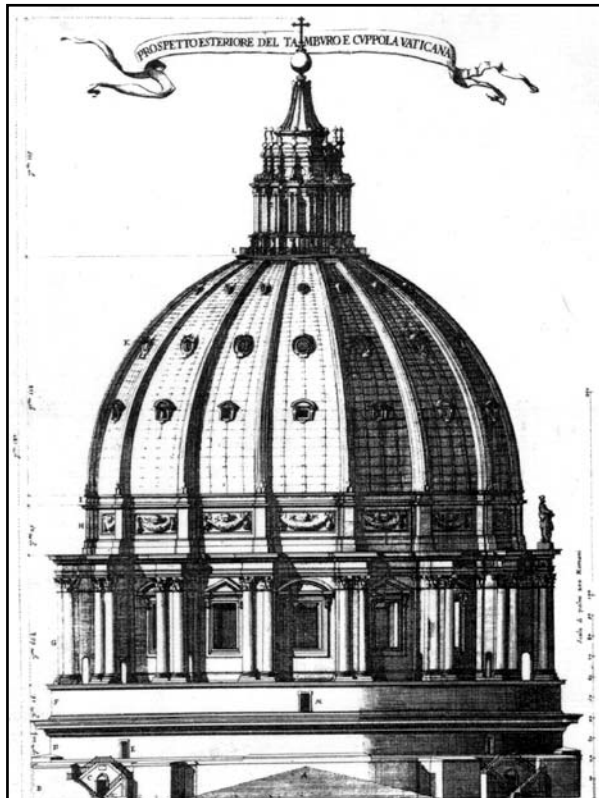
<i>italiano</i>	Italian
<i>l'Italia</i>	Italy

Do You Believe?

You might be asked about your *religione*; some answers are provided in the following table.

Religions

English	Italian	Pronunciation
agnostic	<i>agnostico(a)</i>	<i>ah-nyoh-stee-koh(ah)</i>
atheist	<i>ateo(a)</i>	<i>ah-teh-oh(ah)</i>
Buddhist	<i>buddista</i>	<i>boo-dees-tah</i>
Catholic	<i>cattolico(a)</i>	<i>kah-toh-lee-koh(ah)</i>
Christian	<i>cristiano(a)</i>	<i>kree-stee-ah-noh(ah)</i>
Jewish	<i>ebreo(a)</i>	<i>eh-breh-oh(ah)</i>
Hindu	<i>indù</i>	<i>een-doo</i>
Muslim	<i>mussulmano(a)</i>	<i>moo-sool-mah-noh(ah)</i>
Protestant	<i>protestante</i>	<i>proh-tes-tahn-teh</i>



La Cupola di S. Pietro.

Back to Your Roots

Translate the following sentences into Italian. Determine what the subject is and modify your nationality accordingly.

Example: Wen Wen is Chinese.

Answer: *Wen Wen è cinese.*

1. Olivier is French and lives in Paris.
2. Patrizia is Catholic and has five sisters.
3. Primo Levi is Jewish.
4. Massimo is of Italian origin.
5. There are many Japanese tourists in Italy.



Did You Know?

Here's a Who's Who of mythological archetypes. The Romans and Greeks shared many of the same gods. The Greek equivalents are in parentheses.

The Gods

Apollo (Apollo)

Jupiter (Zeus)

Mars (Ares)

Mercury (Hermes)

Neptune (Poseidon)

Vulcan (Hephaistos)

The Goddesses

Ceres (Demeter)

Diana (Artemis)

Juno (Hera)

Minerva (Athena)

Venus (Aphrodite)

Vesta (Hestia)

Ecco!

The word *ecco* is not what you hear when you scream into a canyon. We're not talking about Nietzsche's *Ecce Homo*, either. An adverb, *ecco* can mean "here" or "there."

Ecco la stazione!

Here's the station!

Ecco Gabriella!

Here's Gabriella!

Eccomi!

Here I am!

Ecco can also be used to express understanding or agreement, and it is very similar to the French word *voilà*, meaning, “Here it is! Got it!”



As a Rule

In Italian, object pronouns can be tricky because they resemble the articles. Object pronouns can be attached to the end of the word *ecco* to express, “Here it is!” Because there is no neuter “it” in Italian, object pronouns must always reflect gender and plurality. The singular object pronouns used for “it” are simple:

Lo is used for masculine singular nouns, as in *Eccolo!* (Here it is!)

La is used for feminine singular nouns, as in *Eccola!* (Here it is!)

You’ll learn more about object pronouns in Chapter 16, “Shop ‘Til You Drop.”

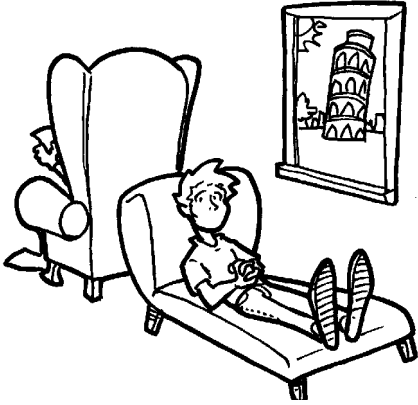
Eureka!

Imagine that you’re in Italy walking through the streets of *Roma*. Using *ecco*, try expressing the fact that you’ve found the following places:

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>il museo</i> | 7. <i>l'albergo</i> |
| 2. <i>il ristorante</i> | 8. <i>il bar</i> |
| 3. <i>la banca</i> | 9. <i>l'ospedale</i> |
| 4. <i>il negozio</i> | 10. <i>l'autobus</i> |
| 5. <i>la strada</i> | 11. <i>lo stadio</i> |
| 6. <i>la stazione</i> | 12. <i>il supermercato</i> |

The Least You Need to Know

- Two verbs express the action “to be”: *essere* (used to express various states of existence) and *stare* (used to describe a temporary condition).
- *Avere* (to have) is an important verb that can also be used to express expressions of luck, intention, and opportunity. It is also used as an auxiliary verb.
- Italian professions almost always reflect the gender of the subject.



Tell Me About Your Childhood

In This Chapter

- Making introductions
- Expressing possession using *di*
- Using possessive adjectives
- Describing things: adjectives
- Forming and using adverbs

You've covered the nouns and their noun markers, learned about your verbs and are ready to add some color. In this chapter you'll learn all about adjectives, adverbs, and how to express possession

One of the *Famiglia*

In Italy, one of the first things people want to know about is your family. Do you have brothers or sisters? Are you of Italian descent or one of the many who have fallen in love with the *cultura*, the beautiful landscapes, and the *arte*? It's time to take the chitchat a step further. First, let's take a look at who's who in *la famiglia* in the following table.

Family Members

Female	Pronunciation	Meaning	Male	Pronunciation	Meaning
<i>madre</i>	<i>mah-dreh</i>	mother	<i>padre</i>	<i>pah-dreh</i>	father
<i>moglie</i>	<i>moh-lyeh</i>	wife	<i>marito</i>	<i>mah-ree-toh</i>	husband
<i>nonna</i>	<i>noh-nah</i>	grandmother	<i>nonno</i>	<i>noh-noh</i>	grandfather
<i>figlia</i>	<i>fee-lyah</i>	daughter	<i>figlio</i>	<i>fee-lyoh</i>	son
<i>bambina</i>	<i>bahm-bee-nah</i>	infant	<i>bambino</i>	<i>bahm-bee-noh</i>	infant
<i>sorella</i>	<i>soh-reh-lah</i>	sister	<i>fratello</i>	<i>frah-teh-loh</i>	brother
<i>cugina</i>	<i>koo-jee-nah</i>	cousin	<i>cugino</i>	<i>koo-jee-noh</i>	cousin
<i>zia</i>	<i>zee-ah</i>	aunt	<i>zio</i>	<i>zee-oh</i>	uncle
<i>nipote</i>	<i>nee-poh-teh</i>	granddaughter	<i>nipote</i>	<i>nee-poh-teh</i>	grandson
<i>nipote</i>	<i>nee-poh-teh</i>	niece	<i>nipote</i>	<i>nee-poh-teh</i>	nephew
<i>suocera</i>	<i>swoh-cheh-rah</i>	mother-in-law	<i>suocero</i>	<i>swoh-cheh-roh</i>	father-in-law
<i>nuora</i>	<i>nwoh-rah</i>	daughter-in-law	<i>genero</i>	<i>jen-eh-roh</i>	son-in-law
<i>cognata</i>	<i>koh-nyah-tah</i>	sister-in-law	<i>cognato</i>	<i>koh-nyah-toh</i>	brother-in-law
<i>madrigna</i>	<i>mah-dree-nyah</i>	stepmother	<i>padrigno</i>	<i>pah-dree-nyoh</i>	stepfather
<i>sorellastra</i>	<i>soh-reh-lah- strah</i>	stepsister	<i>fratellastro</i>	<i>frah-teh-lah-stroh</i>	stepbrother
<i>madrina</i>	<i>mah-dree-nah</i>	godmother	<i>padrino</i>	<i>pah-dree-noh</i>	godfather
<i>ragazza</i>	<i>rah-gah-tsah</i>	girlfriend	<i>ragazzo</i>	<i>rah-gah-tsoh</i>	boyfriend
<i>fidanzata</i>	<i>fee-dahn-zah-tah</i>	fiancée	<i>fidanzato</i>	<i>fee-dahn-zah-toh</i>	fiancé
<i>vedova</i>	<i>veh-doh-vah</i>	widow	<i>vedovo</i>	<i>veh-doh-voh</i>	widower

Are You Possessed?

You will always be somebody's somebody: your mother's child, your brother's sister, your dog's owner, your wife's husband. In English, we use 's or s' to show possession. In Italian there are two ways of showing possession.

You show possession by using *di*, as in:

Silvia è la figlia di Pepe.

Silvia is Pepe's daughter. (Silvia is the daughter of Pepe.)

You can show possession by using a possessive adjective, as in the familiar expressions:

<i>Dio mio!</i>	My God!
<i>Mamma mia!</i>	Mother of mine!



As a Rule

When discussing the collective "children," Italian reverts to the masculine plural: *i figli*. The same goes for friends: *gli amici*. One's *genitori* (parents) can be simply referred to as *i miei* (coming from the possessive adjective "my," as in "my parents"). The word used to describe a niece/nephew and a granddaughter/grandson is the same: *nipote*.

Using *Di* to Show Possession

The simplest way to express possession is to use *di*, meaning "of." Look at the following example to see how this works.

Questa è la casa di Mario.

This is Mario's house. (This is the house of Mario.)



As a Rule

The phrases "of mine," "of his," "of yours," and so on do not require a definite article.

<i>una mia speranza</i>	a hope of mine
<i>due suoi amici</i>	two friends of his
<i>una sua collega</i>	a colleague of his

Forming Contractions with *Di*

Notice how the endings of the contractions correspond to the articles, and pay attention to how *di* changes form when forming a contraction. Contractions are explained in more detail in Chapter 11, "Finally, You're at the Airport."

Contractions with *Di*

Singular	Plural
<i>di + il = del</i>	<i>di + i = dei</i>
<i>di + lo = dello</i>	<i>di + gli = degli</i>
<i>di + l' = dell'</i>	<i>di + le = delle</i>
<i>di + la = della</i>	



As a Rule

The terms *signore*, *signora*, and *signorina* are often used in place of “the man,” “the woman,” and “the young woman”:

La macchina della signora è nuova.

The woman's car is new.

Examples using contractions with *di* are ...

Ecco le chiavi della macchina.

Here are the car keys. (Here are the keys of the car.)

C'è il figlio del presidente.

There is the president's son. (There is the son of the president.)



Attenzione!

When it isn't clear who the possessor is, use *di* to indicate the subject:

Il libro di Rosetta.

Rosetta's book. (The book of Rosetta.)

La macchina di Antonio.

Antonio's car. (The car of Antonio.)

Possessive Adjectives

“A possessive what?” you ask. Don't panic. In English, we call them possessive pronouns, such as *my*, *your*, *his*, and *our*. In Italian, the possessive adjectives must be followed by the noun it is possessing or modifying (“my house,” “your house,” and so on). It will help to keep a few things in mind.

First, you have to ask what is being possessed. Second, you need to choose the possessive adjective that agrees with it. In Italian, what is important is the gender of the noun. For instance, if what is being possessed is masculine singular, then your possessive adjective must also be masculine singular. Compare the English possessives to their Italian counterparts in these examples. Contrary to English usage, Italian forms do not distinguish between “his” and “her”; pay special attention to how *suo* and *sua* are used.

Gino ama sua madre e suo padre. Gino loves **his** mother and **his** father.
Beatrice ama sua madre e suo padre. Beatrice loves **her** mother and **her** father.



As a Rule

When speaking of family members, there is no article required before the possessive adjective. Take a look at the following examples:

Mia madre è una donna forte.
 My mother is a strong woman.

The following table summarizes the use of possessive adjectives. Keep in mind that in most cases, the possessive adjectives require the use of the definite article.

Possessive Adjectives

Possessive	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
my	<i>il mio</i>	<i>la mia</i>	<i>i miei</i>	<i>le mie</i>
your	<i>il tuo</i>	<i>la tua</i>	<i>i tuoi</i>	<i>le tue</i>
his/her (its)	<i>il suo</i>	<i>la sua</i>	<i>i suoi</i>	<i>le sue</i>
Your*	<i>il Suo</i>	<i>la Sua</i>	<i>i Suoi</i>	<i>le Sue</i>
our	<i>il nostro</i>	<i>la nostra</i>	<i>i nostri</i>	<i>le nostre</i>
your	<i>il vostro</i>	<i>la vostra</i>	<i>i vostri</i>	<i>le vostre</i>
their	<i>il loro</i>	<i>la loro</i>	<i>i loro</i>	<i>le loro</i>

*As you may remember, *Lei*, the polite form of “You,” is capitalized to distinguish it from *lei* (she). The possessive adjectives are also capitalized to make this distinction.

A Sense of Belonging

Determine the appropriate possessive adjective using the previous list for the following:

Example: her house

Answer: *la sua casa*

1. his house
2. my school
3. her books
4. his books
5. your (familiar) friend Mario



La Bella Lingua

If someone asks you a question you don't know the answer to, shrug your shoulders and say *Chi sa?* (Who knows?) or *Non lo so.* (I don't know.)

It's Good to Know

Two verbs are equivalent to the English verb "to know": *sapere* (to know something) and *conoscere* (to know someone).

Sapere: To Know Something

The verb *sapere* is what you use to talk about all the information you have stuck inside that head of yours.

Sapere

Italian	English
<i>io so</i>	I know
<i>tu sai</i>	you know
<i>lui/lei/Lei sa</i>	he/she knows; You know
<i>noi sappiamo</i>	we know
<i>voi sapete</i>	you know
<i>loro sanno</i>	they know

Conoscere: To Know Someone/To Be Acquainted

The verb *conoscere* is generally used to talk about someone with whom you are acquainted, but you can also use it when referring to a city or place, or even *una lingua*.

Conoscere

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>io conosco</i>	I know	<i>noi conosciamo</i>	we know
<i>tu conosci</i>	you know	<i>voi conoscete</i>	you know
<i>lui/lei/Lei conosce</i>	he/she knows; You know	<i>loro conoscono</i>	they know

Making Introductions

If you are in mixed company, it's always considered polite to introduce your new friends and family to one another. If you are being introduced, a handshake and a nod are all that is required.

This Is My ...

You can express the demonstrative pronouns “this” and “these,” shown in the following table, if you want to say, “*This* is my sister and *these* are my parents.”

The Demonstrative Pronouns “This” and “These”

Gender	This	These
Masculine	<i>questo libro</i> <i>quest'anno*</i>	<i>questi libri</i> <i>questi anni</i>
Feminine	<i>questa penna</i> <i>quest'idea*</i>	<i>queste penne</i> <i>queste idee</i>

*All singular nouns beginning with a vowel take *quest'*.

This Is My Brother ...

When referring to singular nouns denoting family members (*madre, padre, sorella, fratello ...*, and not *mamma, babbo ...*) there's no need to put an article in front of the person being possessed. If you are introducing your *fratello* (brother), then you have to use the masculine singular demonstrative pronoun *questo*, as in:

Questo è mio fratello. This is my brother.

If it's your mother you are introducing, you have to use a feminine singular demonstrative pronoun, such as:

Questa è mia madre. This is my mother.

In most other cases, you must include the article before the noun. Even if a friend may feel just like family, she should be introduced using the article. For example:

Questa è la mia amica Cristina. This is my friend Cristina.

Who Is Who

You'll need to know how to use the following expressions to make introductions.

Helpful Introductory Expressions

Italian	English
<i>Vorrei presentare ...</i>	I'd like to present ...
<i>Conosce ...?</i>	Do you know ...?
<i>È un piacere conoscerti.*</i>	It's a pleasure to meet you. (informal)
<i>È un piacere conoscerLa.*</i>	It's a pleasure to meet you. (polite)
<i>Il piacere è mio.</i>	The pleasure is mine.
<i>Questo è mio fratello.</i>	This is my brother.
<i>Questa è mia sorella.</i>	This is my sister.
<i>Questi sono i miei amici.</i>	These are my friends.
<i>Queste sono le mie amiche.</i>	These are my girlfriends.

**Both of these constructions use the direct object pronoun. You'll learn more about these in Chapter 16, "Shop 'Til You Drop."*



As a Rule

As a reminder, in both nouns and adjectives, the singular ending *-e* turns to *-i* in the plural: *il signore intelligente* becomes *i signori intelligenti*.

Tall, Dark, and Handsome

What a bland world it would be without descriptive adjectives. Everything would be all action and no illustration. If verbs are the skeleton of a language and nouns are the flesh, adjectives are the color. They're pretty, ugly, big, little, black, white, young, old, and all of what's in between.

Modifying Adjectives

Unlike English, Italian adjectives must reflect both the gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) of the nouns and pronouns they describe.

Fortunately, the following endings used for adjectives are pretty much the same as the noun endings. Like in a *concerto*, everything has to work together. Keep in the mind the following:

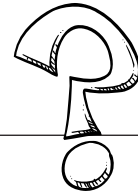
- If describing a masculine noun, simply leave the adjective as is. (Adjectives default to the masculine—it goes way back before women’s lib.)

Tuo fratello è un ragazzo simpatico.
Your brother is a nice boy.

- In most cases, when you change an adjective to the feminine, the ending will be *-a*.

Tua sorella è una ragazza simpatica.
Your sister is a nice girl.

- Many adjectives that end in *-e*, such as *intelligente, giovane, grande, verde, triste, and cortese*, can be used to describe both masculine and feminine nouns. The plural endings of these adjectives follow the same rules as nouns ending in *-e*.



What’s What

To indicate that you’re in a good or bad mood, use the expressions *Sono di buon umore* (I am in a good mood) and *Sono di cattivo umore* (I am in a bad mood).

Modifying Those Adjective Endings

You’ve already seen how many Italian adjectives are cognates to English in Chapter 4, “You Know More Than You Think.” Look at the following endings, and compare them to the noun endings you learned in Chapter 6, “Almost Everything You Wanted to Know About Sex.”



La Bella Lingua

Although most adjectives come after the noun, the following adjectives often precede the nouns they modify, such as *Che bella casa!* (What a beautiful house!):

<i>altro</i> (other)	<i>cattivo</i> (evil)
<i>bello</i> (beautiful)	<i>grande</i> (big)
<i>bravo</i> (good, able)	<i>piccolo</i> (small)
<i>brutto</i> (ugly)	<i>stesso</i> (same)
<i>buono</i> (good)	<i>vecchio</i> (old)

Adjective Endings

Endings	Examples
<i>o</i> → <i>i</i>	<i>famoso</i> → <i>famosi</i>
<i>a</i> → <i>e</i>	<i>curiosa</i> → <i>curiose</i>
<i>ca</i> → <i>che</i>	<i>magnifica</i> → <i>magnifiche</i>
<i>e</i> → <i>i</i>	<i>intelligente</i> → <i>intelligenti</i>

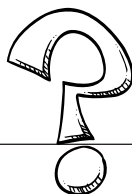
Character Analysis

Using the adjectives you just learned, try describing the people around you. For example:

Il mio fidanzato è generoso, intelligente, sincero, e ricco.

My fiancé is generous, intelligent, sincere, and rich.

1. Your significant other (or your fantasy)
2. Your mother
3. Your brother, sister, or cousin
4. Your cat, dog, or other domestic companion
5. Your best friend
6. Your boss



What's What

Some adjectives have different words for men and woman, such as *celibe* (a single man) and *nubile* (a single woman).

A Real Wise Guy

You want to describe your wonderful wife or husband, your children, your new boyfriend or girlfriend, your ex, your best friend, or your cat. Are they kind or cruel, good or bad, generous or stingy? The list of adjectives and their antonyms in the following table will add to your array of options.

Emotions and Characteristics

English	Italian	Pronunciation	English	Italian	Pronunciation
ambitious	<i>ambizioso</i>	<i>ahm-bee-zee-oh-zoh</i>	lazy	<i>pigro</i>	<i>pee-groh</i>
beautiful	<i>bello</i>	<i>beh-loh</i>	ugly	<i>brutto</i>	<i>broo-toh</i>
blond	<i>biondo</i>	<i>bee-ohm-doh</i>	brunette	<i>bruno</i>	<i>broo-noh</i>
calm	<i>calmo</i>	<i>kahl-moh</i>	nervous	<i>nervoso</i>	<i>ner-voh-zoh</i>
clever/sly	<i>furbo</i>	<i>foor-boh</i>	slow/dull	<i>lento</i>	<i>len-toh</i>
courageous	<i>coraggioso</i>	<i>koh-rah-joh-zoh</i>	cowardly	<i>codardo</i>	<i>koh-dahr-doh</i>
courteous	<i>cortese</i>	<i>kor-teh-zeh</i>	discourteous	<i>scortese</i>	<i>skor-teh-zeh</i>
cute/pretty	<i>carino</i>	<i>kah-ree-noh</i>	unattractive	<i>bruttino</i>	<i>broo-tee-noh</i>
fat	<i>grasso</i>	<i>grah-soh</i>	skinny	<i>magro</i>	<i>mah-groh</i>
funny	<i>buffo</i>	<i>boo-foh</i>	boring	<i>noioso</i>	<i>noy-oh-zoh</i>
generous	<i>generoso</i>	<i>jeh-ner-oh-zoh</i>	stingy	<i>tirchio</i>	<i>teer-kee-yoh</i>
good	<i>bravo</i>	<i>brah-voh</i>	evil	<i>cattivo</i>	<i>kah-tee-yoh</i>
happy	<i>allegro</i>	<i>ah-leh-groh</i>	sad	<i>triste</i>	<i>tree-steh</i>
healthy	<i>sano</i>	<i>sah-noh</i>	sick	<i>malato</i>	<i>mah-lah-toh</i>
honest	<i>onesto</i>	<i>oh-nes-toh</i>	dishonest	<i>disonesto</i>	<i>dee-soh-nes-toh</i>
intelligent	<i>intelligente</i>	<i>een-tel-ee-jen-teh</i>	stupid	<i>stupido</i>	<i>stoo-pee-doh</i>
kind/polite	<i>gentile</i>	<i>jen-tee-leh</i>	impolite	<i>scortese</i>	<i>skor-teh-zeh</i>
loyal	<i>fedele</i>	<i>feh-deh-leh</i>	unfaithful	<i>infedele</i>	<i>een-fed-eh-leh</i>
lucky	<i>fortunato</i>	<i>for-too-nah-toh</i>	unlucky	<i>sfortunato</i>	<i>sfor-too-nah-toh</i>
married	<i>sposato</i>	<i>spoh-zah-toh</i>	divorced	<i>divorziato</i>	<i>dee-vor-zee-ah-toh</i>
nice	<i>simpatico</i>	<i>seem-pah-tee-koh</i>	mean	<i>antipatico</i>	<i>ahn-tee-pah-tee-koh</i>
organized	<i>organizzato</i>	<i>or-gah-nee-zah-toh</i>	unorganized	<i>disorganizzato</i>	<i>dee-zor-gah-nee-zah-toh</i>
perfect	<i>perfetto</i>	<i>per-feh-toh</i>	imperfect	<i>imperfetto</i>	<i>een-per-feh-toh</i>
proud	<i>fiero</i>	<i>fee-yeh-roh</i>	ashamed	<i>vergognoso</i>	<i>ver-goh-nyoh-zoh</i>
romantic	<i>romantico</i>	<i>roh-mahn-tee-koh</i>	practical	<i>pratico</i>	<i>prah-tee-koh</i>
sensitive	<i>sensibile</i>	<i>sen-see-bee-leh</i>	insensitive	<i>insensibile</i>	<i>een-sen-see-bee-leh</i>
sincere	<i>sincero</i>	<i>seen-cheh-roh</i>	insincere	<i>bugiardo</i>	<i>boo-jar-doh</i>
strong	<i>forte</i>	<i>for-teh</i>	weak	<i>debole</i>	<i>deh-boh-leh</i>
tall	<i>alto</i>	<i>ahl-toh</i>	short	<i>basso</i>	<i>bah-soh</i>
young	<i>giovane</i>	<i>joh-vah-neh</i>	old	<i>vecchio</i>	<i>veh-kee-yoh</i>
wise	<i>saggio</i>	<i>sah-joh</i>	uncultured	<i>inculto</i>	<i>een-kol-toh</i>

Take the Good with the Bad

If you want to describe things, including the lamp you just bought, the food you just ate, and the cost of something, the following list of adjectives and their opposites will help you.

Adjectives and Their Antonyms

English	Italian	Pronunciation	English	Italian	Pronunciation
big	<i>grande</i>	<i>gran-deh</i>	small	<i>piccolo</i>	<i>pee-koh-loh</i>
clean	<i>pulito</i>	<i>poo-lee-toh</i>	dirty	<i>sporco</i>	<i>spor-koh</i>
complete	<i>completo</i>	<i>kom-pleh-toh</i>	incomplete	<i>incompleto</i>	<i>een-kohm-pleh-toh</i>
dear/ expensive	<i>caro</i>	<i>kah-roh</i>	inexpensive	<i>economico</i>	<i>eh-koh-noh- mee-koh</i>
first	<i>primo</i>	<i>pree-moh</i>	last	<i>ultimo</i>	<i>ool-tee-moh</i>
full	<i>pieno</i>	<i>pee-yeh-noh</i>	empty	<i>vuoto</i>	<i>vwoh-toh</i>
good	<i>buono</i>	<i>bwoh-noh</i>	bad	<i>male</i>	<i>mah-leh</i>
hard	<i>duro</i>	<i>doo-roh</i>	soft	<i>morbido</i>	<i>mor-bee-doh</i>
heavy	<i>pesante</i>	<i>peh-zahn-the</i>	light	<i>leggero</i>	<i>leh-jeh-roh</i>
hot	<i>caldo</i>	<i>kahl-doh</i>	cold	<i>freddo</i>	<i>freh-doh</i>
light	<i>leggero</i>	<i>leh-jeh-roh</i>	heavy	<i>pesante</i>	<i>peh-zahn-teh</i>
long	<i>lungo</i>	<i>loon-goh</i>	short	<i>basso</i>	<i>bah-soh</i>
new	<i>nuovo</i>	<i>nwoh-voh</i>	used	<i>usato</i>	<i>oo-zah-toh</i>
next	<i>prossimo</i>	<i>proh-see-moh</i>	last	<i>ultimo</i>	<i>ool-tee-moh</i>
normal	<i>normale</i>	<i>nor-mah-leh</i>	strange	<i>strano</i>	<i>strah-noh</i>
open	<i>aperto</i>	<i>ah-per-toh</i>	closed	<i>chiuso</i>	<i>kee-yoo-soh</i>
perfect	<i>perfetto</i>	<i>per-feh-toh</i>	imperfect	<i>imperfetto</i>	<i>eem-per-feh-toh</i>
pleasing	<i>piacevole</i>	<i>pee-ah-cheh-voh-leh</i>	displeasing	<i>spiacevole</i>	<i>spee-ah-cheh- voh-leh</i>
real	<i>vero</i>	<i>veh-roh</i>	fake	<i>finto</i>	<i>feen-toh</i>
safe/sure	<i>sicuro</i>	<i>see-koo-roh</i>	dangerous	<i>pericoloso</i>	<i>per-ee-koh-loh-zoh</i>
strong	<i>forte</i>	<i>for-teh</i>	weak	<i>debole</i>	<i>deh-boh-leh</i>
true	<i>vero</i>	<i>veh-roh</i>	false	<i>falso</i>	<i>fahl-zoh</i>

I Colori

Colors are adjectives and must agree with the nouns they are describing, whether masculine or feminine, singular or plural. Check out the rainbow in the following table.



La Bella Lingua

To describe any color as light, simply add the adjective *chiaro* to the color to form a compound adjective, as in *rosso chiaro* (light red).

To describe any color as dark, add the word *scuro*, as in *rosa scuro* (dark pink). (*Rosa* is masculine unless you are talking about *la rosa*, the flower.)

Colori

Color	Colore	Pronunciation
beige	<i>beige</i>	<i>behj</i>
black	<i>nero</i>	<i>neh-roh</i>
blue	<i>blu</i>	<i>bloo</i>
brown	<i>marrone</i>	<i>mah-roh-neh</i>
gold	<i>oro</i>	<i>or-oh</i>
gray	<i>grigio</i>	<i>gree-joh</i>
green	<i>verde</i>	<i>ver-deh</i>
orange	<i>arancione</i>	<i>ah-ran-choh-neh</i>
pink	<i>rosa</i>	<i>roh-zah</i>
purple	<i>viola</i>	<i>vee-oh-lah</i>
red	<i>rosso</i>	<i>roh-soh</i>
silver	<i>argento</i>	<i>ar-jen-toh</i>
white	<i>bianco</i>	<i>bee-ahn-koh</i>
yellow	<i>giallo</i>	<i>jah-loh</i>

One Yellow Banana, Please

Fill in the blank with the adjective modified by the subject and then translate the sentences:

Example: *La banana è _____*. (yellow)

Answer: *La banana è _____*.

1. *La casa _____* (white) *è _____* (clean).
2. *Il Colosseo è molto _____* (old).
3. *Le montagne in Svizzera sono _____* (high).

4. *Il negozio è _____ (closed) la domenica.*
5. *Quest'albergo è _____ (inexpensive).*
6. *Lo Scrooge è un uomo molto _____ (cheap).*



La Bella Lingua

The next time you're in a produce store, take your list of *colori*. Start with a color like *rosso* and note all the red fruits and vegetables you can find, making sure your adjective agrees with the noun such as *la mela rossa* (the red apple). Do the same with all of the *colori*.

It's a Colorful World

The colors are easy to learn in Italian—even easier if you connect them to things you know, such as “white as snow.” The Italian language is riddled with fun *espressioni* having to do with *i colori*. Here are some of them with both the literal translation and the figurative one:

<i>mettere nero su bianco</i>	to put black to white (to put down in writing)
<i>vedere rosa</i>	to see pink (to see through rose-colored glasses)
<i>vedere nero</i>	to see black (to be angry or pessimistic)
<i>rosso come un peperone</i>	red as a pepper
<i>essere nero</i>	to be black (to be in a bad mood)
<i>un numero verde</i>	a green number (a toll-free number)

Everyone's a Poet

Try to come up with your own *espressione idiomatica* for the colors listed. If you get stumped, think of some fruits or vegetables that might help:

1. *Arancione come _____ (orange as ...)*
2. *Azzurro come _____ (azure as ...)*
3. *Bianco come _____ (white as ...)*
4. *Blu come _____ (blue as ...)*
5. *Beige come _____ (beige as ...)*
6. *Giallo come _____ (yellow as ...)*
7. *Grigio come _____ (gray as ...)*
8. *Marrone come _____ (brown as ...)*
9. *Nero come _____ (black as ...)*
10. *Rosa come _____ (pink as ...)*
11. *Rosso come _____ (red as ...)*
12. *Viola come _____ (purple as ...)*

Bello and Quello

The adjectives *bello* (beautiful, handsome, nice, good, fine) and *quello* (that/those) follow the same rules, as you can see in the following table. Both have forms similar to those of the definite article.

Bello and Quello

Gender	Singular	Plural	When It Is Used
Masculine	<i>bello/quello</i>	<i>begli/quegli</i>	Before s + consonant or z
	<i>bell'/quell'</i>	<i>begli/quegli</i>	Before vowels
	<i>bel/quel</i>	<i>bei/quei</i>	Before consonants
Feminine	<i>bella/quella</i>	<i>belle/quelle</i>	Before all consonants
	<i>bell'/quell'</i>	<i>belle/quelle</i>	Before vowels

Generally speaking, *bello* and *quello* come before the noun, like in English.

Che bei bambini!
What beautiful children!

Quelle belle donne sono anche simpatiche.
Those beautiful women are also nice.

When the adjective *bello* follows the verb *essere*, it retains its full form. (However, it must still reflect the gender and number of the noun it describes.)

Quell'albergo è bello.
That hotel is beautiful.

Quella ragazza è bella.
That girl is beautiful.



La Bella Lingua

Bello is used to describe anything wonderful: a good meal, a sunset, a beautiful person. If you want to sound like an Italian, use this *espressione* the next time you are moved by something you find extraordinary: *Che bello!* (literally meaning "How beautiful!").

Make the Connection

Fill in the appropriate forms of the definite article and its corresponding forms of *quello*, and translate.

Definite Article	Translation	Quello	Translation
1. <u>il</u> libro	<u>the book</u>	<u>quel</u> libro	<u>that book</u>
2. _____ libri	_____	_____ libri	_____
3. _____ penna	_____	_____ penna	_____
4. _____ penne	_____	_____ penne	_____
5. _____ articolo	_____	_____ articolo	_____

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------|----------------|-------|
| 6. _____ articoli | _____ | _____ articoli | _____ |
| 7. _____ studente | _____ | _____ studente | _____ |
| 8. _____ studenti | _____ | _____ studenti | _____ |

Buono

Similar to the rules followed by the indefinite articles, the adjective *buono* (good) changes form in the singular when preceding a noun. (However, when following the verb *essere* or the noun it modifies, it uses the regular forms *buono* and *buona* in the singular.) The plural form of this adjective is regular. Consult the following table for the different forms.

Buono

Gender	Singular	Plural	When It Is Used
Masculine	<i>il buono studente</i>	<i>i buoni studenti</i>	Before masculine nouns beginning with <i>s</i> + consonant or <i>z</i>
	<i>il buon libro</i> <i>i buoni libri</i>	<i>il buon amico</i> <i>i buoni amici</i>	Before all other masculine nouns (both consonants and vowels)
Feminine	<i>la buona ragazza</i>	<i>le buone ragazze</i>	Before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant
	<i>la buon'amica</i>	<i>le buone amiche</i>	Before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel

The following are a few examples of how to use this adjective:

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>Trovare un buon amico è difficile.</i> | A good friend is hard to find. |
| <i>Maria, tu sei una buon'amica.</i> | Maria, you are a good friend. |

How Do You Do? Adverbs

How are you doing? I hope that you're doing "well" and that everything is "fine." As you recall from Chapter 2, "Immerse Yourself," adverbs describe verbs or adjectives and indicate how you do something, such as, "She plays the piano *beautifully*," or "You are *sincerely* the *most* beautiful person I've ever met." In addition to irregular adverbs, which are covered next and need to be memorized, you can also create an adverb from an adjective.

Forming Adverbs from Adjectives

Many English adverbs end in *-ly*. In Italian, you can form several adverbs by adding *-mente* to the end of the feminine form of the adjective:

<i>seria</i> → <i>seriamente</i>	serious → seriously
<i>profonda</i> → <i>profondamente</i>	profound → profoundly
<i>chiara</i> → <i>chiaramente</i>	clear → clearly

Adjectives ending in *-le* or *-re* drop the final *-e* before adding *-mente*:

<i>facile</i> (easy) → <i>facilmente</i> (easily)
<i>gentile</i> (kind) → <i>gentilmente</i> (kindly)



Did You Know?

Every time you use the word *non* in a sentence, you are using an adverb. I'll bet you *never* (also an adverb) knew that the words *no* and *sì* (yes) are both adverbs. Other commonly used irregular adverbs include these:

better	<i>meglio</i>
by no means	<i>nemmeno</i>
certainly	<i>certamente</i>
exactly	<i>appunto</i>
maybe	<i>forse</i>
never	<i>mai</i>
not even	<i>neanche</i>
really	<i>davvero</i>
well	<i>bene</i>

Take Your Place

A couple of points about the placement of adverbs will help you easily incorporate them into your growing *vocabolario*.

- Adverbs are generally placed after the verb:

*Puoi imparare **facilmente** l'italiano.* You can **easily** learn Italian.

*Siete **gentilmente** pregati di lasciare un messaggio.*

You are **kindly** asked to leave a message.

*Ti parlo **seriamente**.*

I'm speaking to you **seriously**.

- Some adverbs may come *before* the verb or adjective:

Probabilmente vado domani. I'm **probably** going tomorrow.
 Firenze è *sempre* bella. Florence is **always** beautiful.

A Lot of Adverbs

When talking about quantity, you might want less or more, depending on your mood. The following table gives you some of these.

Irregular Adverbs of Quantity

English	Italian	English	Italian
enough	<i>abbastanza</i>	quite a lot of	<i>parecchio</i>
hardly, scarcely	<i>appena</i>	rather, somewhat	<i>piuttosto</i>
less	<i>meno</i>	too	<i>troppo</i>
not very	<i>poco</i>	very, much, a lot	<i>molto</i>
not any more, no more	<i>non più</i>		

Adverbs of Time

Many adverbs relating to time—like those of place—aren't formed from an adjective. The following table offers you some of these timely words.

Adverbs of Time

English	Italian	English	Italian
after	<i>dopo, poi</i>	slowly	<i>piano, lentamente</i>
again	<i>ancora</i>	soon	<i>subito</i>
always	<i>sempre</i>	still	<i>ancora</i>
before	<i>prima</i>	then	<i>allora, poi</i>
early	<i>presto</i>	today	<i>oggi</i>
immediately	<i>subito</i>	tomorrow	<i>domani</i>
never	<i>mai</i>	usually	<i>di solito</i>
now	<i>adesso, ora</i>	in a hurry	<i>in fretta</i>
often	<i>spesso</i>	when	<i>quando</i>
quickly	<i>presto</i>	yesterday	<i>ieri</i>



As a Rule

It's possible to use the preposition *con* and a noun in lieu of an adverb:

Guidate con attenzione.

Drive attentively. (Drive with attention.)

Parla con sincerità.

He speaks sincerely. (He speaks with sincerity.)

Adverbs of Place

In the last chapter, you learned about the adverb *ci* when it is used with the verb *essere*. It's good to know your place. The adverbs in the following table will help.

Adverbs of Place

English	Italian	English	Italian
above	<i>sopra</i>	in back of	<i>dietro</i>
anywhere	<i>dovunque</i>	in front of	<i>davanti</i>
behind	<i>indietro</i>	inside	<i>dentro</i>
beneath	<i>sotto</i>	near	<i>vicino</i>
down	<i>giù</i>	on	<i>sopra</i>
down there	<i>laggiù</i>	on top of	<i>su</i>
elsewhere	<i>altrove</i>	outside	<i>fuori</i>
everywhere	<i>dappertutto</i>	there	<i>ci, là, lì</i>
far	<i>lontano</i>	up	<i>su</i>
here	<i>qui, qua</i>		

The More Things Change

Make the following adjectives into adverbs. Many of these adjectives will require that you make them feminine before converting them to adverbs. You can also use the formula *con* (with) + the noun, such as *con attenzione* (with attention).

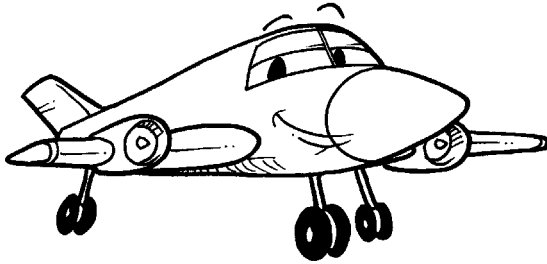
Example: *breve* (brief)

Answer: *brevemente* (briefly)

1. *dolce* (sweet)
2. *sincero* (sincere)
3. *intelligente* (intelligent)
4. *necessario* (necessary)
5. *veloce* (fast/quick)
6. *regolare* (regular)
7. *difficile* (difficult)
8. *probabile* (probable)
9. *solo* (only)
10. *gentile* (kind)

The Least You Need to Know

- To show possession in Italian, use the possessive adjectives or the preposition *di*.
- The adjective *buono* follows a pattern similar to the indefinite article.
- Italian adjectives must agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify.
- Adverbs are formed by adding *-mente* to many feminine adjectives. Many adverbs of time and place are irregular and must be memorized.



Finally, You're at the Airport

In This Chapter

- ▶ All about planes and airports
- ▶ The verb *andare* (to go)
- ▶ Connections and asides: using prepositions and contractions
- ▶ Being direct: how to use the imperative
- ▶ Expressing confusion
- ▶ Passively yours: using *si* to construct the passive voice

The best way to communicate is often in the simplest manner. No need to start quoting Dante; just get your point across. Sometimes it takes pointing to something and saying, *questo* (this). Other times it may mean using a combination of vocabulary, mime, and facial expressions to make yourself understood.

On the Plane

Most international flights to and from Italy communicate with passengers in both English and Italian. This is a wonderful *opportunità* to develop your listening skills. Instead of relying on your native *lingua*, pay close attention to the *voce* coming over the loud speaker when Italian is used. Try to grasp the general meaning. The vocabulary in the following table contains many of the words you might hear.

Inside the Plane

English	Italian	Pronunciation
airline	<i>la linea aerea</i>	<i>lah lee-neh-ah ah-eh-reh-ah</i>
airline terminal	<i>il terminal</i>	<i>eel ter-mee-nahl</i>
airplane	<i>l'aereo</i>	<i>lah-eh-reh-roh</i>
airport	<i>l'aeroporto</i>	<i>lah-eh-roh-por-toh</i>
aisle	<i>il corridoio</i>	<i>eel koh-ree-doy-oh</i>
aisle seat	<i>un posto vicino al corridoio</i>	<i>oon pos-toh vee-chee-noh ahl koh-ree-doy-oh</i>
exit	<i>l'uscita</i>	<i>loo-shee-tah</i>
... emergency exit	<i>... l'uscita d'emergenza</i>	<i>loo-shee-tah deh-mer-jen-zah</i>
flight	<i>il volo</i>	<i>eel voh-loh</i>
... domestic	<i>... nazionale</i>	<i>nah-zee-oh-nah-leh</i>
... international	<i>... internazionale</i>	<i>een-ter-nah-zee-oh-nah-leh</i>
flight number	<i>il numero del volo</i>	<i>eel nooh-meh-roh dehl voh-loh</i>
gate	<i>il cancello</i>	<i>eel kahn-cheh-loh</i>
headphones	<i>le cuffie</i>	<i>leh koo-fee-ay</i>
landing	<i>l'atterraggio</i>	<i>lah-ter-ah-joh</i>
life vest	<i>il giubbotto di salvataggio</i>	<i>eel joo-boh-toh dee sahl-vah-tah-joh</i>
luggage	<i>i bagagli</i>	<i>ee bah-gahl-yee</i>
magazine	<i>la rivista</i>	<i>lah ree-vee-stah</i>
newspaper	<i>il quotidiano</i>	<i>eel kwoh-tee-dee-ah-noh</i>
nonsmoking seat	<i>un posto per non fumatori</i>	<i>oon pos-toh per nohn foo-mah-toh-ree</i>
on board	<i>a bordo</i>	<i>ah bor-doh</i>
row	<i>la fila</i>	<i>lah fee-lah</i>
seat	<i>il posto</i>	<i>eel poh-stoh</i>
seat belt	<i>la cintura di sicurezza</i>	<i>lah cheen-too-rah dee see-kor-eh-zah</i>
steward	<i>l'assistente di volo</i>	<i>lah-sees-ten-teh dee voh-loh</i>
stewardess	<i>l'hostess</i>	<i>l'hostess</i>
take-off	<i>il decollo</i>	<i>eel deh-koh-loh</i>
trip	<i>il viaggio</i>	<i>eel vee-ah-joh</i>
window seat	<i>un posto vicino al finestrino</i>	<i>oon poh-stoh vee-chee-noh ahl fee-nes-treh-noh</i>

In the Comfort Zone

Look at the following paragraph from an Italian in-flight magazine on the various services offered to passengers, and see how much you understand:

A bordo dell'aereo sono a disposizione dei passeggeri: riviste italiane e straniere, coperte e cuscini, medicine, carta da lettera, giochi per bambini, penne, cartoline, sigarette, spumanti italiani, vino, birra, e bibite varie.



La Bella Lingua

You may find the following verbiage comes in handy when traveling. Several of these verbs can have more than one meaning.

<i>essere in anticipo</i>	to be early
<i>essere in ritardo</i>	to be delayed
<i>fumare</i>	to smoke
<i>imbarcare</i>	to board, to embark
<i>perdere (un volo)</i>	to miss (a flight), to lose
<i>prenotare</i>	to reserve
<i>salire</i>	to get on, to ascend
<i>scendere</i>	to get off, to descend

On the Inside

You've landed safely. You're ushered off the plane toward customs. After your *passaporto* is stamped, you grab your bags off the luggage carousel: You need to find a bathroom, change money, and find out when your connecting flight to Sicily (or Milan, or Pisa) is leaving. Did you lose something *importante* and now need to find the *Ufficio Oggetti Smarriti* (the lost and found)? How are you going to communicate all of these things? Look no further; the following table gives you virtually all the vocabulary you may need.

Inside the Airport

English	Italian	Pronunciation
arrival	<i>l'arrivo</i>	<i>lah-ree-voh</i>
arrival time	<i>l'ora d'arrivo</i>	<i>loh-rah dah-ree-voh</i>
baggage claim	<i>la riconsegna bagagli</i>	<i>lah ree-kohn-sehn-yah bah-gahl-yee</i>
bathroom	<i>la toilette</i>	<i>lah toy-leht</i>
	<i>il bagno</i>	<i>eel-bah-nyoh</i>
(bus) stop	<i>la fermata (dell'autobus)</i>	<i>lah fer-mah-tah</i>

continues

Inside the Airport (continued)

English	Italian	Pronunciation
car rental	<i>l'autonoleggio</i>	<i>low-toh-noh-leh-joh</i>
cart	<i>il carrello</i>	<i>eel kah-reh-loh</i>
connection	<i>la coincidenza</i>	<i>lah koh-een-cheh-den-zah</i>
customs	<i>la dogana</i>	<i>lah doh-gah-nah</i>
departure	<i>la partenza</i>	<i>lah par-ten-zah</i>
departure time	<i>l'ora di partenza</i>	<i>loh-rah dee pahr-ten-zah</i>
destination	<i>la destinazione</i>	<i>lah des-tee-nah-zee-oh-neh</i>
elevator	<i>l'ascensore</i>	<i>lah-shen-soh-reh</i>
entrance	<i>l'entrata</i>	<i>len-trah-tah</i>
information	<i>le informazioni</i>	<i>leen-for-mah-zee-oh-nee</i>
money exchange	<i>il cambio</i>	<i>il kahm-bee-oh</i>
porter	<i>il portiere</i>	<i>eel por-tee-eh-reh</i>
reservation	<i>la prenotazione</i>	<i>lah preh-noh-tah-zee-oh-neh</i>
stairs	<i>le scale</i>	<i>leh skah-leh</i>
taxi	<i>il tassì</i>	<i>eel tah-see</i>
telephone	<i>il telefono</i>	<i>eel tel-eh-foh-noh</i>
ticket	<i>il biglietto</i>	<i>eel bee-lyeh-toh</i>

In addition, the following helpful expressions will at the very least get you to Italy comfortably:

<i>Dov'è la dogana?</i>	Where is customs?
<i>Vorrei un posto vicino al finestrino/corridoio.</i>	I'd like a seat near the window/aisle.
<i>Vorrei viaggiare in prima/seconda classe.</i>	I'd like to travel in first/second class.
<i>Vorrei fare il biglietto di andata e ritorno.</i>	I'd like to order a round-trip ticket.
<i>Vorrei prendere l'aereo.</i>	I'd like to take a plane.
<i>Vorrei consegnare i bagagli al deposito bagagli.</i>	I'd like to consign bags in the baggage claim.
<i>Vorrei prenotare un posto.</i>	I'd like to reserve a place.
<i>Dove si trova la biglietteria?</i>	Where does one find the ticket office?

Going Crazy: The Verb *Andare*

The verb *andare* (to go) can come in handy as you make your way around. This is an irregular verb, so you will need to memorize the parts outlined in the following table. (You can cram on the seven-hour plane ride.)

The Verb *Andare*

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>io vado</i>	I go	<i>noi andiamo</i>	we go
<i>tu vai</i>	you go	<i>voi andate</i>	you go
<i>lui/lei/Lei va</i>	he/she goes; You go	<i>loro vanno</i>	they go



As a Rule

You use the preposition *a* when you want to express going to or staying in a city:

Vado a Roma. (I'm going to Rome.)

The preposition *in* is generally used when you are traveling to a country:

Andiamo in Italia. (We are going to Italy.)

Andare is generally followed by the preposition *a* (to), as it usually is in English (I am going to ...) when you want to say you're going somewhere or going to do something. Often, you must create a contraction when using the preposition *a* with a definite article (you'll learn about contractions later in this chapter).

Vado all'università. I am going to the university.

Andiamo al ristorante. We're going to the restaurant.

Andate a mangiare? Are you going to eat?

Andare may also be followed by the preposition *in* (to) when describing means of transportation. Naturally, you'll still have to conjugate the infinitive verb:

andare in macchina to go by car

andare in bicicletta to go by bicycle

andare in treno to go by train

andare in aeroplano to go by plane



Did You Know?

The Italians often say *Andiamo!* much in the same way we say "Let's go!"



Attenzione!

When using the verb *andare* to say you are going "by foot," you use the preposition *a* (not *in*): *Vado a piedi.* (I am going by foot.)

Going, Going, Gone

Fill in the appropriate form of *andare*:

1. *Luisa e Marta* _____ *in macchina all'aeroporto.*
2. *Io* _____ *a New York.*
3. *Tu* _____ *alla stazione.*
4. *Roberto ed io* _____ *a mangiare una pizza.*
5. *Voi* _____ *a piedi. Loro* _____ *in bicicletta.*

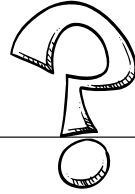
All Verbed Up and Everywhere to Go

The regular verb *prendere* (to take) is used when traveling. If necessary, refer back to Chapter 8, "An Action-Packed Adventure," to remember how to conjugate regular *-ere* verbs. Together with the irregular verb *andare*, use the two verbs in the following sentences. Remember that the gerund form in English is equivalent to the simple present in Italian.

1. *(Io)* _____ *l'autobus per andare in centro. (prendere)*
I am taking the bus to get downtown.
2. *(Noi)* _____ *in macchina in spiaggia. (andare)*
We are going by car to the beach.
3. *(Loro)* _____ *il treno da Roma per arrivare a Milano. (prendere)*
They are taking the train from Rome to get to Milan.
4. *(Tu)* _____ *a piedi al negozio. (andare)*
You are going by foot to the store.
5. *(Voi)* _____ *la metro per arrivare alla piramide in Via Ostiense. (prendere)*
You (plural) are taking the subway to get to the pyramid on Via Ostiense.
6. *(Lui)* _____ *in bicicletta a vedere la campagna. (andare)*
He is going by bicycle to see the country.

Prepositions: Sticky Stuff

You've used these words thousands of times and probably never knew they were all prepositions. You've already seen a lot of prepositions because they are often the glue of a phrase, tying the words together. The following table provides a comprehensive list of Italian prepositions and their meanings.



What's What

The most commonly used prepositions follow:

<i>a</i> (to, at)	<i>Andiamo a Roma.</i>	We're going to Rome.
<i>con</i> (with)	<i>Vado con Roberto.</i>	I am going with Robert.
<i>da</i> (from, by)	<i>Vengo da lontano.</i>	I'm coming from far away.
<i>di</i> (of, from)	<i>Di dove sei?</i>	Where are you from?
<i>in</i> (in, to)	<i>Viaggiano in Italia.</i>	They are traveling to Italy.
<i>per</i> (for)	<i>Questo regalo è per te.</i>	This present is for you.
<i>su</i> (on)	<i>Il libro sta sulla scrivania.</i>	The book is on the table.

Prepositions

Italian	English
<i>a</i>	to, at, in
<i>accanto a</i>	beside
<i>attorno a</i>	around
<i>avanti</i>	in front of, before, ahead
<i>circa</i>	about, around (when making an estimation)
<i>con</i>	with
<i>contro</i>	against, opposite to
<i>da</i>	from, by
<i>davanti a</i>	before
<i>dentro a</i>	inside
<i>di</i>	of, from, about
<i>dietro a</i>	behind
<i>dopo</i>	after
<i>eccetto</i>	except, save
<i>fino a</i>	until, as far as
<i>fra, tra</i>	between, among, in, within
<i>fuori di</i>	outside
<i>in</i>	in, into, by, on

continues

Prepositions (continued)

Italian	English
<i>lontano da</i>	far from
<i>oltre</i>	besides, beyond
<i>per</i>	for, in order to
<i>senza</i>	without
<i>sopra</i>	above
<i>sotto</i>	under
<i>su</i>	on, upon
<i>vicino a</i>	near

A Few Points on Prepositions

Prepositions in Italian can be tricky. Does the Italian preposition *in* mean “to” or “by” or “in”? Does *a* mean “at” or “in”? Here are a few general rules about the most commonly used prepositions, all of which can be used to form contractions (we’ll get to those next).

- The preposition *a* (at, to, in) is used with cities and towns. It is also used after many infinitive verbs, which will be outlined in Chapter 13, “Hallelujah, You’ve Made It to *l’Hotel*.”
- The preposition *da* (from, at, by) is used to express when you’ve been *at* somewhere, whether an office, the doctor’s, or far away.
- The preposition *di* (of, from, about) is also used to express possession and is used in many idiomatic expressions.
- The preposition *in* (at, in, to) is used before the names of countries, when talking about modes of transportation, and when talking about what street you live *on*.



La Bella Lingua

There is no equivalent to the preposition *on* before the names of days:

Arriviamo lunedì.

We are arriving (on) Monday.

Giuseppe arriva sabato.

Giuseppe is arriving (on) Saturday.

Contractions

No one is having a baby here. A *contraction*, in linguistic terms, is a single word made out of two words. The prepositions in the following table form contractions when followed by a definite article. Notice that the endings remain the same as the definite article. A contraction can be as simple as *alla* (to the) or *sul* (on the).

Contractions

Preposition	Masculine				Feminine			
	Singular			Plural	Singular		Plural	
	<i>il</i>	<i>lo</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>gli</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>le</i>
<i>a</i>	<i>al</i>	<i>allo</i>	<i>all'</i>	<i>ai</i>	<i>agli</i>	<i>alla</i>	<i>all'</i>	<i>alle</i>
<i>in</i>	<i>nel</i>	<i>nello</i>	<i>nell'</i>	<i>nei</i>	<i>negli</i>	<i>nella</i>	<i>nell'</i>	<i>nelle</i>
<i>di</i>	<i>del</i>	<i>dello</i>	<i>dell'</i>	<i>dei</i>	<i>degli</i>	<i>della</i>	<i>dell'</i>	<i>delle</i>
<i>su</i>	<i>sul</i>	<i>sullo</i>	<i>sull'</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sugli</i>	<i>sulla</i>	<i>sull'</i>	<i>sulle</i>
<i>da</i>	<i>dal</i>	<i>dallo</i>	<i>dall'</i>	<i>dai</i>	<i>dagli</i>	<i>dalla</i>	<i>dall'</i>	<i>dalle</i>



As a Rule

To express *in* with months, the Italians use either the preposition *in* or *a*:

Il mio compleanno è a giugno.

My birthday is in June.

Fa ancora freddo in marzo.

It's still cold in March.

To express the notion of being *in* with seasons, the Italians use either the preposition *in* or *di*:

Andiamo in Italia d'inverno.

We are going to Italy in the winter.

In primavera fa bello.

It's beautiful in the spring.

You can use prepositions in so many different ways that it's almost *impossibile* to outline every one of them here. The best way to learn prepositions is by studying the basic rules and listening for idiomatic usage. If you want a more comprehensive explanation of speech parts and their different uses, you might want to pick up a copy of a good Italian grammar book.

Switcharoo

Replace the bold words with the words in parentheses, changing the preposition or contraction as necessary. Accommodate any changes in gender or plurality.

1. *Silvia ed io andiamo **al cinema**.* (festa)
2. *Il tassì va **in centro**.* (piazza)
3. *Andate **a piedi**?* (macchina)
4. *La giacca sta **sulla tavola**.* (armadio)
5. *Mangiamo **del riso**.* (spaghetti)



As a Rule

The preposition *da* (from/by/of/since) can mean “since” or can describe an amount of time. For example, use the present tense of the verb *essere* + *da* to create the following:

Da quanto tempo sei in Italia?

Literally, “You are in Italy from how much time?”

Sono in Italia da ottobre.

Literally, “I am in Italy since October.”



As a Rule

You can use the preposition *di* plus an article to express an unspecified quantity or “some” of a greater amount:

Mangio della pasta.

I am eating some pasta.

Bevo del vino.

I am drinking some wine.

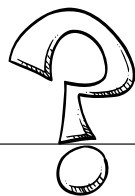
Vuole della frutta?

Do you want some fruit?

The Imperative: Giving Directions

Getting lost while traveling can be half the fun, but sometimes you have a particular place in mind and don't want to spend your entire afternoon wandering around the streets. Being able to ask for directions is easy enough. You can point to your map and ask *Dov'è ...?* or you can form a simple question using what you've learned in this book. Understanding the response you're given is another story. When someone directs you to a location, that person is using the imperative.

The imperative is used for giving suggestions, orders, and directions. You're already familiar with the imperative *Mangia!* a commonly uttered command heard across tables of millions of Italian families.



What's What

In Italian, to ask for directions, you must *chiedere informazioni*; otherwise, if you ask for *direzioni*, it is assumed you are talking about which way the birds fly every winter:

nord = north *ovest* = west
sud = south *est* = east

The Regular Imperative Endings

Look at the following endings to see how you can make any verb imperative. Notice how the imperative endings for *noi* and *voi* are exactly the same as they are in the present tense.

Imperative Endings

Subject	-are	-ere	-ire
<i>tu</i>	-a	-i	-i
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	-i	-a	-a
<i>noi</i>	-iamo	-iamo	-iamo
<i>voi</i>	-ate	-ete	-ite
<i>loro</i>	-ino	-ano	-ano

The Imperative Using Tu and Lei

The following table offers some of the most common commands you'll hear, using the polite *Lei* and familiar *tu*. The irregular forms have been indicated.

Imperative Forms

Verb	Tu	Lei	Meaning
<i>andare*</i>	<i>Va!</i>	<i>Vada!</i>	Go!
<i>attraversare</i>	<i>Attraversa!</i>	<i>Attraversi!</i>	Cross!
<i>avere*</i>	<i>Abbi!</i>	<i>Abbia!</i>	Have!
<i>camminare</i>	<i>Cammina!</i>	<i>Cammini!</i>	Walk!
<i>continuare</i>	<i>Continua!</i>	<i>Continui!</i>	Continue!
<i>dire*</i>	<i>Di!</i>	<i>Dica!</i>	Say/Tell!
<i>essere*</i>	<i>Sii!</i>	<i>Sia!</i>	Be!
<i>fare*</i>	<i>Fa'! or Fai!</i>	<i>Faccia!</i>	Do! Make! Take!
<i>girare</i>	<i>Gira!</i>	<i>Giri!</i>	Turn!
<i>passare</i>	<i>Passa!</i>	<i>Passi!</i>	Pass!
<i>prendere</i>	<i>Prendi!</i>	<i>Prenda!</i>	Take!
<i>salire*</i>	<i>Sali!</i>	<i>Salga!</i>	Get on! Go up!
<i>scendere</i>	<i>Scendi!</i>	<i>Scenda!</i>	Go down!
<i>seguire</i>	<i>Segui!</i>	<i>Segua!</i>	Follow!
<i>stare*</i>	<i>Stai!</i>	<i>Stia!</i>	Stay!
<i>venire*</i>	<i>Vieni!</i>	<i>Venga!</i>	Come!

*These verbs have irregular imperatives.



As a Rule

To form a negative command, such as "Don't go!" in the *tu* form, you don't need to worry about endings. Just use the formula of *non* + infinitive:

Non andare! Don't go!

Non girare! Don't turn!

You may hear some of the following imperatives used while you're shopping or chatting.

<i>Abbia pazienza!</i>	Have patience! (polite)
<i>Mi dica!</i>	Tell me. (polite)
<i>Dimmi tutto.</i>	Tell me everything. (familiar)
<i>Faccia quello che vuole.</i>	Do what you want. (polite)

Tell Me What to Do

Use the imperative form with the following nondirectional verbs:

	<i>Tu</i>	<i>Lei</i>
<i>aiutare</i> (to help)	_____	_____
<i>mangiare</i> (to eat)	_____	_____
<i>portare</i> (to bring)	_____	_____
<i>telefonare</i> (to telephone)	_____	_____

Dazed and Confused

You've figured out how to ask for the help you need, and you've been given a response. What do you do if you don't understand? Rather than stand there looking like an idiot, just have them repeat themselves, but more slowly this time. The following table gives you a few phrases you can use to let people know you just don't get it. The verb is always used in the polite form.

Expressing That You Just Don't Get It

English	Italian
Excuse me.	<i>Mi scusi.</i>
Speak slowly please— I don't speak Italian well.	<i>Parli piano, per favore— non parlo bene l'italiano.</i>
Speak more slowly, please.	<i>Parli più lentamente, per favore.</i>
Repeat another time, please.	<i>Ripeti un'altra volta, per favore.</i>
I didn't understand.	<i>Non ho capito.</i>
I understood.	<i>Ho capito.</i>
How? (a much nicer way of saying "Huh?")	<i>Come?</i>

Passively Yours: *Si*

The *si* construction is used to express the passive voice or when *one* is (or *you* are) talking about an unspecified subject. Notice the distinction between the pronoun *si* (one/you) and the word *sì* (yes).

This form is used in Italian to make general statements such as:

Si mangia bene in Italia.

One eats well in Italy.

Often this tense is used to ask or give directions:

Con l'autobus si arriva subito.

With the bus, one arrives immediately.

Come si arriva in centro?

How does one get to the center?

Per andare in piazza si va dritto.

One goes straight to arrive in the piazza.

La Dogana (Customs)

Imagine that you're an Italian filling out a customs form. Notice the *si* construction used in the repeated expression *Si prega*. In writing, this is often used in lieu of "please" and is equivalent to "you are kindly asked."

MODULO I-94

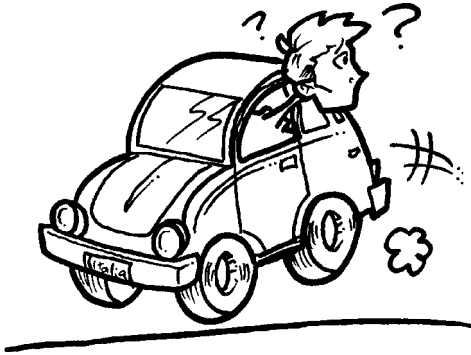
IMMIGRAZIONE

Si prega di rispondere alle seguenti domande (cognome, nome, data di nascita, nazionalità, ecc.). Si prega di compilare solamente il davanti del formulario. Si prega anche di tenere questo modulo nel passaporto. È necessario un modulo per ogni membro della famiglia. Si prega di compilarlo in stampatello.

1. Cognome _____
2. Nome _____
3. Data di Nascita: Giorno/Mese/Anno _____
4. Cittadinanza _____
5. Sesso: Maschile/Femminile _____
6. Numero del passaporto _____
7. Linea aerea e numero di volo _____
8. Stato dove abitate _____
9. Città dove è stato ottenuto il visto _____
10. Data del visto: Giorno/Mese/Anno _____

The Least You Need to Know

- Prepositions are the glue that ties words together and are frequently used with an article, forming a contraction.
- The imperative is the command form of a verb; it is used to tell people what to do and where to go. The most commonly used forms of the imperative are the *tu* and the *Lei* forms.
- The *si* construction is used when *one* wants to talk in general terms.



Moving Around

In This Chapter

- ▶ The modes of transportation you'll use in *Italia*
- ▶ Which bus? What train? The importance of *quale* (which)
- ▶ The language of Ferrari: learning the lingo of the road
- ▶ Numerically speaking: learning numbers and how to tell time
- ▶ Becoming curious: asking questions
- ▶ Take a trip with the verb *fare*

This chapter gives you all the vocabulary you need to be as independent as *possibile* and the means to *navigare* through just about any travel challenge.

Hoofing and Spinning

When traveling within a *città*, you have a few choices about how you're going to get around. It's best to take advantage of the *economico* and efficient modes of public transportation. However, walking or cycling is always a terrific way of getting to know the corners of a city that you won't see from inside a bus or taxi—as well as a splendid way to stay in shape. Or, if you dare, you can rent a car.

Before you decide how you're going to get around, however, you need to know what you're talking about (in Italian, that is). The Modes of Transportation Table covers all your bases (and wheels). You'll notice there are two words used for “car.”



Did You Know?

In Italy, public transportation is quite efficient, with buses, trains, and *la metro* (subway) to take you just about anywhere you want to go. It's a good idea to purchase bus tickets at a *cartoleria* or *tabacchi* to keep in your wallet because buses do not accept cash or coins. You can also buy *biglietti* (tickets) at train stations and from automated machines. Once you get on *l'autobus*, you must *convalidare* your ticket by punching it into a small box located on the back of the bus. Hold on to your ticket in case of a surprise check by stern-faced inspectors eager to find transgressions. When using *la metro*, you must also buy a ticket from either one of the automated machines or from a ticket booth. It's possible to buy daily, weekly, and monthly tickets.

Modes of Transportation

English	Italian	Pronunciation
bus	<i>l'autobus</i>	<i>low-toh-boos</i>
car	<i>l'automobile</i>	<i>low-toh-moh-bee-leh</i>
	<i>la macchina</i>	<i>lah mah-kee-nah</i>
bicycle	<i>la bicicletta</i>	<i>lah bee-chee-kleh-tah</i>
railway	<i>la ferrovia</i>	<i>lah feh-roh-vee-yah</i>
subway	<i>la metro</i>	<i>lah meh-troh</i>
taxi	<i>il tassì</i>	<i>eel tah-see</i>
train	<i>il treno</i>	<i>eel treh-noh</i>

Which One?

The interrogative pronoun and adjective *quale* means “which” or “what” and is used to ask questions. There are two forms: *quale* (which one), and *quali* (which ones).

Ecco i libri; quale preferisce?

Here are the books; which do you prefer?

Quali sono gli autobus per il centro?

What are the buses (going) downtown?

Qual è ...? expresses the question “What is ...?”

Qual è il tuo numero di telefono?

What is your telephone number?



As a Rule

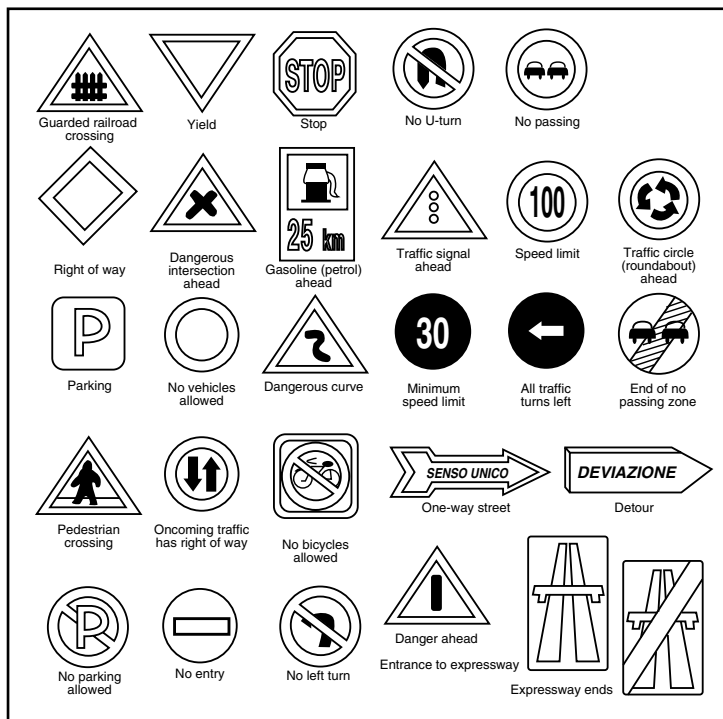
Quale refers to a choice between two or more alternatives. *Che* (what) can be substituted for *quale* in almost any given situation:

Quale (che) ristorante è il migliore?

Which restaurant is the best?

On the Road

Italy's *autostrade* are among the best in the world, but *le macchine* move pretty fast (often drivers do not abide by the speed limit), so keep in the right lane unless you're prepared to speed. Getting a handle on international driving laws is always a good idea, and your local AAA can probably give you a hand in learning more about the do's and don'ts. It also wouldn't hurt to be able to understand directions and signs. Although most signs are fairly obvious, some can be pretty tricky.



You should also familiarize yourself with the names of the amenities inside a car before you get in one. You can't keep your eyes on the road while searching for the button that means "air conditioner," now can you? Check out the following table for hints about car features.

Inside the Car

English	Italian	Pronunciation
accelerator	<i>l'acceleratore</i>	<i>lah-cheh-leh-rah-toh-reh</i>
air conditioning	<i>l'aria condizionata</i>	<i>lah-ree-yah kohn-dee-zee-oh-nah-tah</i>
brakes	<i>i freni</i>	<i>ee freh-nee</i>
dashboard	<i>il cruscotto</i>	<i>eel kroo-skoh-toh</i>
gear stick	<i>il cambio</i>	<i>eel kahm-bee-yoh</i>
glove compartment	<i>il vano portaoggetti</i>	<i>eel vah-noh por-tah-oh-jeh-tee</i>
handbrake	<i>il freno a mano</i>	<i>eel freh-noh ah mah-noh</i>
horn	<i>il clacson</i>	<i>eel klak-son</i>
ignition	<i>l'accensione</i>	<i>lah-chen-see-oh-neh</i>
keys	<i>le chiavi</i>	<i>leh kee-ah-vee</i>
radio	<i>la radio</i>	<i>lah rah-dee-oh</i>
rear-view mirror	<i>lo specchietto</i>	<i>loh speh-kee-yeh-toh</i>
speed limit	<i>il limite di velocità</i>	<i>eel lee-mee-teh dee veh-loh-chee-tah</i>
speedometer	<i>il tachimetro</i>	<i>eel tah-kee-met-roh</i>
steering wheel	<i>il volante</i>	<i>eel voh-lahn-teh</i>
turn signal	<i>la freccia</i>	<i>lah freh-chah</i>

Behind the Wheel

Renting a car is easiest from the airport because most of the competitors have booths with English-speaking staff. If you find yourself in a small, out-of-the-way town, however, the following phrases will help you get some wheels:

Vorrei noleggiare una macchina.

I would like to rent a car.

Preferisco una macchina con il cambio automatico.

I prefer a car with automatic transmission.

Quanto costa al giorno (alla settimana/al chilometro)?

How much does it cost per day (per week/per kilometer)?

Quanto costa l'assicurazione per l'auto?

How much does automobile insurance cost?

Quale tipo di pagamento preferite?

What form of payment do you prefer?

Accettate carte di credito?

Do you accept credit cards?



La Bella Lingua

There are several types of roads in Italy:

- *L'autostrada*: Just like the throughway, expect to pay high tolls on these fast-paced lanes.
- *La superstrada*: Like a local highway, these roads are well maintained and can be quite scenic.
- *La statale*: This state road is slower than a *superstrada* but faster than the *strada comunale*.
- *La strada comunale*: On these local roads, watch out for slow-moving tractors and the occasional flock of sheep.

Automobile Parts

If you've decided to rent *una macchina*, carefully inspect it inside and out. Make sure there is *un cricco* (a jack) and *una ruota di scorta* (a spare tire) in the trunk, in case you get a *gomma a terra* (flat tire)—and it doesn't hurt to check for any pre-existing damages you could later be charged for.

The following table gives you the Italian words for car parts and predicaments. You never know—that cherry-red Ferrari you rented could turn out to be a lemon.

Automobile Parts and Predicaments

English	Italian	Pronunciation
antenna	<i>l'antenna</i>	<i>lahn-teh-nah</i>
battery	<i>la batteria</i>	<i>lah bah-ter-ee-yah</i>
breakdown	<i>un guasto</i>	<i>oon gwah-stoh</i>
bumper	<i>il paraurti</i>	<i>eel pah-rah-oor-tee</i>
carburetor	<i>il carburatore</i>	<i>eel kar-boor-ah-toh-reh</i>
door	<i>la portiera</i>	<i>lah por-tee-eh-rah</i>
door handle	<i>la maniglia</i>	<i>lah mah-nee-lyah</i>
fan belt	<i>la cinghia del ventilatore</i>	<i>lah cheen-ghee-yah del ven-tee-lah-toh-reh</i>
fender	<i>il parafrango</i>	<i>eel pah-rah-fahn-goh</i>

continues

Automobile Parts and Predicaments (continued)

English	Italian	Pronunciation
filter	<i>il filtro</i>	<i>eel feel-troh</i>
flat tire	<i>una gomma a terra</i> <i>una ruota bucata</i>	<i>oo-nah goh-mah ah ter-rah</i> <i>oo-noh roo-woh-tah boo-kah-tah</i>
fuse	<i>un fusibile</i>	<i>oon foo-see-bee-leh</i>
gas tank	<i>il serbatoio</i>	<i>eel ser-bah-toy-oh</i>
headlights	<i>i fari</i>	<i>ee fah-ree</i>
hood	<i>il cofano</i>	<i>eel koh-fah-noh</i>
license	<i>la patente</i>	<i>lah pah-ten-teh</i>
license plate	<i>la targa</i>	<i>lah tar-gah</i>
motor	<i>il motore</i>	<i>eel moh-toh-reh</i>
muffler	<i>la marmitta</i>	<i>lah mar-mee-tah</i>
radiator	<i>il radiatore</i>	<i>eel rah-dee-yah-toh-reh</i>
sign	<i>il segnale</i>	<i>eel sen-yah-leh</i>
spark plug	<i>la candela d'accensione</i>	<i>lah kahn-deh-lah dah-chen-see-oh-neh</i>
tail light	<i>la luce di posizione</i>	<i>lah loo-cheh dee poh-zee-zee-oh-neh</i>
tire	<i>la ruota</i>	<i>lah rwoh-tah</i>
traffic officer	<i>il vigile</i>	<i>eel vee-jee-leh</i>
trunk	<i>il bagagliaio</i>	<i>eel bah-gah-lyah-yoh</i>
window	<i>il finestrino</i>	<i>eel fee-neh-stree-noh</i>
windshield	<i>il parabrezza</i>	<i>eel pah-rah-breh-zah</i>
windshield wiper	<i>il tergicristallo</i>	<i>eel ter-jee-kree-stah-loh</i>



La Bella Lingua

Tools are the last thing you think of when learning a second language, but if you're stranded, the following might be helpful:

pliers	<i>le pinze</i>
screwdriver	<i>il cacciavite</i>
hammer	<i>il martello</i>
monkey wrench	<i>la chiave inglese</i>

The Road Less Traveled

The following table contains more useful verbs and expressions related to the road.

More Words for the Road Warrior

English	Italian
to break down	<i>guastarsi</i>
to change a tire	<i>cambiare la ruota</i>
to check	<i>controllare</i>
... the water	<i>... l'acqua</i>
... the oil	<i>... l'olio</i>
... the tires	<i>... le ruote</i>
to drive	<i>guidare</i>
to fill it up	<i>fare il pieno</i>
to get gas	<i>fare benzina</i>
to get a ticket	<i>prendere una multa</i>
to give a ride	<i>dare un passaggio</i>
to obey traffic signs	<i>rispettare i segnali</i>
to park	<i>parcheggiare</i>
to run/function	<i>funzionare</i>
to run out of gas	<i>rimanere senza benzina</i>



La Bella Lingua

Follow the signs!

Deviazione

Detour

Divieto di Ingresso

No Entrance

Divieto di Sorpasso

No Passing

Divieto di Sosta

No Parking

Sosta Autorizzata

Parking Permitted

Doppio Senso

Two-Way Traffic

Senso Unico

One-Way Traffic

Tell Me Your Worries

You're driving along, minding your own business, when—pop! You blow a tire. A kind stranger pulls over and asks you what happened and whether you need help. Replace the English with its Italian equivalent to describe to the good Samaritan what your problem is and how he can help:



Did You Know?

In Italy, schedules are given in military time. If you are leaving at 2:00 P.M., for example, you are told 14,00 hours. This may be tricky at first, so confirm that you have understood correctly by asking if it is A.M. (*di mattino*) or P.M. (*di sera*).



Attenzione!

Numbers under 100 ending in a vowel, such as *venti* (20), drop the vowel when connected to secondary numbers. Examples are *ventuno* (21), *trentotto* (38), *quarantuno* (41), and so on. *Mille* (1000) turns to *mila* in the plural, as with the number *due mila* (2000).

Signore: C'è un problema?

Turista: Sì, c'è (a flat tire).

Signore: (The car) è Sua?

Turista: No, (I am renting) questa macchina per una settimana. Sono in vacanza.

Signore: C'è (a jack) nel portabagagli?

Turista: Credo di sì. Lei è molto (kind).

Baby, I Got Your Number

Public transportation is a great way to get around, but how are you going to get on the right bus if you don't know which number it is, or take the right train if you don't know what time it leaves? Numerically speaking, you'd have a pretty hard time. Take *un momento* to learn how to count and tell time (and you won't be late for your date with that attractive stranger you met on the plane).

Cardinal Numbers

In Italy, you're going to need to be able to count to a million since the Italian currency (*lira*) requires you to be able to understand high numbers. For instance, a *cappuccino* on average is 2,000 *lire* (L2.000). (Don't panic; it's only about a buck and a half.) If you want to make a date, tell the time, or find out prices, you need to know your cardinal numbers (1, 2, 3, ...).

Fortunately, you don't need to use Roman numerals to do your math. Numbers that express amounts, known as cardinal numbers, are called *numeri cardinali* in Italian. Let the counting begin.

Numeri Cardinali

English	Italian	Pronunciation
0	<i>zero</i>	<i>zeh-roh</i>
1	<i>uno</i>	<i>oo-noh</i>
2	<i>due</i>	<i>doo-weh</i>
3	<i>tre</i>	<i>treh</i>
4	<i>quattro</i>	<i>kwah-troh</i>
5	<i>cinque</i>	<i>cheen-kweh</i>
6	<i>sei</i>	<i>sey</i>
7	<i>sette</i>	<i>seh-teh</i>
8	<i>otto</i>	<i>oh-toh</i>
9	<i>nove</i>	<i>noh-veh</i>
10	<i>dieci</i>	<i>dee-ay-chee</i>
11	<i>undici</i>	<i>oon-dee-chee</i>
12	<i>dodici</i>	<i>doh-dee-chee</i>
13	<i>treddici</i>	<i>treh-dee-chee</i>
14	<i>quattordici</i>	<i>kwah-tor-dee-chee</i>
15	<i>quindici</i>	<i>kween-dee-chee</i>
16	<i>sedici</i>	<i>sey-dee-chee</i>
17	<i>diciassette</i>	<i>dee-chah-seh-teh</i>
18	<i>diciotto</i>	<i>dee-choh-toh</i>
19	<i>diciannove</i>	<i>dee-chah-noh-veh</i>
20	<i>venti</i>	<i>ven-tee</i>
21	<i>ventuno</i>	<i>ven-too-noh</i>
22	<i>ventidue</i>	<i>ven-tee-doo-eh</i>
23	<i>ventitrè</i>	<i>ven-tee-treh</i>
24	<i>ventiquattro</i>	<i>ven-tee-kwah-troh</i>
25	<i>venticinque</i>	<i>ven-tee-cheen-kweh</i>
26	<i>ventisei</i>	<i>ven-tee-sey</i>
27	<i>ventisette</i>	<i>ven-tee-seh-teh</i>
28	<i>ventotto</i>	<i>ven-toh-toh</i>
29	<i>ventinove</i>	<i>ven-tee-noh-veh</i>
30	<i>trenta</i>	<i>tren-tah</i>
40	<i>quaranta</i>	<i>kwah-rahn-tah</i>
50	<i>cinquanta</i>	<i>cheen-kwahn-tah</i>
60	<i>sessanta</i>	<i>seh-sahn-tah</i>
70	<i>settanta</i>	<i>seh-tahn-tah</i>
80	<i>ottanta</i>	<i>oh-tahn-tah</i>
90	<i>novanta</i>	<i>noh-vahn-tah</i>

continues

Numeri Cardinali (continued)

English	Italian	Pronunciation
100	<i>cento</i>	<i>chen-toh</i>
101	<i>centouno</i>	<i>chen-toh-oo-noh</i>
200	<i>duecento</i>	<i>doo-ay-chen-toh</i>
300	<i>trecento</i>	<i>treh-chen-toh</i>
400	<i>quattrocento</i>	<i>kwah-troh-chen-toh</i>
500	<i>cinquecento</i>	<i>cheen-kweh-chen-toh</i>
1.000	<i>mille</i>	<i>mee-leh</i>
1.001	<i>milleuno</i>	<i>mee-leh-oo-noh</i>
1.200	<i>milleduecento</i>	<i>mee-leh-doo-eh-chen-toh</i>
2.000	<i>duemila</i>	<i>doo-eh-mee-lah</i>
3.000	<i>tremila</i>	<i>treh-mee-lah</i>
10.000	<i>diecimila</i>	<i>dee-ay-chee-mee-lah</i>
20.000	<i>ventimila</i>	<i>ven-tee-mee-lah</i>
100.000	<i>centomila</i>	<i>chen-toh-mee-lah</i>
200.000	<i>duecentomila</i>	<i>doo-eh-chen-toh-mee-lah</i>
1.000.000	<i>un milione</i>	<i>oon mee-lyoh-neh</i>
1.000.000.000	<i>un miliardo</i>	<i>oon mee-lyar-doh</i>

Number Crunching

Keep in mind these brief notes on writing numbers in Italian:

- Italian uses a period to indicate units of thousands.

English	Italian
2,000	<i>2.000</i>

- In Italian, you must use commas in decimal numbers. It is read as *e* (and):

English	Italian
1.25	<i>1,25</i>

- When writing down the time, Italian uses a comma (and not a colon) and is again read as *e* (and):

English	Italian
3:30 A.M.	<i>3,30 di mattino</i>
9:45 P.M.	<i>9,45 di sera</i>

Time Is of the Essence

Time is easy to learn. You need to remember the verb *essere* for asking what time it “is.” You use the verb *sapere* to ask if someone “knows” the time.

You can ask the time in several ways:

<i>Che ore sono?</i>	What time is it?
<i>Che ora è?</i>	What time is it?
<i>Sa l'ora?</i>	Do you know what time it is?

Use the third person of *essere* to respond.

<i>È l'una.</i>	It is one o'clock.
<i>È mezzogiorno.</i>	It is noon.
<i>Sono le due.</i>	It is two o'clock.
<i>Sono le nove.</i>	It is nine o'clock.

If someone is already wearing a watch and asks you for the time, beware. Otherwise, the following expressions will help talk about the time.



Attenzione!

Be careful of the Italian word *tempo* because this word is primarily used when talking about the weather (as in *temperatura*), not time.

Time Expressions

English	Italian	English	Italian
What time is it?	<i>Che ore sono? Che ora è?</i>	early/late	<i>in anticipo/in ritardo</i>
The time is ...	<i>Sono le ...</i>	half past	<i>e mezzo</i>
At what time?	<i>A che ora?</i>	in	<i>fra</i>
an hour	<i>un'ora</i>	... a while	<i>... un po'</i>
a half hour	<i>un mezz'ora</i>	... an hour	<i>... un'ora</i>
a minute	<i>un minuto</i>	... a half hour	<i>... una mezz'ora</i>
a quarter past	<i>e un quarto</i>	in the afternoon	<i>di pomeriggio</i>
a quarter to	<i>meno un quarto</i>	in the evening	<i>di sera</i>
a second	<i>un secondo</i>	in the morning	<i>di mattina</i>
ago	<i>fa</i>	less than/before	<i>meno (le)</i>
and	<i>e</i>	on time	<i>in tempo</i>
before/after	<i>prima/dopo</i>	since	<i>da</i>

Use *è* when it is one o'clock. For all other times, because they are plural, use *sono*.

<i>È l'una.</i>	It is 1:00.
<i>Sono le tre.</i>	It is 3:00.

To express time after the hour, use *e* (without the accent, meaning “and”) plus the number of minutes past the hour:

<i>Sono le quattro e dieci.</i>	It is 4:10.
<i>Sono le sei e cinque.</i>	It is 6:05.
<i>È l'una e un quarto.</i>	It is 1:15.

To express time before the next hour (in English, we say “ten to,” “quarter to,” and so on), use the next hour + *meno* (meaning less) + whatever time is remaining before the next hour:

<i>Sono le otto meno un quarto.</i>	It is a quarter to eight—literally, eight minus a quarter.
<i>È l'una meno dieci.</i>	It's ten to one—literally, one minus ten.

It is not unusual to hear the time expressed as follows:

<i>Sono le sette e quarantacinque.</i>	It is 7:45.
--	-------------

The following table spells out exactly how to tell the time minute by minute, hour by hour.

Telling Time

English	Italian
It is 1:00.	<i>È l'una.</i>
It is 2:00.	<i>Sono le due.</i>
It is 2:05.	<i>Sono le due e cinque.</i>
It is 3:10.	<i>Sono le tre e dieci.</i>
It is 4:15.	<i>Sono le quattro e un quarto.</i>
It is 5:20.	<i>Sono le cinque e venti.</i>
It is 6:25.	<i>Sono le sei e venticinque.</i>
It is 6:30.	<i>Sono le sei e trenta.</i>
It is 7:30.	<i>Sono le sette e mezzo.</i>
It is 8:40. (20 minutes to 9)	<i>Sono le nove meno venti.</i>
It is 9:45. (a quarter to 10)	<i>Sono le dieci meno un quarto.</i>
It is 10:50. (10 minutes to 11)	<i>Sono le undici meno dieci.</i>
It is 11:55. (5 minutes to noon)	<i>È mezzogiorno meno cinque.</i>
It is noon.	<i>È mezzogiorno.</i>
It is midnight.	<i>È mezzanotte.</i>

Time Will Tell

Answer the following questions as best you can using complete sentences. Remember that the answer is usually in the question.

Example: *A che ora finisci di lavorare?* (What time do you finish working?)

Answer: *Finisco di lavorare alle sei e mezzo.* (I finish working at 6:30.)

1. *A che ora andiamo al cinema?* (6:00 P.M.)
2. *A che ora parte il volo?* (8:25 A.M.)
3. *A che ora è la cena?* (7:00 P.M.)
4. *Quando c'è un autobus per Verona?* (noon)
5. *Che ore sono?* (4:44 P.M.)
6. *A che ora c'è il treno per Roma?* (2:33 P.M.)
7. *A che ora andiamo a fare colazione?* (7:30 A.M.)

It's Not What You Do, but with Whom You Do It

You want to find out the bus schedule, where the museum is, how much the tickets will cost you, and with whom you should speak to make reservations for the opera. Getting the information you need is an essential communication skill that will take you places. The following table contains a list of words and expressions that will help you get what you want, find out where you want to go, and meet the people you would like to know.

Information Questions

English	Italian	Pronunciation
how	<i>come</i>	<i>koh-meh</i>
how much	<i>quanto</i>	<i>kwahn-toh</i>
what	<i>che cosa</i> (can be broken up to <i>che</i> or <i>cosa</i>)	<i>kay koh-zah</i>
what time	<i>a che ora</i>	<i>ah kay oh-rah</i>
when	<i>quando</i>	<i>kwahn-doh</i>
where	<i>dove</i>	<i>doh-veh</i>
where is ...?	<i>dov'è ...?</i>	<i>doh-veh</i>
who	<i>chi</i>	<i>kee</i>
why	<i>perché</i>	<i>per-kay</i>

Questions, Questions

The best way to get to know someone is to ask questions. The easiest way to ask a question is to make your sentence sound like a question, as in *Questo treno va a Roma?* (Does this train go to Rome?)

In Italian, you can also put the question word before the conjugated verb. Don't forget to sound like you're asking a question by raising the intonation of your voice at the end of the phrase. You don't want to sound like you're reading from a phrase book.



As a Rule

When asking a question using the word *dove* (where) with the third person of the verb *essere* (*è*), you must form a contraction, as in *dov'è*, to avoid a double vowel and maintain the flow of the pronunciation.

dove + è? = dov'è?

Con chi viaggia Lei?

A che ora apre il museo?

Quando c'è il treno per Roma?

Dov'è la fermata dell'autobus?

Quanto costa?

Di dov'è Lei?

Di dove sei?

Per quanto tempo state in Italia?

C'è un ospedale qui vicino?

Ci sono molti turisti a quest'ora?

With whom are you traveling? (polite)

At what hour does the museum open?

When is the train for Rome?

Where is the bus stop?

How much does this cost?

Where are you from? (polite)

Where are you from? (informal)

For how long are you in Italy? (you, plural)

Is there a hospital nearby?

Are there many tourists at this hour?

Ask Away

Each of the following paragraphs is an answer to a question. Figure out what the questions are based on the following information. In the first paragraph, use the *tu* form to ask Cinzia about herself based on her responses. In the second paragraph, ask *Signore Pesce* about himself using the *Lei* form of the verb.

Mi chiamo Cinzia Bell e abito negli Stati Uniti. Sono una studentessa. Studio storia dell'arte. Viaggio in macchina con la mia amica in Italia. Passiamo un mese in Italia. Andiamo a visitare tutte le città importanti. Ritorno all'università a settembre.

Mi chiamo Signore Mario Pesce e sono un bancario. Non parlo l'inglese molto bene. Abito a Milano con mia moglie. Abbiamo due figli, Giorgio e Isabella. A dicembre vado con mia moglie a New York.

All Aboard

I mezzi pubblici (public transportation) in Italy is quite efficient, with buses, taxis, trains, and subways to take you where you want to go. Now that you know when to get on board, you need to know what you're getting onto.



La Bella Lingua

In Italy, taxis are usually not hailed. You must go to a *posteggio* (taxi stand) or call to get a taxi, especially late at night. Most taxis have meters, but it's a wise idea to agree upon a *tariffa* for longer trips. You may pay extra for baggage and late-night rides, with a possible surcharge for the taxi driver's return trip. It's a wise idea to find out from your guidebook or hotel the *numero di telefono* for late-night taxis. Expect to pay—taxis in Italy aren't cheap! If you're satisfied with your ride, it is customary (although not necessary) to give the driver a 5 percent *mancia* (tip).

In the following table, you'll find the what, where, and how to complement the when.

Getting Around

English	Italian	Pronunciation
bus	<i>l'autobus</i>	<i>low-toh-bus</i>
bus stop	<i>la fermata dell'autobus</i>	<i>lah fer-mah-tah dow-toh-boos</i>
connection	<i>la coincidenza</i>	<i>lah koh-eeen-chee-den-zah</i>
information	<i>l'ufficio informazioni</i>	<i>loo-fee-choh een-for-mah-zee-oh-nee</i>
taxi	<i>il tassì</i>	<i>eel tah-see</i>
train	<i>il treno</i>	<i>eel treh-noh</i>
... by train (railway)	<i>... per ferrovia</i>	<i>per feh-roh-vee-yah</i>
... train station	<i>... la stazione ferroviaria</i>	<i>lah stah-zee-oh-neh feh-roh-vee-yah-ree-ah</i>

continues

Getting Around (continued)

English	Italian	Pronunciation
ticket	<i>il biglietto</i>	<i>eel bee-lyeh-toh</i>
... round-trip ticket	... <i>il biglietto di andata e ritorno</i>	<i>dee ahn-dah-tah eh ree-tor-noh</i>
... one-way ticket	... <i>il biglietto di corsa semplice</i>	<i>dee kor-sah sem-plee-cheh</i>
... first/second class	... <i>di prima/seconda classe</i>	<i>dee pree-mah/sehk-ohn-dah klah-seh</i>
ticket counter	<i>la biglietteria</i>	<i>lah bee-lyeh-teh-ree-yah</i>
schedule	<i>l'orario, la tabella</i>	<i>lor-ah-ree-oh, lah tah-beh-lah</i>
track	<i>il binario</i>	<i>eel bee-nah-ree-oh</i>
waiting room	<i>la sala d'aspetto</i>	<i>lah sah-lah dah-speh-toh</i>
seat	<i>il sedile/il posto</i>	<i>eel sed-ee-leh/eel pohs-toh</i>
window	<i>il finestrino</i>	<i>eel fee-neh-stree-noh</i>



La Bella Lingua

There's nothing more *romantico* than riding along *la costa* by *ferrovia* ("railway," coming from *ferro*, meaning "iron," and *via*, meaning "way"). Italian trains are generally well maintained, inexpensive, and comfortable. They are by far one of the best ways to get around and meet Italians (and practice your Italian!). There are several kinds of trains used within Italy:

- *Diretto*: This train actually takes the longest route because it makes most local stops.
- *Espresso*: Having nothing to do with coffee, this train stops at all major *stazioni*.
- *Pendolino-ETR* (Pendulum): Named for the high number of commuters, this is the fastest way to get between major cities. Designed like a bullet, this train costs more and requires *una prenotazione*, but is well worth the extra money if time is an issue.
- *Rapido*: This city-to-city train is an economical way of getting from one end of the country to the other.
- *Regionale*: Like a *diretto*, this local train weaves its way into the smallest of villages.

Verbiage

The following table shows you some helpful travel-related verbs and expressions:

Travel Verbs

English	Italian
to be (running) late	<i>essere in ritardo</i>
to be (running) early	<i>essere in anticipo</i>
to be (running) on time	<i>essere in orario</i>
to change	<i>cambiare</i>
to commute	<i>fare il pendolare</i>
to get on	<i>salire su</i>
to get off	<i>scendere da</i>
to leave	<i>partire</i>
to miss, to lose	<i>perdere</i>
to stop	<i>fermare</i>
to take	<i>prendere</i>



La Bella Lingua

Bring a couple of empty folders with you when you travel to Italy. You can organize the many pieces of information, brochures, ticket stubs, and maps you collect along the way. When you get home, you can use them as “real-life” study aids for your growing note and scrapbook.

Here are some other handy phrases:

<i>Vorrei un biglietto di andata e ritorno.</i>	I would like a round-trip ticket.
<i>Dov'è la fermata dell'autobus?</i>	Where is the bus stop?
<i>C'è la coincidenza?</i>	Is there a connection?
<i>A che ora parte il treno?</i>	At what times does the train leave?
<i>I voli sono in orario.</i>	The planes (are running) on time.

<i>Partiamo subito.</i>	We're leaving immediately.
<i>Su quale binario parte il treno?</i>	On what track does the train leave?
<i>Prenda quest'autobus.</i>	Take this bus.
<i>C'è un posto vicino al finestrino?</i>	Is there a seat near the window?
<i>Posso aprire il finestrino?</i>	May I open the window?

Practice Those Conjugations

Try conjugating these travel-related regular verbs. You've been given the first person (*io*) to get your started:

<i>chiedere</i> (to ask)	<i>chiedo</i> ...
<i>prendere</i> (to take)	<i>prendo</i> ...
<i>prenotare</i> (to reserve)	<i>prenoto</i> ...
<i>ritornare</i> (to return)	<i>ritorno</i> ...
<i>scendere</i> (to get off)	<i>scendo</i> ...

Getting On with *Salire*

The irregular verb *salire* (to climb) is used to get on, mount, and go up. Use it to get on the bus or train.

The Verb *Salire*: to Climb

Italian	English
<i>io salgo</i>	I climb
<i>tu sali</i>	you climb
<i>lui/lei/Lei sale</i>	he/she climbs; You climb
<i>noi saliamo</i>	we climb
<i>voi salite</i>	you climb
<i>loro salgono</i>	they climb

Things to Do: The Verb *Fare* (to Do; to Make)

The verb *fare* expresses when you want to make or do something. In addition, it is often used like the English verb *to take* and appears in many idiomatic expressions. For example, in Italian, you don't "take a trip"—rather, you "make a trip" (*fare un viaggio*).

The verb *fare* is used to talk about the weather, or when you "take" that perfect picture (the one you always thought should be submitted to *National Geographic*). With this versatile verb, you can go shopping, pretend, or indicate where something hurts.

You'll use it when you take a shower, a walk, or a spin. You'll see this verb a lot—and use it often during your travels. Because *fare* is irregular, you must memorize the different parts in the following table.

The Verb *Fare*: to Do; to Make

Italian	English	Italian	English
io <i>faccio</i>	I do	noi <i>facciamo</i>	we do
tu <i>fai</i>	you do	voi <i>fate</i>	you do
lui/lei/Lei <i>fa</i>	he/she does; You do	loro <i>fanno</i>	they do



La Bella Lingua

Aside from its principal significance, **fare** is a verb used in many idiomatic *espressioni*, including when you talk about *il tempo* (the weather). Your Italian *dizionario* offers many of these idioms.

In English you “take” a shower, while in Italian you “make” a shower, as in: *fare una doccia*.

Conversely, while in English you “make” a decision, in Italian you “take” a decision, as in: *prendere una decisione*.

You may also see and hear the verb as *far*, as in *far le compere* (to go shopping).

Idiomatic Expressions Using *Fare*

The following table contains some idiomatic expressions using the verb *fare*. Remember that, like idiomatic expressions using the verb *avere*, you must conjugate the verb. To remind you, the verb is given in (parenthesis).

Expressions Using *Fare*

Italian	English	Italian	English
(fare) <i>l'amore</i>	to make love	(fare) <i>il bagno</i>	to take a bath
(fare) <i>l'autostop</i>	to hitchhike	(fare) <i>del bene</i>	to do good
(fare) <i>baccano</i>	to make a ruckus	(fare) <i>benzina</i>	to get gas

continues

Expressions Using *Fare* (continued)

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>(fare) un controllo</i>	to get a tune-up	<i>(fare) una passeggiata</i>	to take a walk
<i>(fare) una bella figura</i>	to make a good impression	<i>(fare) il pieno</i>	to fill it up
<i>(fare) una brutta figura</i>	to make a bad impression	<i>(fare) presto</i>	to be early
<i>(fare) colazione</i>	to have lunch	<i>(fare) un regalo</i>	to give a gift
<i>(fare) la doccia</i>	to take a shower	<i>(fare) le spese</i>	to go shopping
<i>(fare) una domanda</i>	to ask a question	<i>(fare) tardi</i>	to be late
<i>(fare) finta</i>	to pretend	<i>(fare) le valigie</i>	to pack/prepare one's bags
<i>(fare) una fotografia</i>	to take a picture	<i>(fare) vedere</i>	to show
<i>(fare) un giro</i>	to take a spin	<i>(fare) un viaggio</i>	to take a trip
<i>(fare) male a qualcuno</i>	to hurt someone		

What Are You Doing?

Look at the following sentences to get a better idea of what you can express with the verb *fare*:

Perché non fare un giro?

Why don't you take a spin?

Faccio le valigie per la mia vacanza in Italia.

I am preparing my bags for my vacation to Italy.

Noi facciamo un bel viaggio.

We are taking a beautiful trip.

Posso fare una domanda?

May I ask a question?

Ti voglio fare vedere qualcosa.

I want to show you something.

Fammi vedere!

Show me!

Lui sta facendo una passeggiata.

He is taking a walk.

What to Do, What to Do

Fill in the appropriate form of *fare* in the following sentences, and translate:

1. Perché non _____ un giro? (noi)
2. Vado al supermercato per _____ le spese.
3. Il turista _____ una fotografia.
4. Lo studente _____ una domanda all'ufficio informazioni.
5. Il bambino _____ il letto.

The Least You Need to Know

- Read the road signs!
- Telling time is easy; remember the key words *meno* (less than) and *e* (and).
- *Che* and *quale* are used to ask “what?” and “which?”
- Questions are a great way to start a conversation (and let others do the talking).
- *Fare* is an incredibly versatile verb used in many idiomatic expressions.



Hallelujah, You've Made It to *l'Hotel*

In This Chapter

- ▶ The comfort zone: getting the most from your hotel
- ▶ First things first: ordinal numbers
- ▶ How to get what you want with *volere*, *potere*, and *dovere*
- ▶ Verbs and prepositions

Whether you're willing to live on a shoestring or you want the best of the best, this chapter will help you get what you need when you want it.

A Cave Will Do

For most people with limited vacation time, it's a good idea to make reservations in advance, especially during the busy season (called *alta stagione*), which lasts from May through August.

For others, the fun of travel is the unexpected, the sense of living in the *momento*. You don't mind not knowing where you'll be next week because you want to go with the flow. In that case, it's a good idea to shop around before settling on a hotel or *pensione* (inn); prices may vary, and with a smile and bit of wit, you might be able to get yourself a terrific deal.

Whether you decide to pick a place to lay your head early in the game or later on, you're going to need the following vocabulary to help you find the place that's right for you.

The Hotel and Nearby

Facilities	Italian	Pronunciation
bar	<i>il bar</i>	<i>eel bar</i>
barber	<i>il barbiere</i>	<i>eel bar-bee-eh-reh</i>
cashier	<i>la cassa</i>	<i>lah kah-sah</i>
doorman	<i>il portiere</i>	<i>eel por-tee-eh-reh</i>
dry cleaner	<i>la tintoria</i>	<i>lah teen-toh-ree-ah</i>
elevator	<i>l'ascensore</i>	<i>lah-shen-soh-reh</i>
gift shop	<i>il negozio di regali</i>	<i>eel neh-goh-zee-oh dee reh-gah-lee</i>
gym	<i>la palestra</i>	<i>lah pah-leh-strah</i>
hairdresser	<i>la parrucchiere</i>	<i>lah pah-roo-kee-eh-reh</i>
hotel	<i>l'albergo</i> <i>l'hotel</i>	<i>lahl-ber-goh</i> <i>loh-tel</i>
	<i>la pensione</i>	<i>lah pen-see-yoh-neh</i>
laundry service	<i>la lavanderia</i>	<i>lah lah-vahn-deh-ree-yah</i>
maid	<i>la domestica</i>	<i>lah doh-mes-tee-kah</i>
parking lot	<i>il parcheggio</i>	<i>eel par-keh-joh</i>
pharmacy	<i>la farmacia</i>	<i>lah far-mah-chee-ah</i>
room service	<i>il servizio in camera</i>	<i>eel ser-vee-zee-oh een kah-meh-rah</i>
sauna	<i>la sauna</i>	<i>lah sah-oo-nah</i>
swimming pool	<i>la piscina</i>	<i>lah pee-shee-nah</i>
tailor	<i>la sartoria</i>	<i>lah sar-toh-ree-yah</i>

A Room with a View

You might think you want to stand at your window and look at the wonderful hub-bub that makes Rome such a lively place. Beware: Windows facing the street can be bothersome if you want to sleep in a little. After you unpack, maybe you want to take a nice bath to unwind. Don't assume there will be a tub in your room; you must ask. The following table will help you ask for the kind of room you want. Start with *Vorrei ...* (I would like ...).

Your Room

Amenity	Italian	Pronunciation
a room	<i>una camera</i>	<i>oo-nah kah-meh-rah</i>
a double room	<i>una doppia</i>	<i>oo-nah doh-pee-yah</i>
... with a double bed	<i>... con letto matrimoniale</i>	<i>kohn leh-toh mah-tree-moh-nee-ah-leh</i>

Amenity	Italian	Pronunciation
a single room	<i>una singola</i>	<i>oo-nah seen-goh-lah</i>
... on the garden	... <i>sul giardino</i>	<i>sool jar-dee-noh</i>
... on the sea	... <i>sul mare</i>	<i>sool mah-reh</i>
with ...	<i>con ...</i>	<i>kohn</i>
... air conditioning	... <i>l'aria condizionata</i>	<i>lah-ree-yah kohn-dee-zee-oh-nah-tah</i>
... (private)		
bathroom	... <i>bagno (privato)</i>	<i>kohn bah-nyoh pree-vah-toh</i>
... bathtub	... <i>la vasca da bagno</i>	<i>lah vah-skah dah bah-nyoh</i>
... refrigerator	... <i>il frigorifero</i>	<i>eel free-goh-ree-feh-roh</i>
... telephone	... <i>il telefono</i>	<i>eel teh-leh-foh-noh</i>
... television	... <i>la televisione</i>	<i>lah teh-leh-vee-zee-oh-neh</i>
... terrace	... <i>terrazza</i>	<i>kohn teh-rah-tsah</i>
... every comfort	... <i>ogni confort</i>	<i>kohn oh-nyee kohn-fort</i>
elevator	<i>l'ascensore</i>	<i>lah-shen-soh-reh</i>
fax	<i>il fax</i>	<i>eel fax</i>
heat	<i>il riscaldamento</i>	<i>eel ree-skahl-dah-men-toh</i>
key	<i>la chiave</i>	<i>lah kee-yah-veh</i>
safe deposit box	<i>la cassaforte</i>	<i>lah kah-sah-for-the</i>

Simply Said

It's nice to understand how a language works, but it can take a while for it all to sink in. In the meantime, the following simple phrases will help you ask for what you need without breaking out your list of conjugated verbs:

<i>Vorrei ...</i>	I would like ...
<i>Ho bisogno di ...</i>	I need ...
<i>Mi serve ...</i>	I need ...
<i>Mi servono ...</i>	

Get Cozy

The following table will help you find the word for whatever amenity you may be lacking.



Did You Know?

Italy has few laundromats. Traditionally, you must give your *biancheria sporca* (dirty laundry) to the hotel or bring it to a *la-vanderia*, where it will be cleaned and pressed for you. Usually, you pay per piece and not by weight. If you want something dry-cleaned, you must bring it to *la tintoria*.

Inside Your Room

Necessities	Italian	Pronunciation
alarm clock	<i>la sveglia</i>	<i>lah sveh-lyah</i>
ashtray	<i>il portacenere</i>	<i>eel por-tah-cheh-neh-reh</i>
blanket	<i>la coperta</i>	<i>lah koh-per-tah</i>
blow-dryer	<i>l'asciugacapelli</i>	<i>lah-shoo-gah-kah-peh-lee</i>
	<i>il fon</i>	<i>eel fohn</i>
closet	<i>il guardaroba</i>	<i>eel gwar-dah-roh-bah</i>
cot	<i>il lettino</i>	<i>oon leh-tee-noh</i>
hanger	<i>la gruccia</i>	<i>lah groo-chah</i>
	<i>la stampella</i>	<i>lah stahm-peh-lah</i>
ice	<i>il ghiaccio</i>	<i>eel ghee-ah-choh</i>
matches	<i>i fiammiferi</i>	<i>ee fee-ah-mee-feh-reh</i>
mineral water	<i>l'acqua minerale</i>	<i>lah-kwah mee-ner-ah-leh</i>
pillow	<i>il cuscino</i>	<i>eel koo-shee-noh</i>
shampoo	<i>lo shampoo</i>	<i>loh sham-poo</i>
shower	<i>la doccia</i>	<i>lah doh-chah</i>
soap	<i>il sapone</i>	<i>eel sah-poh-neh</i>
stationery	<i>la carta da lettere</i>	<i>lah kar-tah dah leh-teh-reh</i>
tissues	<i>i fazzoletti di carta</i>	<i>ee fah-tsoh-leh-tee dee kar-tah</i>
toilet	<i>la toilette</i>	<i>lah toy-lett</i>
toilet paper	<i>la carta igienica</i>	<i>lah kar-tah ee-jen-ee-kah</i>
towel	<i>l'asciugamano</i>	<i>lah-shoo-gah-mah-noh</i>
transformer	<i>il trasformatore</i>	<i>eel trah-sfor-mah-toh-reh</i>



As a Rule

When using the reflexive verb *servirsi*, the number of things you need must agree with the verb. You'll learn more about reflexive verbs later.

Mi serve una coperta in più. I need an extra blanket.

Mi servono due coperte in più. I need two extra blankets.

Room Service Please

Ask the hotel for something from the previous list using one of the expressions you just learned. You might have to add the words *in più* after the item if you want an extra towel, blanket, and so on.

If you want to ask for “some” more, use the preposition *di* + the appropriate article, as in *del, della, dei*, and so on:

Example: *un cuscino*

Answer: *Vorrei un cuscino in più, per favore.*

Example: *la carta igienica*

Answer: *Mi serve della carta igienica.*

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. <i>carta da lettere</i> | 4. <i>sveglia</i> |
| 2. <i>chiave</i> | 5. <i>saponetta</i> |
| 3. <i>asciugamano</i> | |

Is There Room at the Inn?

In a pinch, you can use the following phrases to express yourself and get the information you need. The last thing you want to do is rifle through your *dizionario* while the concierge taps his foot.

Useful Expressions

English	Italian
Do you have any rooms?	<i>Avete delle camere?</i>
I'd like to make a reservation.	<i>Vorrei fare una prenotazione.</i>
... for one night.	<i>... per una notte</i>
... for one week.	<i>... per una settimana</i>
At what time is check-out?	<i>Qual è l'orario per lasciare la camera?</i>
Is breakfast included?	<i>Colazione compresa?</i>
I'll take it (the room).	<i>La prendo.</i>
I need ...	<i>Ho bisogno di ...</i>
Compliments!	<i>Complimenti!</i>
Did I receive any messages?	<i>Ho ricevuto dei messaggi?</i>
May I leave a message?	<i>Posso lasciare un messaggio?</i>
Thank you so much.	<i>Grazie tanto.</i>
This room is too ...	<i>Questa camera è troppo ...</i>
... small.	<i>... piccola.</i>
... dark.	<i>... buia.</i>
... noisy.	<i>... rumorosa.</i>

Let's Make a Deal

You may find yourself struggling to negotiate or pay for a room in Italian. The following phrases should help.

Let's Make a Deal

English	Italian
How much does it cost ...	<i>Quanto costa ...</i>
... per day?	<i>... al giorno?</i>
... per week?	<i>... alla settimana?</i>
It's too expensive.	<i>È troppo caro.</i>
Is there anything less expensive?	<i>Non c'è qualcosa di più economico?</i>
Can I pay ...	<i>Posso pagare ...</i>
... in cash?	<i>... in contanti?</i>
... by check?	<i>... con assegno?</i>
... by credit card?	<i>... con carta di credito?</i>
The check, please.	<i>Il conto per favore.</i>

Practice Makes Perfetto

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate Italian word. Don't forget to use the correct article when necessary; then translate the sentences.

1. *Mi servono _____ in più per favore. Fa freddo stasera!* (two blankets)
2. *Ho bisogno di un altro _____.* (pillow)
3. *Vorrei _____ per i miei capelli.* (a hair dryer)
4. *C'è un'altra _____ per la nostra camera?* (key)
5. *Ci sono dei buoni _____ qui vicino?* (restaurants)
6. *Vorrei _____ diversa. Questa non va bene.* (a room)
7. *Mi serve _____.* (a bottle of mineral water)

Your Firma Here, Please

You may be given a *fattura* (invoice), *conto* (bill), or *ricevuta* (receipt) that looks something like the following.

While reading this invoice, what can you tell? Did I have a single or a double room? How much did my room cost? Were there any extra costs? When was I there?

Villa Vallerosa Via Vallerosa 27 02040 Selci Sabino (Rieti) Telefono e fax (0765) 519179		RICEVUTA FISCALE FATTURA N°: 243 DATA: 25.09.00 PERS. N°: 01 CAMERA N°: 26	
Signorina: Euvino, Gabrielle		Indirizzo: P.O. Box 602 New York, NY 10025	
QUANTITÀ, NATURA E QUALITÀ DEI SERVIZI			IMPORTO
SOGGIORNO IN CAMERA TRIPLA		<input type="checkbox"/>	
SOGGIORNO IN CAMERA DOPPIA		<input type="checkbox"/>	
SOGGIORNO IN CAMERA SINGOLA		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
DAL: 21.09.00		AL: 25.09.00	
AL GIORNO: L. 100.000 x 4			400.000
EXTRA: Telefono L. 11.000			11.000
FIRMA: <i>Gabrielle Euvino</i>			TOTALE 411.000

La Mancìa (Tipping)

While you were out catching the sights, some elves seem to have mysteriously neatened your room and made the bed.

Although tipping is optional, it's always nice to leave something extra to show your appreciation for good service. In restaurants, *il coperto e servizio* is included in the *conto*. At *il bar* it is customary to leave a small token of appreciation (100 *lire* will do). When staying for any length of time in a hotel, it's appropriate to leave a tip in an envelope or with the reception as you leave. The following tip suggestions came from a tourist pamphlet. See how well you understand them.

In Italia la mancìa in genere viene inclusa nel conto. Una guida semplice di mancìa suggerisce segue:

<i>Tassista</i>	5%
<i>Cameriere</i>	5–10%
<i>Fattorino</i>	L1.000–2.000
<i>Portiere</i>	L1.000–2.000
<i>Domestica</i>	L1.000–2.000 <i>al giorno</i>
<i>Concierge</i>	L5.000–10.000
<i>Guardiano</i>	L3.000–5.000

It is customary to tip *il guardiano* (custodian) for opening up churches or museums, especially if they've done so especially for you.

Who's on First?

When you *ordinare* your dinner in a *ristorante*, you start with your *primo piatto* (first course). Maybe you order *pasta primavera* (which means “springtime” and translates literally as “first green”). You move along to your *secondo piatto* (second course), and afterward, you might have *per ultimo* (for last)—a nice *tiramisù*, so sweet and light and lovely that you feel like you died and went to heaven.

What do all these things have in common (other than they are *delizioso*)? They all use ordinal numbers.

The Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers specify the order of something in a series. The word *primo* is similar to the English word “primary,” *secondo* is like “secondary,” *terzo* is like “tertiary,” *quarto* is like “quarter,” *quinto* is like “quintuplets,” and so on. (Remember cognates: You should always be thinking of like-sounding words in English to help you retain your Italian vocabulary.) The following table gives you a rundown of useful ordinal numbers you need and how to write them in abbreviated form.

Ordinal Numbers

English	Italian	Masc.	Fem.	Pronunciation
first	<i>primo</i>	1°	1 ^a	<i>pree-moh</i>
second	<i>secondo</i>	2°	2 ^a	<i>seh-kohn-doh</i>
third	<i>terzo</i>	3°	3 ^a	<i>ter-zoh</i>
fourth	<i>quarto</i>	4°	4 ^a	<i>kwahr-toh</i>
fifth	<i>quinto</i>	5°	5 ^a	<i>kween-toh</i>
sixth	<i>sesto</i>	6°	6 ^a	<i>sehs-toh</i>
seventh	<i>settimo</i>	7°	7 ^a	<i>seh-tee-moh</i>
eighth	<i>ottavo</i>	8°	8 ^a	<i>oh-tah-voh</i>
ninth	<i>nono</i>	9°	9 ^a	<i>noh-noh</i>
tenth	<i>decimo</i>	10°	10 ^a	<i>deh-chee-moh</i>
eleventh	<i>undicesimo</i>	11°	11 ^a	<i>oon-dee-cheh-zee-moh</i>
twelfth	<i>dodicesimo</i>	12°	12 ^a	<i>doh-dee-cheh-zee-moh</i>
twentieth	<i>ventesimo</i>	20°	20 ^a	<i>ven-teh-zee-moh</i>
twenty-first	<i>ventunesimo</i>	21°	21 ^a	<i>ven-too-neh-zee-moh</i>
twenty-third*	<i>ventitreesimo</i>	23°	23 ^a	<i>ven-tee-treh-eh-zee-moh</i>
sixty-sixth*	<i>sessantaseiesimo</i>	66°	66 ^a	<i>seh-sahn-tah-seh-eh-zee-moh</i>
seventy-seventh	<i>settantasettesimo</i>	77°	77 ^a	<i>seh-tahn-tah-seh-teh-zee-moh</i>
hundredth	<i>centesimo</i>	100°	100 ^a	<i>chen-teh-zee-moh</i>
thousandth	<i>millesimo</i>	1000°	1000 ^a	<i>mee-leh-zee-moh</i>

*Note: The final vowel of the cardinal number is not dropped with numbers ending in 3 (–tre) and 6 (–sei).

There are some basic rules for using ordinal numbers in Italian:

- Like any adjective, ordinal numbers must agree in gender and number with the nouns they modify. As in English, they precede the nouns they modify. Notice how they are abbreviated, as in 1° (1st), 2° (2nd), and 3° (3rd)—much easier than the English. The feminine abbreviation reflects the ending *-a*, as in 1^a, 2^a, and 3^a.

la prima volta (1^a) the first time

il primo piatto (1°) the first course

- The first 10 ordinal numbers all have separate forms, but after the tenth ordinal number, they simply drop the final vowel of the cardinal number and add the ending *-esimo*.

tredici *tredicesimo* 13th

venticinque *venticinesimo* 25th

ventisei *ventiseiesimo* 26th

- You need to use ordinal numbers whenever you reference a Roman numeral, as in Enrico V (*quinto*) or Papa Giovanni Paolo II (*secondo*).
- Unlike in English, dates in Italian require cardinal numbers, unless you are talking about the first day of a month, as in *il primo ottobre*. June 8th is *l'otto (di) giugno* because the day always comes before the month. The use of the preposition *di* is optional. Therefore, it's important to remember that in Italian, 8/6/98 is actually June 8, 1998 (and not August 6, 1998). You'll learn more about dates in Chapter 14, "Rain or Shine."



Did You Know?

In Italian, the word for "floor" is *piano* (just like the instrument). The *primo piano* (first floor) is actually the floor above the *pi-antreno* (ground floor) and equal to what is considered the second floor in the United States.

Feeling Moody: The Modal Verbs

Do you *want* to learn Italian? You *can*, but you *must* study. The modal verbs *potere* (to be able to), *dovere* (to have to), and *volere* (to want) express a mood, such as when you say, "I want! I can! I must!"

Before you plunge in, take stock of what you've already learned—and be patient with yourself. Learning a language is a *processo*. It takes time—time to sink in, time to kick in—and when it does, there's nothing like it.

I Want What I Want! (Volere)

An important verb you have already been using in its conditional form is the verb *volere*. When you say, *Vorrei*, you are saying, "I would like." Because you "would like"

to express your wants as delicately as possible, you use the conditional. Sometimes, however, you just want what you want and there's no doubt about it. The following table shows you how to express want, pure and simple, in the present tense.



La Bella Lingua

The idiomatic expression *ci vuole* derives from the verb *volere* (to want) and roughly means "what's necessary is"

Ci vuole pazienza!

One needs patience!

*Per imparare bene la lingua,
ci vuole molto pratica.*

To learn a language well
requires a lot of practice.

The Verb *Volere*: to Want

Italian	English
<i>io voglio</i>	I want
<i>tu vuoi</i>	you want
<i>lui/lei/Lei vuole</i>	he/she wants; You want
<i>noi vogliamo</i>	we want
<i>voi volete</i>	you want
<i>loro vogliono</i>	they want

I bambini vogliono mangiare un gelato.

The children want to eat an ice cream.

Vuole una mano?

Do you want a hand?

I Think I Can, I Think I Can! (Potere)

You use the verb *potere* to say that you are able to do something. It's the same as what the little train said as it puffed up the hill—and it's what you use to express that you *can* speak Italian. Using it will help you to remember it. Your *potential* is unlimited, as long as you think you can. The verb *potere* is always used with an infinitive.



La Bella Lingua

Most modal verbs are followed by an infinitive:

<i>Posso</i>	} <i>partire</i>	I can	} leave
<i>Voglio</i>		I want to	
<i>Devo</i>		I must	

The Verb *Potere*: to Be Able to/Can

Italian	English
<i>io posso</i>	I can
<i>tu puoi</i>	you can
<i>lui/lei/Lei può</i>	he/she/You can
<i>noi possiamo</i>	we can
<i>voi potete</i>	you can
<i>loro possono</i>	they can

Posso venire con te?

Can I come with you?

Possiamo imparare questa lingua.

We can learn this language.

I Have to ... (Dovere)

The verb *dovere*, outlined in the following table, is what you use to express “to have to” and “must,” and is also used to express “to owe.” Like the verb *potere*, *dovere* is almost always used in front of an infinitive, such as when you say, “I must study.”

The Verb *Dovere*: to Have to/Must/to Owe

Italian	English
<i>io devo</i>	I must
<i>tu devi</i>	you must
<i>lui/lei/Lei deve</i>	he/she/You must
<i>noi dobbiamo</i>	we must
<i>voi dovete</i>	you must
<i>loro devono</i>	they must

Devo trovare una banca.

I must find a bank.

Dobbiamo partire subito.

We have to leave immediately.

Devo molti soldi.

I owe a lot of money.

I'm in the Mood for ...

Read through the *frasi* and determine which *verbo* is most appropriate to each *situazione*. There may be more than one correct *risposta*. Don't forget to conjugate the verb according to the subject. The Italian pronouns are given in parentheses to help you determine the subject. Read the entire *frase* before giving your *risposta*.

1. (Io) _____ studiare italiano ogni giorno.
2. Cinzia, (tu) _____ venire alla festa domani sera?
3. Pino _____ fare una prenotazione.
4. (Io) _____ una camera singola per favore.
5. Tiziana e Maria _____ incontrare un'amica più tardi.
6. (Noi) _____ andare in macchina.
7. (Voi) _____ mangiare gli spaghetti al ristorante?
8. Giorgio _____ parlare il greco.
9. Leonardo non _____ mai studiare.

Infinitive Verbs and Prepositions

The infinitive of a verb, as you know, is a verb before it has been conjugated, or the "to" form of a verb, as in "to study," "to laugh," and "to cry." Sometimes an infinitive takes a different form, as in the sentence "I plan on *studying* a lot this summer."

In Italian, when a verb does not have a subject, it is usually in its infinitive form, even if this form resembles the gerund (*-ing* form) of the verb.

Some Italian verbs are preceded by a preposition, others are followed by a preposition, and some take none at all. Knowing when to use a preposition is often a question of usage because the meaning of a verb can change when used with one. This applies in English as well; compare these two sentences and see how the meaning changes by changing the preposition:

I want to go **on** the plane.

I want to go **to** the plane.

Italian prepositions sometimes change while their English counterparts do not.

(*pensare di*)

Penso di andare in Italia.

I am thinking **of** going to Italy.

(*pensare a*)

Penso a te.

I'm thinking **of** you.

Memorization might work for the few who have a photographic memory, but for the rest of us, practice and usage are the only way to remember which verb takes what. After you have repeated something three times, you generally remember it.

Alone at Last

For some verbs, you don't have to worry about the preposition at all. The following verbs can be followed by an infinitive without a preposition.

Verbs Without a Preposition

Italian	English
<i>amare</i>	to love
<i>bastare</i>	to suffice
<i>desiderare</i>	to desire
<i>dovere</i>	to have to
<i>fare</i>	to do/make
<i>lasciare</i>	to leave (something behind)
<i>occorrere</i>	to be necessary
<i>parere</i>	to seem
<i>potere</i>	to be able
<i>preferire</i>	to prefer
<i>sapere</i>	to know (something)
<i>sembrare</i>	to seem
<i>sentire</i>	to listen
<i>vedere</i>	to see
<i>volere</i>	to want

Anna preferisce bere la birra.

Anna prefers to drink beer.

Vogliamo vedere un film.

We want to see a film.

Oddballs

There are always going to be peculiarities that cannot be translated. The verbs and idiomatic expressions used in the following table require the preposition *di* when followed by an infinitive.



As a Rule

It is important to avoid literally translating from one language to another—context is key—because you might get caught up in details that cannot be completely “decoded.” For example, in Italian you must use the preposition *in* when visiting a country and *a* for cities. In English, you simply use *to*. When translating from Italian to English, there is no distinction between the two.

Verbs and Idiomatic Expressions Taking *di* Before an Infinitive

English	Italian	English	Italian
to accept from	<i>accettare di ...</i>	to hope to	<i>sperare di ...</i>
to admit to	<i>ammettere di ...</i>	to intend to	<i>avere intenzione di ...</i>
to ask for	<i>chiedere di ...</i>	to offer to	<i>offrire di ...</i>
to be afraid of	<i>avere paura di ...</i>	to order to	<i>ordinare di ...</i>
to be in the mood for	<i>avere voglia di ...</i>	to permit to	<i>permettere di ...</i>
to be right about	<i>avere ragione di ...</i>	to pray to	<i>pregare di ...</i>
to believe in	<i>credere di ...</i>	to remember to	<i>ricordare di ...</i>
to decide to	<i>decidere di ...</i>	to repeat to	<i>ripetere di ...</i>
to dream of	<i>sognare di ...</i>	to respond to	<i>rispondere di ...</i>
to expect to	<i>aspettare di ...</i>	to say to	<i>dire di ...</i>
to finish to	<i>finire di ...</i>	to speak of	<i>parlare di ...</i>
to forget to	<i>dimenticare di ...</i>	to think of	<i>pensare di ...</i>
to have need of	<i>avere bisogno di ...</i>	to search for	<i>cercare di ...</i>

Ho voglia di mangiare un gelato subito.

Ho paura di essere in ritardo.

Cristina sogna di sposarsi.

Natalia ha bisogno di studiare.

I'm in the mood to eat an ice cream.

I am afraid of being late.

Christina dreams of getting married.

Natalia needs to study.

The Preposition *A*

Some verbs, as in the following table, take the preposition *a* before an infinitive. Pay attention to how the preposition in the English changes from one verb to the next.

While you “help *to* protect someone,” you “succeed *at* your job.” (This flexible nature of prepositions is what makes them as annoying as fruit flies.)

The Preposition **A** Before an Infinitive

English	Italian	English	Italian
to be at	<i>stare a ...</i>	to help to	<i>aiutare a ...</i>
to be careful to	<i>stare attento a ...</i>	to invite to	<i>invitare a ...</i>
to be ready to	<i>essere pronto a ...</i>	to learn to	<i>imparare a ...</i>
to begin to	<i>cominciare a ...</i>	to pass to	<i>passare a ...</i>
to bring to	<i>portare a ...</i>	to prepare for/to	<i>preparare a ...</i>
to come to	<i>venire a ...</i>	to return to	<i>tornare a ...</i>
to enter into	<i>entrare a ...</i>	to run to	<i>correre a ...</i>
to exit to	<i>uscire a ...</i>	to succeed at	<i>riuscire a ...</i>
to go to	<i>andare a ...</i>	to teach to	<i>insegnare a ...</i>

Watch how some of these verbs work in the following sentences:

Comincio a capire.

I am beginning to understand.

Impariamo a parlare l'italiano.

We are learning to speak Italian.

Vengo a trovarti.

I am coming to see you.

Learning by Example

Complete the sentences using the subjects provided. Translate the sentences.

Example: _____ *essere brava. (io/cercare di)*

Answer: *Cerco di essere brava.*

Translation: I try to be good.

- _____ *studiare. (voi/avere bisogno di)*
- _____ *parlare l'italiano. (tu/imparare a)*
- _____ *lavorare mentre studia. (Cristoforo/ continuare a)*
- _____ *dormire presto. (noi/andare a)*
- _____ *fumare le sigarette. (io/smettere di)*
- _____ *mangiare alle 8,00. (Loro/finire di)*

A Review of the Irregular Verbs

You've studied verbs until you thought you would go nuts trying to understand the different conjugations, stems, tenses, and persons. Don't try to rush through any of it. You'll learn Italian with perseverance and patience. At some point, it might be a

good idea to review the first two parts of this book to reinforce what you have learned. In the meantime, the following table offers a quick review of some of the more important verbs you have learned.

Irregular Verbs

Italian	Conjugation (Present Indicative)
<i>andare</i> (to go)	<i>vado, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno</i>
<i>avere</i> (to have)	<i>ho, hai, ha, abbiamo, avete, hanno</i>
<i>dare</i> (to give)	<i>do, dai, dà, diamo, date, danno</i>
<i>dovere</i> (to must/have to)	<i>devo, devi, deve, dobbiamo, dovete, devono</i>
<i>essere</i> (to be)	<i>sono, sei, è, siamo, siete, sono</i>
<i>fare</i> (to do/make)	<i>faccio, fai, fa, facciamo, fate, fanno</i>
<i>potere</i> (to be able to/can)	<i>posso, puoi, può, possiamo, potete, possono</i>
<i>sapere</i> (to know)	<i>so, sai, sa, sappiamo, sapete, sanno</i>
<i>stare</i> (to be/to stay)	<i>sto, stai, sta, stiamo, state, stanno</i>
<i>volere</i> (to want)	<i>voglio, vuoi, vuole, vogliamo, volete, vogliono</i>

Practice with a friend and see if you have these verbs memorized. At first, you'll probably fumble a bit, but after a while, they'll come naturally. It's like doing scales on a musical instrument. Once you can play them three times in a row with no mistakes, you've pretty much got them down pat.

Practice Makes Perfetto II

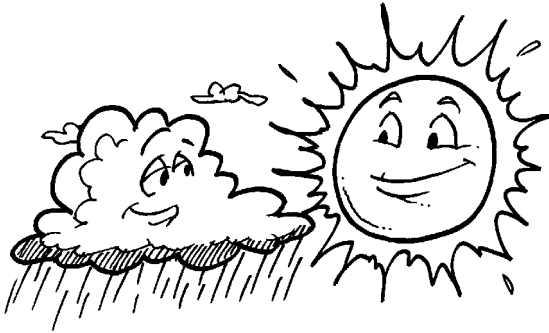
Conjugate and insert the correct verb where appropriate in each of these sentences. Note that not all verbs will be used.

dovere *finire di*
amare *fare*
chiedere di *volere*
aiutare a *credere di*

1. *Io _____ mangiare la pasta.*
2. *Enrico _____ fare la valigia.*
3. *Sandra e Filippo _____ preparare la cena.*
4. *Voi _____ essere poveri, ma siete ricchi—avete l'amore.*
5. *_____ pulire la tua camera!*
6. *Posso _____ una domanda?*

The Least You Need to Know

- Ordinal numbers specify the order of things, as in first, second, and third.
- If you can't remember the Italian word for an ordinal number, think about how you'd say it in English; chances are, you'll remember the Italian word because the English is so similar.
- Some verbs require a preposition when followed by an infinitive.



Rain or Shine

In This Chapter

- ▶ The weather and the verb *fare*
- ▶ *Il clima*: talking about the climate
- ▶ It's a date!
- ▶ What's your sign: the zodiac in Italian

You're ready to go. Forget jet lag; you took your melatonin on the plane, your body's clock is totally in synch with Italian time, and now you're raring to go out and see the sights. You walk downstairs and the *portiere* gives you a big smile and says *Fa bello oggi*, and you agree: The *temperatura* is a perfect 24° and the sky is blue. So, come on; let's talk about the weather. To do so, you'll have to use the irregular verb *fare* (to do; to make) that you learned in Chapter 12, "Moving Around."

Talking About the Weather: *Che Tempo Fa?*

Several verbs can be used to talk about *il tempo* (the weather). You'll need the verb *fare*, and you'll see the *ci + essere* combination here, too, as in *c'è il sole* (it's sunny). Some of the information in the following table might be review, and some is new.



La Bella Lingua

If you're interested in hearing *le previsioni del tempo* (the weather report) in Italian, consult your cable company to determine when you can listen to the radio and television transmissions by the Italian broadcasting company RAI.

Don't be intimidated by how fast the newscasters speak; listen for key words such as *freddo* (cold), *caldo* (hot), *piovoso* (rainy), and *sereno* (calm). The more you hear the Italian language spoken, the better you'll be able to speak it!



La Bella Lingua

The next time you want to express how nasty the weather is, try using one of the following idiomatic expressions to talk about that temperamental *tempo*:

Fa un tempo da cani. It's dog's weather.

Fa un tempo da lupi. It's wolf's weather.

Weather Expressions

Italian	English
<i>Che tempo fa?</i>	What's the weather?
<i>Fa caldo.</i>	It's hot.
<i>Fa freddo.</i>	It's cold.
<i>Fa fresco.</i>	It's cool.
<i>Quanto fa oggi?</i>	What is the temperature today?
<i>Fa trenta gradi.</i>	It's 30° (Celsius).
<i>C'è il sole.</i>	It's sunny.

Italian	English
<i>C'è nebbia.</i>	It's foggy.
<i>C'è un temporale.</i>	There is a storm.
<i>C'è vento.</i>	It's windy.
<i>È nuvoloso.</i>	It's cloudy.
<i>È umido.</i>	It's humid.
<i>È bello.</i>	It's beautiful.
<i>È brutto.</i>	It's bad.
<i>Grandina.</i>	It's hailing.



As a Rule

The verbs *piovere* (to rain), *nevicare* (to snow), and *tuonare* (to thunder) are used only in the third person singular.

<i>Piove.</i>	It's raining.
<i>Nevica.</i>	It's snowing.
<i>Tuona.</i>	It's thundering.

Il Clima: The Climate

There's a lot more out there than *la pioggia* (rain), *il sole* (sun), and *la neve* (snow). How about snowflakes? Rainbows? Sunsets and sunrises? Some of the following words and phrases will help you talk about the beautiful *clima d'Italia*. After you've read through the words, try reading the Italian without the English and see how well you understand. *Capito?*

Cats and Dogs

English	Italian	English	Italian
air	<i>l'aria</i>	Centigrade	<i>grado centigrado</i>
atmosphere	<i>l'atmosfera</i>	climate	<i>il clima</i> (m.)
breeze	<i>la brezza, il venticello</i>	cloud	<i>la nuvola</i>

continues

Cats and Dogs (continued)

English	Italian	English	Italian
Fahrenheit	<i>grado Fahrenheit</i>	rainbow	<i>l'arcobaleno</i>
fog	<i>la nebbia</i>	sky	<i>il cielo</i>
frost	<i>la brina</i>	sleet	<i>la pioggia ghiacciata, il nevischio</i>
hail	<i>la grandine</i>	smog	<i>lo smog</i>
humidity	<i>l'umidità</i>	snow	<i>la neve</i>
ice	<i>il ghiaccio</i>	snowball	<i>la palla di neve</i>
lightning bolt	<i>il fulmine, il lampo</i>	snowflake	<i>il fiocco di neve</i>
mud	<i>il fango</i>	sun	<i>il sole</i>
nature	<i>la natura</i>	sunrise	<i>l'alba</i>
ozone	<i>l'ozono</i>	sunset	<i>il tramonto</i>
plain	<i>la pianura</i>	temperature	<i>la temperatura</i>
pollution	<i>l'inquinamento</i>	thermometer	<i>il termometro</i>
rain	<i>la pioggia</i>	wind	<i>il vento</i>



La Bella Lingua

The next time you're hanging around the fatalists and doomsdayers, impress them with your knowledge of natural disasters, in Italian.

avalanche	<i>la valanga</i>	fire	<i>il fuoco</i>
calamity	<i>la calamità</i>	flood	<i>l'alluvione</i>
disaster	<i>il disastro</i>	pestilence	<i>la pestilenza</i>
earthquake	<i>il terremoto</i>	plague	<i>la peste</i>
famine	<i>la carestia</i>	vulcano	<i>il vulcano</i>

Dipinto di Blu

In the song *Volare* written by Domenico Modugno, the expression *dipinto di blu* refers to the sky painted blue. Some helpful adjectives used to talk about *il tempo* can be found in the following table.

Describing the Weather

English	Italian	English	Italian
calm	<i>sereno</i>	nice	<i>bello</i>
cloudy	<i>nuvoloso</i>	overcast	<i>coperto</i>
cold	<i>freddo</i>	rainy	<i>piovoso</i>
cool	<i>fresco</i>	sky blue	<i>celeste, azzurro</i>
dry	<i>secco</i>	starry	<i>stellato</i>
hot	<i>caldo</i>	tropical	<i>tropicale</i>
humid	<i>umido</i>	ugly	<i>brutto</i>
mild	<i>mite</i>		

La Temperatura: What's Hot and What's Not

To refer to *la temperatura* (the temperature), you use the verb *fare* in the third person, as you do with the weather.

If someone asks, *Quanto fa oggi?* what they're really asking is, "How many degrees (*gradi*) are there today?" The word *gradi* is implied.

If it's 20° Centigrade, you simply reply, *Fa venti gradi.* (It's 20°.)

If it's 10 below, you say, *Fa dieci sotto zero.*



As a Rule

In Italy, as in all of Europe, the metric system is used to determine the temperature. To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply the Centigrade temperature by 1.8 and add 32.

To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade, subtract 32 from the Fahrenheit temperature and multiply the remaining number by .5.

Here are some basic temperature reference points:

Freezing: 32°F = 0°C

Room temperature: 68°F = 20°C

Body temperature: 98.6°F = 37°C

Boiling: 212°F = 100°C



La Bella Lingua

In Italy, *il ferragosto* refers to the August holidays many Italians take during the hot, humid month. If you're planning a trip during this time, don't be surprised to find many of the smaller businesses closed for the holidays. Along the major routes, it's hard to avoid the long lines of cars escaping the sultry cities as they snake their way toward the cool breezes of *il mare*.

The Four Seasons

Ah! What's nicer than springtime in *Toscana* or a beautiful summer day lounging on the beaches of *Sardegna*? Before you start daydreaming about the seasons in which you'd like to travel, first you need to learn how to say them in Italian.

The Seasons

Italian	English
<i>la primavera</i>	spring
<i>l'estate</i> (f.)	summer
<i>l'autunno</i>	autumn
<i>l'inverno</i>	winter
<i>la stagione</i>	season

When talking about *in* a particular season, Italian uses the prepositions *in* and *di*.

<i>Fa freddo d'inverno?</i>	Is the winter cold?
<i>Piove in primavera.</i>	It rains in spring.

Buon Viaggio!

The following table and the sample sentences that follow contain a few *espressioni* and some *vocabolario* related to trip-taking that will help you express some of the events of your fabulous Italian *vacanza*, regardless the weather. You can use several verbs such as *andare*, *essere*, and *fare*.



La Bella Lingua

In Italy, instead of making a big deal out of birthdays, many people celebrate their *onomastico* (Saint's Day), or one's name day. Pick up an Italian calendar and see if there's a day for you!

Expressions of Leisure

Italian	English
<i>Andiamo ...</i>	Let's go ...
<i>... al mare.</i>	... to the seashore.
<i>... all'estero.</i>	... abroad.
<i>... in giro.</i>	... around, on tour.
<i>... in campagna.</i>	... to the country.
<i>... in montagna.</i>	... to the mountains.
<i>... in vacanza.</i>	... on vacation.

Andiamo al mare quest'estate.

We are going to the seashore this summer.

Siamo in vacanza il mese d'agosto.

We are on vacation for the month of August.

Facciamo il campeggio in montagna.

We are camping in the mountains.

Give Your Mind a Trip

You're familiar with all these words but may not have seen them used in these idiomatic expressions related to *la vacanza*. Match up the Italian and English sentences.

1. *essere in ferie*
2. *essere in vacanza*
3. *fare il campeggio*
4. *fare un viaggio*
5. *fare una crociera*
6. *fare una vacanza*
7. *festeggiare*

- a) to take a cruise
- b) to take a trip
- c) to be on holiday
- d) to party, to celebrate
- e) to be on vacation
- f) to go camping
- g) to take a vacation

It's a Date!

To talk about the date requires a particular order. (Consult Chapter 5, “Expressively Yours,” for a review of the days of the week and months.) Often this simply means that, in Italian, you must place the day *before* the month—for example: *5 settembre* (September 5). In addition, you should know that when Italians talk about *il cinquecento* (literally, the five hundred), they are actually referring to the sixteenth century (and not the year 500).

Talking About Months

With the exception of the *first* day of the month, dates in Italian require cardinal numbers (1, 2, 3, ...). As indicated previously, in Italian the day must come before the month. This is not difficult to realize when you're talking about *il 25 dicembre* (December 25), but with some dates it can get tricky. For instance, if you wrote the abbreviation 4/5, in Italian it would be read as the fourth of May. If you meant the fifth of April, you were off by almost a month! It's crucial that you remember to reverse the two numbers when dealing with any kinds of documents, such as a car lease or apartment contract. Or, avoid this problem altogether and always be sure to write out the month.

In Italian, you must always put the definite article in front of the day after which comes the month. Unless beginning a sentence, months are not capitalized.

<i>il 25 (venticinque) giugno</i>	June 25th
<i>il tre ottobre</i>	October 3rd



As a Rule

The definite article goes in front of the cardinal number when telling the date, as in *il sette luglio* (July 7th). The exception here is the first day of the month, which is indicated with the ordinal number *primo* (first), as in *il primo giugno* (June 1st).

What Century?

Talking about centuries can be confusing in both English and Italian. For example, in English when you talk about the *third century*, you're really talking about the century before (200–299). Additionally, you're using an *ordinal* number (first, second, third, ...).

Italian, on the other hand, always uses cardinal numbers (1, 2, 3 ...), unless referring to the *first* (day/month/year).

A.D.

The basis for today's calendar finds its roots in Christianity. As you probably know, the abbreviation A.D. comes from Latin and literally stands for *Anno Domini*, meaning, “in the year of the Lord.” In writing, the Italian language uses both the Latin

abbreviation A.D. and the Italian abbreviation d.C. (from *dopo Cristo*, meaning “after Christ”) to express time *after* the birth of Christ. (When speaking, the tendency is to use the words *dopo Cristo*.)

In Italian, to talk about dates from 1 A.D. *until* the year 1000 A.D., you must use cardinal numbers plus the words *dopo Cristo* (in abbreviated form here).

79 d.C. *Il Vesuvio distrusse Pompei.*

79 A.D. Vesuvius destroyed Pompei.

You may also see *anno domini* or the abbreviation A.D. written on monuments and tombstones.

121–180 A.D. *Marco Aurelio, Imperatore*

121–180 A.D. Marcus Aurelius, Emperor

As a general rule, you don’t need to use A.D. for dates after the year 1000.

1,000 Years Later

To express centuries *after* the year 1000, it gets a little tricky. To talk about the sixteenth century (1500–1599) like an Italian, you must omit the first thousand and say, “the five hundred,” as in *il cinquecento*. There is no need to indicate that this occurred after the birth of Christ.

However, it is also possible to use an ordinal number (first, second, third, ...) when referring to centuries, as in *il quindicesimo secolo* (the fifteenth century).

In writing, the apostrophe before the number shows that it is after the year 1000.

'100—*La Crociata*

1100—the Crusades

'300–'600—Il Rinascimento

1300–1600—the Renaissance



Did You Know?

The word *calendar* originally comes from the Latin word *calends*, signifying the day of the new moon. During the Middle Ages, the *calender* was what money lenders called their account books, being that the monthly interest was due on the *calends*. The original “old style” Roman calendar, instituted by Julius Caesar in 46 B.C., was used until 1583 when Pope Gregory XIII made official the “new style” calendar—also referred to as the Gregorian calendar.



La Bella Lingua

Many *monumenti* (monuments) in Italy are written with the dates expressed in Roman numerals. Often, you will see A.D.—which stands for *Anno Domini*—written after a date, meaning “in the year of the Lord.” This is used in English as well.

B.C.

To express time *before* the birth of Christ (B.C.), as in 400 B.C., Italian uses the abbreviation a.c. (from *avanti Cristo*, meaning “before Christ”).

753 a.c.—*La fondazione di Roma* 753 B.C.—The foundation of Rome

106–43 a.c.—*Cicero, oratore* 106–43 B.C.—Cicero, orator

To talk about the year 1965, you would say it like any other number: *millenovecentosessantacinque* (one thousand nine hundred sixty-five).

Do You Have *un Appuntamento*?

In Italian, you make an *appuntamento* to meet people, whether it's social or business-related. The following table offers some helpful time-related words.

It's a Date

English	Italian	Pronunciation
afternoon	<i>il pomeriggio</i>	<i>eel poh-meh-ree-joh</i>
appointment	<i>l'appuntamento</i>	<i>lah-poon-tah-men-toh</i>
calendar	<i>il calendario</i>	<i>eel kah-len-dah-ree-yoh</i>
century	<i>il secolo</i>	<i>eel seh-koh-loh</i>
date	<i>la data</i>	<i>lah dah-tah</i>
day	<i>il giorno</i>	<i>eel jor-noh</i>
decade	<i>il decennio</i>	<i>eel deh-cheh-nee-yoh</i>
evening	<i>la sera</i>	<i>lah seh-rah</i>
holiday	<i>la festa</i>	<i>lah fes-tah</i>
millennium	<i>il millennio</i>	<i>eel mee-leh-nee-yoh</i>
month	<i>il mese</i>	<i>eel meh-zeh</i>
morning	<i>la mattina</i>	<i>lah mah-tee-nah</i>
week	<i>la settimana</i>	<i>lah seh-tee-mah-nah</i>
year	<i>l'anno</i>	<i>lah-noh</i>

About Last Night

This year, last year, the day before, the day after—all of these times have significance. Was it good for you, too? The following table offers you some helpful *vocabolario* you'll find useful when talking about the past. You'll learn how to talk about the past in Chapter 19, “Having Fun Italian Style.”

About Last Night

English	Italian	Pronunciation
ago	<i>fa</i>	<i>fah</i>
every (day)	<i>ogni (giorno)</i>	<i>oh-nyee (jor-noh)</i>
in (two weeks)	<i>fra (due settimane)</i>	<i>frah (doo-yeh seh-tee-mah-neh)</i>
last night	<i>ieri notte</i>	<i>ee-eh-ree noh-teh</i>
last year	<i>l'anno scorso</i>	<i>lah-noh skor-soh</i>
next	<i>prossimo</i>	<i>proh-see-moh</i>
this evening	<i>stasera*</i>	<i>stah-seh-rah</i>
this morning	<i>stamattina*</i>	<i>stah-mah-tee-nah</i>
today	<i>oggi</i>	<i>oh-jee</i>
tomorrow	<i>domani</i>	<i>doh-mah-nee</i>
yesterday	<i>ieri</i>	<i>ee-eh-ree</i>
yesterday evening	<i>ieri sera</i>	<i>ee-eh-ree seh-rah</i>

*Note: The terms *stamattina* and *stasera* are abbreviated from *questa mattina* and *questa sera*.

The Dating Game

How do you express the following? Remember that adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify. Nouns must always reflect number.

Example: Last week Answer: *La settimana scorsa*
 Example: 3 years ago Answer: *Tre anni fa*

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. Last month | 6. Next winter |
| 2. Last year | 7. Seven years ago |
| 3. Next year | 8. Last night |
| 4. In ten years | 9. Yesterday evening |
| 5. Last spring | 10. This morning |

How Often?

Some events occur once in a lifetime, whereas others reoccur, such as your birthday or getting your daily newspaper. The following terms may come in handy.



La Bella Lingua

When referring to the day after tomorrow, Italians use *dopodomani* (literally, “after tomorrow”). To talk about the day before yesterday, Italians use *l'altro ieri* (literally, “the other yesterday”).

How Often?

English	Italian	Pronunciation
annual	<i>annuale</i>	<i>ah-noo-ah-leh</i>
biannual	<i>biennale</i>	<i>bee-eh-nah-leh</i>
bimonthly	<i>bimestrale</i>	<i>bee-meh-strah-leh</i>
biweekly	<i>bisettimanale</i>	<i>bee-seh-tee-mah-nah-leh</i>
centennial	<i>centenario</i>	<i>chen-teh-nah-ree-yoh</i>
daily	<i>quotidiano</i>	<i>kwoh-tee-dee-ah-noh</i>
monthly	<i>mensile</i>	<i>men-see-leh</i>
quarterly	<i>trimestrale</i>	<i>tree-me-strah-leh</i>
weekly	<i>settimanale</i>	<i>seh-tee-mah-nah-leh</i>

Dating Dilemmas

Determine how to say the following *feste* (holidays) or important dates in Italian:

1. *Natale*
2. *Capodanno*
3. *Il tuo compleanno*
4. *L'anniversario dei tuoi genitori*



La Bella Lingua

Many of the more important Christian holidays coincide with the major Roman celebrations of Bacchanalia and Saturnalia.

Quando Quando Quando?

See if you can answer the following questions. They are posed using the familiar form of the verb, but you should answer them using the first person:

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Quando è il tuo compleanno?</i> | When is your birthday? |
| 2. <i>Quando vai in vacanza?</i> | When are you going on vacation? |
| 3. <i>Quando è l'anniversario dei tuoi?</i> | When is your (parents') anniversary? |

Quale Festa?

Make no mistake: In Italy, Christmas is a big deal. The holiday season is dotted with many opportunities to celebrate. Practice your comprehension skills and see if you can figure out the following Italian holidays.

6 dicembre: *La Festa di San Nicola*

8 dicembre: *L'immacolata Concezione*

13 dicembre: *La Festa di Santa Lucia*

24 dicembre: *La Vigilia di Natale*

25 dicembre: *Natale*

26 dicembre: *La Festa di Santo Stefano*

1 gennaio: *Capodanno*

6 gennaio: *La Befana*

From What Realm Are You?

It is said by some that if you reach for the stars, you might arrive at the moon. Not a bad place to be. But how would da Vinci or Galileo discuss such ethereal topics? Although it ends in *-a*, the Italian word for planet is masculine, as in *il pianeta*.



La Bella Lingua

Whether you're into *l'astronomia* or *l'astrologia*, the following words will help you stargaze from anywhere.

astrology	<i>l'astrologia</i>	sun	<i>il sole</i>
astronomy	<i>l'astronomia</i>	universe	<i>l'universo</i>
constellation	<i>la costellazione</i>	Big Dipper	<i>l'Orsa Maggiore</i>
galaxy	<i>la galassia</i>	Little Dipper	<i>l'Orsa Minore</i>
moon	<i>la luna</i>	Milky Way	<i>la Via Lattea</i>
star (stars)	<i>la stella (le stelle)</i>		

Planets

Planet	<i>Il Pianeta</i>	Planet	<i>Il Pianeta</i>
Mercury	<i>Mercurio</i>	Saturn	<i>Saturno</i>
Venus	<i>Venere</i>	Uranus	<i>Urano</i>
Earth	<i>Terra</i>	Neptune	<i>Nettuno</i>
Mars	<i>Marte</i>	Pluto	<i>Plutone</i>
Jupiter	<i>Giove</i>		

What's Your Sign?

If the weather isn't your thing, you can go to another plane and ask about someone's background—astrologically speaking. Find out if you are compatible by asking someone *Che segno sei?* (What's your sign?)

Astrological Signs

<i>Simbolo</i>	<i>Segno</i>	<i>Elemento</i>	<i>Caratteristiche</i>	<i>Periodo</i>	<i>English</i>
♈	<i>ariete</i>	<i>fuoco</i>	<i>indipendente, aggressivo, impulsivo</i>	<i>21 marzo–19 aprile</i>	Aries
♉	<i>toro</i>	<i>terra</i>	<i>determinato, testardo, fedele, tollerante</i>	<i>20 aprile–20 maggio</i>	Taurus
♊	<i>gemelli</i>	<i>aria</i>	<i>intelligente, ambizioso, capriccioso</i>	<i>21 maggio–21 giugno</i>	Gemini
♋	<i>cancro</i>	<i>acqua</i>	<i>sensibile, simpatico, impressionabile</i>	<i>22 giugno–22 luglio</i>	Cancer
♌	<i>leone</i>	<i>fuoco</i>	<i>generoso, nobile, entusiasta</i>	<i>23 luglio–22 agosto</i>	Leo
♍	<i>vergine</i>	<i>terra</i>	<i>intellettuale, passivo, metodico</i>	<i>23 agosto–22 settembre</i>	Virgo
♎	<i>bilancia</i>	<i>aria</i>	<i>giusto, organizzato, simpatico</i>	<i>23 settembre–23 ottobre</i>	Libra
♏	<i>scorpione</i>	<i>acqua</i>	<i>filosofo, fedele, dominante</i>	<i>24 ottobre–21 novembre</i>	Scorpio
♐	<i>sagittario</i>	<i>fuoco</i>	<i>pragmatico, maturo, creativo</i>	<i>22 novembre–21 dicembre</i>	Sagittarius

<i>Simbolo</i>	<i>Segno</i>	<i>Elemento</i>	<i>Caratteristiche</i>	<i>Periodo</i>	<i>English</i>
♈	<i>capricorno</i>	<i>terra</i>	<i>ambizioso, fedele, perseverante</i>	22 dicembre– 19 gennaio	Capricorn
♉	<i>acquario</i>	<i>aria</i>	<i>generoso, idealistico, originale</i>	20 gennaio– 18 febbraio	Aquarius
♊	<i>pesci</i>	<i>acqua</i>	<i>timido, simpatico, sensibile</i>	19 febbraio– 20 marzo	Pisces

Like a Fish to Water

Imagine that you are reading the horoscopes for some very well-known *personaggi storici* (historical figures). Next to their names is a brief description of them and their key accomplishments. You might want to go back to Chapter 10, “Tell Me About Your Childhood,” to review some adjectives to help you describe the different characteristics that make up each sign.

Did the individuals in the following table live up to their astrological inclinations?

Historical Figures

<i>Personaggio Storico</i>	<i>Compimento</i>	<i>Data di Nascità</i>	<i>Segno Astrologico</i>
Leonardo da Vinci	<i>pittore: La Gioconda, scultore, ingegnere, scienziato</i>	15 aprile 1452	<i>ariete</i>
Niccolò Machiavelli	<i>scrittore, politico: Il Principe</i>	3 maggio 1469	<i>toro</i>
Michelangelo Buonarroti	<i>pittore: La Cappella Sistina, scultore, architetto</i>	5 marzo 1475	<i>pesci</i>
Caterina de' Medici	<i>moglie di Enrico II, figlia di Lorenzo de' Medici (Urbino)</i>	13 aprile 1519	<i>ariete</i>
Galileo Galilei	<i>astronomo, matematico, fisico: “parabola”</i>	15 febbraio 1564	<i>capricorno</i>
Giuseppe Garibaldi	<i>“il Risorgimento” 1860</i>	4 luglio 1807	<i>cancro</i>
Giacomo Puccini	<i>compositore: La Bohème</i>	22 dicembre 1858	<i>capricorno</i>
Luigi Pirandello	<i>drammaturgo: Sei Personaggi in Cerca d'Autore</i>	28 giugno 1867	<i>cancro</i>
Benito Mussolini	<i>fascista, dittatore; “Il Duce”</i>	28 luglio 1883	<i>leone</i>



Did You Know?

The Medici family was enormously influential during the Renaissance. Having settled in Florence during the twelfth century, its reign of power lasted well into the seventeenth century. These powerful merchants and bankers later developed strong ties to royalty, bringing two popes and two queens into power, including **Caterina de' Medici** (1519–1589). The daughter of Lorenzo de' Medici, the Duke of Urbino, she later became the wife of Henry II of France and was mother to Francis II, Charles IX, and Henry III.

The Least You Need to Know

- Use the third person of the verb *fare* (*fa*) to express weather conditions and the temperature, and use it for idiomatic expressions.
- To express the date, use the number of the day plus the month and the year.
- Use the words *dopo Cristo* to describe a historical event that occurred after the death of Christ but before the beginning of the second millennium; use *avanti Cristo* to describe an event before the birth of Christ.

Part 3

Fun and Games

Part 3 is the meal after a hard day's work. You'll learn how to shop for your dinner, make a simple soup using an Italian recipe from the Tuscan countryside, and order a bottle of vino from a restaurant.

Maybe it's time to visit a bookstore and pick up a book that specializes in Italian grammar or culture. Why not borrow tapes from your local library (they're free!)?

Chapter 15, "I Can't Believe My Eyes!" starts you with a few more irregular verbs and a chance to review your present-tense conjugations. It then introduces a new tense used to talk about the moment: the present progressive.

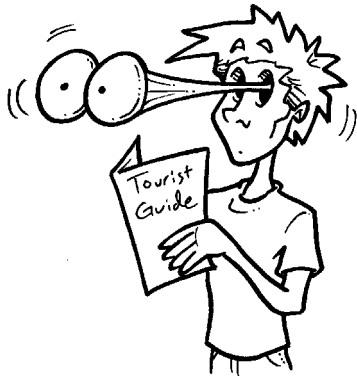
Chapter 16, "Shop 'Til You Drop," will have special appeal for those of you combing the streets in search of treasure and precious objects.

Chapters 17, "Bread, Wine, and Chocolate," and 18, "Shall We Dine?" are stuffed with delightful food terms and interesting morsels, including the introduction of a new verb—piacere—that allows you to express your likes and dislikes.

In Chapter 19, "Having Fun Italian Style," you'll be offered the vocabulary you need to discuss the things you love the most: l'arte, la musica, and il cinema. In the meantime, you'll see how easy it is to talk about the past with the introduction of the passato prossimo (present perfect).

Perhaps it's time to make those reservations and reward yourself with a visit to the Madre Patria!





I Can't Believe My Eyes!

In This Chapter

- ▶ Sights for your eyes
- ▶ Verbs for sightseeing: *rimanere*, *venire*, *uscire*, and *dire*
- ▶ How to make suggestions and plans
- ▶ Geography
- ▶ The present progressive

A lifetime wouldn't be long enough to see all there is in *Italia*. You can breeze through the boot from top to bottom or camp out in a corner and get intimate. There are so many things to see and do—but how? Read on; this chapter will give you the tools to set your own agenda.

Seeing Is Believing

There's a mystery to *Italia* and the people who live there that plucks at the strings of every heart. Just as *Roma* wasn't built in *un giorno*, nor should it be seen in one. Since you can't do everything, think about what is most important to you and start from there.

Where to Go and What to Do

<i>Il Luogo</i>	<i>L'Attività</i>	The Place	The Activity
<i>l'acquario</i>	<i>vedere i pesci</i>	the aquarium	see the fish
<i>l'azienda vinicola</i>	<i>fare un "picnic"</i>	the winery	have a picnic
<i>il castello</i>	<i>fare le foto</i>	the castle	take pictures
<i>la cattedrale</i>	<i>vedere le vetrate colorate</i>	the cathedral	see the stained-glass windows
<i>la chiesa</i>	<i>vedere l'architettura; accendere una candela</i>	the church	see the architecture; light a candle
<i>il cinema</i>	<i>vedere un film</i>	the cinema	see a film
<i>il circo</i>	<i>guardare lo spettacolo</i>	the circus	watch the show
<i>la discoteca</i>	<i>danzare/ballare</i>	the discothèque	dance
<i>l'enoteca</i>	<i>bere il vino</i>	the wine bar	drink wine
<i>il giardino</i>	<i>sentire i profumi dei fiori</i>	the garden	smell the flowers
<i>il mercato</i>	<i>fare la spesa</i>	the market	go shopping
<i>il museo</i>	<i>vedere le opere d'arte</i>	the museum	see the art
<i>il parco</i>	<i>fare una passeggiata</i>	the park	take a stroll
<i>la piazza</i>	<i>andare in giro</i>	the public square	wander around
<i>lo stadio</i>	<i>guardare una partita</i>	the stadium	watch a game
<i>il teatro</i>	<i>vedere una commedia</i>	the theater	see a play
<i>lo zoo</i>	<i>guardare gli animali</i>	the zoo	look at the animals



La Bella Lingua

Quel che l'occhio vede, il cuor crede. (What the eye sees, the heart believes.)

There are two verbs used to describe the act of using your eyes: *vedere* (to see) and *guardare* (to look at/watch). Both are regular verbs that follow the rules of their particular verb family.

Let's Go Visit, Find, See, Look At ...

In one form or another, many of these verbs and expressions have been presented in earlier chapters and should sound familiar. Notice how some of the verbs require a preposition when followed by an infinitive. When a verb is used as part of an *espressione*, the verb in (parentheses) needs to be conjugated.

Verbs for Sightseeing

<i>Verbi e Espressioni</i>	Verbs and Expressions
<i>andare</i>	to go
<i>(andare) a trovare</i>	to go visit
<i>(andare) a vedere</i>	to go see
<i>(fare) un giro</i>	to take a spin/to go around
<i>(fare) una passeggiata</i>	to take a walk
<i>(fare) vedere</i>	to show (literally, "to make see")
<i>girare</i>	to go around
<i>passeggiare</i>	to stroll
<i>passare a</i>	to pass by
<i>restare</i>	to rest/stay
<i>rimanere</i>	to remain
<i>ritornare</i>	to return
<i>uscire</i>	to go out/exit
<i>venire</i>	to come
<i>visitare</i>	to visit

Perché non facciamo un giro della città?

Why don't we take a spin around the city?

Vado a vedere lo spettacolo a teatro.

I am going to see the show at the theatre.

Fammi vedere le tue foto!

Show me your photos!

Passa a trovarmi!

Pass by to visit me!

Critters

In Italy, even the animals have a saint: San Francesco d'Assisi (1182–1226). Italy's patron saint, this gentle man wrote *Il Cantico delle Creature* (Canticle of Created Things) praising all living things.

Animal	<i>L'Animale</i>	Animal	<i>L'Animale</i>
alligator	<i>l'alligatore</i>	antelope	<i>l'antilope</i>
ant	<i>la formica</i>	bat	<i>il pipistrello</i>

continues

continued

Animal	<i>L'Animale</i>	Animal	<i>L'Animale</i>
bear	<i>l'orso</i>	lizard	<i>la lucertola</i>
bird	<i>l'uccello</i>	mole	<i>la talpa</i>
boar	<i>il cinghiale</i>	monkey	<i>la scimmia</i>
bull	<i>il toro</i>	mosquito	<i>la zanzara</i>
butterfly	<i>la farfalla</i>	mouse	<i>il topo</i>
cat	<i>il gatto</i>	ostrich	<i>lo struzzo</i>
chicken	<i>la gallina</i>	owl	<i>la civetta, il gufo</i>
cow	<i>la mucca</i>	pig	<i>il maiale</i>
crocodile	<i>il coccodrillo</i>	pigeon	<i>il piccione</i>
crow	<i>il merlo</i>	porcupine	<i>il porcospino</i>
deer	<i>il cervo</i>	rabbit	<i>il coniglio</i>
dog	<i>il cane</i>	raccoon	<i>il procione</i>
dolphin	<i>il delfino</i>	rooster	<i>il gallo</i>
donkey	<i>l'asino</i>	shark	<i>il pescecane, lo squalo</i>
duck	<i>l'anatra</i>	sheep	<i>la pecora</i>
eagle	<i>l'aquila</i>	skunk	<i>la moffetta</i>
elephant	<i>l'elefante</i>	snail	<i>la lumaca</i>
fish	<i>il pesce</i>	snake	<i>il serpente</i>
fly	<i>la mosca</i>	spider	<i>il ragno</i>
fox	<i>la volpe</i>	squirrel	<i>lo scoiattolo</i>
frog	<i>la rana</i>	swan	<i>il cigno</i>
giraffe	<i>la giraffa</i>	tiger	<i>la tigre</i>
goat	<i>la capra</i>	turtle	<i>la tartaruga</i>
gorilla	<i>il gorilla</i>	turkey	<i>il tacchino</i>
hare	<i>il lepre</i>	whale	<i>la balena</i>
hippopotamus	<i>l'ippopotamo</i>	wolf	<i>il lupo</i>
horse	<i>il cavallo</i>	worm	<i>il baco, il bruco, il verme</i>
leopard	<i>il gattopardo</i>	zebra	<i>la zebra</i>
lion	<i>il leone</i>		

More Irregular Verbs

You may already be familiar with the following irregular verbs used to get around town.

Uscire (to Go Out/Exit)

You're ready to paint the town red. The verb *uscire* will get you out of your hotel room and into the heart of the action.



As a Rule

Remember your pronunciation rules: The word *esco* is pronounced *es-koh*; *esci* is pronounced *eh-she*.

The Verb *Uscire*: to Go Out/Exit

Italian	English
<i>io esco</i>	I go out
<i>tu esci</i>	you go out
<i>lui/lei/Lei esce</i>	he/she goes out; You go out
<i>noi usciamo</i>	we go out
<i>voi uscite</i>	you go out
<i>loro escono</i>	they go out

Stefano esce ogni sera.

Stefano goes out every evening.

Usciamo alle tre e un quarto.

We're going out at 3:15.

Venire (to Come)

Eventually, you have to come down to earth. The irregular verb *venire* may help you find your way.

The Verb *Venire*: to Come

Italian	English
<i>io vengo</i>	I come
<i>tu vieni</i>	you come
<i>lui/lei/Lei viene</i>	he/she comes; You come

The Verb *Venire*: to Come (continued)

Italian	English
<i>noi veniamo</i>	we come
<i>voi venite</i>	you come
<i>loro vengono</i>	they come

Vieni con noi?

Are you coming with us?

Sì, vengo fra cinque minuti.

Yes, I'm coming in five minutes.

Rimanere (to Remain)

The verb *rimanere* has similar endings to the verb *venire*.

The Verb *Rimanere*: to Remain

Italian	English
<i>io rimango</i>	I remain
<i>tu rimani</i>	you remain
<i>lui/lei/Lei rimane</i>	he/she remains; You remain
<i>noi rimaniamo</i>	we remain
<i>voi rimanete</i>	you remain
<i>loro rimangono</i>	they remain



La Bella Lingua

The verb *rimanere* can also be used idiomatically to express a state or condition, as in *rimanere male* (to be disappointed) or *rimanere soddisfatto* (to be satisfied). Among other things, it can also mean “to be situated,” as in *Dove rimane la stazione?* (Where is the station?)

Rimango in albergo stasera.

I'm remaining in the hotel this evening.

Rimangono in campagna.

They are remaining in the country.

Your Turn

How are you doing with the verbs? Check out your progress by filling in the appropriate conjugations for the following verbs. Keep in mind that some may be irregular.

1. *Trovare*: to find/visit

Subject	<i>Trovare</i>
<i>io</i>	_____
<i>tu</i>	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____
<i>noi</i>	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____

2. *Andare*: to go (irregular)

Subject	<i>Andare</i>
<i>io</i>	_____
<i>tu</i>	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____
<i>noi</i>	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____

3. *Passare*: to pass

Subject	<i>Passare</i>
<i>io</i>	_____
<i>tu</i>	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____
<i>noi</i>	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____

4. *Fare*: to do/make (irregular)

Subject	<i>Fare</i>
<i>io</i>	_____
<i>tu</i>	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____

continued

Subject	Fare
<i>noi</i>	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____

5. *Ritornare*: to return

Subject	Ritornare
<i>io</i>	_____
<i>tu</i>	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____
<i>noi</i>	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____



As a Rule

All geographical terms, including continents, countries, cities, states, towns, and islands, require the definite article:

Quest'estate, noi visitiamo l'Italia, la Spagna, la Francia e la Grecia.

The only exception occurs when the term comes after the preposition *in* and is feminine, singular:

Noi andiamo in Italia, in Albania e in Africa.

All countries, regions, states, towns, and so on are capitalized. Nationalities are not capitalized.

Practice Makes Perfetto

You're no couch potato. Conjugate the highlighted verb in the present tense using the subject in parenthesis.

Example: **andare a vedere il Colosseo (noi)**

Answer: **Andiamo a vedere il Colosseo.**

1. **fare una passeggiata in piazza (Pasquale)**
2. **andare a vedere un film (io)**
3. **andare ad ascoltare l'opera (noi)**
4. **fare una foto del castello (Giuseppe and Maria)**
5. **fare un giro in macchina (Voi)**
6. **prendere l'autobus (tu)**



Did You Know?

Similar to San Marino, Vatican City is an independent sovereign located in Rome. A papal residence since 1377, the Vatican has its own postal system, and citizens carry separate passports.

Dire (to Say/Tell)

You've already seen the phrase *Come si dice ... in italiano?* and know that it means "How do you say ... in Italian?"

Dire is another useful irregular verb. Note in the following table that the stem changes to *dic-* in all persons except the second plural.

The Verb *Dire*: to Say

Italian	English
<i>io dico</i>	I say
<i>tu dici</i>	you say
<i>lui/lei/Lei dice</i>	he/she says; You say
<i>noi diciamo</i>	we say
<i>voi dite</i>	you say
<i>loro dicono</i>	they say

<i>Come si dice ... in italiano?</i>	How do you say ... in Italian?
<i>Che cosa dici?</i>	What do you say?
<i>Che ne dici?</i>	What do you think? (idiomatic)

The Power of Suggestion

The gorgeous Italian you sat next to on the plane phoned you at your *albergo*, and you've made a date to go sightseeing. Although you haven't even left your hotel room, you've already planned your beautiful wedding. Sometimes a hint will not do; you have to come right out and make a suggestion.

Perché non?

The easiest way to make a suggestion is to ask this simple question using the words *perché non ...* (why not ...):

Perché non + the verb in the first-person plural form (*noi*)?

For example:

Perché non andiamo in Italia?

Why don't we go to Italy?

Perché non partiamo domani?

Why don't we leave tomorrow?

If you want to ask what someone thinks of the idea, use these phrases:

Che ne pensi/pensa?

What do you think (of it)?

Che ne dici/dice?

What do you say (about it)?

Let's ...

To suggest the English "Let's ...," use the first-person plural form (*noi*) of the verb:

andare (to go)

Andiamo al cinema.

Let's go to the movies.

mangiare (to eat)

Mangiamo.

Let's eat.

partire (to leave)

Partiamo stasera.

Let's leave this evening.

viaggiare (to travel)

Viaggiamo in Italia.

Let's travel to Italy.



La Bella Lingua

In English, you "make" a suggestion. In Italian, you "give" a suggestion, as in *dare un suggerimento*.

How About ...?

Shape the phrases in the following table to suggest doing whatever you want. After each *espressione*, simply add the infinitive of the verb that best expresses your suggestion.

Notice how the object pronouns change, depending on who is being addressed. The pronouns most commonly used are: *ti* ("you," familiar), *Le* ("You," polite), and *vi* ("you," plural). You'll learn more about these in Chapter 16, "Shop 'Til You Drop."

Getting Suggestive

Le va di ...?

Are you in the mood to ...?

Ti interessa ...?

Are you interested in ...?

Vi piacerebbe ...?

Would you like ...?

Notice how the examples you just saw apply in the following suggestions:

Le va di andare al cinema?

Are you in the mood to go to the movies?

Ti interessa fare un viaggio in Italia?

Are you interested in taking a trip to Italy?

Using Non to Make Suggestions

Italians often add the word *non* in front of a suggestion. These examples use the third person form of the verb.

Non vi piacerebbe ... vedere il castello?

Wouldn't you all like to see the castle?

Non Le interessa ... guardare la partita?

Aren't you interested in seeing the game?

Yes or No

Respond to the suggestions offered by changing the object pronoun accordingly.

1. *Ti va di andare al cinema?*

No, *non* ____ *va di andare al cinema.*

2. *Le interessa fare un viaggio in Italia.*

Sì, ____ *interessa fare un viaggio in Italia.*

3. *Le piacerebbe vedere il castello.*

No, *non* ____ *piacerebbe vedere il castello.*

4. *Ti interessa accompagnarmi al negozio?*

No, *non* ____ *interessa accompagnar ____ al negozio, grazie.*

5. *Ti piacerebbe mangiare un gelato?*

Sì, ____ *piacerebbe mangiare un gelato!*



Did You Know?

After performing several experiments on the nature of motion and velocity, **Galileo Galilei** (1564–1642) confirmed Copernicus's theory: The Earth revolved around the Sun.

The Roman Catholic Church charged Galileo with heresy and, with a threat of torture, "urged" him to denounce his thoughts, which Galileo wisely did. In exchange, Galileo's life was spared, but he was ordered to spend the rest of his days under house arrest in the Arcetri Villa outside *Firenze*.

Using Volere to Make Suggestions

Of course, you can always state what you want by using the verb *volere* (to want), using both the present indicative and the conditional tenses. Study the following

examples, comparing the different tenses. All suggestions use the polite form (third-person singular) of the verb:

Vuole andare in Italia?

Vorrebbe andare in Italia?

Sì, voglio andare in Italia.

Sì, vorrei andare in Italia.

Do You want to go to Italy?

Would You like to go to Italy?

Yes, **I want** to go to Italy.

Yes, **I would like** to go to Italy.

The Big, Blue Marble

Back in Chapter 9, “Being There,” you learned about different nationalities and religions. The following table tells you how to say the different countries and continents in Italian.

Countries

Country	<i>Paese</i>	Country	<i>Paese</i>
Belgium	<i>Il Belgio</i>	North Korea	<i>La Corea del nord</i>
China	<i>La Cina</i>	South Korea	<i>La Corea del sud</i>
Denmark	<i>La Danimarca</i>	Lebanon	<i>Il Libano</i>
Egypt	<i>L'Egitto</i>	Libya	<i>La Libia</i>
England	<i>L'Inghilterra</i>	Mexico	<i>Il Messico</i>
Ethiopia	<i>L'Etiopia</i>	Norway	<i>La Norvegia</i>
Finland	<i>La Finlandia</i>	Poland	<i>La Polonia</i>
France	<i>La Francia</i>	Portugal	<i>Il Portogallo</i>
Germany	<i>La Germania</i>	South Africa	<i>Il Sud Africa</i>
Great Britain	<i>La Gran Bretagna</i>	Spain	<i>La Spagna</i>
Greece	<i>La Grecia</i>	Sweden	<i>La Svezia</i>
Ireland	<i>L'Irlanda</i>	Switzerland	<i>La Svizzera</i>
Israel	<i>L'Israele</i>	Turkey	<i>La Turchia</i>
Italy	<i>L'Italia</i>	USA	<i>Gli Stati Uniti d'America</i>
Japan	<i>Il Giappone</i>	Vatican City	<i>La Città del Vaticano</i>

Name That Nation

The following countries all have the same name (or almost exactly) in Italian.

Afghanistan

Argentina

Botswana

Costa Rica

Albania

Australia

Bulgaria

Cuba

Algeria

Austria

Canada

El Salvador

Angola

Belize

Colombia

Ghana

Antigua

Bolivia

Congo

Grenada

Guatemala	Kuwait	Romania	Taiwan
Guinea	Liberia	Russia	Tunisia
Haiti	Liechtenstein	San Marino	Uruguay
Honduras	Madagascar	Scandinavia	Venezuela
India	Malasia	Senegal	Vietnam
Indonesia	Nepal	Sierra Leone	Zaire
Iran	Nicaragua	Siria	Zambia
Iraq	Pakistan	Somalia	Zimbabwe
Kenya	Panama	Sudan	



Did You Know?

As one of the world's smallest countries, *La Repubblica di San Marino*, is a land-locked independent city-state located on the slope of Mount Titano (near the Italian city of Rimini). Like any self-respecting country, it has its own mint, postal system, and football team.

I Continenti

As air travel becomes more common, the world shrinks exponentially. How many continents have you hopped?

<i>L'Africa</i>	<i>L'Asia</i>
<i>L'America del Nord</i>	<i>L'Australia</i>
<i>L'America del Sud</i>	<i>L'Europa</i>
<i>L'Antartide</i>	



Attenzione!

Use the preposition **in** before the name of a country and the preposition **a** before the name of a city.

Andiamo in Italia a Venezia.

Once Upon a Time

Before its unification in 1862, the peninsula now known as Italy was once a cluster of city-states ruled by powerful families. Although Italy is now a unified state, each of its 20 regions has a distinctive character. Refer to Appendix C, "Map of Italy," to see these regions outlined in the map of Italy.



Did You Know?

In 1492, **Cristoforo Colombo** bumped into North America, thinking he had found a route to India.

Ten years later, the Florentine **Amerigo Vespucci**—a skilled navigator and cartographer—was commissioned by King Ferdinand of Spain to do some fact checking. In addition to the colorful letters he wrote that described his findings, Vespucci's well-charted maps became the rage all over Florence, leading the new continent to be named in his honor.

Until his dying day, Columbus refused to accept the possibility that he had not reached India.

The regions of Italy are ...

L'Abruzzo

Il Molise

La Basilicata

Il Piemonte

La Calabria

La Puglia

La Campania

La Sardegna

L'Emilia-Romagna

La Sicilia

Il Friuli-Venezia Giulia

La Toscana

Il Lazio

Il Trentino-Alto Adige

La Liguria

L'Umbria

La Lombardia

La Val d'Aosta

Le Marche

Il Veneto

A Refresher

In Chapter 9, you learned about showing possession using the preposition *di*. Remember that nationalities are considered to be adjectives, reflecting gender and number.

Tell someone you are from the following countries and what your nationality is. To say you have a particular origin, you must use *sono d'origine* + the nationality in its feminine form:

<i>Sono d'origine italiana.</i>	I'm of Italian origin.
<i>Sono d'origine tedesca.</i>	I'm of German origin.
<i>Sono d'origine irlandese.</i>	I'm of Irish origin.

Example: *Italia*

Answer: *Sono italiano. Sono d'origine italiana.*

1. *Gli Stati Uniti d'America*
2. *La Francia*
3. *La Spagna*
4. *La Grecia*
5. *L'Irlanda*



Did You Know?

In the Italian northern region of Trentino-Alto Adige just outside the Austrian border, the majority of people speak *il tedesco* (German), which is taught in schools and is one of the two official languages used in public and legal documents.

Present Progressive Tense (-ing)

In Italian, the present progressive tense is used to describe an action in progress.

Because the Italian present tense can serve as both the simple present and the progressive, native Italian, French, and Spanish speakers have difficulty distinguishing the difference between “I am going to the store now” and “I go to the store now.”

In English, we use the present progressive much more often than the simple present tense.

To form the present progressive, you'll need the verb *stare* that you learned back in Chapter 9. This helping verb does most of the work since the present participle does not change.

To create the present participle, simply slice off the infinitive ending of the verb and add the progressive endings in the following table.

Notice how the *-ere* and the *-ire* progressive tense endings are the same.

Present Progressive

Infinitive Verb		Present Progressive	English
<i>studiare</i>	→	<i>studiando</i>	studying
<i>scrivere</i>	→	<i>scrivendo</i>	writing
<i>finire</i>	→	<i>finendo</i>	finishing

The following table takes the verb *studiare* and shows what happens when we attach the auxiliary verb *stare* to the present progressive.

Forming the Present Progressive

<i>Studiare</i>	To Study
<i>io sto studiando</i>	I am studying
<i>tu stai studiando</i>	you are studying
<i>lui/lei/Lei sta studiando</i>	he/she is studying
<i>noi stiamo studiando</i>	we are studying
<i>voi state studiando</i>	you are studying
<i>loro stanno studiando</i>	they are studying

Making Progress

Turn the following sentences into the present progressive. (Hint: You need to determine the infinitive of the verb before you can find the appropriate progressive form. If you can't remember the verb families to which they belong, flip back to Chapter 8, "An Action-Packed Adventure.")

- Guardiamo il film.*
- Scrivi una lettera.*
- Nicola cucina la cena.*
- I bambini dormono.*
- Leggo il libro.*
- Pulisco la camera.*

That's the Fact, Giacomo

What makes an Italian? From joker to singer to lover to good fella, it's not an easy thing to define a people made up of so many individuals.



La Bella Lingua

The last queen of Italy, Maria José of Savoy, was regent for only 27 days before Italians voted to abolish the monarchy in 1946. Maria was labeled the “rebel queen” after defying Mussolini’s dictate that she Italianize her name to Maria Giuseppina.

The daughter of Albert I (of the Belgians), Maria married Prince Umberto II, whose father was King Vittorio Emanuele III. Two years later, a law was passed banning any male member of the Savoy family from ever stepping foot in Italy again. The law is still in force, despite lobbying from Maria’s oldest son Vittorio Emanuele.

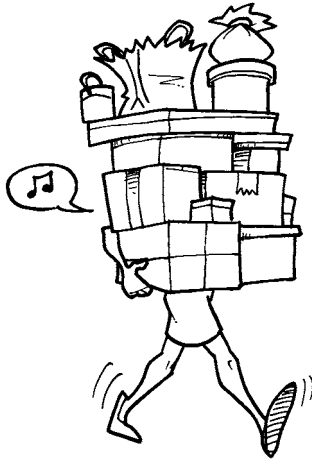
Some statistics about the Republic of Italy are given in the following table:

The Republic of Italy

Area	116.320 sq. miles
Language	Italian
Capital	Rome
Currency	Lira (US\$1 = approx. L1.800)
GNP/capita	L31.775.000
Religion	Roman Catholic
Population	58.000.000
Life expectancy	Females: 81 Males: 74
Government	Parliamentary republic
Head of state	President
Head of government	Prime minister
Legislature	Bicameral legislature (Chamber of Deputies, Senate)
Voting age	18

The Least You Need to Know

- To suggest an activity (“Let’s ...”), use the first-person plural (*noi*) form of the verb.
- Countries and other geographical locations always take the definite article and are capitalized. Nationalities are not capitalized.
- The verbs *venire* (to come), *uscire* (to go out), *rimanere* (to remain), and *dire* (to say/tell) are all irregular.
- The present progressive tense is used to indicate an action that is occurring in the moment. It requires the use of the present participle (the verb form ending in *-ing*).



Shop 'Til You Drop

In This Chapter

- ▶ Stores and their wares
- ▶ Bejeweled and bedazzled—Italian style
- ▶ Clothing: colors, sizes, and materials
- ▶ Direct and indirect object pronouns

The word *Italian* is synonymous with style, and whether you bring back hand-blown wine glasses from the famous Venetian island Murano, a Fendi bag from Milano, or an expressive cameo made in Florence, Italy is a place you definitely want to shop.

Stores Galore

As you meander through the *strade* of Italia, you might find some *licorizia* lozenges in a small *tabaccheria*, a silk scarf gently blowing in the wind at the *mercato*, or a small hand-painted porcelain doll staring blankly in a *vetrina*. Whatever you discover, there's no question about it: Shopping for new delights is one of life's greatest pleasures. The following table will help you find your way to the stores that carry the merchandise you're looking for.

Stores

<i>Il Negozio</i>	<i>La Merce</i>	The Store	The Merchandise
<i>la bottega</i>	<i>tutto</i>	shop	everything
<i>la cartoleria</i>	<i>la carta, le cartoline, i giochi, le sigarette</i>	stationery store	paper, postcards, toys, cigarettes
<i>la farmacia</i>	<i>le medicine</i>	pharmacy	medicine
<i>il fioraio</i>	<i>i fiori, le piante</i>	florist	flowers, plants
<i>la gioielleria</i>	<i>i gioielli</i>	jewelry store	jewelry
<i>il giornalaio</i>	<i>i giornali, le riviste, le cartoline</i>	newspaper stand	newspapers, maga- zines, postcards
<i>il grande magazzino</i>	<i>i gioielli, i giochi, i mobili, i profumi, i vestiti</i>	department store	jewelry, toys, maga- zines, furnishings, perfumes, clothing
<i>la libreria</i>	<i>i libri</i>	bookstore	books
<i>il mercato</i>	<i>tutto</i>	market	everything
<i>il negozio d'abbigliamento</i>	<i>l'abbigliamento, i vestiti</i>	clothing store	clothing
<i>il negozio d'arredamento</i>	<i>i mobili</i>	furniture store	furniture
<i>il negozio di scarpe</i>	<i>le scarpe</i>	shoe store	shoes
<i>la pasticceria</i>	<i>le paste, le torte, i biscotti</i>	pastry shop	pastries, cakes, cookies
<i>la pelletteria</i>	<i>le giacche, le borse, le valigie</i>	leather store	jackets, purses, luggage
<i>la profumeria</i>	<i>i profumi, i cosmetici</i>	cosmetics shop	perfumes, cosmetics
<i>la tabaccheria</i>	<i>le sigarette, i sigari, i fiammiferi</i>	tobacco shop	cigarettes, cigars, matches



Did You Know?

If you're more inclined to spend your time sightseeing but still need to pick up a few items, you can visit a *grande magazzino* (department store). Found throughout many Italian cities, several chains like *La Rinascente*, *Standa*, and *Upim* offer a wide selection of merchandise for that one-stop-shopping experience.

The Stationery Store: *La Cartoleria*

In addition to office supplies, stationery, candy, and cigarettes, *la cartoleria* often sells stamps and bus tickets. It's also a good place to find inexpensive gift items.

La Cartoleria

Stationery	<i>La Cartoleria</i>	Pronunciation
candy	<i>le caramelle</i>	<i>leh kar-ah-meh-leh</i>
cigarettes	<i>le sigarette</i>	<i>leh see-gah-reh-teh</i>
cigars	<i>i sigari</i>	<i>ee see-gah-ree</i>
gift	<i>il regalo</i>	<i>eel reh-gah-loh</i>
guidebook	<i>una guida</i>	<i>oo-nah gwee-dah</i>
lighter	<i>l'accendino</i>	<i>lah-chen-dee-noh</i>
map	<i>la pianta, la cartina, la mappa</i>	<i>lah pee-ahn-tah, lah kar-tee-nah, lah mah-pah</i>
matches	<i>i fiammiferi</i>	<i>ee fee-ah-mee-feh-ree</i>
notebook	<i>il quaderno</i>	<i>eel kwah-der-noh</i>
paper	<i>la carta</i>	<i>lah kar-tah</i>
pen	<i>la penna</i>	<i>lah peh-nah</i>
pencil	<i>la matita</i>	<i>lah mah-tee-tah</i>
postcard	<i>la cartolina</i>	<i>lah kar-toh-lee-nah</i>
stamp	<i>il francobollo</i>	<i>eel fran-koh-boh-loh</i>
ticket	<i>il biglietto</i>	<i>eel beel-yeh-toh</i>
... for the bus	<i>... per l'autobus</i>	<i>per lau-toh-boos</i>
... for the metro	<i>... per la metro</i>	<i>per lah meh-troh</i>



La Bella Lingua

Tobacco shops can be identified by a large white "T" on a black background. Matches must be purchased separately from cigarettes. At *la tabaccheria* (the tobacconist), you can also purchase *i biglietti per l'autobus*, stamps, and phone cards.



Did You Know?

Most stores will ship major purchases for you. Some purchases made with a credit card will be covered for loss or damage. The VAT (value-added tax) is a sales tax attached to all major purchases. Save your receipts—non-European travelers receive VAT refunds once they leave the country.

Posso avere la ricevuta, per favore?

May I have a receipt, please?

Diamonds Are a Girl's Best Friend

It could be a sapphire ring, a gold watch, or a silver chain that catches your eye. Throughout Italy, you'll find a *tradizione* of fine gold- and silversmithing, with some of the most exquisite jewelry in the world. The following table shows you how to ask for it.

Jewelry

Object	Oggetto	Pronunciation
amethyst	<i>l'ametista</i>	<i>lah-meh-tees-tah</i>
aquamarine	<i>l'acquamarina</i>	<i>lah-kwah-mah-ree-nah</i>
bracelet	<i>il braccialetto</i>	<i>eel brah-chah-leh-toh</i>
cameo	<i>il cammeo</i>	<i>eel kah-meh-oh</i>
chain	<i>la catena</i>	<i>lah kah-teh-nah</i>
cufflinks	<i>i gemelli</i>	<i>ee jeh-meh-lee</i>
diamond	<i>il diamante</i>	<i>eel dee-ah-mahn-teh</i>
earrings	<i>gli orecchini</i>	<i>ylee oh-reh-kee-nee</i>
enamel	<i>lo smalto</i>	<i>loh smal-toh</i>
gold	<i>l'oro</i>	<i>loh-roh</i>
jade	<i>la giada</i>	<i>lah jah-dah</i>
jewelry	<i>i gioielli</i>	<i>ee joh-yeh-lee</i>
mother-of-pearl	<i>la madreperla</i>	<i>lah mah-dreh-per-lah</i>
onyx	<i>l'onice</i>	<i>loh-nee-cheh</i>
pearls	<i>le perle</i>	<i>leh per-leh</i>
pendant	<i>il ciondolo</i>	<i>eel chon-doh-loh</i>
pewter	<i>il peltro</i>	<i>eel pel-troh</i>

Object	Oggetto	Pronunciation
platinum	<i>il platino</i>	<i>il plah-tee-noh</i>
precious stone	<i>la pietra preziosa</i>	<i>lah pee-eh-trah pre-zee-oh-zah</i>
ring	<i>l'anello</i>	<i>lah-neh-loh</i>
... engagement ring	... <i>l'anello di fidanzamento</i>	<i>lah-neh-loh dee fee-dahn-zah-men-toh</i>
... wedding ring	... <i>la fede</i>	<i>lah feh-deh</i>
ruby	<i>il rubino</i>	<i>eel roo-bee-noh</i>
sapphire	<i>lo zaffiro</i>	<i>loh zah-fee-roh</i>
silver	<i>l'argento</i>	<i>lar-jen-toh</i>
topaz	<i>il topazio</i>	<i>eel toh-pah-zee-oh</i>
turquoise	<i>il turchese</i>	<i>eel toor-keh-zeh</i>

It's in the Jeans

Italians seem to be born knowing how to dress. If the body is a blank canvas, they sure know how to paint! Maybe it's in part because Italians are used to being watched—and to watching each other. Some would say it's all in *le scarpe* (the shoes), the finely woven fabrics, and the tailoring.

Whatever the reason, *la moda* is a refined *eleganza* that has deep and powerful roots, permeating Italian culture. If you're hoping some of that Italian style will rub off on you, the following table gives you some helpful words to get you started.

L'Abbigliamento (Clothing)

Clothing Item	Italian	Pronunciation
article	<i>l'articolo</i>	<i>lahr-tee-koh-loh</i>
bathing suit	<i>il costume di bagno</i>	<i>eel kohs-too-meh dee bahn-yoh</i>
bra	<i>il reggiseno</i>	<i>eel reh-jee-seh-noh</i>
clothing	<i>l'abbigliamento</i>	<i>lah-beel-yah-men</i>
... women's	... <i>per donna</i>	<i>per doh-nah</i>
... men's	... <i>per uomo</i>	<i>per woh-moh</i>
... children	... <i>per bambini</i>	<i>per bam-bee-nee</i>
coat	<i>il cappotto/il giubotto</i>	<i>eel kah-poh-toh/eel joo-boh-toh</i>
dress	<i>l'abito</i>	<i>lah-bee-toh</i>
... evening dress	... <i>l'abito da sera</i>	<i>lah-bee-toh dah seh-rah</i>
jeans	<i>i jeans</i>	<i>ee jeans</i>
jacket	<i>la giacca</i>	<i>lah jah-kah</i>
lining	<i>la fodera</i>	<i>lah foh-deh-rah</i>
model	<i>il modello</i>	<i>eel moh-deh-loh</i>

continues

L'Abbigliamento (Clothing) (continued)

Clothing Item	Italian	Pronunciation
pajamas	<i>il pigiama</i>	<i>eel pee-jah-mah</i>
pants	<i>i pantaloni</i>	<i>ee pahh-tah-loh-nee</i>
pullover	<i>il golf</i>	<i>eel golf</i>
raincoat	<i>l'impermeabile</i>	<i>leem-per-mee-ah-bee-leh</i>
robe	<i>l'accappatoio</i>	<i>lah-kah-pah-toh-yoh</i>
skirt	<i>la gonna</i>	<i>lah goh-nah</i>
suit	<i>il completo</i>	<i>eel kom-pleh-toh</i>
sweat suit	<i>la tuta da ginnastica</i>	<i>lah too-tah dah jee-nah-stee-kah</i>
sweater	<i>la maglia</i>	<i>lah mah-lyah</i>
t-shirt	<i>la maglietta</i>	<i>lah mah-lyeh-tah</i>
undershirt	<i>la canottiera</i>	<i>lah kan-oh-tee-yeh-rah</i>
underwear	<i>gli slip</i>	<i>ylee sleep</i>
... panties	<i>... le mutandine</i>	<i>leh moo-tahn-dee-neh</i>
... briefs	<i>... le mutande</i>	<i>leh moo-tahn-deh</i>



La Bella Lingua

Note the subtle shift in meaning when the noun (and its article) is made plural:

Fare la spesa (singular) generally means you are shopping for the household (groceries).

Fare le spese (plural) refers to shopping in general, as in "shop 'til you drop"!

Accessories

By adding *gli accessori* that best complement your wardrobe, you can look like a million bucks without spending a million *lire*.

Accessories

Clothing Item	Italian	Pronunciation
accessories	<i>gli accessori</i>	<i>ylee ah-chess-oh-ree</i>
belt	<i>la cintura</i>	<i>lah cheen-too-rah</i>

Clothing Item	Italian	Pronunciation
boots	<i>gli stivali</i>	<i>ylee stee-vah-lee</i>
cosmetics	<i>i cosmetici</i>	<i>ee kos-meh-tee-chee</i>
gloves	<i>i guanti</i>	<i>ee gwahn-tee</i>
handkerchief	<i>il fazzoletto</i>	<i>eel fah-tsoh-leh-toh</i>
hat	<i>il cappello</i>	<i>eel kah-peh-loh</i>
lingerie	<i>la biancheria intima</i>	<i>lah bee-an-keh-ree-yah een-tee-mah</i>
pantyhose	<i>i collant</i>	<i>ee koh-lant</i>
purse	<i>la borsa</i>	<i>lah bor-sah</i>
sandals	<i>i sandali</i>	<i>ee sahn-dah-lee</i>
scarf	<i>la sciarpa</i>	<i>lah shar-pah</i>
shoes	<i>le scarpe</i>	<i>leh skar-peh</i>
slippers	<i>le pantofole</i>	<i>leh pahn-toh-foh-leh</i>
sneakers	<i>le scarpe da tennis</i>	<i>leh skar-peh dah teh-nees</i>
socks	<i>le calze, i calzini</i>	<i>leh kal-zeh, ee kal-zee-nee</i>
stockings	<i>le calze</i>	<i>leh kal-zeh</i>
umbrella	<i>l'ombrello</i>	<i>loh-m-breh-loh</i>

How Do I Look?

The helpful expressions in the following table will make your shopping even more enjoyable.

Phrases for Shopping 'Til You Drop

<i>Espressione</i>	Expression
<i>Che taglia porta?</i>	What size do you wear?
<i>Porto la misura ...</i>	I wear size ...
<i>Che numero di scarpe?</i>	What size shoe?
<i>Porto il numero ...</i>	I wear a size ...
<i>Dov'è il camerino?</i>	Where is the fitting room?
<i>Sto solo dando un'occhiata.</i>	I'm just looking.
<i>Questo è (troppo) ...</i>	This is (too) ...
<i>... caro.</i>	... expensive, dear.
<i>... classico.</i>	... classical.
<i>... corto.</i>	... short.
<i>... di moda.</i>	... in fashion.
<i>... economico.</i>	... inexpensive.

continues

Phrases for Shopping 'Til You Drop (continued)

<i>Espressione</i>	Expression
... fuori stagione.	... out of season.
... grande.	... big.
... lungo.	... long.
... stretto.	... tight.
il commesso/la commessa	the sales clerk
la misura, la taglia	the size
il numero di scarpe	the shoe size
il prezzo	the price
lo sconto	discount
la svendita	sale
la taglia: piccola, media, grande	size: small, medium, large
la vetrina	shop window



As a Rule

You use the verb *portare* to describe the wearing of clothes, such as, *Gina porta la taglia quarantaquattro.* (Gina wears size 44.) Two additional verbs may come in handy when you go clothes shopping in Italy: *provare* (to try) and *vestire* (to dress).

One Size Does Not Fit All

The following table will help you determine what *misura* you are.

Conversion Tables for Clothing Sizes

Italy	USA	Italy	USA
Women—Clothing		Men—Clothing	
38	4	44	34
40	6	46	36
42	8	48	38

Italy	USA	Italy	USA
Women—Clothing		Men—Clothing	
44	10	50	40
46	12	52	42
48	14	54	44
50	16	56	46
52	18	58	48
		60	50
Women—Shoes		Men—Shoes	
35	5	38	5
36	6	39	6
37	7	40	7
38	8	41	8
39	9	42	9
40	10	43	10
41	11	44	11
		45	12
		46	13



La Bella Lingua

Keep in mind that there are two ways to express size in Italian: *la misura* (as in “measure”) or *la taglia* (as in “cut”).

Sizes vary, so make sure to try on something before you spend any of your hard-earned money. You should also make sure you have a basic knowledge of size lingo. Let’s begin with the basics:

<i>piccola</i>	small
<i>media</i>	medium
<i>grande</i>	large



As a Rule

To convert centimeters into inches, divide by .39. To convert inches into centimeters, multiply by 2.54.

The Florist

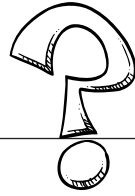
Flowers are often associated with particular occasions or with certain emotions. For example, red roses are traditionally used to make a declaration of love. Chrysanthemums are given at funerals. There's nothing like *un campo di fiori* (a field of flowers) to arouse your senses. For a little flowery inspiration, look for the poem by the Italian poet Eugenio Montale titled, *Portami Il Girasole Ch'io Lo Trapianti* ("The Sunflower"). Regardless of whether you're giving flowers, reading about them, or just stopping to smell the roses, the following table will give you some sweet-smelling help.

Flowers

Flower	<i>Il Fiore</i>
carnation	<i>il garofano</i>
chrysanthemum	<i>il crisantemo</i>
daffodil	<i>la giunchiglia</i>
dandelion	<i>il dente di leone</i>
daisy	<i>la margherita</i>
flower	<i>il fiore</i>
lily	<i>il giglio</i>
orchid	<i>l'orchidea</i>
pansy	<i>la viola del pensiero</i>
petunia	<i>la petunia</i>
poppy	<i>il papavero</i>
rose	<i>la rosa</i>
sunflower	<i>il girasole</i>
violet	<i>il viola</i>

Smooth as Seta

Fine Italian cloth, such as silks, cashmeres, wools, cottons, and chiffons, are practically a national treasure. Rather than spend a fortune on designer clothing, you might consider buying the fabrics and having a *sarto* (tailor) sew something custom-made to your style and fit. The following table will give you the *abilità* to describe *esattamente* what you want (and if you review colors in Chapter 10, "Tell Me About Your Childhood," you'll be designing yourself a new outfit in no time).



What's What

Go back to Chapter 10, and study the demonstrative adjectives and pronouns for “this” (*questo*) and “that” (*quello*). It'll be helpful when you want to say, “I'll take this” (or that, these, and those).

Fabric

Fabric	Italian	Pronunciation
acetate	<i>l'acetato</i>	<i>lah-cheh-tah-toh</i>
cashmere	<i>il cachemire</i>	<i>eel kah-sheh-mee-reh</i>
chiffon	<i>lo chiffon</i>	<i>loh shee-fohn</i>
cotton	<i>il cotone</i>	<i>eel koh-toh-neh</i>
flannel	<i>la flanella</i>	<i>lah flah-neh-lah</i>
gabardine	<i>il gabardine</i>	<i>eel gah-bar-dee-neh</i>
knit	<i>la maglia</i>	<i>lah mah-lyah</i>
lace	<i>il merletto</i>	<i>eel mer-leh-toh</i>
	<i>il pizzo</i>	<i>eel pee-tsoh</i>
leather	<i>il cuoio</i>	<i>eel kwoy-yoh</i>
	<i>la pelle</i>	<i>lah peh-leh</i>
linen	<i>il lino</i>	<i>eel lee-noh</i>
nylon	<i>il nylon</i>	<i>eel ny-lon</i>
rayon	<i>il rayon</i>	<i>eel ray-on</i>
silk	<i>la seta</i>	<i>lah seh-tah</i>
taffeta	<i>il taffetà</i>	<i>eel tah-feh-tah</i>
velvet	<i>il velluto</i>	<i>eel veh-loo-toh</i>
wool	<i>la lana</i>	<i>lah lah-nah</i>

Sock It to Me!

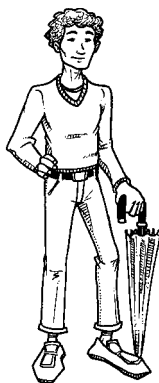
Imagine you're shopping for clothes and see the following items in the shop window. See how many you can identify and write in Italian.



La Bella Lingua

Whether you need to raise, lower, loosen, or tighten your clothes, a visit to *il sarto* or *la sarta* (tailor) may be required. Start with *Vorrei* (I would like) + the appropriate expression + the item you want mended.

<i>aggiustare</i>	to mend
<i>cucire</i>	to sew
<i>fare l'orlo a</i>	to hem
<i>modificare</i>	to alter
<i>rammendare</i>	to mend



- Pants: _____
- Belt: _____
- Pullover: _____
- Shoes: _____
- Socks: _____
- Umbrella: _____



- Coat: _____
- Scarf: _____
- Skirt: _____
- Gloves: _____
- Hat: _____
- Shoes: _____
- Stockings: _____
- Purse: _____

Objection!

In this chapter, you've learned all about shopping and how to ask for what you want. Since we're on the subject of precious objects, this is as good an *opportunità* as any to introduce objects and object pronouns. Although not as exciting as shopping for new shoes, understanding object pronouns can certainly help you purchase them ("I want those and those and these and those ...").

A Little Review

As a reminder: An object pronoun sits in place of the object in a sentence. In Italian, it must agree in gender and number with the noun it is replacing. There are direct and indirect object pronouns. The key is to understand what an object is.

A direct object indicates who or what is affected by the verb's action. When you say, "I love *my mother*," the object of your love (and the verb) is Mommie Dearest. You can replace the object "my mother" with a direct object pronoun and simply say, "I love *her*."

An indirect object answers the question "to whom" or "for whom." Indirect objects refer only to people (and pets) and are generally preceded by the preposition "to" or "for." When you say, "I talk *to my parents* every week," you could replace "*to my parents*" with an indirect object pronoun, as in "I talk *to them* every week."

In Italian, you also use double object pronouns, like when you say, "Give it to her." These will be covered in Chapter 18, "Shall We Dine?"

Stressed pronouns are used to emphasize and highlight certain nouns or pronouns. These are briefly covered in Chapter 20, "You're Not Having *Un Buon Giorno*."

Objectify Me, Baby

The object pronouns may be confusing for the non-native speaker because of their similarity to each other as well as to the articles and other words in Italian. This is why it is so important to listen to the context of a sentence. One trick is to remember that direct and indirect object pronouns are all the same except in the third-person singular and plural forms. As shown in the table, *gli* is commonly used to replace *loro* primarily in the spoken language.

The following table outlines the object pronouns in Italian. It may help you to see how the direct and indirect object pronouns correspond to the subject pronouns.

Direct and Indirect Object Pronouns

Subject Pronouns	Direct Object Pronouns	Indirect Object Pronouns
<i>io</i>	mi me	mi to me
<i>tu</i>	ti you	ti to you
<i>lui</i>	lo he/it	gli to him
<i>lei</i>	la she/it	le to her
<i>Lei</i>	La You	Le to You
<i>noi</i>	ci us	ci to us
<i>voi</i>	vi you	vi to you
<i>loro</i>	li/le them (m./f.)	a loro/gli* to them

Follow the Rules

The following rules will make it easier to understand Italian object pronouns. Study the examples:

- All Italian object pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns they replace. The referred object is given in parentheses:

Direct object pronouns:

La vedo ogni giorno. (Maria) I see **her** every day. (Maria)
Li vedo ogni settimana. (i ragazzi) I see **them** every week. (the boys)

Indirect object pronouns:

Gli offro una mano. (a mio fratello) I offer **him** a hand. (to my brother)
Le mando un bacio. (alla ragazza) I send **her** a kiss. (the girl)

- Both direct and indirect object pronouns are usually placed immediately before a conjugated verb.

Leopoldo compra il giornale e lo legge a Mario. Leopoldo buys the newspaper and reads **it** to Mario. (direct)
Giulia gli legge una storia. Giulia reads **him** a story. (indirect)

- When an infinitive verb depends on the verbs *dovere* (to have to, to must), *potere* (to be able to), or *volere* (to want), the object pronoun can come before the conjugated verb. You'll also see it attached to the end of the infinitive (minus the final *-e*):

Ti voglio accompagnare al cinema. I want to accompany **you** to the movies.
Voglio accompagnarti al cinema. I want to accompany **you** to the movies.

When to Use the Direct Object Pronoun

“The next time I go to Italy, my friend Sofia asked me to buy a book for Sofia.” You would probably never say something so awkward. You’d say something like, “The next time I go to Italy, my friend Sofia asked me to buy a book for *her*.” As you can see, direct object pronouns can make your life a lot easier when you use them to replace the direct object in a sentence:

Bacio il ragazzo. → *Lo bacio.*

I kiss **the boy**. → I kiss **him**.

Leggo i libri. → *Li leggo.*

I read **the books**. → I read **them**.

Easy, right? You don’t even have to add a preposition (as in “to look *at*” or “to wait *for*”). In Italian, the commonly used verbs *guardare* (to look at), *cercare* (to look for), and *aspettare* (to wait for) have a built-in preposition:

Cerco il teatro. → *Lo cerco.*

I am searching for **the theatre**. →

I am searching for **it**.

Guardo la ragazza. → *La guardo.*

I am looking at **the girl**. → I am looking at **her**.

When to Use Indirect Object Pronouns

“Congratulations! If you have the winning number, a check for \$1 billion will be sent *to you*!” Lucky you—you’re the indirect object of the billion-dollar sweepstakes. As you can see here, the indirect object of a sentence tells to whom or for whom the action is done. Indirect objects are often replaced by indirect object pronouns:

Marco offre un bicchiere di vino a Marina. →
Marco le offre un bicchiere di vino.

Marco offers a glass of wine **to Marina**. →
Marco offers **her** a glass of wine.

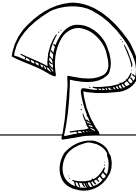
Elisabetta scrive a Francesco una lettera. →
Elisabetta gli scrive una lettera.

Elisabetta writes a letter **to Francesco**. →
Elisabetta writes **him** a letter.



La Bella Lingua

Whenever you hear someone use the expression *Non lo so*, (I don’t know it), the speaker is using the direct object pronoun *lo*.



What’s What

Are you confused over whether to use a direct or an indirect object pronoun? Remember that most indirect object pronouns are preceded by a preposition. Think of the preposition as a little bridge that must be crossed to get to the object. There is no “direct” way to get there—you must take the “indirect” way, over the bridge.

Verbs That May Use an Indirect Object

Some verbs that take a direct object in English take an indirect object in Italian:

Telefono a Dario stasera. → Gli telefono stasera.

I am calling **Dario** this evening. → I am calling **him** this evening.

The following Italian verbs may use an indirect object or its pronoun in Italian:

<i>chiedere</i>	to ask	<i>parlare</i>	to speak
<i>dare</i>	to give	<i>portare</i>	to bring
<i>dire</i>	to say	<i>preparare</i>	to prepare
<i>domandare</i>	to question	<i>presentare</i>	to present
<i>donare</i>	to give	<i>prestare</i>	to lend
<i>fare sapere</i>	to let know	<i>regalare</i>	to give
<i>insegnare</i>	to teach	<i>rendere</i>	to render
<i>leggere</i>	to read	<i>rispondere</i>	to respond
<i>mandare</i>	to send	<i>scrivere</i>	to write
<i>mostrare</i>	to show	<i>telefonare</i>	to telephone
<i>offrire</i>	to offer	<i>vendere</i>	to sell

Joel telefona ai suoi amici. → Joel telefona a loro.

Joel telephones **his friends**. → Joel telephones **them**.

Faccio sapere a Silvia la data. → Le faccio sapere la data.

I'm letting **Silvia** know the date. → I'm letting **her** know the date.



Attenzione!

The indirect object pronoun *loro* is often replaced with **gli** in modern spoken Italian.

Giovanni telefona loro. → Giovanni gli telefona.

Chiede loro di uscire. → Gli chiede di uscire.

In an imperative, *gli* is attached to the end of the verb:

Telefona loro! → Telefonagli!

Who's in Command?

The indirect object pronoun follows the imperative (a command) when you use the *tu*, *noi*, or *voi* form of the verb and can usually be attached to the end of the verb to form one word.

Compra il libro per Giovanni! → *Compragli il libro!*

Buy the book for **Giovanni!** → Buy **him** the book!

Invitate la vostra amica a casa! → *Invitatela a casa!*

Invite your **friend** home! → Invite **her** home.

The exception is **loro**, which must always remain separate.

Telefona ai tuoi amici! → *Telefona a loro.*

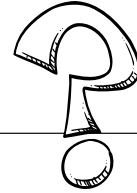
Call your **friends!** → Call **them!**

Non date una risposta a Carlo e Maria. →

Non date loro una risposta.

Don't give a response to **Carlo and Maria.** →

Don't give **them** a response.



What's What

Verbs that take a direct object are called **transitive** (I eat an *apple*, you *speak* Italian). Verbs that do not take a direct object are called **intransitive** (I *go*, you *return*).

Who's Who

Replace the direct object in each sentence with the direct object pronoun. Translate the sentences.

Example: *Leggo il giornale.*

Answer: *Lo leggo.*

1. *Mangiamo la pasta.*
2. *Dante e Boccaccio vogliono mangiare la pizza.*
3. *Prendo l'autobus.*
4. *Mario scrive un libro.*
5. *Vedo Giuseppe e Mario.*
6. *Giovanni bacia la sua ragazza.*
7. *Comprate una macchina.*
8. *Lei capisce la materia?*



La Bella Lingua

In Chapter 9, "Being There," you learned about the expression *Ecco!* To say "Here it is!" or "Here they are!" simply attach the appropriate object pronoun to *ecco*, as in *Eccolo!* (*Ecco il libro*) or *Eccoli!* (*Ecco i pantaloni*).



As a Rule

Remember that all object pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns they replace. Keep the following in mind:

- In a negative sentence, the word *non* always comes before the object pronoun:

<i>Non la voglio.</i>	I don't want it .
<i>Non lo bacio.</i>	I don't kiss him .
- When object pronouns are attached to the end of an infinitive, the final *-e* of the infinitive is omitted:

<i>Devo darti un bacio.</i>	I must give you a kiss.
<i>Vorrei invitarli alla festa.</i>	I'd like to invite them to the party.
- Singular object pronouns can be contracted in front of verbs that begin with a vowel:

<i>L'ascolto. (la musica)</i>	I'm listening to it. (the music)
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------
- In certain cases, such as with the verbs *dire* and *fare*, you add an extra *m* when using the familiar form (*tu*) of the imperative with an object pronoun:

<i>Dimmi!</i>	Tell me!
<i>Fammi sapere!</i>	Let me know!

Who's Who II

Replace the indirect object with its appropriate pronoun.

Example: *Beatrice scrive una lettera a Dante.*

Answer: *Beatrice gli scrive una lettera.*

1. *Desideriamo parlare a voi.*
2. *Maria e Giorgio danno un regalo a te.*
3. *Carlo telefona ad Anna.*
4. *Lo studente fa una domanda al professore.*
5. *Offro un caffè a Caterina.*

6. *I nonni danno le caramelle ai bambini.*
7. *Offro una birra a Dominick.*
8. *Augurano a noi una buona notte.*

Who's Who—Final Round

Determine which kind of object pronoun should go in the following sentences where it is bold.

1. Guardate **il film**.
2. Regalo a Lorenzo **un mazzo di fiori**. (bunch of flowers)
3. Vede la **bella ragazza**?
4. Regalo a Lorenzo **un mazzo di fiori**.
5. Danno i libri **ai bambini**.
6. Conosco **il signor Spadone** molto bene.
7. Danno **i libri** ai bambini.
8. Accettiamo **l'invito** con piacere.

The Least You Need to Know

- Italians use the metric system, so make sure you know what your proper *misura* is.
- The verb *portare* is used to express "to wear."
- A direct object answers the question, "What or whom is the subject acting upon?"
- An indirect object answers the question, "To what or to whom is the subject acting for?"
- Use object pronouns to replace the object in a sentence. Object pronouns are usually placed before the conjugated verb, except in an affirmative command, when they come after the verb.



Bread, Wine, and Chocolate

In This Chapter

- Different foods and where to buy them
- Using *ne* and expressing quantity
- The verb *piacere* (to be pleasing to)

Food. Italy. The two are inseparable. It's *gastronomia* brought to the level of *arte*. What makes Italy so special is the *attenzione* it gives to the everyday elements of successful living; it's *naturale* that food plays an important *ruolo* in the Italian lifestyle. Italians know that fine cuisine is a precursor to living *la dolce vita*.

Many different kinds of stores cater to food, although a great deal of crossover occurs. Make sure you eat something before reading this chapter, or you won't be able to *concentrare* on anything. *Buon appetito!*

To Market, to Market

Imagine that you are staying with your *famiglia* in a rented villa for a month. The tomatoes are ripe and the *basilico* is fresh. Maybe you want to *fare un picnic*. Whatever your *preferenza*, in Italy there's something delicious for everyone. First, you'll have to do the shopping—and you'll need to know what all those delectables are called.

Dal Negozio (at the Store)

The words in the following table should help you on your next shopping expedition. To tell someone you would like to take something, use the verb *prendere* (to take), as in *Prendo un chilo di pomodori*. (I'll take a kilo of tomatoes.)



Did You Know?

The word *carnevale* (meaning “carnival” and source of the English word “carnal”) is no different from the infamous Mardi Gras (in Italian, *Martedì Grasso*—literally, “fat Tuesday”). This was the last night one was permitted to eat meat before beginning the period of Lent. In Italy, two of the most famous *carnevale* celebrations take place in Venice and Viareggio, where tens of thousands show up to participate in the festivities and watch the parades.

Dal Negozio

Negozio	Store	Il Prodotto	The Product
<i>il bar</i>	bar	<i>il caffè, i liquori, gli alcolici</i>	coffee, liquors, alcohol
<i>la drogheria</i>	grocery store	<i>tutto</i>	everything
<i>l'enoteca</i>	wine bar	<i>il vino</i>	wine
<i>il fornaio</i>	bakery	<i>il pane</i>	bread
<i>la gelateria</i>	ice cream shop	<i>il gelato</i>	ice cream
<i>la latteria</i>	dairy store	<i>il formaggio, il latte, le uova</i>	cheese, milk, eggs
<i>la macelleria</i>	butcher	<i>la carne, il pollo</i>	meat, chicken
<i>il mercato</i>	market	<i>tutto</i>	everything
<i>il fruttivendolo</i>	green grocer	<i>la frutta, le verdure, i legumi</i>	fruit, vegetables, legumes
<i>la pasticceria</i>	pastry shop	<i>la pasta, i dolci</i>	pastry, sweets
<i>la pescheria</i>	fish store	<i>il pesce</i>	fish
<i>il supermercato</i>	supermarket	<i>tutto</i>	everything
<i>il vinaio</i>	wine store	<i>il vino</i>	wine

I Love Olives

In Italy, the *il commesso* or *la commessa* will carefully choose the best, ripest, most succulent produce you could want. The following table gives you the terms to express your needs.

Le Verdure

Vegetable	La Verdura	Pronunciation
anise	<i>l'anice</i>	<i>lah-nee-cheh</i>
artichoke	<i>il carciofo</i>	<i>eel kar-choh-foh</i>
asparagus	<i>gli asparagi</i>	<i>ylee ah-spah-rah-jee</i>
beans	<i>i fagioli</i>	<i>ee fah-joh-lee</i>
cabbage	<i>il cavolo</i>	<i>eel kah-voh-loh</i>
carrots	<i>le carote</i>	<i>leh kah-roh-teh</i>
cauliflower	<i>il cavolfiore</i>	<i>eel kah-vol-fee-yoh-reh</i>
corn	<i>il mais</i>	<i>eel mais</i>
eggplant	<i>la melanzana</i>	<i>lah meh-lan-zah-neh</i>
garlic	<i>l'aglio</i>	<i>lah-lyoh</i>
green beans	<i>i fagiolini</i>	<i>ee fah-joh-lee-nee</i>
legumes	<i>i legumi</i>	<i>ee leh-goo-mee</i>
lettuce	<i>la lattuga</i>	<i>lah lah-too-gah</i>
mushrooms	<i>i funghi</i>	<i>ee foon-ghee</i>
olive	<i>l'oliva</i>	<i>loh-lee-vah</i>
onion	<i>la cipolla</i>	<i>lah chee-poh-lah</i>
peas	<i>i piselli</i>	<i>ee pee-zeh-lee</i>
potato	<i>la patata</i>	<i>lah pah-tah-tah</i>
rice	<i>il riso</i>	<i>eel ree-zoh</i>
spinach	<i>gli spinaci</i>	<i>ylee spee-nah-chee</i>
tomato	<i>il pomodoro</i>	<i>ee poh-moh-doh-roh</i>
vegetable/greens	<i>la verdura</i>	<i>lah ver-doo-rah</i>
zucchini	<i>gli zucchini</i>	<i>ylee zoo-kee-nee</i>



La Bella Lingua

Reading food labels can be *difficile* in any language. It's wise to be familiar with these important expressions you may see written on perishables:

da consumarsi entro ...

best consumed before ...

la data di scadenza

expiration date



La Bella Lingua

Since eating is a favorite pastime of most self-respecting Italians, you're going to need a few verbs to get through any decent meal. Some food-oriented verbs include these:

assaggiare (to taste)

fare * *colazione* (to have breakfast, lunch)

bere * (to drink)

mangiare (to eat)

cenare (to dine)

pranzare (to eat lunch)

comprare (to buy)

preparare (to prepare)

cucinare (to cook)

*These verbs are irregular.

The idiomatic expression *fare la prima colazione* (to eat breakfast) differs slightly from *fare colazione*. Both can be used to eat breakfast, while the latter can also be used to eat lunch. Don't forget *fare la spesa* (to go food shopping).

An Apple a Day

In Rome, a favorite summertime treat is *il cocomero*, also called *l'anguria* (watermelon), which can be bought at brightly lit *bancarelle* (stands). It's so sweet your teeth will hurt, and as wet as a waterfall (get extra napkins). Somehow, the Italians manage to eat the thickly sliced pieces with a plastic spoon (good luck!). Another fruit fact: Italians rarely bite into an apple. They peel it with a knife in one long curl and then slice it into bite-sized chunks to share with everyone at the table. The following table provides a list of the Italian for various fruits and nuts.

La Frutta e La Nocciola

English	Italian	Pronunciation
almond	<i>la mandorla</i>	<i>lah mahn-dor-lah</i>
apple	<i>la mela</i>	<i>lah meh-lah</i>
apricot	<i>l'albicocca</i>	<i>lah-bee-koh-kah</i>
banana	<i>la banana</i>	<i>lah bah-nah-nah</i>
cherry	<i>la ciliegia</i>	<i>leh chee-leh-jah</i>
chestnut	<i>la castagna</i>	<i>lah kah-stah-nyah</i>

English	Italian	Pronunciation
date	<i>il dattero</i>	<i>eel dah-teh-roh</i>
figs	<i>i fichi</i>	<i>ee fee-kee</i>
fruit	<i>la frutta</i>	<i>lah froo-tah</i>
grapefruit	<i>il pompelmo</i>	<i>eel pom-pehl-moh</i>
grapes	<i>l'uva</i>	<i>loo-vah</i>
hazelnut	<i>la nocciola</i>	<i>lah noh-choh-lah</i>
lemon	<i>il limone</i>	<i>eel lee-moh-neh</i>
melon	<i>il melone</i>	<i>eel meh-loh-neh</i>
orange	<i>l'arancia</i>	<i>lah-rah-n-chah</i>
peach	<i>la pesca</i>	<i>lah pes-kah</i>
pear	<i>la pera</i>	<i>lah peh-rah</i>
pineapple	<i>l'ananas</i>	<i>lah-nah-nas</i>
pistachio nut	<i>il pistacchio</i>	<i>eel pee-stah-kee-yoh</i>
pomegranate	<i>la melagrana</i>	<i>lah meh-lah-grah-nah</i>
raisin	<i>l'uva secca</i>	<i>loo-vah seh-kah</i>
raspberry	<i>il lampone</i>	<i>eel lam-poh-neh</i>
walnut	<i>la noce</i>	<i>lah noh-cheh</i>



As a Rule

Fruit is usually feminine, with a few exceptions. The fruit tree is masculine. *La mela* (the apple) becomes *il melo* (the apple tree), *l'arancia* becomes *l'arancio* (the orange tree), *la pera* becomes *il pero* (the pear tree), and so on.

La frutta refers to all fruit in general. *Un frutto* refers to a piece of fruit, as in *Vuole un frutto?* (Do you want a piece of fruit?)

In Macelleria (at the Butcher)

Italian food is fresh. Most perishables are bought and cooked immediately. You will find the terms for different types of meat in the following table.

La Macelleria

Meat and Poultry	<i>La Carne e Pollame</i>	Pronunciation
beef	<i>il manzo</i>	eel mahn-zoh
chicken	<i>il pollo</i>	eel poh-loh
cold cuts	<i>i salumi</i>	ee sah-loo-mee
cutlet	<i>la costoletta</i>	lah koh-stoh-leh-tah
duck	<i>l'anatra</i>	lah-nah-trah
fillet	<i>il filetto</i>	eel fee-leh-toh
ham	<i>il prosciutto</i>	eel proh-shoo-toh
lamb	<i>l'agnello</i>	lah-nyeh-loh
liver	<i>il fegato</i>	eel feh-gah-toh
meat	<i>la carne</i>	lah kar-neh
meatballs	<i>le polpette</i>	leh pol-peh-teh
pork	<i>il maiale</i>	eel mah-yah-leh
pork chop	<i>la braciola</i>	lah brah-choh-lah
quail	<i>la quaglia</i>	lah kwah-lyah
rabbit	<i>il coniglio</i>	eel koh-nee-lyoh
salami	<i>il salame</i>	eel sah-lah-meh
sausage	<i>la salsiccia</i>	lah sal-see-chah
steak	<i>la bistecca</i>	lah bee-steh-kah
tripe	<i>la trippa</i>	lah tree-pah
turkey	<i>il tacchino</i>	eel tah-kee-noh
veal	<i>il vitello</i>	eel vee-teh-loh
veal shank	<i>l'osso buco</i>	loh-soh boo-koh



La Bella Lingua

Meats and poultry are best when selected by your local *macellaio* (butcher), who will ask you how you would like it cut. In Italy, if you order a *fettina*, you are given a thinly sliced portion of meat, either *di manzo* (beef) or *di vitello* (veal). *Il filetto* is thicker. You can also order *una costoletta* (cutlet).



La Bella Lingua

L'agriturismo is an increasingly popular way for families to vacation abroad. Guests stay in the countryside on working farms or vineyards and eat the cheeses, meats, and vegetables produced at the establishment.

Why not take a cooking vacation? Eat, live, and drink Italian as you go from the market to the kitchen to the vineyard to the table!

Got Milk? La Latteria

The only real *parmigiano* comes from Parma, Italy. There are so many wonderful cheeses in Italy that you'll want to *fare un picnic*. Nothing beats fresh *pane*, *una bottiglia di vino*, and good company. Most *supermercati* carry a wide selection of cheeses and wines, but you can check your neighborhood stores as well for the products described in the following table.



La Bella Lingua

Some delicious food-related books include:

The Fine Art of Italian Cooking, Giuliano Bugialli (Random House)

The Harry's Bar Cookbook, Arrigo Cipriani (Bantam Doubleday Dell Publishing Group)

In Nonna's Kitchen, Carol Field (HarperCollins Publishers)

From the Tables of Tuscan Women, Anne Bianchi (HarperCollins Publishers)

Combine your word worship with your passion for petunias in *Edith Wharton's Italian Gardens*, by Vivian Russell.

La Latteria

Dairy Product	<i>Il Prodotto</i>	Pronunciation
butter	<i>il burro</i>	<i>eel boo-roh</i>
cheese	<i>il formaggio</i>	<i>eel for-mah-joh</i>
cream	<i>la panna</i>	<i>lah pah-nah</i>
eggs	<i>le uova</i>	<i>leh woh-vah</i>
milk	<i>il latte</i>	<i>eel lah-teh</i>
yogurt	<i>lo yogurt</i>	<i>loh yoh-gurt</i>

Di Bocca Buona

The Italians have a saying for everything. Read the idiomatic expressions related to food and eating, and draw a line connecting them to the appropriate translation.

<i>Bere come una spugna.</i>	A good mouth (a good eater).
<i>Di bocca buona.</i>	A hard bone.
<i>Una ciliegia tira l'altra.</i>	I don't care one dry fig's worth.
<i>Non me ne importa un fico secco.</i>	Of good pasta (good-natured).
<i>Fare la frittata.</i>	One cherry pulls the other. (One thing leads to another.)
<i>Fino al midollo.</i>	Red as a pepper.
<i>Liscio come l'olio.</i>	Smooth as oil.
<i>Un osso duro.</i>	To be a sack of potatoes.
<i>Dire pane al pane e vino al vino.</i>	To call bread bread and wine wine (to call a spade a spade).
<i>Mangiare pane e cipolla.</i>	To drink like a sponge (to drink like a fish).
<i>Togliersi il pane di bocca.</i>	To eat bread and onion (to live on bread and water).
<i>Di pasta buona.</i>	To give bread from your mouth.
<i>Avere lo spirito di patata.</i>	To have a potato's sense of humor.
<i>Essere un sacco di patate.</i>	To make an omelette of things.
<i>Fare polpette di ...</i>	To make meatballs of ...
<i>Rosso come un peperone.</i>	To the marrow.

Fruit of the Sea: La Pescheria

Ahh, *i frutti di mare!* Go to any seaside village in Italy, and you're guaranteed to eat some of the best seafood you've ever had. The following table gives you a little taste.

La Pescheria

Fish and Seafood	<i>I Pesci e Frutti di Mare</i>	Pronunciation
anchovies	<i>le acciughe</i>	leh ah-choo-gheh
cod	<i>il merluzzo</i>	eel mer-loo-stoh
crab	<i>il granchio</i>	eel gran-kee-yoh
fish	<i>il pesce</i>	eel peh-sheh
flounder	<i>la passera</i>	lah pah-seh-rah
halibut	<i>l'halibut</i>	lah-lee-boot
herring	<i>l'aringa</i>	lah-reen-gah
lobster	<i>l'aragosta</i>	lah-rah-gohs-tah
mussel	<i>la cozza</i>	lah koh-tsah
oyster	<i>l'ostrica</i>	loh-stree-kah
salmon	<i>il salmone</i>	eel sahl-moh-neh
sardines	<i>le sardine</i>	leh sar-dee-neh
scallop	<i>la cappasanta</i>	lah kah-pah-sahn-tah
shrimp	<i>i gamberetti</i>	ee gahm-beh-reh-tee
sole	<i>la sogliola</i>	lah soh-lyoh-lah
squid	<i>i calamari</i>	ee kah-lah-mah-ree
swordfish	<i>il pesce spada</i>	eel peh-sheh spah-dah
trout	<i>la trota</i>	lah troh-tah
tuna	<i>il tonno</i>	eel toh-noh
whities	<i>i bianchetti</i>	ee bee-ahn-keh-tee

What's in a Name?

When you're talking about food, what often sounds slightly exotic almost invariably derives from a simple description of its shape or taste. Look at the word *capellini*, referring to a type of spaghetti that is as thin as *capelli* (in English, you call this angel-hair pasta), or *orecchiette*, which literally means "little ear." And what about those wonderful, ricotta-filled *calzones* you treat yourself to at the local pizza parlor? When you bite into one, you're not really eating socks for dinner!

The pasta known as *conchiglie* are named after the sea shells they resemble. *Bombarde* describe the huge "bomb-like" tubes of pasta that are stuffed with cheese and meat fillings. The word for the popular *ziti* may find its origins in the word *zitellone*, referring to an old bachelor (*zitella* was used to describe a spinster). And let's not forget the cork-screw-shaped pasta *fusilli*, perhaps finding its origins in the word *fusello*, meaning "spindle" or "bobbin."

Study these popular types of pasta and see how well you can ascertain their origins.

<i>i rigatoni</i>	<i>i tortellini</i>
<i>le penne</i>	<i>i cannelloni</i>
<i>le orecchiette</i>	<i>i ravioli</i>
<i>le farfalle</i>	<i>le linguine</i>
<i>le fettuccine</i>	

This Drink's on Me

As is the Italian way, certain times befit certain beverages. *Il cappuccino* is generally consumed in the morning with a *cornetto* (similar to a croissant). *L'espresso* can be consumed any time of the day but is usually taken after meals (never *cappuccino*).

To whet your appetite, you can have an *aperitivo*, and to help you digest, a *digestivo* or *amaro*. As an afternoon pick-me-up, you can indulge in a *spremuta* (freshly squeezed juice). The following table lists different kinds of things you can drink. You should be able to pronounce these words without the guide—just sound them out like you see them.

I Bibiti

Drinks	<i>Le Bibite</i>
beer	<i>la birra</i>
coffee	<i>il caffè</i>
drink	<i>la bibita, la bevanda</i>
freshly squeezed juice	<i>la spremuta</i>
freshly squeezed grapefruit juice	<i>la spremuta di pompelmo</i>
freshly squeezed orange juice	<i>la spremuta d'arancia</i>
fruit juice	<i>il succo di frutta</i>
hot chocolate	<i>la cioccolata calda</i>
iced tea	<i>il tè freddo</i>
lemon soda	<i>la limonata</i>
milk	<i>il latte</i>
mineral water	<i>l'acqua minerale</i>
nonalcoholic beverage	<i>l'analcolico</i>
noncarbonated mineral water	<i>l'acqua minerale naturale</i>
orange soda	<i>l'aranciata</i>
sparkling mineral water	<i>l'acqua minerale gassata/frizzante</i>
sparkling wine	<i>lo spumante</i>
tea	<i>il tè</i>
wine	<i>il vino</i>

Dolcezza!

The word *dolcezza* is a term of endearment meaning “sweetheart.” Do you have a sweet tooth? Italians love their *caramelle*, and if you’re a chocolate addict, you definitely want to check out Perugia’s *Baci* (kisses), which come in a silver wrapper and always include a fortune. The following table lists a number of treats.

For Your Sweet Tooth

The Candy	<i>La Caramella</i>
chocolate	<i>la cioccolata</i>
cough drop	<i>una caramella per la tosse</i>
gum	<i>la gomma americana</i>
licorice	<i>la liquirizia</i>
mint	<i>la menta</i>

Expressing Quantity

You want a little of this and a little of that. You’ll take some olives, a loaf of bread, and a couple of boxes of pasta. Maybe you’ll also get a slice of cheese, and since you’re there, why not a chicken cutlet or two? Once you’re out there shopping, you’ll need to know how to express how much you want of something. There are a few ways of doing this.

It’s the Quantity That Counts

Different measurements can lead to confusion. The following table will help make the metric system much easier to follow. These comparisons are approximate but close enough to get roughly the right amount.

Measuring

Solid Measures		Liquid Measures	
U.S. System	<i>Metrico</i>	U.S. System	<i>Metrico</i>
1 oz.	28 <i>grammi</i>	1 oz.	30 <i>millilitri</i>
1/4 lb.	125 <i>grammi (un etto)*</i>	16 oz. (1 pint)	475 <i>millilitri</i>
1/2 lb.	250 <i>grammi</i>	32 oz. (1 quart)	<i>circa un litro</i>
3/4 lb.	375 <i>grammi</i>	1 gallon	3.75 <i>litri</i>
1.1 lbs.	500 <i>grammi</i>		
2.2 lbs.	1 <i>chilogrammo (un chilo)</i>		

*Prices are often quoted by the etto (a hectogram).

It might be just as easy to indicate a little of this, a little of that, and then say when enough is enough using the expression, *Basta così*. Italy uses the metric system; instead of asking for “a dozen,” you can also ask for “ten of.” Some helpful ways of expressing quantity are listed in the following table.

Quantities

Amount	La Quantità
a bag of	<i>un sacchetto di</i>
a bottle of	<i>una bottiglia di</i>
a box of	<i>una scatola di</i>
a can of	<i>una lattina</i>
a container of	<i>un barattolo di</i>
a dozen of	<i>una dozzina di</i>
a drop of	<i>una goccia di</i>
a jar of	<i>un vasetto di</i>
a kilo of	<i>un chilo di</i>
a pack of	<i>un pacchetto di</i>
a piece of	<i>un pezzo di</i>
a quarter pound of	<i>un etto di</i>
a sack (lot) of	<i>un sacco di</i>
a slice of	<i>una fetta di</i>
a ten of	<i>una decina di</i>



La Bella Lingua

The words *qualche* and *alcuni* (or *alcune* [f.]) can mean “some” or “any” and can be used when there are *a few* or *several*. Note that *qualche* and the noun it modifies is always used in the singular even if the meaning is plural.

<i>qualche volta</i>	sometimes
<i>alcuni amici</i>	several friends
<i>alcune lingue</i>	a few languages

You Asked for It; You Got It!

You want to prepare a wonderful meal. You're planning to start with a light *brodo di tortellini*, then you want to roast a *pollo*, and for dessert, some *fragole fresche*, covered with *panna*. Here are some useful verbs and expressions you can use to make your meal:

<i>Vorrei del (della)...</i>	I would like some ...
<i>Per favore mi dia ...</i>	Please give me ...
<i>Mi può dare ...</i>	Can you give me ...
<i>Prendo ...</i>	I'll take ...
<i>Quanto viene?</i>	How much does it come to?
<i>Quanto ne serve per (il numero delle persone)?</i>	How much is necessary for (the number of people)?
<i>Quanto pesa?</i>	How much does it weigh?
<i>Avete una bustina di plastica?</i>	Do you have a plastic bag?

Give Me Some!

To indicate that you would like “some of” a larger quantity, you can use the preposition *di* + the noun (with its appropriate definite article) to create the partitive. Refer back to Chapter 11, “Finally, You’re at the Airport,” to refresh your memory of contractions. Take a look at the following examples:

<i>Vorrei del pane.</i>	I'd like some bread.
<i>Prendo della frutta.</i>	I'll take some fruit.
<i>Ho anche bisogno dello zucchero.</i>	I also need some sugar.

Some or Any: The Partitive Ne

Imagine that someone asks you whether you want some ice cream. You're stuffed to the gills, though. If you eat one more bite, you'll explode, so you say, “Nah, I don't want any, thanks.” It is assumed that *any* refers to the ice cream.

You've learned how to indicate some or any by using the preposition *di* plus *l'articolo*. The partitive pronoun *ne* comes in handy when used to ask for a “part of” or “some of” a greater quantity. It can be translated to mean “some,” “any,” “of it,” “of them,” “some of them,” “any of it,” and “any of them.” It is especially used in response to a question, when the object has already been indicated.

Like most object pronouns, *ne* usually precedes the verb but attaches itself to the infinitive form (minus the final *-e*).

<i>Vuole della frutta?</i>	Would you like some fruit?
<i>No grazie, non ne voglio.</i>	No, thanks; I don't want any.
<i>Non voglio mangiarne.</i>	I don't want to eat any.

Some Practice

Answer the following questions with the pronoun *ne* using the affirmative and the negative:

Example: *Vuole un frutto?* (Do you want a piece of fruit?)

Answer: *No, non ne voglio.* (No, I don't want any.)

1. *Hanno dei soldi?* (Do they have money?)
Sì, _____.
2. *Avete del pane?* (Do you [all] have some bread?)
Sì, _____.
3. *Bevi vino?* (Do you drink wine?)
Sì, _____.
4. *C'è del gelato?* (Is there any ice cream?)
No, _____.



La Bella Lingua

If you want to indicate that you would like "more of" or "less of" something, just ask:

Di più, per favore.

More, please.

Di meno, grazie.

Less, thank you.

Facciamo La Spesa

In Italian, you use the expression *fare la spesa* to refer to shopping for household items such as food. Put together a shopping list in Italian for the following items you'll need for a picnic:

<i>La Spesa</i>	
<i>mineral water</i>	<i>a little prosciutto</i>
<i>a bottle of red wine</i>	<i>some fruit</i>
<i>some bread</i>	<i>a corkscrew</i>
<i>a little cheese</i>	<i>a knife</i>
<i>olives</i>	

What's Your Pleasure? The Verb *Piacere*

One of the first things an Italian will ask is *Le piace l'Italia?* (Do you like Italy?) What's not to like?

You need to understand the verb *piacere* (to be pleasing to) to express your likes and dislikes in Italian. In Italian, you don't say, "I like pizza." Using the verb *piacere*, you would say the equivalent of, "Pizza is pleasing to me," as in *Mi piace la pizza*. If you were talking about *gli spaghetti*, because the word *spaghetti* is plural in Italian, you would say, *Mi piacciono gli spaghetti*.

Unlike English, in Italian, the thing that is pleasing is the subject of the sentence. The person who is pleased is the indirect object.

Because the subject of the sentence dictates how the verb is conjugated, *piacere* is rarely used in anything other than the third-person singular and plural. Those two forms are shown here:

piace (it is pleasing/it pleases)

piacciono (they are pleasing/they please)

On rare occasions, you might find it necessary to use the verb in the first or second persons, in which case it is conjugated as follows:

The Verb *Piacere*: to Please

Italian	English
<i>io piaccio</i>	I am pleasing
<i>tu piaci</i>	you are pleasing
<i>lui/lei/Lei piace</i>	he/she (it) is pleasing; You are pleasing
<i>noi piacciamo</i>	we are pleasing
<i>voi piacete</i>	you are pleasing
<i>loro piacciono</i>	they are pleasing

Using *Piacere*

Expressing your likes and dislikes in Italian is much easier if you reprogram your brain. Instead of saying, "I like ...," reword the expression to say "... is pleasing to me."

Some rules about the verb *piacere* are outlined here. In the first few examples, the **indirect object** (or pronoun) is in **bold** and the subject is underlined:

1. *Piacere* is almost always used in third person (singular and plural) and is always used with an indirect object or indirect object pronoun. Refer to Chapter 16, "Shop 'Til You Drop," to review your indirect objects and their pronouns:

<i>Mi piace <u>la pizza</u>.</i>	I like pizza. (<u>Pizza</u> is pleasing to me.)
<i>Mi piacciono <u>gli spaghetti</u>.</i>	I like spaghetti. (<u>Spaghetti</u> is pleasing to me.)
<i>Bambini, <u>vi</u> piace <u>la pizza</u>?</i>	Children, do you like pizza? (Is <u>pizza</u> pleasing to you?)
<i>Sì, <u>ci</u> piacciono <u>la pizza e gli spaghetti</u>!</i>	Yes, we like pizza and spaghetti. (Yes, pizza and spaghetti are pleasing to us.)

2. When used as the subject, the infinitive is singular.

<i>Mi piace <u>mangiare</u> la pizza.</i>	I like <u>eating</u> pizza.
<i>Ti piace <u>studiare</u>?</i>	Do you like <u>to study</u> ?

3. When you're not using an indirect object pronoun, you must use the preposition *a* (or its contraction, *a* + the article) before the noun.

<i>A <u>Marcello</u> piace bere il vino.</i>	Marcello likes to drink wine. (Drinking wine is pleasing to Marcello.)
<i><u>Ai bambini</u> piace la cioccolata.</i>	The children like chocolate. (Chocolate is pleasing to the children.)

4. The word order is somewhat flexible. The indirect object (the recipient of the verb's action) of the verb can come before or after the conjugated form of *piacere*.

<i>A <u>Giovanni</u> piace il pane.</i>	To Giovanni, bread is pleasing.
<i>Piace il pane <u>a Giovanni</u>?</i>	Is bread pleasing to Giovanni?

5. To make a negative statement, *non* goes in front of the indirect object pronoun.

<i><u>Non mi</u> piace il fegato.</i>	I don't like liver.
However, when the indirect object of the verb is a noun (and not a pronoun), <i>non</i> goes in front of the conjugated form of <i>piacere</i> .	
<i><u>Ai bambini non</u> piace il fegato.</i>	The children don't like liver.

6. The indirect object pronoun *loro* (to them) generally precedes the verb.

<i>A <u>loro</u> piacciono le caramelle.</i>	They like the candies.
--	------------------------

7. The verb *dispiacere* means "to be sorry" (not "to be displeasing") as well as "to mind." It is used exactly like the verb *piacere*:

<i>Mi <u>dispiace</u>.</i>	I'm sorry.
<i>Le <u>dispiace</u> attendere un momento?</i>	Do you mind holding for a moment?



As a Rule

The indirect object pronouns are used with the verb *piacere*.

Gli piacciono i dolci. (He likes sweets.)

The indirect object pronouns are ...

Singular		Plural	
<i>mi</i>	to me	<i>ci</i>	to us
<i>ti</i>	to you	<i>vi</i>	to you
<i>gli</i>	to him	<i>loro</i>	to them
<i>le</i>	to her		
<i>Le</i>	to You (polite)		

Using the Verb *Piacere*

Ask someone if he or she likes the following. Remember that the thing that is liked is the subject and that the verb *piacere* must reflect number.

Example: *Le _____ il vino bianco?*

Answer: *Le piace il vino bianco?*

1. *Ti _____ la frutta?*
2. *Signora, Le _____ il vino?*
3. *Vi _____ gli spaghetti?*
4. *Ti _____ cucinare?*
5. *Mamma, ti _____ le caramelle?*
6. *L'Italia _____ loro?*

Using the Verb *Piacere II*

Imagine that you are asking your partner if he or she likes something from the following list. Give both an affirmative and a negative response.

Example: *Ti piacciono i biscotti?*
Answer: *Sì, mi piacciono i biscotti.*
No, non mi piacciono i biscotti.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>i dolci</i> | 4. <i>le acciughe</i> |
| 2. <i>la pasta</i> | 5. <i>i fichi</i> |
| 3. <i>gli spaghetti</i> | 6. <i>il fegato</i> |

A Special Treat

There's nothing like good old-fashioned cooking. Here's an opportunity to apply your new Italian skills with a special recipe. The following words will help your dish turn out *perfetto*:

<i>aggiungere</i>	to add
<i>bollire</i>	to boil
<i>cuocere</i>	to cook
<i>girare</i>	to mix
<i>mettere</i>	to put
<i>versare</i>	to pour

Minestra di Riso e Limone

Ingredienti:

8 tazze di brodo

1 tazza di riso Arborio

3 tuorli di uova

1/4 tazza formaggio Parmigiano-Reggiano, grattugiato

1 cucchiaino di scorza di limone grattugiata

1 cucchiaino di succo di limone

- 1. Mettete il brodo in un tegame e portatelo al punto di ebollizione. Aggiungete il riso, coprite il tegame e fatelo cuocere 20 minuti.*
- 2. Nel frattempo battete le uova, aggiungete il formaggio, il limone grattugiato e il succo di limone.*
- 3. Quando il riso è cotto, versate le uova nella minestra, sbattendo in continuazione. Riscaldete la minestra e servitela subito.*

Per 4 persone.

The Least You Need to Know

- You need to do two things to eat well in Italy: work up a good appetite and learn a few gastronomical verbs: *mangiare* (to eat), *bere* (to drink), *assaggiare/gustare* (to taste), *cenare* (to dine), *comprare* (to buy), *cucinare* (to cook), *pranzare* (to eat lunch), and *preparare* (to prepare).
- The pronoun *ne* is used to express that you want a “part of” or “some of” a greater quantity.
- To say that you like something, you must use the verb *piacere* (to be pleasing).
- You must use indirect object pronouns with *piacere*.



Shall We Dine?

In This Chapter

- ▶ Where to go to eat
- ▶ Ordering in a restaurant
- ▶ Special diets
- ▶ Double object pronouns
- ▶ Reflexive verbs

You're on vacation and don't want to do dishes. Why not take a break? Sit back, relax, and let someone else do the running around for a change. If you want to understand the menu, or if you have special needs, this chapter will help you ask for what you want.

So Many Restaurants

You don't need to go to a five-star restaurant to eat well in Italy—there are restaurants for every palate and every pocket. Some of the smaller, family-run joints have the best food in town. Choose the place that best fits your needs:

Il bar: Apart from serving drinks of all kinds, bars serve *i panini* (sandwiches), *le merende* (snacks), and assorted *paste* (pastries).

La caffetteria: Pick and choose from whatever you see behind the glass counter, find an empty table, and eat. The food here is inexpensive and nourishing.

La mensa: Like a cafeteria, here you'll find wholesome food on a fixed-price basis; these places are usually frequented by *gli studenti*.

L'osteria: No different from a *taverna*, it's often family-run and frequented by locals.

La paninoteca: Here you can order sandwiches and beverages, good "on-the-go" food.



Attenzione!

Words ending in *à* (as in *specialità* and *città*) always remain in the singular form. In these cases, the article reflects plurality.

La pizzeria: Just like it sounds, at the pizzeria you can get your own personal pizza the size of a dinner plate, or a square cut from a large tray. Whatever the shape, the taste is unbeatable.

Il ristorante: This can range in *qualità* and *costo*; usually it has a more formal *ambiente*.

Self-service: Increasingly popular with young people; like a cafeteria, here you grab a tray and pick your *piatto*.

La tavola calda: Literally, this is a "hot table"—ready-to-eat food that you can take out as well.

La trattoria: Similar to *la taverna*, this local establishment offers home-style cooking in an intimate environment.

Two for Dinner, Please

The next time you are in an Italian *ristorante*, you may hear the following:

<i>A che ora vorrebbe* mangiare?</i>	At what time would you like to eat?
<i>Vuole fare una prenotazione?</i>	Would you like to make a reservation?
<i>Per quante persone?</i>	For how many people?
<i>Va bene questo tavolo?</i>	Is this table all right?
<i>Tutto bene?</i>	Is everything all right?
<i>Le specialità del giorno sono ...</i>	Today's specials are ...
<i>Si accomodi.</i>	Make yourself comfortable.

*Third-person conditional tense of *volere* (to want).

What's the House Special?

The following expressions will help you ask for what you want.

Dal Ristorante

<i>L'Espressione</i>	Expression
<i>Cameriere!</i>	Waiter!
<i>Vorrei fare una prenotazione ...</i>	I'd like to make a reservation ...
<i>... per stasera.</i>	... for this evening.
<i>... per domani sera.</i>	... for tomorrow evening.
<i>... per sabato sera.</i>	... for Saturday evening.

<i>L'Espressione</i>	Expression
... per due persone.	... for two people.
... alle otto.	... for 8:00.
Possiamo sederci ...	May we sit ...
... vicino alla finestra?	... near the window?
... sul terrazzo?	... on the terrace?
C'è una zona per non fumatori?	Is there a nonsmoking section?
Quanto tempo si deve aspettare?	How long is the wait?
Qual è la specialità della casa?	What is the house special?
Qual è il piatto del giorno?	What is the special for the day?
Che cosa ci consiglia?	What do you recommend?
Vorrei una porzione di ...	I'd like one portion of ...
Il conto, per favore.	The check, please.
Abbiamo mangiato* molto bene.	We ate very well.

*Past participle of mangiare.

A Table Setting

Prior to the fifteenth century, most food was eaten with the hands or from the point of a knife. Although it did not come to be commonly used until the seventeenth century, it appears that *i napoletani* created the four-pronged fork to aid them in eating spaghetti. Nowadays, it is considered *maleducato* (rude) to eat with your hands unless you're eating bread. The following table provides terms for the eating implements and other useful items.



Did You Know?

Il tavolo refers to a table in a restaurant; *la tavola* refers to a table at home.

At the Table

At the Table	<i>Al Tavolo</i>	Pronunciation
bowl	<i>la ciotola</i>	<i>lah choh-toh-lah</i>
	<i>la scodella</i>	<i>lah skoh-deh-lah</i>
carafe	<i>la caraffa</i>	<i>lah kah-rah-fah</i>
cup	<i>la tazza</i>	<i>lah tah-tsah</i>
dinner plate	<i>il piatto</i>	<i>eel pee-ah-toh</i>
fork	<i>la forchetta</i>	<i>lah for-keh-tah</i>
glass	<i>il bicchiere</i>	<i>eel bee-kee-yeh-reh</i>

continues

At the Table (continued)

At the Table	<i>Al Tavolo</i>	Pronunciation
knife	<i>il coltello</i>	eel koh-teh-loh
menu	<i>il menù</i>	eel meh-noo
napkin	<i>il tovagliolo</i>	eel toh-vah-lyoh-loh
oil	<i>l'olio</i>	loh-lee-yoh
pepper	<i>il pepe</i>	eel peh-peh
pitcher	<i>la brocca</i>	lah broh-kah
salad bowl	<i>l'insalatiera</i>	leen-sah-lah-tee-yeh-rah
salt	<i>il sale</i>	eel sah-leh
silverware	<i>l'argenteria</i>	lar-jen-teh-ree-ah
spoon	<i>il cucchiaino</i>	eel koo-kee-ay-yoh
sugar bowl	<i>la zuccheriera</i>	lah zoo-keh-ree-yeh-rah
table	<i>il tavolo</i>	eel tah-voh-loh
tablecloth	<i>la tovaglia</i>	lah toh-vah-lyah
teapot	<i>la teiera</i>	lah teh-yeh-rah
teaspoon	<i>il cucchiaino</i>	eel koo-kee-ay-ee-noh
vinegar	<i>l'aceto</i>	lah-cheh-toh

In the Kitchen

Why not tape the following kitchen-related terms to your refrigerator?

In the Kitchen

In the Kitchen	<i>Nella Cucina</i>
basket	<i>il cesto</i>
bowl	<i>la ciotola</i>
box/container	<i>la scatola</i>
can opener	<i>l'apriscatole</i>
canister	<i>il barattolo</i>
colander	<i>il colapasta</i>
counter	<i>il piano di lavoro</i>
cupboard	<i>l'armadietto</i>
curtains	<i>le tende, le tendine</i>
cutting board	<i>il tagliere</i>
dishwasher	<i>la lavastoviglie</i>
faucet	<i>il rubinetto</i>
frying pan	<i>la pentola</i>

In the Kitchen	Nella Cucina
funnel	<i>l'imbuto</i>
grill	<i>la griglia</i>
measuring cup	<i>il misurino</i>
microwave oven	<i>il forno a microonde</i>
oven	<i>il forno</i>
oven mitt	<i>il guanto da forno</i>
pitcher	<i>la lattiera</i>
recipe	<i>la ricetta</i>
recipe book	<i>il libro di cucina</i>
refrigerator	<i>il frigorifero</i>
rolling board	<i>la spianatoia</i>
rolling pin	<i>il matterello</i>
sauce pan	<i>la padella</i>
saucer	<i>il piattino</i>
sink	<i>il lavandino</i>
stove	<i>il fornello</i>
stove burner	<i>la piastra</i>
straw	<i>la cannuccia</i>
toaster	<i>il tostapane</i>
tray	<i>il vassoio</i>
vase	<i>il vaso</i>



Did You Know?

One toasts (*fare un brindisi*) another to celebrate victory or an important accomplishment.

Alla salute!

Cincin! (pronounced *cheen-cheen*)

Il Bar

In Italy, the bar is a very different place than it is in other countries. At *il bar*, you can meet friends, have a *caffè*, grab a *panino* (sandwich, which literally comes from the word *pane*, meaning “little bread”), or sip an *amaro* after dinner. You must go to the



La Bella Lingua

Traditionally, Italians drink their coffee *in piedi* (standing up). Anytime you sit down for service, you're going to pay up to four times the amount you would otherwise. Some smaller, local establishments have courtesy tables—it's polite to bring your *tazza* back up to the bar after you've finished drinking.

cassa (cashier), pay for your choice, take your *scontrino* (receipt) to the bar, and pick up your order. It is customary to leave *una mancia* of 100 *lire* or so as a gesture of good will.

Il bar is usually well lit and very clean. No Italian bar would be the same without the familiar sound of milk being steamed for *il cappuccino*.

Il Caffè

In Italy, people take their *caffè* very seriously, and it is served in a variety of manners. If you must drink American coffee, which by Italian standards is considered weak and without flavor, ask for *un caffè americano*. If you are in a small town, you should indicate this as *un caffè molto lungo*.

The following table illustrates the different kinds of *caffè* you can order. Practice reading your Italian. Remember to use the verb *prendere* (to take) to ask for what you want, as in *Prendo un espresso*.

Coffee, Coffee Everywhere

<i>Il Tipo di Caffè</i>	<i>La Descrizione</i>
<i>un espresso</i>	<i>caffè normale</i>
<i>un espresso lungo</i>	<i>caffè con molta acqua</i>
<i>un espresso ristretto</i>	<i>caffè concentrato</i>
<i>un cappuccino</i>	<i>un espresso con latte vaporizzato (steamed)</i>
<i>un latte macchiato</i>	<i>molto latte, poco caffè</i>
<i>un caffè macchiato</i>	<i>caffè con una goccia (a drop) di latte</i>
<i>un caffè latte</i>	<i>caffè fatto (made) a casa con latte</i>
<i>un caffè corretto</i>	<i>caffè con un liquore</i>
<i>un caffè decaffeinato</i>	<i>caffè senza caffeina</i>
<i>un caffè Hag</i>	<i>caffè senza caffeina come (like) la Sanka</i>
<i>un caffè freddo</i>	<i>caffè freddo</i>

Etiquette for Idiots

Italians are not big snackers; when they eat, they really eat. Although nothing is written in stone, to enhance your dining *esperienza*, a few guidelines won't hurt.

For example, in Italy, almost everything is *alla carta*—that is, ordered individually. If you want *un contorno* (a side) of veggies, you'll get a separate *piattino* because Italians almost never have more than one kind of food on a plate unless you're eating from a buffet, usually referred to as either *la tavola fredda* or *la tavola calda*.

The order of the meal is important. Generally, you order a *primo piatto* (first course), which is usually a pasta dish or soup, and then you eat your *secondo piatto* (main course). *L'insalata* is usually eaten with *il secondo piatto*. Finally, when you order *un caffè*, it is assumed that you mean *espresso*. (Remember, Italians never drink cappuccino after a meal, and grated cheese is never offered for pasta dishes that include fish.)

The Courses

Be creative; unless you're in a formal establishment, why not order several *antipasti* and give everything a taste? The following table outlines the different courses.

Courses

<i>L'Italiano</i>	<i>La Definizione</i>	English	The Definition
<i>l'antipasto</i>	<i>un assaggio per stimolare l'appetito</i>	appetizer	a taste to stimulate the appetite
<i>il primo piatto</i>	<i>la pasta, il risotto, o la zuppa</i>	first course	a pasta, risotto, or soup
<i>il secondo piatto</i>	<i>la carne, il pollo, o il pesce</i>	second course	meat, chicken, or fish
<i>il contorno</i>	<i>di solito le verdure: gli spinaci, i fagioli, le melanzane, ecc.</i>	side dish	usually vegetables: spinach, beans, eggplant, and so on

What's on the Menu?

Italian food can be found in restaurants all over the world. You are probably already familiar with a lot of *piatti*. The following three tables help you interpret some of what you might find.



Did You Know?

Contrary to popular belief, Marco Polo wasn't the first to introduce spaghetti to Italy. Evidence that the Romans had various forms of pasta predates Marco Polo's adventure, although tomatoes weren't introduced to Italy until the fifteenth century from South America. It was believed that the yellow and red fruit (yes, the tomato is a fruit—the Italian word *pomodoro* literally means "golden apple") was poisonous unless cooked for a long time.

I Primi Piatti

<i>Il Primo Piatto</i>	What It Is
<i>brodo</i>	broth
<i>gnocchi al sugo di pomodoro</i>	potato pasta with tomato sauce
<i>lasagna</i>	lasagna
<i>linguine alle vongole</i>	spaghetti in clam sauce
<i>minestrone</i>	vegetable soup
<i>orecchiette ai broccoli e aglio</i>	ear-shaped pasta with broccoli and garlic
<i>pasta e fagioli</i>	pasta with beans
<i>penne alla vodka</i>	tubes of pasta with tomato, vodka, cream, and hot peppers
<i>ravioli di zucca e ricotta</i>	pumpkin ravioli with ricotta cheese
<i>risotto di mare</i>	seafood risotto
<i>spaghetti alla bolognese</i>	spaghetti in meat sauce
<i>spaghetti alla carbonara</i>	spaghetti with bacon, egg, and Parmesan
<i>stracciatella</i>	eggdrop soup
<i>tortellini prosciutto e piselli</i>	tortellini with prosciutto and peas
<i>zuppa di verdura toscana</i>	Tuscan country soup

I Secondi Piatti

<i>Il Secondo Piatto</i>	What It Is
<i>pollo al limone</i>	lemon chicken
<i>pollo ai funghi</i>	chicken with mushrooms
<i>polpette al ragù</i>	meatballs in tomato sauce
<i>cotoletta alla milanese</i>	breaded cutlet
<i>pollo alla francese</i>	chicken cooked in wine and lemon sauce
<i>involtini di vitello</i>	veal rolls cooked in wine with mushrooms
<i>calamari alla marinara</i>	squid in tomato sauce
<i>salsiccia affumicata</i>	smoked sausage
<i>pollo alla griglia</i>	grilled chicken
<i>bistecca</i>	steak
<i>ossobuco alla milanese</i>	oxtail or veal shanks with lemon, garlic, and parsley
<i>agnello arrosto al rosmarino</i>	roast lamb spiced with rosemary
<i>anatra con vinsanto</i>	duck with holy wine (sherry)
<i>coda di rospo con carciofi</i>	monkfish with artichokes

I Contorni e Gli Antipasti

<i>Il Contorno e L'Antipasto</i>	What It Is
<i>la bruschetta lucchese</i>	bruschetta with tomatoes, beans, and herbs
<i>calamari fritti</i>	fried calamari
<i>cuori di carciofo marinati</i>	marinated artichoke hearts
<i>fagioli alla veneziana</i>	beans, anchovies, and garlic
<i>finocchi al cartoccio</i>	baked fennel (literally “in a bag”)
<i>formaggi vari</i>	various cheeses
<i>funghi trifolati</i>	sautéed mushrooms, garlic, onion, and parsley
<i>prosciutto con melone</i>	prosciutto with melon
<i>insalata alla cesare</i>	Caesar salad
<i>insalata di pomodoro e cipolla</i>	tomato and onion salad
<i>insalata verde</i>	green salad
<i>melanzana alla griglia</i>	grilled eggplant
<i>patate bollite</i>	boiled potatoes
<i>spiedini di gamberi alla griglia</i>	skewered, grilled shrimp
<i>spinaci saltati</i>	spinach tossed with garlic
<i>zucchini fritti</i>	fried zucchini

Ho Una Fame Da Lupo (*I'm as Hungry as a Wolf*)

There's no better way to understand what's on a menu than to look at one. Take a look and see how much you can understand.

La Pizza e Il Formaggio

Italians like to have their own pizza, which are about as big as a plate and ordered individually. The crust is crunchy, and the pizza is lightly covered with melted cheeses ranging from *gorgonzola*, a sharp cheese; *mozzarella*, a soft delicate cheese made from the milk of water buffalo; *Parmigiano-Reggiano*, a sharp cheese and one of Italy's finest; *pecorino*, a sharp cheese made from sheep milk; *provolone*, a sharp cheese often grated; and *ricotta* (literally meaning “recooked”), which is made from the whey produced in the cheese-making process, resulting in a soft, almost sweet cheese. The following tables describes some of the pizza you can order.



Did You Know?

In Italy, each region has its own bread. For example, *il pane toscano* is found throughout Tuscany and Umbria; here the bread has no salt, stemming back to the thirteenth century when a salt tax was imposed on the people.

Ristorante Gabriella	
La Lista	
Antipasti: <i>Insalata di Sedano, Funghi e Formaggio</i> 8.000	
<i>Frutti di Mare</i> 10.500	
<i>Bruschetta al Pomodoro</i> 4.000	
<i>Carpaccio con Rucola e Parmigiano</i> 11.000	
Primi Piatti: <i>Vermicelli alle Vongole</i> 12.000	
<i>Polenta con Porcini</i> 10.000	
<i>Spaghetti alla Bolognese</i> 10.000	
<i>Minestrone</i> 8.000	
Secondi Piatti: <i>Spiedino Misto</i> 15.000	
<i>Bistecca Marinata alla Griglia</i> 20.000	
<i>Coniglio alla Contadina</i> 18.000	
<i>Frutti di Mare</i> 17.000	
I Contorni: <i>Insalata Mista</i> 6.000	
<i>Melanzana alla Griglia</i> 8.000	
<i>Fiori di Zucca Ripieni</i> 6.000	
 <i>Pane e Coperto</i> 3.000	
<i>Per gruppi di oltre sei persone sarà aggiunto 8% di servizio.</i>	

Le Pizze

La Pizza	English
<i>bianca</i>	“white” pizza; plain (no tomato, no cheese; just crust)
<i>ai funghi</i>	tomato, mozzarella, and mushrooms
<i>margherita</i>	tomato, mozzarella, basil, and olives
<i>napoletana</i>	tomato, mozzarella, anchovies, capers, and olives
<i>quattro formaggi</i>	four cheeses: mozzarella, fontina, swiss, and gorgonzola
<i>quattro stagioni</i>	represents the four seasons: artichokes (spring), olives (summer), mushrooms (autumn), prosciutto (winter)
<i>alle verdure</i>	vegetables: tomato, mozzarella, zucchini, spinach, eggplant, and mushrooms

That's the Way I Like It

Do you want your eggs scrambled or poached? Your meat cooked rare, or well-done? A poached egg is called *le uova in camicia* because the white of the egg surrounds the yolk, like a shirt. Italians generally eat eggs for lunch or dinner as a *secondo piatto*. The terms in the following table will allow you to express exactly how you like it.

Proper Preparation of Meats and Vegetables (*La Carne e La Verdure*)

Preparation	<i>La Preparazione</i>	Pronunciation
baked	<i>al forno</i>	<i>ahl for-noh</i>
boiled	<i>bollito</i>	<i>boh-lee-toh</i>
breaded	<i>impanato</i>	<i>eem-pah-nah-toh</i>
fried	<i>fritto</i>	<i>free-toh</i>
grilled	<i>alla griglia</i>	<i>ah-lah gree-lyah</i>
marinated	<i>marinato</i>	<i>mah-ree-nah-toh</i>
medium	<i>normale</i>	<i>nor-mah-leh</i>
poached	<i>in camicia</i>	<i>een kah-mee-chah</i>
rare	<i>al sangue</i>	<i>ahl sahn-gweh</i>
steamed	<i>al vapore</i>	<i>ahl vah-poh-reh</i>
well-done	<i>ben cotto</i>	<i>ben koh-toh</i>
fried (eggs)	<i>le uova fritte</i>	<i>leh woh-vah free-teh</i>
hard-boiled (eggs)	<i>le uova bollite</i>	<i>leh woh-vah boh-lee-teh</i>
poached (eggs)	<i>le uova in camicia</i>	<i>leh woh-vah een kah-mee-chah</i>
scrambled (eggs)	<i>le uova strapazzate</i>	<i>leh woh-vah strah-pah-tsah-the</i>
soft-boiled (eggs)	<i>le uova alla coque</i>	<i>leh woh-vah ah-lah koh-kay</i>
omelette	<i>la frittata</i>	<i>lah free-tah-tah</i>

Spice Up Your Life

Italian food is generally flavored with a variety of spices that are subtly blended to create the dishes you love. If you want it hot, ask for *piccante*. Need a little salt? Tell your dining companion to pass *il sale*. The following table describes some of the spices you'll encounter while eating Italian cuisine.

Spices and Seasonings

Spices	<i>Le Spezie</i>	Spices	<i>Le Spezie</i>
basil	<i>il basilico</i>	caper	<i>il cappero</i>
bay leaf	<i>la foglia di alloro</i>	chive	<i>il cipollino, la cipollina</i>

continues

Spices and Seasonings (continued)

Spices	<i>Le Spezie</i>	Spices	<i>Le Spezie</i>
dill	<i>l'aneto</i>	oregano	<i>l'origano</i>
garlic	<i>l'aglio</i>	paprika	<i>la paprika</i>
ginger	<i>lo zenzero</i>	parsley	<i>il prezzemolo</i>
honey	<i>il miele</i>	pepper	<i>il pepe</i>
ketchup	<i>il ketchup</i>	rosemary	<i>il rosmarino</i>
mint	<i>la menta</i>	saffron	<i>lo zafferano</i>
mustard	<i>la senape</i>	salt	<i>il sale</i>
nutmeg	<i>la noce moscata</i>	sugar	<i>lo zucchero</i>



La Bella Lingua

After you order your food, your *cameriere* may acknowledge your request with the simple word *prego*. In addition to meaning “you’re welcome,” *prego* is also used to mean “Please,” “Pardon,” “After you,” “I’m all yours,” and “Don’t mention it!”

Special People Have Special Needs

You’re in great shape and have eliminated certain things from your diet. There’s no reason to destroy all your hard work with one visit to Italy. The phrases in the following table will help you stick to your diet.

Special Needs

Phrase	<i>La Frase</i>
I am on a diet.	<i>Faccio la dieta/Sto in dieta.</i>
I’m a vegetarian.	<i>Sono vegetariano(a).</i>
Do you serve Kosher food?	<i>Servite del cibo Kosher?</i>
I can’t have any ...	<i>Non posso prendere ...</i>
... dairy products.	<i>... i latticini.</i>
... alcohol.	<i>... l'alcol.</i>

Phrase	La Frase
... saturated fat.	... <i>i grassi saturi.</i>
... shellfish.	... <i>i frutti di mare.</i>
I'm looking for a dish ...	<i>Cerco un piatto ...</i>
... high in fiber.	... <i>con molta fibra.</i>
... low in cholesterol.	... <i>con poco colesterolo.</i>
... low in fat.	... <i>con pochi grassi.</i>
... low in sodium.	... <i>poco salato.</i>
... without preservatives.*	... <i>senza conservanti.</i>

*Be sure to use the Italian word *conservanti* and not the false cognate *preservativi*, which means "prophylactics"!



La Bella Lingua

Whenever you go into *un ristorante italiano*, ask if they have a menu you can take home to begin a collection. There's no better way to learn Italian than by starting with the thing you love most: food!

You Call This Food?

You asked for a rare steak, but you received what looks like a shoe. There's a small nail in your pizza (don't worry, you won't be charged extra), a hair in your spaghetti, or cheese in the pasta (when you specifically asked for none). Keep your calm and tell the waiter. The following table gives you the terms.

Take It Away!

English	L'Italiano
This is ...	<i>Questo è ...</i>
... burned.	... <i>bruciato.</i>
... dirty.	... <i>sporco.</i>
... overcooked.	... <i>troppo cotto.</i>
... spoiled.	... <i>andato a male.</i>

continues

Take It Away! (continued)

English	L'Italiano
... too cold.	... <i>troppo freddo</i> .
... too rare.	... <i>troppo crudo</i> .
... too salty.	... <i>troppo salato</i> .
... too spicy.	... <i>troppo piccante</i> .
... too sweet.	... <i>troppo dolce</i> .
... unacceptable.	... <i>inaccettabile</i> .



La Bella Lingua

Italian standards for wine are very high. The next time you go for a *degustazione vini* (wine tasting), it might help you to know a little about how Italian wines are classified.

Finer wines are classified as *denominazione di origine controllata* (DOC) or *denominazione di origine controllata e garantita* (DOCG), which you'll see on the wine label.

Other wines are simply classified as *vino da tavola* (table wine), which range in quality and are served by many restaurants as *il vino della casa* (the house wine).

Fine Wine

Italian wines are among the best in the world, fulfilling one fifth of the total production. Wine talk is presented in the following table.

Bottle o' Wine, Fruit of the Vine

Wine	Il Vino
red wine	<i>il vino rosso</i>
rosé wine	<i>il rosé</i>
white wine	<i>il vino bianco</i>
dry wine	<i>il vino secco</i>
sweet wine	<i>il vino dolce</i>
sparkling wine	<i>lo spumante</i>

A Bellini Please

One of Italy's most popular cocktails is the *Bellini*, created by Giuseppe Cipriani of Harry's Bar in Venice. This light, refreshing drink is perfect before a meal:

Bellini

2/3 tazza (160 ml.) di purè di pesca
1 cucchiaino di purè di lampone
1 bottiglia di Prosecco (o Asti Spumante o champagne)

In ogni bicchiere di vino o spumante, versate 1 cucchiaino di purè di pesca. Aggiungete 2-3 gocce di pur di lampone. Aggiungete il vino e servite subito.

What's Your Fancy?

Gli aperitivi (aperitifs) and *gli amari* (digestives) are a lovely part of a meal. Try something new, and bring back a bottle of Cynar (made from artichokes) to share with your friends. A common practice is to drink Sambuca with a couple of coffee beans (*grani di caffè*). In some parts, they are called *le mosche* (flies) because of their resemblance to the little pests. Word has it that this controls garlic breath (and you're going to be eating a lot of garlic). You'll find many drinks to try in the following table.

Gli Alcolici

<i>Gli Aperitivi</i>	<i>Gli Amari</i>
<i>Aperol</i>	<i>Fernet</i>
<i>Campari (bevuto con/senza acqua)</i>	<i>Jeigermeister (Germania minerale frizzante)</i>
<i>Cynar (di carciofo)</i>	<i>Lucano</i>
<i>Martini (bianco o rosso)</i>	<i>Petrus (Olanda)</i>
<i>Negroni</i>	<i>Averna</i>

La Dolce

Italians don't fool around when it comes to dessert. Many *dolci* are peculiar to a particular region and cannot be found elsewhere.

The following brief list mentions some of the sweets you can find in Italy. If baked goods, such as *biscotti* (cookies, literally meaning "twice-baked") and *torte* (cakes), don't trip your trigger, dip into *un gelato* (ice cream) at a *gelateria* where you are given up to three flavors in any *porzione* (portion). If you're not sure of a flavor, ask for *un assaggio* (a taste).

<i>Bavarese</i> (as in “Bavarian”)	<i>Panettone</i>
<i>Biscotti di mandorle</i> (almond cookies)	<i>Panforte</i> (Tuscan)
<i>Cannolo</i> (Sicilian)	<i>Profiterole</i>
<i>Colomba</i>	<i>Ricciarelli</i> (Tuscan)
<i>Cornetto</i>	<i>Sfogliatella della Nobilità</i> (noble’s pastry)
<i>Danese</i> (“Danish”)	<i>Torta di Frutta Fresca</i>
<i>Diplomatico</i> (literally, “diplomat”)	<i>Tiramisù</i> (literally, “pick me up”)
<i>Macedonia di frutta</i> (mixed fruit)	<i>Ventaglio</i>
<i>Maritozzo</i>	<i>Zuppa Inglese</i> (English trifle)
<i>Millefoglie</i> (literally, “1,000 sheets”)	

Double Object Pronouns

After your feast, it’s time to get back to business. You’ve learned your object pronouns and remember that they must reflect the gender and number of the objects they replace.

In Italian, unlike English, it is possible to join the object pronouns together to form one word. In the following table, notice how the indirect object pronouns *mi*, *ti*, *ci*, *vi* and *si* change to *me*, *te*, *ce*, *ve* and *se*. Also note that the indirect object pronouns *gli*, *le*, and *Le* change to *gli-* before direct object pronouns, creating one word.

Double Object Pronouns

Pronoun	Indirect Object		Direct Object		
	<i>lo</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>li</i>	<i>le</i>	<i>ne</i>
<i>mi</i>	<i>me lo</i>	<i>me la</i>	<i>me li</i>	<i>me le</i>	<i>me ne</i>
<i>ti</i>	<i>te lo</i>	<i>te la</i>	<i>te li</i>	<i>te le</i>	<i>te ne</i>
<i>gli, le, Le</i>	<i>glielo</i>	<i>gliela</i>	<i>glieli</i>	<i>gliele</i>	<i>gliene</i>
<i>ci</i>	<i>ce lo</i>	<i>ce la</i>	<i>ce li</i>	<i>ce le</i>	<i>ce ne</i>
<i>si</i>	<i>se lo</i>	<i>se la</i>	<i>se li</i>	<i>se le</i>	<i>se ne</i>
<i>vi</i>	<i>ve lo</i>	<i>ve la</i>	<i>ve li</i>	<i>ve le</i>	<i>ve ne</i>
<i>si</i>	<i>se lo</i>	<i>se la</i>	<i>se li</i>	<i>se le</i>	<i>se ne</i>

Keep in mind the following:

- When the same verb has two object pronouns, the indirect object always precedes the direct object.

Mandi la lettera al signor Rossi? Sì, gliela mando.

Are you sending the letter to Mr. Rossi? Yes, I’m sending it to him.

Restituiscono i soldi alla signora? Sì, glieli restituiscono.

Are they giving back the money to the woman? Yes, they are giving it back to her.

- After an infinitive, the final *-e* is dropped and the double object pronoun is attached to the end of the infinitive forming one word:

Posso spedirtela? Can I send it to you?

Vuole darcelo. He wants to give it to us.



La Bella Lingua

You can avoid double object pronouns altogether by replacing them with nouns.

Me lo dà. He gives it to me. (two object pronouns)

Mi dà il libro. He gives the book to me. (one object pronoun)

You've Got Good Reflexes

Whenever you tell someone *Mi chiamo* (I call myself), you are using a reflexive verb. In Italian, when you enjoy yourself, get dressed, or comb your hair, you are using a reflexive verb.

Reflexive verbs are easily identified by the *-si* attached at the end of the infinitive. Conjugation of the reflexive verbs follows the same rules as any other Italian verb, with one exception: Reflexive verbs require the use of reflexive pronouns. These pronouns show that the subject is performing (or reflecting back) an action upon itself. In other words, the subject and the reflexive pronoun both refer to the same persons or things, as in the phrases “We enjoyed ourselves” and “I hurt myself.”

The reflexive pronouns differ only from the direct object pronouns in the third-person singular and plural. Study the following reflexive pronouns.



Attenzione!

When dealing with double object pronouns, it is assumed that the speaker has already referred to the object of the sentence. In certain cases, the gender of the indirect object is not always obvious:

Presti la macchina a Silvia?

Sì, gliela do.

Are you lending the car to Silvia?

Yes, I'm lending it to her.

Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive Pronoun	English Equivalent
<i>mi</i>	myself
<i>ti</i>	yourself
<i>si</i>	himself/herself; Yourself
<i>ci</i>	ourselves
<i>vi</i>	yourselves
<i>si</i>	themselves

I Call Myself

Look at the reflexive verb *chiamarsi* in the following table to see how the reflexive pronouns work with the conjugated verb.

Chiamarsi (to Call Oneself)

Italian	English
<i>mi chiamo</i>	I call myself
<i>ti chiami</i>	you call yourself
<i>si chiama</i>	he/she calls him/herself; You call yourself
<i>ci chiamiamo</i>	we call ourselves
<i>vi chiamate</i>	you call yourselves
<i>si chiamano</i>	they call themselves

Come ti chiami?

How do you call yourself?

Mi chiamo Gabriella.

I call myself Gabriella.



Attenzione!

In Italian, you are responsible for your own boredom because the verb *annoiarsi* (to be bored) is reflexive, literally translating to "I bore myself."

The verb *truccarsi* is the verb used "to put on makeup." It's interesting to note that the noun *trucco* means "trick" in Italian.

Flexing Those Muscles

Look at some common reflexive verbs in the following table.

Reflexive Verbs

<i>Il Verb Riflessivo</i>	Meaning	<i>Il Verb Riflessivo</i>	Meaning
<i>accorgersi</i>	to notice	<i>lavarsi</i>	to wash
<i>addormentarsi</i>	to fall asleep	<i>mettersi</i>	to put on
<i>alzarsi</i>	to get up	<i>pettinarsi</i>	to comb one's hair
<i>annoiarsi</i>	to be bored	<i>rendersi</i>	to realize
<i>arrabbiarsi</i>	to get angry	<i>ricordarsi</i>	to remember/to remind
<i>conoscersi</i>	to know each other	<i>sentirsi</i>	to feel
<i>chiamarsi</i>	to call	<i>sposarsi</i>	to get married
<i>diplomarsi</i>	to obtain a diploma	<i>svegliarsi</i>	to get up
<i>divertirsi</i>	to enjoy	<i>truccarsi</i>	to make up
<i>fermarsi</i>	to stop	<i>vestirsi</i>	to dress oneself
<i>laurearsi</i>	to graduate		

Vi conoscete da molto tempo?

Federico si laurea a giugno.

Ricorda di lavarti la faccia!

I bambini si divertono al parco.

Come ti chiami?

Do you know each other for a long time?

Federico is graduating in June.

Remember to wash your face!

The children enjoy themselves in the park.

What do you call yourself?



La Bella Lingua

What's in a name? If you're one of the many to possess a little Italian *sangue* in your veins, why not do some research and learn more about your family name? The study of genealogy has come a long way with the help of the Internet. A number of Web sites are devoted to helping people learn more about their family tree while helping them find long-lost relatives. Try doing a search and see what interesting tidbits come up. Many Italian names describe vocations (such as the English name Smith) or were taken from the names of the towns where people lived. For example, my last name, Euvino, originally meant "fine wine." Leonardo Da Vinci's name implies he came from the town of Vinci. You can probably guess *di dove* came San Francesco d'Assisi!

A Little Reflection

Some rules applying to reflexive verbs might make them easier to master:

1. When talking about parts of the body or clothing, a possessive adjective is not required when using a reflexive verb:

Mi lavo il viso.

I wash my face.

Si toglie la giacca.

He/she takes off the jacket.

2. The reflexive pronoun can be placed before the verb or after the infinitive when preceded by a form of the verb *potere*, *dovere*, or *volere*:

Non voglio alzarmi troppo presto. I don't want to wake up too early.

Devo lavarmi i capelli. I must wash my hair.



Attenzione!

Because reflexive pronouns are not gender-specific, if you want to specify who is doing what, you'll have to use a proper name or noun:

Si lava il viso. → **Isabella** *si lava il viso.*

Si alzano alle otto. → **I ragazzi** *si alzano alle otto.*

Mirror, Mirror

Some verbs greatly change their meaning when made reflexive. The regular verb *sentire* can mean "to hear" or "to smell."

Sento la musica.

I hear the music.

Sento il profumo.

I smell the perfume.

As a reflexive verb, *sentirsi* means "to feel."

Mi sento bene.

I feel well.

Come si sente?

How do you feel?

The verbs in the following table exemplify the pliable nature of these flexible reflexives.

What's in a Name

Verb	English	Reflexive Verb	English
<i>annoiare</i>	to annoy	<i>annoiarsi</i>	to get bored
<i>arrestare</i>	to arrest	<i>arrestarsi</i>	to pause, to stop
<i>battere</i>	to beat	<i>battersi</i>	to fight
<i>chiedere</i>	to ask	<i>chiedersi</i>	to wonder
<i>comportare</i>	to entail	<i>comportarsi</i>	to behave
<i>giocare</i>	to play	<i>giocarsi</i>	to risk
<i>infuriare</i>	to infuriate	<i>infuriarsi</i>	to get angry
<i>lamentare</i>	to mourn	<i>lamentarsi</i>	to complain
<i>licenziare</i>	to dismiss/to fire	<i>licenziarsi</i>	to resign/to quit
<i>offendere</i>	to offend	<i>offendersi</i>	to take offense (at)
<i>onorare</i>	to honor	<i>onorarsi</i>	to take pride (in)
<i>perdere</i>	to lose	<i>perdersi</i>	to get lost
<i>scusare</i>	to excuse	<i>scusarsi</i>	to apologize
<i>sentire</i>	to hear/to smell	<i>sentirsi</i>	to feel

Mi perdo nelle città nuove.

I get lost (I lose myself) in new cities.

Giovanni si annoia quando va all'opera.

Giovanni is bored when he goes to the opera.

Test Your Reflexes

Use the reflexive verbs in parentheses in the following sentences with the appropriate reflexive pronoun:

Example: Noi _____ spesso. (*vedersi*)

Answer: Noi ci vediamo spesso.

1. Io _____ alle nove. (*alzarsi*)
2. Luciano e Marcello _____ da nove anni. (*conoscersi*)
3. Tu _____ in palestra? (*divertirsi*)
4. Giulia deve _____ i capelli ogni giorno. (*lavarsi*)
5. Tu, come _____ ? (*chiamarsi*)
6. Noi _____ una volta la settimana. (*telefonarsi*)
7. Come _____ la nonna di Sandra? (*sentirsi*)
8. Antonella e Marco _____ lunedì prossimo. (*sposarsi*)

Reciprocity

Every time you say to someone *Arrivederci!* you are using a reflexive. The expression literally translates as “to re-see each other.” The same goes for the expression *Ci vediamo!* (We’ll see one another), which comes from the infinitive *vedersi*.

You have seen all of the verbs in the following table as nonreflexive verbs. By simply being made reflexive, these verbs can all express reciprocity.

Do Unto Others

Reflexive Verb	English
<i>abbracciarsi</i>	to hug one another
<i>baciarsi</i>	to kiss one another
<i>capirsi</i>	to understand one another
<i>conoscersi</i>	to know one another
<i>guardarsi</i>	to look at one another
<i>incontrarsi</i>	to meet one another/to run into
<i>salutarsi</i>	to greet each other
<i>vedersi</i>	to see one another

Ci abbracciamo ogni volta che ci vediamo.

We hug one another every time we see each other.

Madre e figlia si capiscono senza parole.

Mother and daughter understand one another without words.

The Least You Need to Know

- You can read an Italian menu if you know the right terms for the food you love (and hate).
- Ask to make a reservation using the expression *Vorrei fare una prenotazione* or *Vorrei prenotare un tavolo*. Do not use the cognate *riservare*, which means “to keep” or “to put aside.”
- There are several parts to an Italian meal: *gli antipasti*, *i contorni*, *i primi piatti*, *i secondi piatti*, and *i dolci*.
- When dealing with double object pronouns, the indirect object pronoun always precedes the direct object pronoun.
- Reflexive verbs, identified by the pronoun *-si* attached to the end of the infinitive, require the use of one of the reflexive pronouns: *mi*, *ti*, *si* (singular), *ci*, *vi*, and *si* (plural).
- Many regular verbs can become reflexive. In some cases, the meaning changes dramatically.



Having Fun Italian Style

In This Chapter

- ▶ Sports and games
- ▶ Cinema, music, and art
- ▶ The present perfect tense
- ▶ Using double object pronouns in the past

This chapter covers many of the pastimes that make up the Italian lifestyle. Whether you are a sport's buff, a film fanatic, an opera lover, or an art appreciator, there's a little bit of everything and something for everyone.

In addition, you'll learn a very important new verb tense: *il passato prossimo*. Use of this tense allows you to talk about your sordid past. Let the fun begin!

Name Your Game

In Italian, *il football*—also known as *il calcio*—refers to soccer. The touchy-feely version played in the Super Bowl is aptly called *football americano*. Italians refer to baseball, golf, hockey, tennis, and windsurfing, however, in English.

There are three things you should never dare take away from an Italian: *la mamma*, *la pasta*, and *il calcio*. Expect anarchy if you dare.



La Bella Lingua

If you like to play *scacchi* (chess), you may get a rise out of playing one of the many accomplished players you'll find in some local establishments. You'll need a little chess terminology to get you started understanding *i pezzi* (the pieces) on your *scacchiera* (chess board):

Check!	<i>Scacco!</i>
Checkmate!	<i>Scacco Matto!</i>
the king	<i>il re</i>
the queen	<i>la regina</i>
the rook	<i>la torre</i> (the tower)
the bishop	<i>l'alfiere</i>
the knight	<i>il cavallo</i> (the horse)
the pawn	<i>il pedone</i>

Game Time

Sport	<i>Lo Sport</i>	Pronunciation
aerobics	<i>aerobica</i>	<i>lay-eh-roh-bee-kah</i>
basketball	<i>pallacanestro</i>	<i>pah-lah-kah-neh-stroh</i>
bicycling	<i>il ciclismo</i>	<i>eel chee-kleez-moh</i>
boating	<i>il canottaggio</i>	<i>eel kah-noh-tah-joh</i>
boxing	<i>il pugilato</i>	<i>eel poo-jee-lah-toh</i>
fencing	<i>la scherma</i>	<i>lah sker-mah</i>
fishing	<i>pescare</i>	<i>peh-skah-reh</i>
game	<i>la partita</i>	<i>lah par-tee-tah</i>
horseback riding	<i>l'equitazione</i>	<i>leh-kwee-tah-zee-oh-neh</i>
jogging	<i>il footing</i>	<i>fah-reh footing</i>
karate	<i>il karatè</i>	<i>fah-reh kah-rah-teh</i>
rock climbing	<i>l'alpinismo</i>	<i>lahl-pee-nee-zmoh</i>
sailing	<i>la vela</i>	<i>lah veh-lah</i>
score	<i>il punteggio</i>	<i>eel poon-teh-joh</i>
skating	<i>il pattinaggio</i>	<i>eel pah-tee-nah-joh</i>

Sport	Lo Sport	Pronunciation
skiing	<i>lo sci</i>	<i>loh shee-ah-reh</i>
... cross-country skiing	<i>... lo sci di fondo</i>	<i>loh shee dee fon-doh</i>
... water skiing	<i>... lo sci acquatico</i>	<i>loh shee ak-wah-tee-koh</i>
soccer	<i>il calcio, il football</i>	<i>eel kahl-choh</i>
swimming	<i>il nuoto</i>	<i>eel nwoh-toh</i>
team	<i>la squadra</i>	<i>lah skwah-drah</i>
volleyball	<i>il pallavolo</i>	<i>lah pah-lah-voh-loh</i>
wrestling	<i>la lotta libera</i>	<i>lah loh-tah lee-beh-rah</i>

You're Playing with My Head

If you're looking for less exertion, a few games allow you to use more brain power than brawn. *Briscola* and *Scopa* are two popular card games. *Giochiamo!*

Games for the Brain

backgammon	<i>backgammon</i>
Briscola	<i>Briscola</i>
cards	<i>carte</i>
checkers	<i>dama</i>
chess	<i>scacchi</i>
dice	<i>dadi</i>
dominoes	<i>domino</i>
hide-and-peek	<i>cu-cù</i>
poker	<i>poker</i>
Scopa (a popular card game)	<i>Scopa</i>
tarot	<i>tarocchi</i>

Out in Left Field

Each sport or activity has its own particular playing field, as shown in the following table.

Beach Blanket Bingo

The Place	Il Posto	Pronunciation
beach	<i>la spiaggia</i>	<i>lah spee-ah-jah</i>
casino	<i>il casinò</i>	<i>eel kah-see-noh</i>
court/field	<i>il campo</i>	<i>eel kam-poh</i>

continues

Beach Blanket Bingo (continued)

The Place	<i>Il Posto</i>	Pronunciation
golf course	<i>il campo da golf</i>	eel kam-poh dah golf
gym	<i>la palestra</i>	lah pah-leh-strah
mountain	<i>la montagna</i>	lah mohn-tan-yah
ocean	<i>l'oceano</i>	loh-sheh-ah-noh
park	<i>il parco</i>	eel par-koh
path	<i>il sentiero</i>	eel sen-tee-eh-roh
pool	<i>la piscina</i>	lah pee-shee-nah
rink	<i>la pista da pattinaggio</i>	lah pees-tah dah pah-tee-nah-joh
sea	<i>il mare</i>	eel mah-reh
ski slope	<i>la pista da sci</i>	lah pees-tah dah shee
stadium	<i>lo stadio</i>	loh stah-dee-yoh
track	<i>la corsa</i>	lah kor-sah



La Bella Lingua

In Italian, there are many ways of expressing “to play.” The verb *giocare* (to play) is used when playing sports or games. (Think of the English word “joker.”)

The verb *suonare* (to play) is used when playing an instrument. (Think of the English word “sound.”)

The verbs *andare* (to go) and *fare* (to do/to make) are often used when participating in a sport or activity.

Make a Date

This exercise will help you remember how to *fissare un'appuntamento* (make an appointment). See how well you are able to translate the following sentences into Italian:

1. Why don't we meet at 3:00 tomorrow?
2. Are you in the mood to go swimming? (idiomatic—a hint: *Ti va di ...*)
3. Let's go to the mountains next week.

4. Why not visit the museum?
5. Do you want to play tennis with me?



Did You Know?

The infamous *Palio* is a horse race that has been taking place in Siena since medieval times. The entire city closes down to watch the various *contrade* (districts)—each represented by a flag and often an animal such as *il porcospino* (porcupine) or *la giraffa* (giraffe)—vie for their own jockeys as the horses race around the town square. Afterward, long tables are set in the streets and miles of spaghetti are cooked to feed the excited masses.

The Arts

Ah, *la Madre Patria!* The Italians have an emotional relationship to *la politica*, *la famiglia*, and *l'amore*. It is no surprise that their art reflects these powerful forces. The following sections are meant as a taster, or *antipasto*, to whet your appetite.

Il Cinema

There's no better way to practice your Italian than by watching films (next to visiting Italy, that is). Italy started as one of the world's major film producers. *Cinecittà* (the Hollywood of Italy), in *Roma*, has spawned some of the best filmmakers in the world, including Bernardo Bertolucci, Vittorio De Sica, Federico Fellini, Pier Paolo Pasolini, and Luchino Visconti, to name a few. And who hasn't heard of the noted Italian actors Sofia Loren, Marcello Mastroianni, Giancarlo Giannini, Gina Lollobrigida, Alberto Sordi, and Roberto Benigni?

The word *il cinema* is an abbreviated version of *cinematografo*. The terms in the following table can help you discuss whether a film deserves the thumbs up or thumbs down.



La Bella Lingua

The narrative plays of Venetian **Carlo Goldoni** (1707–1793) dealt with many of the same issues portrayed in modern stories: love, sex, and money. His play *La Locandiera* inspired an opera by **Antonio Salieri** (1750–1825) and reflected the social mores of his time.



Did You Know?

La carrellata (tracking shot) was pioneered on the set of Giovanni Pastrone's film *Cabiria* in 1914. The intertitles (they didn't have talkies yet) were written by the popular soldier-poet Gabriele D'Annunzio.

Movie Talk

The Cinema	<i>Il Cinema</i>
actor	<i>l'attore</i>
actress	<i>l'attrice</i>
camera	<i>la cinepresa, la macchina fotografica</i>
cinema	<i>il cinema</i>
close-up	<i>primo piano</i>
director	<i>il/la regista</i>
dissolve	<i>dissolvenza</i>
film	<i>il film, la pellicola</i>
long-shot	<i>campo lungo</i>
panning	<i>panoramica</i>
plot	<i>la trama</i>
producer	<i>il produttore</i>
scene	<i>la scena</i>
screen	<i>lo schermo</i>
theater	<i>la sala cinematografica</i>
video camera	<i>la telecamera</i>
to hear	<i>sentire, udire</i>
to listen	<i>ascoltare</i>
to see	<i>vedere</i>
to watch/look	<i>guardare</i>



Did You Know?

Check out the following “must sees” of Italian cinema. The director’s last name is in parentheses next to the movie title.

The White Sheik (Fellini)

Bicycle Thief (De Sica)

Roma: Open City (Rossellini)

Kaos (Taviani Brothers)

Caro Diario (Moretti)

The Human Voice (Rossellini)

L’Amerika (Amelio)

Big Deal on Madonna Street (Monicelli)

The Conformist (Bertolucci)

Ossessione (Visconti)

La Dolce Vita (Fellini)

Seven Beauties (Wertmuller)

Hands Over the City (Rosi)

L’Avventura (Antonioni)

Before the Revolution (Bertolucci)

La Musica

Nothing soothes the savage breast like music. The great violin maker Antonio Stradivari (1644–1747) came from Cremona. Is there a musical instrument that makes you swoon every time you hear it? Find it in the following table, or find your favorite Italian composer in the timeline.

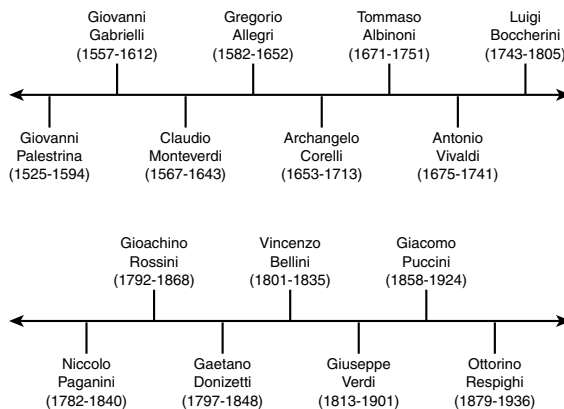
The Sound of Music

Instrument	<i>Lo Strumento</i>
accordion	<i>la fisarmonica</i>
cello	<i>il violoncello</i>
clarinet	<i>il clarinetto</i>
drum	<i>il tamburo, la batteria</i>
flute	<i>il flauto</i>
guitar	<i>la chitarra</i>
harp	<i>l’arpa</i>
horn	<i>il corno</i>
oboe	<i>l’oboe</i>

continues

The Sound of Music (continued)

Instrument	<i>Lo Strumento</i>
piano	<i>il pianoforte</i>
piccolo	<i>il piccolo</i>
saxophone	<i>il sassofono</i>
trombone	<i>il trombone</i>
trumpet	<i>la tromba</i>
viola	<i>la viola</i>
violin	<i>il violino</i>



Did You Know?

Until the late eighteenth century, female lead parts were sung by men, often by *castrati* (eunuchs). Not unlike some of today's pop stars, many *castrati* used a single name for the stage. Farinelli (born Carlo Broschi) is by far the most famous of the eighteenth-century eunuchs.

A Note on Opera

Opera. It's an Italian word—some would say the most beautiful Italian word. By the time Giuseppe Verdi (1813–1901)—who at the age of 20 was already performing at Milano's famous opera house *La Scala*—came onto the scene, opera had spread across Europe. During the course of his long career, the patriotic composer wrote 26 operas, including *Otello*, *Rigoletto*, and *La Traviata* (meaning “the corrupted”).

It's All About the Story

Opera has as much drama as any Spielberg film, and the stories told are filled with unrequited love, betrayal, and revenge. To fully appreciate any opera, you need to understand the plot behind the rolled R's and high C's.

That's where *il libretto* comes in. Literally meaning “little book” in Italian, *il libretto* tells the story, outlines the plot, and paints the picture that will be so passionately expressed by the singers. Without *il libretto*, opera loses half its meaning.

Sing It to Me!

You don't need to speak Italian to appreciate opera, but a quick glossary of terms might help:

a cappella: voices without music; no instruments

aria: a song or melody sung by a single voice

belcanto: “beautiful song” in Italian

cadenza: a passage toward the end of a song designed for the singer alone to strut his or her stuff

canzone: literally “song” in Italian

coloratura: describes the “color” in a passage, including those difficult trills and sparkling arpeggios that singers train all their lives to sing

duet: two people singing simultaneously, often with different words and melodies

forte/mezzo forte: loud/not so loud

piano/mezzo piano: soft/not so soft

falsetto: the high part for a man's voice

fuga: a baroque style passage in which three or more distinct musical lines are tossed from voice to voice

libretto: literally “little book” in Italian, the script for the piece

opera buffa: comic, “buffoon” opera

opera seria: serious, more formal opera

operetta: a cross between *opera buffa* and *opera seria*; usually very light

overture: an instrumental composition introducing the entire opera

prelude: a shorter overture

prima donna: a female opera star

recitative: sung dialogue between arias, to help advance the story

vibrato: a slight wavering in pitch used to enhance notes



La Bella Lingua

The Venetian composer **Giovanni Gabrielli** (1557–1612) was one of the first to use the term *concerto* (bringing into agreement), a classical term describing music that uses many different voices to form one.



Did You Know?

The old ebony and ivory derives from the Italian *piano-forte*, meaning “soft-strong,” named because the piano, unlike its predecessor the harpsichord, allows the player to sustain the sounds she makes.

Life Imitates Art

Le belle arti attempt to interpret the real world, glorify God (or gods), or express something without words. As ideas about the world have changed, so has the *arte* that depicts these notions. Ultimately, you know what you like and what you don't, and that is often the only criterion necessary to appreciate a piece.

You may have seen countless reproductions of Botticelli's *Birth of Venus* on everything from greeting cards to coffee mugs, but there's still nothing like seeing her up close. If you want to be an artist, these verbs can help: *disegnare* (to draw/to design), *dipingere* (to paint), and *sculpire* (to sculpt).

Adding to Your Palette

English	Italian	English	Italian
abstract	<i>astratto</i>	masterpiece	<i>il capolavoro</i>
acrylic	<i>acrilico</i>	the Middle Ages	<i>il Medioevo</i>
architecture	<i>l'architettura</i>	mosaic	<i>il mosaico</i>
background	<i>lo sfondo</i>	oil	<i>olio</i>
Baroque	<i>Barocco</i>	painter	<i>il pittore</i>
bronze	<i>il bronzo</i>	painting	<i>il quadro</i>
ceramic	<i>la ceramica</i>	pencil	<i>la matita</i>
classical	<i>classico</i>	pen	<i>la penna</i>
cubism	<i>il cubismo</i>	perspective	<i>la prospettiva</i>
depth	<i>la profondità</i>	picture	<i>la pittura, il quadro</i>
drawing	<i>il disegno</i>	pigments	<i>i colori</i>
Etruscan	<i>etrusco</i>	portrait	<i>il ritratto</i>
figure	<i>la figura</i>	realism	<i>realismo</i>
foreground	<i>il primo piano</i>	the Renaissance	<i>il Rinascimento</i>

English	Italian	English	Italian
fresco	<i>l'affresco</i>	restoration	<i>il restauro</i>
futurism	<i>il futurismo</i>	sculpture	<i>la scultura</i>
geometric	<i>geometrico</i>	shadow	<i>l'ombra</i>
granite	<i>il granito</i>	sketch	<i>lo schizzo</i>
human figure	<i>la figura umana</i>	statue	<i>la statua</i>
landscape	<i>il paesaggio</i>	still life painting	<i>una natura morta</i>
light	<i>la luce</i>	symbol	<i>il simbolo</i>
marble	<i>il marmo</i>	visual arts	<i>le belle arti</i>
master	<i>il maestro, la maestra</i>	work of art	<i>un'opera d'arte</i>



Did You Know?

A master should transcend a subject matter, expanding the viewer's concept of art. There's no better example of this than **Giotto Di Bondone** (1267–1337), who departed from stylized Byzantine conservatism and revolutionized the art world of his time by using foreshortening to create the illusion of depth. His use of perspective paved the way for all masters that followed, making him one of the founders of Western painting as we know it today.

Il Passato Prossimo (the Present Perfect)

There are several ways of expressing the past in Italian. For now, you're going to learn about the *passato prossimo*. Equivalent in usage to the simple past tense in English, the *passato prossimo* is used to say "I forgot," "I ate," and "I was." In addition, the *passato prossimo* expresses "I have forgotten," "I have eaten," and "I had been."

A compound tense, the *passato prossimo* requires the use of the helping verbs *avere* and *essere* (see Chapter 9, "Being There"). You already saw how the verb *stare* is used in the present progressive tense (see Chapter 15, "I Can't Believe My Eyes"). In Italian, all *transitive verbs* (verbs that take a direct object) require the use of the auxiliary verb *avere*. All *intransitive verbs* (verbs taking an indirect object) require the use of *essere*.



As a Rule

When to use *avere*:

When forming compound tenses, most **transitive verbs** (verbs that take a direct object) use *avere* as an auxiliary verb.

Transitive verbs answer the question “what?” and include verbs such as *lavare* (to wash), *mangiare* (to eat), and *studiare* (to study). Transitive verbs also answer the question of “whom?” and include the verbs *cercare* (to look for), *conoscere* (to be acquainted with), and *invitare* (to invite).

When to use *essere*:

Intransitive verbs use *essere* as an auxiliary verb and include verbs of locomotion such as *andare* (to go), *arrivare* (to arrive), *entrare* (to enter), *uscire* (to go out/exit), and *venire* (to come). Other intransitive verbs include *morire* (to die) and *nascere* (to be born).

Constructing the Past Participle

When you use the *passato prossimo*, you need a past participle. For example, in English you use the helping verb *have* plus the participle (wished/finished/studied). Most of the time, this is regular, but English also has several irregular past participles (had/been/sang). The same goes for Italian.

As you recall from Chapter 8, “An Action-Packed Adventure,” Italian has three principal verb families (*-are*, *-ere*, and *-ire*). To form the past participle from an infinitive, you hold on to the stem and add the appropriate ending, as shown in the following table.

Regular Endings for the Past Participle

Endings		Infinitive	Participle		
<i>-are</i>	→	<i>-ato</i>	<i>lavare</i>	→	<i>lavato</i>
<i>-ere</i>	→	<i>-uto</i>	<i>potere</i>	→	<i>potuto</i>
<i>-ire</i>	→	<i>-ito</i>	<i>capire</i>	→	<i>capito</i>

Forming the Past with Avere

It's easy to construct the *passato prossimo*. Once you understand how this works, you'll have no trouble learning all of the other compound tenses. It all starts with the helping verb *avere*. Once you've determined your subject, you only have to conjugate *avere* in the present tense. The past participle stays the same, regardless of the subject (unless accompanied by a direct object pronoun, which will be discussed in a bit). Study the verb *lavare* (to wash) to better understand how this works.

The Present Perfect of *Lavare*

Italian	English
<i>io ho lavato</i>	I have washed
<i>tu hai lavato</i>	you have washed
<i>lui/lei Lei ha lavato</i>	he/she has washed; You have washed
<i>noi abbiamo lavato</i>	we have washed
<i>voi avete lavato</i>	you have washed
<i>loro hanno lavato</i>	they have washed

Irregular Past Participles

Some commonly used irregular past participles with *avere* are shown in the following table.

Commonly Used Irregular Past Participles with *Avere*

Verb	Past Participle	Meaning
<i>accendere</i>	<i>acceso</i>	to turn on, to light
<i>aprire</i>	<i>aperto</i>	to open
<i>ardere</i>	<i>arso</i>	to burn
<i>bere</i>	<i>bevuto</i>	to drink
<i>chiedere</i>	<i>chiesto</i>	to ask
<i>chiudere</i>	<i>chiuso</i>	to close
<i>conoscere</i>	<i>conosciuto</i>	to know someone
<i>correre</i>	<i>corso</i>	to run
<i>decidere</i>	<i>deciso</i>	to decide
<i>dire</i>	<i>detto</i>	to say
<i>leggere</i>	<i>letto</i>	to read
<i>mettere</i>	<i>messo</i>	to put, to place, to wear
<i>offrire</i>	<i>offerto</i>	to offer
<i>perdere</i>	<i>perso</i>	to lose

continues

Commonly Used Irregular Past Participles with *Avere* (continued)

Verb	Past Participle	Meaning
<i>permettere</i>	<i>permesso</i>	to permit
<i>prendere</i>	<i>preso</i>	to take
<i>rispondere</i>	<i>risposto</i>	to respond
<i>rompere</i>	<i>rotto</i>	to break
<i>scrivere</i>	<i>scritto</i>	to write
<i>spegner</i>	<i>spento</i>	to turn off, to extinguish
<i>spendere</i>	<i>speso</i>	to spend
<i>togliere</i>	<i>tolto</i>	to take from
<i>vedere</i>	<i>visto</i>	to see
<i>vincere</i>	<i>vinto</i>	to win

Abbiamo vinto la partita.

We won the game.

Hai scritto alla mamma?

Did you write to Mom?

Il ristorante ha chiuso presto.

The restaurant closed early.

Ci hanno chiesto un favore.

They asked us for a favor.

Forming the Past with *Essere*

Intransitive verbs always require the use of *essere* as their auxiliary. How can you remember what those verbs are? Think of a squirrel living in a tree, and imagine all the motions he does in and around his home, high up in the branches of a great old oak tree: up, down, in, out, coming, going, staying, remaining, and leaving.

Whenever *essere* is used as the auxiliary verb, the participle is still formed by adding the appropriate ending to the stem of the verb. However, in addition to conjugating your helping verb *avere*, your past participle must reflect both gender and number of the subject.

Study the verb *andare* in the following table.

The Present Perfect Using *Essere*: *Andare*

<i>Lavare</i>	English
<i>io sono andato(a)</i>	I have gone
<i>tu sei andato(a)</i>	you have gone
<i>lui/lei Lei è andato(a)</i>	he/she has gone; You have gone
<i>noi siamo andati(e)</i>	we have gone
<i>voi siete andati(e)</i>	you have gone
<i>loro sono andati(e)</i>	they have gone

La ragazza è andata all'università di Bologna. The girl went to the university of Bologna.
Enrico V (quinto) è diventato matto. Henry V went crazy.



As a Rule

The verb *avere* takes itself as an auxiliary verb.

Ho avuto un'idea buonissima. I had a great idea.

The verb *essere* also takes itself as an auxiliary verb.

Sono stata in Italia in estate. I was in Italy for the summer.

Verbs Taking Essere

The following table contains a list of the most commonly used intransitive verbs conjugated with *essere*. The *(a)* is there to remind you that they must reflect the gender (and number) of the subject. Irregular participles are indicated. (Note that irregular participles are also offered in the glossary.)

Intransitive Verbs Commonly Used with *Essere*

Verb	Past Participle	Meaning
<i>andare</i>	<i>andato(a)</i>	to go
<i>apparire</i>	<i>apparso(a)*</i>	to appear
<i>arrivare</i>	<i>arrivato(a)</i>	to arrive
<i>bastare</i>	<i>bastato(a)</i>	to be enough
<i>cadere</i>	<i>caduto(a)</i>	to fall
<i>dimagrire</i>	<i>dimagrito(a)</i>	to lose weight
<i>dispiacere</i>	<i>dispiaciuto(a)*</i>	to be sorry
<i>diventare</i>	<i>diventato(a)</i>	to become
<i>entrare</i>	<i>entrato(a)</i>	to enter
<i>esistere</i>	<i>esistito(a)</i>	to exist
<i>essere</i>	<i>stato(a)*</i>	to be
<i>ingrassare</i>	<i>ingrassato(a)</i>	to gain weight
<i>morire</i>	<i>morto(a)*</i>	to die
<i>nascere</i>	<i>nato(a)*</i>	to be born

continues

Intransitive Verbs Commonly Used with *Essere* (continued)

Verb	Past Participle	Meaning
<i>partire</i>	<i>partito(a)</i>	to leave
<i>piacere</i>	<i>piaciuto(a)*</i>	to be pleasing
<i>restare</i>	<i>restato(a)</i>	to stay
<i>rimanere</i>	<i>rimasto(a)*</i>	to remain
<i>ritornare</i>	<i>ritornato(a)</i>	to return
<i>salire</i>	<i>salito(a)</i>	to go up/to get on
<i>scendere</i>	<i>sceso(a)*</i>	to get off
<i>sembrare</i>	<i>sembrato(a)</i>	to seem
<i>stare</i>	<i>stato(a)*</i>	to stay
<i>succedere</i>	<i>successo(a)*</i>	to happen
<i>tornare</i>	<i>tornato(a)</i>	to return
<i>uscire</i>	<i>uscito(a)</i>	to go out
<i>venire</i>	<i>venuto(a)</i>	to come
<i>vivere</i>	<i>vissuto(a)*</i>	to live

*Irregular participle.

Sono uscita alle otto.

I went out at 8:00.

Roberto è nato nel 1967.

Roberto was born in 1967.

Siamo andati al cinema.

We went to the movies.

Le studentesse sono partite.

The students have left.



Attenzione!

Although considered transitive, all **reflexive verbs** require *essere* as their auxiliary verb. Reflexives are most easily identified by their endings, and include the verbs *alzarsi* (to get up), *arrabbiarsi* (to get angry), and *chiamarsi* (to call oneself).

Reflexive verbs always take *essere* as their auxiliary verb:

Il bambino si è divertito.

The baby enjoyed himself.

Mi sono alzata prestissimo.

I woke up very early.

Ci siamo baciati.

We kissed each other.



As a Rule

When forming compound tenses, the verb *piacere* always takes the helping verb *essere*:

Ti piace lo spettacolo?

*Ti è **piaciuto** lo spettacolo?*

Mi piacciono gli animali.

*Mi **sono piaciuti** gli animali.*

Le piace l'Italia?

*Le è **piaciuta** l'Italia?*

Vi piacciono le macchine.

*Vi **sono piaciute** le macchine.*

Adverbs in Compound Tenses

In this beautiful *sinfonia* (symphony) of words, it's time to add a few more notes. Refer back to Chapter 10, "Tell Me About Your Childhood," for a review of your adverbs. For now, keep in mind the following:

- Most adverbs are placed after the past participle in compound sentences, such as in the *passato prossimo*.

*Abbiamo mangiato **bene**.*

We ate **well**.

*Isabella ha studiato **regolarmente**.*

Isabella studied **regularly**.

- Adverbs related to time, such as *ancora*, *già*, *mai*, and *sempre*, are placed between the auxiliary verb and the past participle:

*Hai **già** mangiato?*

Have you **already** eaten?

*Lei è **mai** stato in Italia?*

Have you **ever** been to Italy?

*Abbiamo **sempre** passato l'estate al mare.*

We **always** passed the summer by the sea.

- When negating something in the past, the word *non* comes before the helping verb:

***Non** ho mangiato molto.*

I did **not** eat much.

Direct Object Pronouns in Compound Tenses

Transitive verbs take a direct object and are conjugated with the verb *avere*. When using direct object pronouns in compound tenses, including the *passato prossimo*, the ending of the participle must reflect gender and plurality of the direct object. Note

that the singular direct object pronouns meaning “it” (*lo/la*) drop the final vowel and elide with the auxiliary verb *avere*. The plural object pronouns don’t change.

The following table illustrates this for you. The direct object and direct object pronouns (DOP) are in bold.

Passato Prossimo with Direct Object Pronouns

Question	DOP	Answer
<i>Hai spedito la lettera?</i>	la	<i>Sì, l’ho spedita.</i>
Did you send the letter?	it	Yes, I sent it.
<i>Hai mangiato il pane?</i>	lo	<i>Sì, l’ho mangiato.</i>
Did you eat the bread?	it	Yes, I ate it.
<i>Hai ricevuto le lettere?</i>	le	<i>No, non le ho ricevute.</i>
Did you receive the letters?	them	No, I didn’t receive them.
<i>Hai letto i libri?</i>	li	<i>Sì, li ho letti.</i>
Did you read the books?	them	Yes, I read them.

Indirect Object Pronouns and the Passato Prossimo

Both transitive and intransitive verbs can take an indirect object pronoun. In compound tenses, to distinguish the indirect and direct object pronouns from one another, the gender and number of indirect object pronouns—unlike the direct object pronouns—do not affect the participle. In the following table, the indirect object and indirect object pronouns (IOP) are in bold.



As a Rule

When using single object pronouns in a compound sentence, the past participle must reflect the gender and number of the direct object.

*Ci hanno dato **i libri**.*

Ce li hanno dati.

The object pronouns *lo* and *la* become *l’* before a vowel or with *h*:

*Ti ho detto **la verità**.*

Te l’ho detta.

Passato Prossimo with Indirect Object Pronouns

Question	IOP	Answer
<i>Hai parlato alla ragazza?</i>	<i>le</i>	<i>Sì, le ho parlato.</i>
Did you speak to the girl?	to her	Yes, I spoke to her.
<i>Hai spedito la lettera a Paolo?</i>	<i>gli</i>	<i>Sì, gli ho spedito la lettera.</i>
Did you send the letter to Paolo?	to him	Yes, I sent him a letter.
<i>Hai offerto ai signori un caffè?</i>	<i>loro/gli</i>	<i>Sì, ho offerto loro un caffè.*</i> <i>Sì, gli ho offerto un caffè.*</i>
Did you offer the men coffee?	to them	Yes, I offered them coffee.
<i>Hanno mandato un pacco a noi?</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>Sì, ci hanno mandato un pacco.</i>
Did they send a package to us?	to us	Yes, they sent us a package.

*Both of these are correct. If you recall, *loro* can be replaced with the pronoun *gli*.

The Passato Prossimo and Double Object Pronouns

Everything here is detail. If you don't always remember to make things agree, you won't be locked into a tower and fed stale bread until you die. However, if you want to be a master, you've got to pay special attention to the little things.

When the same verb has two object pronouns, the indirect object pronoun always precedes the direct object pronoun. The following examples illustrate how double object pronouns work with the *passato prossimo*. Notice how the participle ending reflects the number and gender of the direct object.



Attenzione!

When dealing with double object pronouns, it is necessary to infer the gender of the indirect object (to him/to her).

<i>Hai dato la lettera alla signora?</i>	<i>Sì gliel'ho data.</i>
Did you give the letter to the lady?	Yes, I gave it to her.
<i>Hai dato la lettera al ragazzo?</i>	<i>Sì gliel'ho data.</i>
Did you give the letter to the boy?	Yes, I gave it to him.

Double Object Pronouns

Question	Answer
<i>Hai mandato la lettera al signor Rossi?</i>	<i>Sì, gliel'ho mandata.</i>
Did you send the letter to Mr. Rossi?	Yes, I sent it to him.
<i>Hanno restituito i soldi alla signora?</i>	<i>Sì, glieli hanno restituiti.</i>
Did they give back the money to the woman?	Yes, they gave it back to her.

The Least You Need to Know

- The verbs *andare* and *fare* are often used to describe participation in a sport.
- Use the verb *giocare* to play games and the verb *suonare* to play an instrument.
- The past participle is created by adding the appropriate ending to the stem of a verb. The three regular forms are *-ato*, *-uto*, and *-ito*.
- Many past participles are irregular, such as *chiuso* (closed) and *stato* (was).
- The two helping verbs used to form the *passato prossimo* are *essere* and *avere*.
- Intransitive verbs and reflexive verbs require *essere* as their auxiliary verb.
- The past participle must agree in gender and number with the preceding direct object pronoun.
- Double object pronouns often form one word and are used to refer to something already mentioned.

Part 4

Getting Down to Business

This part deals with the darker side of traveling and the problems that often crop up when you least expect them. Little did you know that you were opening Pandora's box when you unclicked the latch on your brand-new suitcase.

Chapter 20, "You're Not Having Un Buon Giorno," helps you deal with life's details, whether you need to replace the battery in your camera or want to have some clothes laundered. Chapter 21, "Is There a Doctor in the House?" gives you body language you can use at the doctor's office or when you visit the farmacia. You'll also learn the imperfetto (imperfect), a tense used to talk about how things were and used to be.

In Chapter 22, "Can You Read Me?" you'll learn how to make a telephone call and deal with l'ufficio postale. You'll study the future tense to ask when someone will return or when something will arrive.

Chapter 23, "Home Sweet Home," introduces the conditional tense and gives you vocabulary used to talk about your home. This is the tense you could use to talk about what you would do if you lived in Italy.

In Chapter 24, "Money Matters," you'll learn practical money and banking terms followed by a glimpse of that most elusive of moods, il congiuntivo (the subjunctive). This is followed by a brief introduction of another highly irregular tense used to talk about the distant past: il passato remoto.

And finally, you'll be given a little riddle. If you've been paying attention, you should be able to figure it out.

Even though you're almost fluent, why not start the book from scratch to see how much you have learned? È stata un'avventura! A presto!





You're Not Having *Un Buon Giorno*

In This Chapter

- ▶ Personal services
- ▶ Describing your needs
- ▶ Stressed pronouns
- ▶ Making comparisons
- ▶ *Ci* and *vi*

Your e-mail isn't working on your laptop computer. Your perfect Prada pumps couldn't handle the cobblestone streets, and you need to have a heel replaced. You spilled tomato sauce all over your favorite silk tie. Your camera has suddenly developed mechanical problems. You've lost a contact lens and can't see without it. This chapter helps you solve life's little nuisances.

Get Down to the Basics

Before you can get anything done, you must be able to find someone who can help you. Your guidebook probably won't help, but a copy of *le pagine gialle* (the Yellow Pages) might. To locate one, ask your concierge or visit any TELECOM (phone center). Speaking on the telephone is elaborated on in Chapter 22, "Can You Read Me?" but for now, a couple of tips might help.



As a Rule

When calling any establishment open to the public, whether a *parrucchiere* (hair dresser), a *sarto* (tailor), or a *calzolaio* (shoemaker), it is often appropriate to use the second person plural (*voi*) form of the verb:

<i>Avete ...?</i>	Do you have ...?
<i>Potete ...?</i>	Are you able to ...?
<i>A che ora aprite?</i>	At what time do you open?
<i>A che ora chiudete?</i>	At what time do you close?

Tip #1: Know what your needs are, and write down the appropriate questions before you make the call. Having something written in front of you will help you focus.

Tip #2: Let the establishment know that you do not speak Italian very well, and ask the person to speak slowly. If you want to take the easy way out, ask if they speak English:

<i>Non parlo l'italiano molto bene.</i>	I don't speak Italian very well.
<i>Parlate lentamente, per favore.</i>	Speak slowly, please.
<i>Parlate l'inglese?</i>	Do you speak English?

Tip #3: Keep it simple. Basic statements such as *Ho bisogno ...* (I need ...) can go a long way.

The sentences in the following table will help you find out *if* someone can help you, *when* they are open, *how* to get there, and *what* your needs are.

Help!

<i>La Frase</i>	The Phrase
<i>Ho bisogno di ...</i>	I need ...
<i>Mi potete aiutare?</i>	Can you help me?
<i>Siete aperti</i>	Are you open
<i>... adesso?</i>	... now?
<i>... fino a che ora?</i>	... until what time?
<i>... la domenica?</i>	... Sundays?

<i>La Frase</i>	The Phrase
<i>Dov'è ...</i>	Where is ...
<i>Conosce ...</i>	Do you know ...
<i>... un buon parrucchiere?</i>	... a good hairdresser?
<i>... un buon sarto?</i>	... a good tailor?
<i>... un buon calzolaio?</i>	... a good shoemaker?
<i>... una buona tintoria?</i>	... a good dry cleaner?

Mirror Mirror on the Wall ...

Between packing, notifying your credit card companies, bringing the dog to the pound, paying your bills, and making sure your passport is valid, you didn't have time to make it to the hairdresser for a little shampoo, cut, and tint. Women in Italy usually go to *la parrucchiere*, whereas men visit the *il barbiere*.

Some verbs and idiomatic expressions you might find useful appear in the following table. You see *farsi*, which is a reflexive verb (*fare + si*) used when one is having something done to themselves. If you need to, review reflexive verbs in Chapter 18, "Shall We Dine?"

Getting Gorgeous (the Italian Way)

English	<i>L'Italiano</i>
to blow-dry	<i>asciugare i capelli</i>
to color	<i>tingere i capelli</i>
to curl	<i>fare i riccioli</i>
to cut	<i>tagliare</i>
to get a haircut	<i>farsi tagliare i capelli</i>
to get a manicure	<i>farsi fare il manicure</i>
to get a pedicure	<i>farsi fare il pedicure</i>
to get a permanent	<i>farsi la permanente</i>
to shampoo	<i>farsi lo shampoo</i>
to shave	<i>farsi la barba</i>
to wax	<i>farsi la ceretta</i>

Build up your grooming vocabulary with the terms in the following table.

Well Groomed

English	L'Italiano
bald	<i>calvo</i>
bangs	<i>la frangia</i>
beard	<i>la barba</i>
brush	<i>la spazzola</i>
comb	<i>il pettine</i>
conditioner	<i>il balsamo</i>
cut	<i>il taglio</i>
face	<i>il viso</i>
gel	<i>il gel</i>
hair	<i>i capelli</i>
hairspray	<i>la lacca</i>
head	<i>la testa</i>
mud	<i>il fango</i>
mustache	<i>i baffi</i>
nail	<i>l'unghia</i>
nail file	<i>la limetta</i>
nail polish	<i>lo smalto per le unghie</i>
razor	<i>il rasoio</i>
shampoo	<i>lo shampoo</i>

Do Blondes Really Have More Fun?

There's a revolution happening inside as the "real" you comes forth: Maybe you'd rather be a bobbed redhead, a permed brunette, or a cropped blond. The following table offers the lowdown on stylists' lingo. Remember that the word *capelli* is plural, and your adjectives (given here in the masculine, plural form) must agree:

Preferisco i miei capelli ...

I prefer my hair ...

Li vorrei ...

I'd like them ...

Get Rid of That Gray

Style	Lo Stile
auburn	<i>castani</i>
black	<i>mori</i>
blond	<i>biondi</i>
brunette	<i>bruni</i>

Style	Lo Stile
curly	<i>ricci</i>
darker	<i>più scuri</i>
highlights	<i>i colpi di sole</i>
layered	<i>scalati</i>
lighter	<i>più chiari</i>
like this photo	<i>come questa foto</i>
long	<i>lunghi</i>
medium	<i>ledi</i>
red	<i>rossi</i>
retouched	<i>ritoccati</i>
straight	<i>lisci</i>
the same	<i>uguali</i>
trimmed	<i>spuntati</i>
wavy	<i>ondulati</i>

In Tintoria (at the Dry Cleaner's)

Perhaps you went out last night, and now your favorite silk shirt has Chianti stain on it. Then there's that grass smudge on your pants from the picnic you had in the *parco* the other day. The following table gives you the dirt on dirt.

The Dirt on Dirt (and Other Mishaps)

Italian	English
<i>C'è ...</i>	There is ...
<i>... una macchia.</i>	... a stain.
<i>... una bottone che manca.</i>	... a missing button.
<i>... uno strappo.</i>	... a tear.
<i>Mi potete lavare a secco questo (questi ...)?</i>	Can you dry clean this (these ...) for me?
<i>Mi potete rammendare questo (questi ...)?</i>	Can you mend this (these ...) for me?
<i>Mi potete stirare questo (questi ...)?</i>	Can you iron this (these ...) for me?
<i>Mi potete inamidare questo (questi ...)?</i>	Can you starch this (these ...) for me?
<i>Quando sarà pronto?</i>	When will it be ready?
<i>L'ho bisogno il più presto possibile.</i>	I need it as soon as possible.

Dal Calzolaio (at the Shoemaker's)

You've never walked this much before, and every step takes you deeper into the mystery of *Italia*. Maybe you want to have your *scarpe* stretched, a heel replaced, or a new shoelace added. The phrases in the following table will help you.

If the Shoe Fits

English	<i>L'Italiano</i>
boot	<i>lo stivale</i>
heel	<i>il tacco</i>
shoe	<i>la scarpa</i>
shoelace	<i>il laccio da scarpe</i>
shoemaker	<i>il calzolaio</i>
sole	<i>la suola</i>
to stretch	<i>allargare</i>
to shine	<i>lucidare</i>
to repair	<i>riparare</i>

Dall'Ottica (at the Optician's)

You just sat on your glasses and need to have them repaired. Perhaps you want to invest in Italian designer frames. The terms in the following table will let you see things through new eyes (or at least improved ones).

The Better to See You With

English	<i>L'Italiano</i>
astigmatism	<i>l'astigmatismo</i>
contact lens	<i>le lenti a contatto</i>
eyes	<i>gli occhi</i>
far-sighted	<i>presbite</i>
frame	<i>la montatura</i>
glasses	<i>gli occhiali</i>
lens	<i>le lenti</i>
near-sighted	<i>miope</i>
prescription	<i>la ricetta medica</i>
sunglasses	<i>gli occhiali da sole</i>

Dal Negozio di Fotografia (at the Camera Shop)

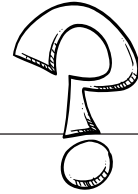
You bought what you thought was enough film for your camera, but now you need more. You want to buy a cap for your lens before it gets scratched—and it could also use a good cleaning.

Say “Mozzarella”

English	L'Italiano
battery	la batteria, la pila
camera	la macchina fotografica
exposure	l'esposizione
film	la pellicola, il film
filter	il filtro
flash	il “flash”
lens	l'obiettivo
transformer	il trasformatore
to develop	sviluppare

In Giolielleria (at the Jeweler's)

Maybe your watch came off during a gondola ride and you need to get another, or perhaps the battery just ran out of juice. If you need to go the jeweler to have something fixed or replaced, the words in the following table will help you get things ticking again. Refer back to Chapter 16, “Shop 'Til You Drop,” for a list of jewelry terms. If you've broken a chain and need it repaired, or have lost a stone and want to have it replaced, ask the salesperson, *Può riparare questo?* (Can you fix this?)



What's What

Is your watch fast? Tell the repair person, *Va avanti*. Is it slow? Tell him, *Va indietro*.

Fix It Again, Tony

English	L'Italiano
battery	la batteria, la pila
chain	la catena
clasp	il gancio
watch	l'orologio
watch band	il cinturino

Nel Negozio Elettronico (*at the Electronics Store*)

You've brought over your laptop computer and have been furiously tapping away at the keys, trying to recall every detail for the book you're going to write about Italy. Perhaps the battery has died and you need to replace it. If your computer just won't work, you'll have to bring it in and explain, *Il mio computer non funziona*, and pray you haven't lost any material. A few of the terms in the following table might also help you get your point across.

Vocabulary for the Information Superhighway

English	L'Italiano
adapter	<i>l'adattatore</i>
battery	<i>la batteria, la pila</i>
computer	<i>il computer</i>
disks	<i>i dischetti</i>
e-mail	<i>la posta elettronica</i>
keyboard	<i>la tastiera</i>
laptop computer	<i>il computer portatile</i>
mouse	<i>il mouse</i>
screen	<i>lo schermo</i>



Attenzione!

You'll learn all the telephone talk you need in Chapter 22. In case of an emergency, keep these helpful contact numbers handy:

General SOS (free from any telephone): 113

Carabinieri (police; free): 112

Automobile Club d'Italia (car accidents and break-downs): 116

Help, I Lost My Passport!

It could happen to anyone, so don't feel like a total idiot if you lose your passport. Hopefully, you have written down the number—or better yet, made a photocopy of

the front page with all your vital statistics. You'll want to advise the embassy as soon as *possibile*, and it wouldn't hurt to let the police know where you are staying in case the missing passport miraculously turns up.

Don't Leave Home Without It (but If You Do ...)

English	L'Italiano
Where is ...	<i>Dov'è ...</i>
... the police station?	<i>... la stazione di polizia?</i>
... the American embassy?	<i>... l'ambasciata americana?</i>
... the American consul?	<i>... il console americano?</i>
I lost ...	<i>Ho perso ...</i>
... my passport.	<i>... il mio passaporto.</i>
... my wallet.	<i>... il mio portafoglio.</i>
... my purse.	<i>... la mia borsa.</i>
... my head.	<i>... la mia testa.</i>

Stressed Out

Disjunctive, or stressed, pronouns—called *i pronomi tonici* in Italian—must follow a preposition or verb. They are also used to emphasize certain facts and highlight or replace certain nouns or pronouns. Study how they correspond to the object pronouns you have learned so far.

Disjunctive Pronouns

Subject	Direct Object	Indirect Object	Disjunctive (Stressed)	
<i>io</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>mi</i>	<i>me</i>	me
<i>tu</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>ti</i>	<i>te</i>	you
<i>lui</i>	<i>lo</i>	<i>gli</i>	<i>lui/esso</i>	him/it
<i>lei</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>le</i>	<i>lei/essa</i>	her/it
<i>Lei</i>	<i>La</i>	<i>Le</i>	<i>Lei</i>	You
			<i>sè</i>	himself, herself, itself, oneself, yourself
<i>noi</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>noi</i>	us
<i>voi</i>	<i>vi</i>	<i>vi</i>	<i>voi</i>	you
<i>loro</i>	<i>li/le</i>	<i>a loro/gli</i>	<i>loro</i>	them
			<i>sè</i>	yourselves, themselves

The following points may help you remember when to use a disjunctive pronoun:

- Disjunctive pronouns must always follow a verb or preposition:

<i>Vuoi venire con me?</i>	Do you want to come with me?
<i>Aspetto una telefonata da lei.</i>	I am waiting for a phone call from her.
<i>Sono fiero di te.</i>	I am proud of you.
<i>Questi fiori sono per voi.</i>	These flowers are for you.
<i>Lui parte prima di me.</i>	He is leaving before me.

- The disjunctive pronoun *sè* is used to indicate *oneself*, *himself*, *herself*, and *themselves* as well as *itself*:

<i>Caterina parla sempre di sè.</i>	Caterina always talks about herself.
<i>La luce si spegne da sè.</i>	The light goes out by itself.
<i>Anna lavora per sè.</i>	Anna works for herself.

- The disjunctive pronoun is most commonly used when there are two direct or indirect objects in a phrase:

<i>Daniela scrive a me e a te.</i>	Daniela writes to me and to you.
<i>Telefonano a lui e a lei.</i>	They are telephoning him and her.

- Disjunctive pronouns are used after a verb to emphasize the object (direct or indirect).

Emphatic	Unemphatic	English
<i>Aspetto lui.</i>	<i>Lo aspetto.</i>	I'm waiting for him .
<i>Do un regalo a te.</i>	<i>Ti do un regalo.</i>	I give you a gift.
<i>Telefona a me.</i>	<i>Mi telefona.</i>	Call (telephone) me .

Stressful Exercise

Use the appropriate stressed pronoun in the following sentences:

1. *Senza di _____, non posso vivere.* (you, informal)
2. *Mario parla sempre di _____.* (himself)
3. *Vuole parlare a _____?* (me)
4. *Questa lettera è per _____.* (Cristina)
5. *Passiamo la sera alla casa di _____.* (Robert)
6. *Viene con _____ o con _____?* (me, her)

Comparatives and Superlatives

In Chapter 10, “Tell Me About Your Childhood,” you learned all about adjectives and adverbs. In addition to describing nouns and verbs, you use adjectives and adverbs to compare things. Often, you can add *-er* or *-est* to an adjective in English to indicate that something is more (or less) beautiful, big, sweet, tall, and so on, as in, “She is sweeter than honey; in fact, she is the sweetest person I have ever met.” Use the following table to help you compare things.

Comparison of Adjectives: Inequality

	Italian	English
Adjective	<i>dolce</i>	sweet
Comparative	<i>più dolce</i>	sweeter
	<i>meno dolce</i>	less sweet
Superlative	<i>il/la* più dolce</i>	the sweetest
	<i>il/la* meno dolce</i>	the least sweet

*Note: The same rules apply using the plural articles *i*, *gli*, and *le*.

- To compare one thing as being either more or less than another, place the word *più* (more) or *meno* (less) before the adjective:

<i>Questo ristorante è più caro.</i>	This restaurant is more expensive.
<i>Quel ristorante è meno caro.</i>	That restaurant is less expensive.
- To express the English “than,” use the preposition *di* (or its contraction) in front of nouns and pronouns.

<i>Ho più amici di te.</i>	I have more friends than you.
<i>Il gatto è più piccolo del cane.</i>	The cat is smaller than the dog.
<i>I cani sono più grandi dei gatti.</i>	Dogs are bigger than cats.
- The comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives must agree in gender and number with the nouns they describe:

<i>La luna è meno grande della terra.</i>	The moon is smaller than the earth.
<i>I tuoi occhi sono i più belli.</i>	Your eyes are the most beautiful.
- *Che* is used when making comparisons of quantity, when comparing two qualities pertaining to the same person or thing, or when comparing two infinitive verbs:

<i>più ... di (che)</i>	more ... than
<i>meno ... di (che)</i>	less ... than

<i>Tu sei più alto di me.</i>	You are taller than I.
<i>Io sono meno alta di te.</i>	I am less tall than you.
<i>Di sera fa più freddo che di giorno.</i>	The evening is colder than the day.
<i>Meglio tardi che mai.</i>	Better late than never.
<i>È più facile giocare che studiare.</i>	It's easier to play than study.

- To make a relative comparison between two things, simply add *più* (more) or *meno* (less) before the adjective or adverb.

<i>Questo è il ristorante più caro.</i>	This restaurant is the most expensive.
<i>Quello è il ristorante meno caro.</i>	That restaurant is the least expensive.



Attenzione!

You've seen *che* used as an interrogative adjective meaning "what." It is also used with the subjunctive signifying "that" and "than." Look for clues in a sentence that can help you determine its meaning. The following examples illustrate the different uses of this word:

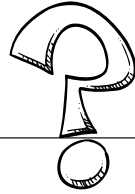
<i>Che significa?</i>	What does it mean?
<i>È più bello cantare che urlare.</i>	Singing is more beautiful than shouting.
<i>Penso che Giulia sia simpatica.</i>	I think that Giulia is nice.

Better Than the Best

In addition to having regular forms, some adjectives have irregular comparative and superlative forms. Are you good? Getting better? Or the best?

Irregular Adjective Comparatives and Superlatives

Adjective	Comparative	Relative Superlative
<i>buono</i> (good)	<i>migliore</i> (better)	<i>il/la migliore</i> (the best)
<i>cattivo</i> (bad)	<i>peggiore</i> (worse)	<i>il/la peggiore</i> (the worst)
<i>grande</i> (big/great)	<i>maggiore</i> (bigger/greater)	<i>il/la maggiore</i> (the biggest/greatest)
<i>piccolo</i> (small)	<i>minore</i> (smaller/lesser)	<i>il/la minore</i> (the smallest/least)



What's What

Maggiore and *minore* are often used to reference family members, such as younger sister or older brother. The superlative is used to indicate "the oldest" or "the youngest."

Mio fratello minore si chiama Roberto. My younger brother is called Robert.

The superlatives *migliore*, *peggiore*, *maggiore*, and *minore* drop the final *-e* before nouns, except with nouns beginning with *s* + consonant or *z*:

Tu sei la mia miglior amica! You are my best friend!

Irregular Comparisons

How are you doing? Well? A perfect illustration of an irregular adverb is the English word "well." In Italian, irregular adverbs are easily learned. The following table outlines some of the most commonly used adverbs.

Irregular Adverb Comparatives and Superlatives

Adverb	Comparative	Absolute Superlative
<i>bene</i> (well)	<i>migliore</i> (better)	<i>benissimo</i> (best)
<i>male</i> (badly)	<i>peggio</i> (worse)	<i>malissimo</i> (worse)
<i>molto</i> (much/a lot)	<i>più, di più</i> (more)	<i>moltissimo</i> (very much)
<i>poco</i> (little)	<i>meno, di meno</i> (less)	<i>pochissimo</i> (very little)

Oggi sto meglio.

I am better today.

Devi studiare di più.

You must study more.

Anna lavora moltissimo in questi giorni.

Anna is working very much these days.

To make the relative superlative, simply add the definite article in front of the comparative:

Arrivo il più presto possibile.

I'm arriving as soon as possible.

Faccio del mio meglio.

I'm doing my best.



La Bella Lingua

Give all that you have to give! To say this in Italian, use the following *espressione*:

Farò del mio meglio. I will do my best.

Comparisons of Equality

To say that something is as good as another is called a comparison of equality.

- To say that two things are equal:

(tanto) ... *quanto* + adjective or adverb as ... as + adjective or adverb

(così) ... *come* + adjective or adverb as ... as + adjective or adverb

- *Tanto* and *così* can also be omitted.

Jessica è (tanto) alta quanto Gabriella.

Jessica is as tall as Gabriella.

Tu sei (così) bello come tuo padre.

You are as handsome as your father.

Mi piace sciare (tanto) quanto giocare a tennis.

I like skiing as much as playing tennis.

L'insegnante impara (tanto) quanto insegna.

The teacher learns as much as she teaches.

- Personal pronouns following *come* or *quanto* are always stressed:

Io sono intelligente come te.

I am as intelligent as you are.

Tu sei come me.

You are like me.

Absolutely, Totally Superlative

If something is really extraordinary, you can use the adverb *veramente* (truly) or *molto* (very) in front of your adjective or adverb. Or, to show the extreme of something, a poetic, commonly used ending is *-issimo*. The following table looks at a few adjectives (which must always reflect gender and number) used in this manner:

Above Average

Adjective	“Very”	“Extremely”
<i>bello</i>	<i>molto bello</i>	<i>bellissimo</i>
<i>buono</i>	<i>molto buono</i>	<i>buonissimo/ottimo*</i>
<i>cattivo</i>	<i>molto cattivo</i>	<i>cattivissimo/pessimo*</i>
<i>grande</i>	<i>molto grande</i>	<i>grandissimo</i>
<i>piccolo</i>	<i>molto piccolo</i>	<i>piccolissimo</i>
<i>vecchio</i>	<i>molto vecchio</i>	<i>vecchissimo</i>
<i>veloce</i>	<i>molto veloce</i>	<i>velocissimo</i>

*Irregular.



As a Rule

Ottimo is often used in addition to *buonissimo* when something is really great, as in the best. *Pessimo* is used to describe something that is as bad as bad can get, as in *Questo ristorante è pessimo*. (This restaurant is the worst.)

Sto benissimo!

I am very well!

La macchina è velocissima.

The car is really fast.

Ci and Vi

In Chapter 9, “Being There,” you learned about the adverb *ci* and saw how it works with the verb *essere*. Besides being object pronouns, *ci* and *vi* are used as adverbs of place, meaning “here” and “there.” Modern Italian tends to use *ci* more often, although the two are interchangeable.

They often replace nouns or prepositional phrases preceded by *a*, *in*, and *su*, saving the speaker unnecessary repetition.

Denoting place:

Vai spesso in piazza?

Do you often go to the piazza?

Sì, ci vado.

Yes, I go there.

Abiti a New York?

Do you live in New York?

No, non ci abito.

No, I don't live there.

Denoting things or ideas:

Credi in Dio?

Do you believe in God?

Sì, ci credo.

Yes, I do.

Pensi ai tuoi amici?

Do you think about your friends?

Sì, ci penso.

Yes, I do.

Go On and Brag a Little

Translate the following sentences into Italian.

1. You are the most beautiful woman in the world.
2. The view is gorgeous.
3. He is as nice as he is handsome.
4. I'm feeling better, thank you.
5. Are you going to Italy this summer? Yes, I'm going there.

The Least You Need to Know

- Asking for what you need starts with being able to describe your problem.
- Use stressed pronouns when you want to emphasize a point or after the preposition *a*.
- Use *meno* (less) or *più* (more) before adjectives and adverbs to make comparisons or express the superlative.
- Use *(tanto) quanto* or *(così) come* to express that things are equal.
- Use the ending *-issimo* to form the absolute superlative of adverbs and adjectives.
- Use *ci* or *vi* in lieu of a prepositional phrase.



Is There a Doctor in the House?

In This Chapter

- ▶ Your body
- ▶ Symptoms, complaints, and illnesses
- ▶ The imperfect tense

You're probably more prone to getting sick while in a foreign country than any other time. You're in a new environment, you're eating different foods, your daily rituals have been altered, and you're having a great time. Those little bugs know just when to crash a party. In this chapter, you'll learn how to feed your cold, starve your fever, and get back on your feet. You'll also learn about the imperfect tense, another way to talk about the past.

What a Bod!

You've only got one, so you might as well love it. Just like people, the names of body parts (and their plurals) are often irregular. Start at your toes and work up.



La Bella Lingua

A little schmoozing can go a long way. To give someone a compliment, use the word *che* + the appropriate form of *bello* + the body part, as in *Che begli occhi!* (What beautiful eyes!)

The Sum of Your Parts

The Body	<i>Il Corpo</i>	The Body	<i>Il Corpo</i>
ankle	<i>la caviglia</i>	hand	<i>la mano (le mani)</i>
appendix	<i>l'appendice</i>	head	<i>la testa</i>
arm	<i>il braccio (le braccia)</i>	heart	<i>il cuore</i>
back	<i>la schiena</i>	joint	<i>l'articolazione</i>
bladder	<i>la vescica</i>	knee	<i>il ginocchio (le ginocchia)</i>
blood	<i>il sangue</i>	leg	<i>la gamba</i>
body	<i>il corpo</i>	ligament	<i>il legamento</i>
bone	<i>l'osso (le ossa)</i>	mouth	<i>la bocca</i>
brain	<i>il cervello</i>	muscle	<i>il muscolo</i>
breast	<i>il seno</i>	nail	<i>l'unghia</i>
buttock	<i>il sedere</i>	neck	<i>il collo</i>
chest	<i>il petto</i>	nose	<i>il naso</i>
chin	<i>il mento</i>	skin	<i>la pelle</i>
ear	<i>l'orecchio</i>	shoulder	<i>la spalla</i>
elbow	<i>il gomito</i>	stomach	<i>lo stomaco</i>
eye	<i>l'occhio</i>	throat	<i>la gola</i>
face	<i>il viso</i>	toe	<i>il dito (le dita)</i>
finger	<i>il dito (le dita)</i>	tongue	<i>la lingua</i>
foot	<i>il piede</i>	tooth	<i>il dente</i>
gland	<i>la ghiandola</i>	wrist	<i>il polso</i>

Farsi

The reflexive and highly idiomatic verb *farsi* comes from the verb *fare* (to do/to make) and can be used in several manners. *Farsi* is used to talk about when something hurts.

In this case, the subject of the sentence is the troublesome body part (or parts). If what is hurting you is singular—for example, your head—so is your verb; if your feet hurt you, because they are plural, your verb must also be plural. You may want to refer back to Chapter 16, “Shop ’Til You Drop,” to review your indirect object pronouns again.

<i>Mi fa male la testa.</i>	My head hurts. (My head is hurting me.)
<i>Mi fanno male i piedi.</i>	My feet hurt. (My feet are hurting me.)

A doctor or pharmacist will ask you what hurts by changing the indirect object pronoun. The verb stays the same.

<i>Ti fa male il braccio?</i>	Does your arm hurt?
<i>Le fa male lo stomaco?</i>	Does your stomach hurt?
<i>Le fanno male i piedi?</i>	Do your feet hurt?



La Bella Lingua

If you have a medical condition, it's not a bad idea to bring a copy of your *anamnesi* (medical history) when traveling abroad.

Speaking of medical history: Several ancient medical instruments were discovered by archeologists at the House of the Surgeon in Pompeii, including tweezers, speculums, scalpels, probes, needles, and forceps. If you're interested in knowing more, visit the *Istituto di Storia della Medicina* in Rome. Entry is free, but you're best off calling for hours.

Express Yourself

When talking about your body, you use the verb *avere* to describe any kind of ache, whether it's in your head or your stomach. You'll also use the reflexive verb *sentirsi* (to feel) to describe your various ailments, as in, *Mi sento male* (I feel badly). When using the idiomatic expression *avere mal di*, the final *-e* is dropped from the word *male*. The following expressions will help you describe your discomfort or pain.

<i>Ho ...</i>	I have ...
<i>... mal di testa.</i>	... a headache.
<i>... mal di stomaco/pancia.</i>	... a stomachache.
<i>... mal di gola.</i>	... sore throat.

<i>Mi fa male ...</i>	(The body part) ... hurts me.
<i>Mi fa male il ginocchio.</i>	My knee hurts.
<i>Mi fanno male i piedi.</i>	My feet hurt.
<i>Mi sento male.</i>	I feel bad.
<i>Non mi sento bene.</i>	I don't feel well.



As a Rule

The preposition *da* is used in the present tense to indicate an action that began in the past that is still occurring in the present, much like the English word "since."

<i>Da quanto tempo soffre?</i>	(For) How long have you been suffering?
<i>Soffro da due giorni.</i>	I've been suffering for (since) two days.

What Ails You?

Sickness can be especially exasperating in a foreign country where you don't know the names of your medicines and you have to explain to a *dottore* or *farmacista* exactly what the problem is.

There's no need to be shy about what you're experiencing. Italians have the same kinds of ailments you do. The doctor will ask you a few questions. Naturally, the *Lei* form of the verb is used to maintain a professional relationship.

<i>Qual è il problema?</i>	What is the problem?
<i>Come si sente?</i>	How do you feel?
<i>Quanti anni ha?</i>	How old are you?
<i>Da quanto tempo soffre?</i>	(For) How long have you been suffering?
<i>Prende delle medicine?</i>	Are you taking any medications?
<i>Ha delle allergie?</i>	Do you have any allergies?
<i>Soffre di ...?</i>	Do you suffer from ...?
<i>Ha avuto ...?</i>	Have you had ...?
<i>Che cosa Le fa male?</i>	What hurts you?

Tell Me Where It Hurts

Imagine that you are telling a doctor what your aches and pains are. If you are using the expression *mi fa male*, don't forget to account for number if what hurts you is plural.

Example: your head

Answer: *Mi fa male la testa* or *Ho mal di testa*.

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. your knee | 4. your throat |
| 2. your shoulders | 5. your tooth |
| 3. your feet | 6. your ankle |



As a Rule

If you want the indirect object pronoun to clearly and specifically express who is in pain, you may add the preposition *a* plus the name of the person or a prepositional phrase:

A Fabio fanno male le braccia. Fabio's arms hurt.

It is not necessary to use the possessive adjective before a body part because it is already indicated by the indirect object pronoun.

This Isn't Funny Anymore

If you have a serious medical condition that warrants immediate attention, don't hesitate to contact a doctor should you feel the need for one.

The following table will help you describe what's going on.

Symptoms and Conditions

Symptom	<i>Il Sintomo</i>	Symptom	<i>Il Sintomo</i>
abscess	<i>l'ascesso</i>	bump	<i>la tumefazione</i>
blister	<i>la vescica</i>	burn	<i>la scottatura</i>
broken bone	<i>un osso rotto</i>	chills	<i>i brividi</i>
bruise	<i>il livido</i>	constipation	<i>la stitichezza</i>

continues

Symptoms and Conditions (continued)

Symptom	<i>Il Sintomo</i>	Symptom	<i>Il Sintomo</i>
cough	<i>la tosse</i>	headache	<i>il mal di testa</i>
cramps	<i>i crampi</i>	indigestion	<i>l'indigestione</i>
diarrhea	<i>la diarrea</i>	insomnia	<i>l'insonnia</i>
dizziness	<i>le vertigini</i>	lump (on the head)	<i>il bernoccolo</i>
exhaustion	<i>l'esaurimento</i>	migraine	<i>l'emicrania</i>
fever	<i>la febbre</i>	nausea	<i>la nausea</i>
fracture	<i>la frattura</i>	pain	<i>il dolore</i>
rash	<i>un'irritazione</i>	swelling	<i>il gonfiore</i>
sprain	<i>la distorsione</i>	toothache	<i>il mal di denti</i>
stomachache	<i>il mal di stomaco</i>	wound	<i>la ferita</i>



Attenzione!

You may think you've taken care of everything by bringing your own little medicine chest filled with leftover pills from prescriptions for one thing or another, but self-medicating could make things worse, especially in a foreign country.

Feeling Funny

Some particularly unattractive verbs and other useful phrases describing conditions are outlined in the following table. With idiomatic expressions, the verb in parentheses needs to be conjugated.

How Are You Feeling?

Italian	English	Example	English
<i>(avere) la febbre</i>	to have a fever	<i>Ho la febbre.</i>	I have a fever.
<i>(avere) la nausea</i>	to be nauseous	<i>Ho la nausea.</i>	I am nauseous.
<i>(avere) la tosse</i>	to cough	<i>Ho la tosse.</i>	I am coughing.
<i>(avere) mal di</i>	to have pain	<i>Ho mal di ...</i>	I have pain in my ...
<i>(essere) esaurito</i>	to be exhausted	<i>Sono esaurito/a.</i>	I am exhausted.

Italian	English	Example	English
<i>sanguinare</i>	to bleed	<i>Sanguino.</i>	I am bleeding.
<i>(soffrire) di</i>	to suffer from	<i>Soffro di ...</i>	I am suffering from ...
<i>starnutire</i>	to sneeze	<i>Starnutisco.</i>	I am sneezing.
<i>vomitare</i>	to vomit	<i>Vomito.</i>	I am vomiting.



La Bella Lingua

Tired and troubled? There's a saint for just about every ailment. Got a hangover? Pray to Saint Bibiana, a virgin who was martyred in Rome in c. 361 A.D. She is also invoked against epilepsy and headaches.

Here are a few more saints you may want to invoke should the need arise:

- St. Aldegonda: cancer
- St. Ignatius: sore throats
- St. Antoninus: fever
- St. Lucy: blindness
- St. Stephen: headaches
- St. Valentine: heartache

This Is What You Have

The word "disease" literally means "not at ease." Should you have to visit the doctor, he or she is going to ask you to fill out a form, tell about any medications you're taking, and answer questions about pre-existing medical conditions. The following table offers you some helpful, if unpleasant, terms to describe health.

Conditions and Diseases

Illness	<i>La Malattia</i>	Illness	<i>La Malattia</i>
angina	<i>l'angina</i>	hemophilia	<i>l'emofilia</i>
appendicitis	<i>l'appendicite</i>	hepatitis	<i>l'epatite</i>

continues

Conditions and Diseases (continued)

Illness	La Malattia	Illness	La Malattia
asthma	<i>l'asma</i>	measles	<i>il morbillo</i>
bronchitis	<i>la bronchite</i>	mumps	<i>gli orecchioni</i>
cancer	<i>il cancro</i>	pneumonia	<i>la polmonite</i>
cold	<i>il raffreddore</i>	polio	<i>la poliomielite</i>
diabetes	<i>il diabete</i>	smallpox	<i>il vaiolo</i>
drug addiction	<i>la tossicodipendenza</i>	stroke	<i>il colpo apoplettico</i>
dysentery	<i>la dissenteria</i>	sunstroke	<i>il colpo di sole</i>
flu	<i>l'influenza</i>	tetanus	<i>il tetano</i>
German measles	<i>la rosolia</i>	tuberculosis	<i>la tubercolosi</i>
gout	<i>la gotta</i>	whooping cough	<i>la pertosse</i>
heart attack	<i>l'infarto</i>		

Your doctor may give you *una ricetta medica* (prescription) to be filled at the *farmacia*.

Alla Farmacia (at the Pharmacy)

A visit to the *farmacia* will provide you with prescriptions, vitamins, and assorted sundries. Pick up some *vitamina C* to get your system back in sync, buy some *aspirina* for your head, or smooth some moisturizer all over your body.

Drugstore Items

English	Italian	English	Italian
ace bandage	<i>la fascia elastica</i>	deodorant	<i>il deodorante</i>
antibiotics	<i>gli antibiotici</i>	depilatory wax	<i>la ceretta depilatoria</i>
antiseptic	<i>l'antisettico</i>	diapers	<i>i pannolini</i>
aspirin	<i>l'aspirina</i>	eye drops	<i>le gocce per gli occhi</i>
Band-Aids	<i>i cerotti</i>	floss	<i>il filo interdentale</i>
body lotion	<i>la lozione</i>	gauze bandage	<i>la fascia</i>
baby bottle	<i>il biberon</i>	heating pad	<i>l'impacco caldo</i>
castor oil	<i>l'olio di ricino</i>	ice pack	<i>la borsa del ghiaccio</i>
condoms	<i>i preservativi, i profilattici</i>	laxative	<i>il lassativo</i>
cotton balls	<i>i batuffoli di ovatta</i>	mirror	<i>lo specchio</i>
cotton swabs (for ears)	<i>i tamponi per le orecchie</i>	needle and thread	<i>l'ago e filo</i>
cough syrup	<i>lo sciroppo per la tosse</i>	nose drops	<i>le gocce per il naso</i>
		pacifier	<i>il ciuccio</i>
		pills	<i>le pastiglie</i>

English	Italian	English	Italian
prescription	<i>la ricetta medica</i>	talcum powder	<i>il talco</i>
razor	<i>il rasoio</i>	tampons	<i>i tamponi</i>
safety pin	<i>la spilla di sicurezza</i>	thermometer	<i>il termometro</i>
sanitary napkins	<i>gli assorbenti</i>	tissues	<i>i fazzoletti</i>
scissors	<i>le forbici</i>	toothbrush	<i>lo spazzolino da denti</i>
shaving cream	<i>la crema da barba</i>	toothpaste	<i>il dentifricio</i>
sleeping pill	<i>il sonnifero</i>	tweezers	<i>le pinzette</i>
soap	<i>il sapone</i>	vitamins	<i>le vitamine</i>
syringe	<i>la siringa</i>		

Questions

Suppose you can't find what you're looking for or the pharmacy is out of stock. The following sentences all express possible questions you may have for the pharmacist:

Mi serve una ricetta?

Do I need a prescription?

Sa dove posso trovare ...?

Do you know where I can find ...?

C'è un'altra farmacia qui vicino?

Is there another pharmacy nearby?

C'è una farmacia notturna?

Is there an all-night pharmacy?



La Bella Lingua

These nouns are always used in the plural:

<i>le forbici</i>	scissors
<i>le pinze</i>	tweezers
<i>gli occhiali</i>	eyeglasses

La Profumeria (The Cosmetics Store)

We all need a little help now and then. Make-up isn't called *il truco* (the trick) for nothing! Many toiletries, cosmetics, and perfume can be found at *la profumeria*.

English	Italian
blush	<i>il fard</i>
body lotion	<i>la crema per il corpo</i>
brush	<i>la spazzola</i>
eye shadow	<i>l'ombretto</i>
nail polish	<i>lo smalto per le unghie</i>
perfume	<i>il profumo</i>



Attenzione!

When using the past tense, be careful to use the appropriate tense. At times it may not always be clear whether you should use the present perfect or the imperfect.

I Was What I Was: The Imperfect

L'imperfetto (the imperfect) tense describes repeated actions that occurred in the past. Whenever you refer to something that used to be or describe a habitual pattern, you use the imperfect. *Mentre* (while), *quando* (when), *sempre* (always), *spesso* (often), and *di solito* (usually) are all key words you can look for to identify when the imperfect is being used.

The imperfect also expresses actions we were doing when something else happened. For example, "I was studying when the telephone rang." The phone interrupted your studies, which you had been doing for an indefinite amount of time.



As a Rule

Which tense should you use? The **present perfect** expresses an action that was completed at a specific time in the past; you did it once and now it's over and done with. The **imperfect** represents an action that continued to occur, that was happening, that used to happen, or that would (meaning used to) happen.

Andavamo al mare ogni estate. We used to go to the sea every summer.

Formation of the Imperfect

The imperfect tense is one of the easiest tenses to remember. With the exception of the verb *essere*, there are hardly any irregularities—and when there are, they are usually consistent with stem changes in the present. The best part is that the endings are the same for all three verb families. Just drop the final *-re* from the infinitive and add the endings in the following table.

Imperfect Endings

Subject	Imperfect Endings
<i>io</i>	<i>-vo</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>-vi</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>-va</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>-vamo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>-vate</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>-vano</i>

The verbs in the following table all share the same endings. Take a look at them.

Imperfect Examples

Subject	<i>Parlare</i>	<i>Leggere</i>	<i>Capire</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>parlavo</i>	<i>leggevo</i>	<i>capivo</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>parlavi</i>	<i>leggevi</i>	<i>capivi</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>parlava</i>	<i>leggeva</i>	<i>capiva</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>parlavamo</i>	<i>leggevamo</i>	<i>capivamo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>parlavate</i>	<i>leggevate</i>	<i>capivate</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>parlavano</i>	<i>leggevano</i>	<i>capivano</i>

The only verb that completely changes form in the imperfect is the verb *essere*, shown in the following table.

Essere (to Be)

Italian	English
<i>io ero</i>	I was
<i>tu eri</i>	you were
<i>lui/lei/Lei era</i>	he/she was; You were
<i>noi eravamo</i>	we were
<i>voi eravate</i>	you were
<i>loro erano</i>	they were

Fill in the Spazio

Take a look at these stem-changing verbs and fill in the rest of the chart using the endings you just learned.

	<i>Dire (to Say)</i>	<i>Fare (to Do/Make)</i>	<i>Bere (to Drink)</i>
<i>io</i>	_____	<i>facevo</i>	_____
<i>tu</i>	<i>dicevi</i>	_____	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____	_____	<i>beveva</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>dicevamo</i>	_____	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____	<i>facevate</i>	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____	_____	<i>bevevano</i>



As a Rule

You use the imperfect when you want to say that something happened regularly. The imperfect also describes states of being (mental, emotional, and physical) that occurred in the past and is used to express age, time, and weather.

<i>Quando ero piccola ...</i>	When I was small ...
<i>Quando avevo cinque anni ...</i>	When I was five years old ...
<i>Mi sentivo bene.</i>	I felt well.
<i>Faceva freddo.</i>	It was cold.
<i>Erano le sei.</i>	It was 6:00.

La Pratica

Fill in the blanks with the verb in parenthesis, using the imperfect.

1. *Quando hai telefonato, (io) _____ (guardare) la televisione.*
2. *Quando (noi) _____ (essere) bambini, _____ (andare) spesso al mare.*
3. *Mentre Maria _____ (lavorare), Luigi _____ (preparare) la cena.*
4. *Mi _____ (piacere) ascoltare la radio ogni notte.*

5. Quando Katerina _____ (avere) 18 anni, è andata in Italia per la prima volta.
6. (Loro) _____ (abitare) in Via Condotti quando è nata loro figlia.
7. Mio nonno _____ (fare) una passeggiata ogni giorno della sua vita. Lui _____ (essere) un'uomo forte.
8. (Io) _____ (tornare) a casa quando ho visto l'incidente.
9. (Noi) Ci _____ (vedere) spesso al lavoro.
10. Maurizio si _____ (alzare) sempre tardi la mattina.

What's Done Is Done

It's awkward trying to speak in the present tense all the time. Replace the underlined verbs with the appropriate form of the past tense (present perfect or imperfect).

Arriviamo il 21 settembre, il primo giorno d'autunno. Il sole brilla e fa bel tempo.
Viaggiamo spesso ma questa è la nostra prima volta in Italia. Prima andiamo a Roma dove vediamo il Vaticano, il Foro Romano e il Colosseo. Poi andiamo a Firenze per una settimana.

A Review

You've seen these verbs before and should know them pretty well by now. Each verb has its participle in parentheses. Conjugate each verb in both the present perfect (simple past) and the imperfect tense using the helping verb *avere*.

1. Scrivere (scritto)

Subject	Present Perfect	Imperfect
io	_____	_____
tu	_____	_____
lui/lei/Lei	_____	_____
noi	_____	_____
voi	_____	_____
loro	_____	_____

2. Spedire (spedito)

Subject	Present Perfect	Imperfect
io	_____	_____
tu	_____	_____
lui/lei/Lei	_____	_____
noi	_____	_____
voi	_____	_____
loro	_____	_____

3. Leggere (letto)

Subject	Present Perfect	Imperfect
<i>io</i>	_____	_____
<i>tu</i>	_____	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____	_____
<i>noi</i>	_____	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____	_____

4. Mandare (mandato)

Subject	Present Perfect	Imperfect
<i>io</i>	_____	_____
<i>tu</i>	_____	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____	_____
<i>noi</i>	_____	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____	_____

The Least You Need to Know

- To tell someone that a certain part of your body doesn't feel well, use *Mi fa male* plus the body part.
- Certain body parts are irregular in the plural.
- The imperfect tense is used to indicate something that occurred in the past over a period of time or something that you *used to do*. It is also used to talk about a mental, emotional, or physical condition that happened in the past.
- The present perfect is used to indicate an isolated event that occurred in the past.



Can You Read Me?

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using the telephone
- ▶ Visiting the post office
- ▶ Writing a letter
- ▶ The future tense

The twentieth century has brought us to levels of communication that a Roman living during Virgilio's time could not fathom. Satellites are beaming down signals through space. You drop a package off today, and it clears the *continente* by tomorrow.

You've become accustomed to these services and may require them in Italy. This chapter shows you how to make *una telefonata* (telephone call), send a fax, deal with the *ufficio postale* (post office), and write *una lettera*. You'll also take a look at what's to come in the *futuro*.

Il Telefono

Most telephone numbers in Italy start with 0 + the area code followed by the number. To get an operator, you must dial 15; to get an international operator, dial 170. For an emergency or to get the *la polizia*, dial 113, or for *i carabinieri*, dial 112. It's always a good idea to find out any local numbers that you might need in a quandary.



La Bella Lingua

Public telephones are easy to use in Italy. You can go to a telephone office, easily identified with a red or yellow sign that reads “TELECOM,” or you can use any telephone you find in a bar, restaurant, or on the street. You can use a prepaid telephone card called a *scheda telefonica*, and most public telephones accept coins.

Types of Phone Calls

When speaking to an international operator, you can probably speak in English. What happens if you’re in a small village and need to call back home? The vocabulary in the following table should help you reach out and touch someone. Review Chapter 3, “Sound Like an Italian,” to remember how to spell your name in Italian.

Types of Calls

Type of Call	<i>La Telefonata</i>
collect call	<i>una telefonata a carico del destinatario</i>
credit-card call	<i>una telefonata con carta di credito</i>
intercontinental call	<i>una telefonata intercontinentale</i>
international call (Europe)	<i>una telefonata internazionale</i>
local call	<i>una telefonata urbana</i>
long-distance call	<i>una telefonata interurbana</i>
person-to-person call	<i>una telefonata con preavviso</i>

Reach Out

Le pagine gialle (the Yellow Pages) are a handy reference for more than phone numbers—check here for listings of museum hours, places to go, and things to do. Familiarize yourself with the terms related to the telephone in the following table.

The Telephone

The Telephone	Il Telefono
800 number (free)	<i>il numero verde</i>
answering machine	<i>la segreteria telefonica</i>
area code	<i>il prefisso</i>
booth	<i>la cabina telefonica</i>
cellular phone	<i>il telefonino/il cellulare</i>
coin return	<i>la restituzione monete</i>
cordless phone	<i>il telefono senza fili</i>
keypad	<i>la tastiera</i>
line	<i>la linea</i>
message	<i>il messaggio</i>
operator	<i>l'operatore</i>
phone card	<i>la scheda telefonica</i>
public phone	<i>il telefono pubblico</i>
receiver	<i>il ricevitore/la cornetta</i>
telephone book	<i>l'elenco telefonico</i>
telephone call	<i>la telefonata</i>
token	<i>il gettone</i>
touch-tone phone	<i>il telefono a tastiera</i>
Yellow Pages	<i>le pagine gialle</i>

Call Me Sometime!

Some useful verbs and expressions related to the telephone might come in handy. (Bonus: You've probably seen most of these verbs by now!)

Phone Phrases and Verbs

The Verb	Il Verbo
to call back	<i>richiamare</i>
to dial	<i>comporre il numero</i>
to drop a line/to buzz someone	<i>dare un colpo di telefono (idiomatico)</i>
to hang up	<i>attaccare, riagganciare</i>
to hold	<i>attendere</i>
to insert the card	<i>introdurre la carta</i>
to leave a message	<i>lasciare un messaggio</i>
to make a call	<i>fare una telefonata</i>
to pick up	<i>alzare il ricevitore</i>

continues

Phone Phrases and Verbs (continued)

The Verb	<i>Il Verbo</i>
to press	<i>premere</i>
to receive a call	<i>ricevere una telefonata</i>
to ring	<i>suonare/squillare</i>
to speak to an operator	<i>parlare con un operatore</i>
to telephone	<i>telefonare</i>

Say What?

The following words and phrases should help you get your point across.

Ice Breakers

English	<i>L'Italiano</i>
Hello!	<i>Pronto!</i>
With whom do I speak?	<i>Con chi parlo?</i>
I would like to make a phone call.	<i>Vorrei fare una telefonata.</i>
Do you sell telephone cards?	<i>Vendete schede telefoniche?</i>
Is ... there?	<i>C'è ...?</i>
It's ...(your name).	<i>Sono ... (il tuo nome).</i>
I'd like to speak with ...	<i>Vorrei parlare con ...</i>
I'll call back later.	<i>Richiamo più tardi.</i>

Making Una Telefonata

Italians love their *telefonini*, also known as *cellulari*, which are constantly beeping and chirping. These can be rented from any airport, although it is just as easy to pick up a prepaid *scheda telefonica* (telephone card) for L5.000 or L10.000 and use public phones. After breaking off the corner at the dotted line, just slide it into any phone that accepts cards. You can check to see how much money you still have left on your card by looking at the small screen on top of the phone. Most phones also accept coins, but it can be cumbersome having to constantly feed the machine. A few older phones require the use of a *gettone* (token), but these are quickly disappearing.

Hello, Operator?

You can run into many problems when you're making a phone call. You may dial the wrong number or hear a recording telling you the number is no longer in service. The following are some phrases you might hear or want to say to an operator. They may be in the past tense, so keep an ear out for the auxiliary verbs and their participles.

What you might say:

È caduta la linea.

La linea è sempre occupata.

Mi scusi, ho sbagliato numero.

Non posso prendere la linea.

Posso parlare con un operatore internazionale?

Mi può mettere in comunicazione con ...?

The line was disconnected.

The line is always busy.

Excuse me, I dialed the wrong number.

I can't get a line.

May I speak with an international operator?

Can you connect me with ...?

What the operator might say:

Attendere.

Che numero ha fatto?

Non risponde.

Questo (quel) numero di telefono è fuori servizio.

Questo (quel) numero non funziona.

Hold.

What number did you dial?

No one is answering.

This (that) number is out of service.

This (that) number does not work.



La Bella Lingua

When calling back home from Italy, it's always cheaper to charge your calls to your home phone. To contact MCI from anywhere in Italy, dial 172-1022. To contact AT&T, dial 172-1011. Although this is a toll-free call, you'll still need to use a calling card or L200 to get a line. Make sure you get your password *before* you leave for Italy.

Just the Fax

You might have some business to attend to while you are away or need directions to your next destination point. The following terms all relate to sending messages electronically or through the telephone lines.

Faxing Lingo

English	L'Italiano
fax/fax machine	<i>il facsimile/il fax</i>
fax number	<i>il numero di fax</i>
to send a fax	<i>inviare un fax/"faxare"</i>
fax modem	<i>il fax modem</i>
Internet	<i>l'internet</i>
e-mail	<i>la posta elettronica</i>
e-mail address	<i>l'indirizzo elettronico/internet</i>

Rain or Shine: The Post Office

A visit to *l'ufficio postale* (the post office) can bring the most reasonable person to the verge of insanity. All you want is a stamp, but you've got to wait in *la fila* (line) just like everyone else. If you want to send a *pacco*, you wait in one line only to find out you need to go to the other *sportello* (counter).

Take a deep breath and remember: You're not just in the post office, you're in the post office in *Italy*. Things could be worse.

The Post Office

English	L'Italiano
addressee	<i>il recipiente</i>
cardboard box	<i>la scatola di cartone</i>
counter/window	<i>lo sportello</i>
envelope	<i>la busta</i>
extra postage	<i>la soprattassa postale</i>
letter	<i>la lettera</i>
line	<i>la fila</i>
mail	<i>la posta</i>
mail carrier	<i>il postino</i>
mailbox	<i>la buca da lettere, la cassetta della posta</i>
money transfer	<i>il vaglia postale, il vaglia telegrafico</i>
package	<i>il pacco</i>
packing paper	<i>la carta da pacchi</i>
post office	<i>l'ufficio postale</i>
post office box	<i>la cassetta postale</i>
postage	<i>la tariffa postale</i>
postal worker	<i>l'impiegato(a) postale</i>

English	L'Italiano
postcard	<i>la cartolina</i>
receipt	<i>la ricevuta</i>
to send	<i>spedire, mandare</i>
sender	<i>il mittente</i>
stamps	<i>i francobolli</i>
telegram	<i>il telegramma</i>

Rain or Shine

There are many different ways to send something—some costing more, some taking longer than others. If you don't indicate how you want something to be shipped, chances are good that it will take the longest route. *Vorrei mandare questa lettera ...* (I'd like to send this letter ...).

Letter Perfect

English	L'Italiano
by air mail	<i>per posta aerea/per via aerea</i>
by C.O.D.	<i>con pagamento alla consegna</i>
by express mail	<i>per espresso</i>
by special delivery	<i>per corriere speciale</i>
registered mail	<i>per posta raccomandata</i>

Getting Service

Do you need to communicate your postal needs quickly? The following phrases should get you and your mail out the door as fast as possible.

Going Postal

English	L'Italiano
Where is the ...	<i>Dov'è ...</i>
... post office?	<i>... l'ufficio postale?</i>
... mailbox?	<i>... la buca da lettere?</i>
What is the postal rate?	<i>Qual è la tariffa postale?</i>
I would like to send this letter	<i>Vorrei spedire questa lettera ...</i>
... by airmail.	<i>... per posta aerea.</i>
... by express mail.	<i>... per espresso.</i>
... registered mail.	<i>... per posta raccomandata.</i>

continues

Going Postal (continued)

English	L'Italiano
How much does this letter (this package) weigh?	Quanto pesa questa lettera (questo pacco)?
When will it arrive?	Quando arriverà?



As a Rule

Remember that cities take the preposition *a*, whereas countries take the preposition *in*. Remember to use the correct form of the demonstrative adjective (*questo/questa* and so on) before the noun you are using.

Vorrei mandare questa lettera a Roma ma questo pacco va in Francia.

Dear Gianni

Pick up some beautiful handmade marbled paper from a *cartoleria* in Firenze. You don't have to write a lot; a couple of lines letting someone know you appreciate him or her goes a long way.

La Lettera

Letter	La Lettera
Dear (informal)	<i>Caro/a</i>
Dear (formal)	<i>Egregio/a</i>
Affectionately (informal)	<i>Affettuosamente</i>
Cordially (formal)	<i>Cordialmente</i>
Yours (formal)	<i>il Suo/la Sua</i>
Yours (informal)	<i>il tuo/la tua</i>
Sincerely (formal)	<i>Sinceramente</i>
A hug (informal)	<i>Un abbraccio</i>
Soon! (informal)	<i>A presto!</i>

Che Sarà Sarà: The Future

The future tense is quite easy. It is used in Italian in exactly the same manner as English. Some irregular verbs may change their stem (such as *potere*, *fare*, and *andare*), but future endings are all the same for all three verb families.

Unlike most verb conjugations, where you add the appropriate conjugated ending to the infinitive stem, the future endings are added to the end of the infinitive minus its final *-e*. Regular *-are* verbs must also change the final *-a* of the future stem to *-e*, except the verbs *dare*, *fare*, and *stare*.

Future Endings

Subject	Future Endings
<i>io</i>	<i>-ò</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>-ai</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>-à</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>-emo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>-ete</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>-anno</i>

The following illustrates how the future works in all three verb families. Pay attention to what happens to the *-are* verb *parlare*.

Future Examples

Subject	Parlare	Scrivere	Capire
<i>io</i>	<i>parlerò</i>	<i>scriverò</i>	<i>capirò</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>parlerai</i>	<i>scriverai</i>	<i>capirai</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>parlerà</i>	<i>scriverà</i>	<i>capirà</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>parleremo</i>	<i>scriveremo</i>	<i>capiremo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>parlerete</i>	<i>scriverete</i>	<i>capirete</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>parleranno</i>	<i>scriveranno</i>	<i>capiranno</i>

*Ti parlerò domani.
Durante la sua vacanza,
Maria scriverà molte lettere.*

I'll speak to you tomorrow.
During her vacation,
Maria will write many letters.

What Will Be Will Be

You may already be familiar with the old Italian adage *Che sarà sarà!* (What will be, will be!) The following table shows how you talk about the future. As usual, the irregular verb *essere* has its own set of rules.

Essere (to Be)

Italian	English
<i>io sarò</i>	I will be
<i>tu sarai</i>	you will be
<i>lui/lei/Lei sarà</i>	he/she/(it)* will be; You will be
<i>noi saremo</i>	we will be
<i>voi sarete</i>	you will be
<i>loro saranno</i>	they will be

*As you learned in Chapter 9, "Being There," Italian has no neuter "it" but uses the verb form alone to refer to things and animals.



As a Rule

In Italian, you can express probability by using the future tense.

Dov'è Roberto?

Where is Robert?

Sarà in giro.

He must be around.

What Will You Have?

The following table shows how the irregular verb *avere* is conjugated in the future.

Avere (to Have)

Italian	English
<i>io avrò</i>	I will have
<i>tu avrai</i>	you will have
<i>lui/lei/Lei avrà</i>	he/she/You will have

Italian	English
<i>noi avremo</i>	we will have
<i>voi avrete</i>	you will have
<i>loro avranno</i>	they will have

Look for the Pattern

Verbs that end in *-care* or *-gare* (such as *cercare*, *giocare*, and *pagare*) add an *-h* before the *-er* base in order to maintain the original sound of their infinitives.

Verb	Stem	Future Conjugations
<i>cercare</i> →	<i>cercher-</i>	<i>cercherò, cercherai, cercherà ...</i>
<i>giocare</i> →	<i>giocher-</i>	<i>giocherò, giocherai, giocherà ...</i>
<i>pagare</i> →	<i>pagher-</i>	<i>pagherò, pagherai, pagherà ...</i>

Many verbs that end in *-iare* (such as *cominciare*, *lasciare*, *mangiare*, and *noleggiare*) change *-ia* to *-e*.

Verb	Stem	Future Conjugations
<i>cominciare</i> →	<i>comincer-</i>	<i>comincerò, comincerai, comincerà ...</i>
<i>lasciare</i> →	<i>lascier-</i>	<i>lascierò, lascerai, lascerà ...</i>
<i>mangiare</i> →	<i>manger-</i>	<i>mangerò, mangerai, mangerà ...</i>



As a Rule

Often it is not the endings that are irregular in the future tense, but the stems of the infinitives. Once you have memorized the stem, you will have no problem conjugating a verb into the future.

Irregular Stems

The following table shows a list of commonly used verbs with irregular future stems. However, once the stem has been changed, these verbs use regular future endings.

Verb	Stem	Future
<i>andare</i> (to go)	<i>andr-</i>	<i>andrò, andrai ...</i>
<i>bere</i> (to drink)	<i>berr-</i>	<i>berrò, berrai ...</i>
<i>dare</i> (to give)	<i>dar-</i>	<i>darò, darai ...</i>
<i>dovere</i> (to have to)	<i>dovr-</i>	<i>dovrò, dovrai ...</i>
<i>fare</i> (to do/make)	<i>far-</i>	<i>farò, farai ...</i>
<i>giocare</i> (to play)	<i>giocher-</i>	<i>giocherò, giocherai ...</i>
<i>potere</i> (to be able to)	<i>potr-</i>	<i>potrò, potrai ...</i>
<i>rimanere</i> (to remain)	<i>rimarr-</i>	<i>rimarrò, rimarrai ...</i>
<i>sapere</i> (to know)	<i>sapr-</i>	<i>saprò, saprai ...</i>
<i>stare</i> (to stay)	<i>star-</i>	<i>starò, starai ...</i>
<i>tenere</i> (to hold)	<i>terr-</i>	<i>terrò, terrai ...</i>
<i>vedere</i> (to see)	<i>vedr-</i>	<i>vedrò, vedrai ...</i>
<i>vivere</i> (to live)	<i>vivr-</i>	<i>vivrò, vivrai ...</i>

Ti darò i soldi fra una settimana.

I'll give you the money in a week.

Staremo in vacanza per dieci giorni.

We will be on vacation for ten days.

Back to the Future

Fill in the blanks with the proper future conjugation of the following verbs. Look at the stems to determine the rest:

	<i>Andare</i>	<i>Dovere</i>	<i>Potere</i>	<i>Sapere</i>	<i>Vedere</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>andrò</i>	<i>dovrò</i>	<i>potrò</i>	<i>saprò</i>	<i>vedrò</i>
<i>tu</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____	_____	<i>potrà</i>	_____	_____
<i>noi</i>	<i>andremo</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	<i>vedrete</i>
<i>loro</i>	_____	_____	_____	<i>sapranno</i>	_____

Verbs such as *bere*, *rimanere*, *tenere*, *venire*, and *volere* double the final *-r* before the endings. See if you can fill in the conjugation for them:

	<i>Bere</i>	<i>Rimanere</i>	<i>Tenere</i>	<i>Venire</i>	<i>Volere</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>berrò</i>	<i>rimarrò</i>	<i>terrò</i>	<i>verrò</i>	<i>vorrò</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>berrai</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

	<i>Bere</i>	<i>Rimanere</i>	<i>Tenere</i>	<i>Venire</i>	<i>Volere</i>
<i>noi</i>	_____	<i>rimarremo</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>voi</i>	_____	<i>rimarrete</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>loro</i>	_____	_____	_____	<i>verranno</i>	_____

Now let's put it all together. Replace the underlined verbs with the future tense.

Domani ho molto da fare. Devo fare la spesa per la cena. Prima devo comprare la frutta al mercato, poi compro il pane alla panetteria. Vado al supermercato per comprare la pasta e poi voglio andare alla pescheria per un bel filetto di sogliola. Probabilmente sono stanca; allora prendo l'autobus per tornare a casa. I miei amici arrivano alle otto.

The Future Perfect

When you have finished this book, *you will have learned* the Italian language. The future perfect is a compound tense that indicates something *will have happened* in the future before another future action. You form the future perfect by using either the auxiliary verb *avere* or *essere* in the future and the past participle of a verb.

*Per l'anno prossimo avrò
imparato l'italiano.*

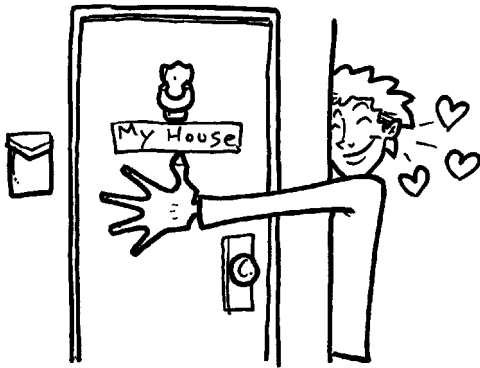
*Sarai tornato dal lavoro
alle otto?*

I will have learned Italian
by next year.

Will you have returned from
work by 8:00?

The Least You Need to Know

- The future endings are the same for all three verb families.
- Many verbs have irregular stems in the future tense.
- The verbs *avere* and *essere* are irregular in the future and must be memorized.



Home Sweet Home

In This Chapter

- ▶ Apartments and houses
- ▶ Rooms, furnishings, and amenities
- ▶ The conditional tense

Some people visit Italy and never leave. If you're one of the many who have fallen in love with the beautiful panoramas, wonderful food, and warm people, you may want to invest in a house or villa (or maybe even a castle!) nestled deep within the Italian countryside. You'll also learn about the conditional tense!

Your Home Away from Home

Pick up a local paper and comb through the real estate section to search for your perfect home. How many bedrooms does it have? Is there a balcony? The following table lists the various features people look for in a home. Use the expression *Ce l'ha ...* (Does it have ...) to ask if it has what you're looking for.

Internal Affairs

English	L'Italiano	English	L'Italiano
air conditioning	<i>l'aria condizionata</i>	hallway	<i>il corridoio</i>
apartment	<i>l'appartamento</i>	heating	<i>il riscaldamento</i>
attic	<i>la soffitta</i>	electric	<i>elettrico</i>
balcony	<i>il balcone</i>	gas	<i>a gas</i>
basement	<i>la cantina</i>	house	<i>la casa</i>
bathroom	<i>il bagno</i>	kitchen	<i>la cucina</i>
bath tub	<i>la vasca da bagno</i>	laundry room	<i>la lavanderia</i>
bedroom	<i>la camera da letto</i>	lease	<i>il contratto di affitto</i>
building	<i>il palazzo, l'edificio</i>	living room	<i>il soggiorno</i>
ceiling	<i>il soffitto</i>	maintenance	<i>la manutenzione</i>
closet	<i>l'armadio, il guardaroba</i>	owner	<i>il padrone di casa</i>
condominium	<i>il condominio</i>	rent	<i>l'affitto</i>
courtyard	<i>il cortile</i>	roof	<i>il tetto</i>
day room	<i>il soggiorno</i>	room	<i>la stanza, la camera</i>
dining room	<i>la sala da pranzo</i>	security deposit	<i>il deposito cauzionale</i>
entrance	<i>l'ingresso</i>	shower	<i>la doccia</i>
elevator	<i>l'ascensore</i>	stairs	<i>le scale</i>
fireplace	<i>il camino</i>	storage room	<i>la cantina</i>
floor	<i>il pavimento</i>	tenant	<i>l'inquilino, l'affittuario</i>
floor (story)	<i>il piano</i>	terrace	<i>la terrazza</i>
garden	<i>il giardino</i>	villa	<i>la villa</i>
garage	<i>il garage</i>	window	<i>la finestra</i>
ground floor	<i>il pianterreno</i>		

Inside Your Home

Is the house furnished, or do you have to provide your own bed? Is there an eat-in kitchen? Curtains for the windows? Clothes dryers are quite uncommon in Italy; you'll have to *stendere* your clothes on a line just like the Italians do. The following table gives you the names of the basics you need to live comfortably.

Furniture and Accessories

Furniture	I Mobili	Furniture	I Mobili
armchair	<i>la poltrona</i>	carpet	<i>il tappeto</i>
bed	<i>il letto</i>	chair	<i>la sedia</i>
bookcase	<i>la libreria</i>	chest of drawers	<i>il cassettone</i>

Furniture	<i>I Mobili</i>	Furniture	<i>I Mobili</i>
desk	<i>la scrivania</i>	refrigerator	<i>il frigorifero</i>
dishwasher	<i>la lavapiatti, la lavastoviglie</i>	rug	<i>il tappeto</i>
dresser	<i>la cassetiera</i>	sideboard	<i>la credenza</i>
freezer	<i>il freezer</i>	sofa	<i>il divano</i>
furniture	<i>i mobili</i>	stereo	<i>lo stereo</i>
glass case	<i>la cristalliera</i>	stove	<i>la macchina del gas</i>
lamp	<i>la lampada</i>	table	<i>il tavolo</i>
microwave oven	<i>il forno a microonde</i>	television	<i>la televisione, il televisore</i>
mirror	<i>lo specchio</i>	trunk	<i>il baule</i>
night table	<i>il comodino</i>	VCR	<i>il videoregistratore</i>
oven	<i>il forno</i>	washing machine	<i>la lavatrice</i>

Buying or Renting

You'll have lots of questions for a real estate agent or management company. You don't want anyone to waste the agent's (or your) time looking at things that aren't consistent with your vision. Being able to say what your *esigenze* (needs) are will help you get exactly what you want.



Did You Know?

Current rent laws in Italy make it quite difficult for a landlord to reclaim a property once he has a renter, regardless of the circumstances. Also, if a piece of land has not been used for a long time, that land becomes public property and can be used for a variety of purposes, usually for agricultural or pastoral needs.

Oh, Give Me a Home ...

English	<i>L'Italiano</i>
I am looking for ...	<i>Sto cercando ...</i>
I need ...	<i>Ho bisogno di ...</i>

continues

Oh, Give Me a Home ... (continued)

English	L'Italiano
Where can I find ...	<i>Dove posso trovare ...</i>
... the classified ads?	<i>... gli annunci (immobiliari)?</i>
... a real estate agency?	<i>... un'agenzia immobiliare?</i>
I'd like ...	<i>Vorrei ...</i>
... to lease.	<i>... noleggiare.</i>
... to rent.	<i>... affittare.</i>
... to buy.	<i>... comprare.</i>
Is this house available to rent?	<i>È possibile affittare questa casa?</i>
Is there rent control?	<i>C'è l'equo cannone?</i>
How much is the rent ...	<i>Quanto è l'affitto ...</i>
... per week?	<i>... alla settimana?</i>
... per month?	<i>... al mese?</i>
Does it include ...	<i>Include ...</i>
... heat?	<i>... il riscaldamento?</i>
... water?	<i>... l'acqua?</i>
... electric?	<i>... la corrente?</i>
Do I have to leave a deposit?	<i>Devo lasciare un deposito?</i>
How many square meters?	<i>Quanti metri quadrati?</i>

Useful Verbs

It's always good to know your verbs. The following table contains a few you might find useful when shopping around for a home.

Verbs for Renting (or Buying)

Verb	Il Verbo
to buy	<i>comprare</i>
to lease	<i>noleggiare</i>
to move	<i>cambiare casa</i>
to rent	<i>affittare/prendere in affitto</i>
to sell	<i>vendere</i>
to share	<i>condividere</i>
to transfer	<i>trasferirsi</i>

Bright, Spacious, and Cheap

Is your concern light or space? Do you want something modern or old? The adjectives in the following table can help you describe just what you're looking for.

It Looks Like ...

Adjective	L'Aggettivo	Adjective	L'Aggettivo
antique	<i>antico</i>	new	<i>nuovo</i>
big	<i>grande</i>	noisy	<i>rumoroso</i>
bright	<i>luminoso</i>	old	<i>vecchio</i>
luxurious	<i>lussuoso</i>	quiet	<i>silenzioso</i>
modern	<i>moderno</i>	restored	<i>ristrutturato, restaurato</i>
modest	<i>modesto</i>	small	<i>piccolo</i>

How's Your Italian?

Read the following *annunci* (ads) in the real estate section and see how much you understand. If you're staying for a couple of weeks somewhere, why not rent a room in someone's apartment? Usually there's a maximum stay of three weeks, but if an owner likes you, you may be able to stay longer. Many ads indicate when you should call: *Ore pasti* refers to lunch and dinner hours. Other ads will tell you not to waste any time: *No perditempo*. Keep in mind that Italians use the metric system. *Metri quadrati* refers to square meters.

Trastevere

Appartamento in affitto. 40 mq. Secondo piano. Luminoso, ristrutturato. Referenze.

No perditempo.

06-34-56-32

Testaccio

Palazzo in vendita. 4 piani, 8 appartamenti: da ristrutturare. No agenzie.

06-45-16-22

Via Flaminia

Casa in vendita o affitto. Totale mq. 180. Giardino mq. 1500 con alberi alto fusto.

Migliore offerente. Dilazioni. Tel. ore pasti

06-78-53-10

Centro

Camera affittasi a turisti in ampio appartamento. Uso cucina. Massimo 3 settimane—

1 settimana di deposito.

06-99-45-12

That Would Be Nice: The Conditional Tense

When *should* you use the conditional tense? You *would* use it whenever you *would* like to express what *would* happen or what you *would* do under certain circumstances.

Forming the Conditional Tense

The conditional tense follows easy, idiot-proof rules that make it one of the easier tenses to learn. Verbs that are irregular in the present tense tend to be regular in the conditional. The same stems you learned for the future tense apply to the conditional tense.

As you saw with the future tense, simply drop the final *-e* of the infinitive and add the endings. Regular *-are* verbs, except the verbs *dare*, *fare*, and *stare*, must again change the final *-a* of their base to *-e*.

The conditional tense is often used in conjunction with another tense, the subjunctive. You'll see how that works in the next chapter.

Conditional Endings

Subject	Conditional Endings
<i>io</i>	<i>-ei</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>-esti</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>-ebbe</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>-emmo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>-este</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>-ebbero</i>

The following examples illustrate how the conditional works.

Conditional Examples

Subject	<i>Parlare</i>	<i>Vendere</i>	<i>Capire</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>parlerei</i>	<i>venderei</i>	<i>capirei</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>parleresti</i>	<i>venderesti</i>	<i>capiresti</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>parlerebbe</i>	<i>venderebbe</i>	<i>capirebbe</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>parleremmo</i>	<i>venderemmo</i>	<i>capiremmo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>parlereste</i>	<i>vendereste</i>	<i>capireste</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>parlerebbero</i>	<i>venderebbero</i>	<i>capirebbero</i>

*Non gli parlerei per nessun motivo.
Per quattro soldi venderebbe anche
sua madre.*

I wouldn't talk to him for any reason.
For money, he would even sell
his mother.

The verb *essere* maintains the same stem as it did for the future tense.

Essere (to Be)

Italian	English
<i>io sarei</i>	I would be
<i>tu saresti</i>	you would be
<i>lui/lei/Lei sarebbe</i>	he/she/You would be
<i>noi saremmo</i>	we would be
<i>voi sareste</i>	you would be
<i>loro sarebbero</i>	they would be

Andare in Italia sarebbe una buona idea. Going to Italy would be a good idea.

Sareste interessati a fare un viaggio? Would you be interested in taking a trip?



As a Rule

The conditional tense uses the same stems as the future. Once you have learned the stems, you simply add the appropriate conditional ending. Note that the first person plural in the future should not be confused with the conditional, which has an extra *-m*:

Future: *Vorremo* (we will want)

Conditional: *Vorremmo* (we would like)

What Would You Have?

The following table shows how the verb *avere* is conjugated in the conditional.

Avere (to Have)

Italian	English
<i>io avrei</i>	I would have
<i>tu avresti</i>	you would have
<i>lui/lei/Lei avrebbe</i>	he/she/You would have

continues

Avere (to Have) (continued)

Italian	English
<i>noi avremmo</i>	we would have
<i>voi avreste</i>	you would have
<i>loro avrebbero</i>	they would have

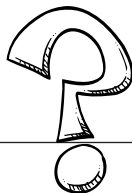
Look for the Pattern II

Just like you saw in the future tense, verbs that end in *-care* or *-gare* (such as *cercare*, *giocare*, and *pagare*) add an *-h* before the *-er* base to maintain the original sound of their infinitives:

Verb		Stem	Conditional Conjugations
<i>cercare</i>	→	<i>cercher-</i>	<i>cercherei, cercheresti, cercherebbe ...</i>
<i>giocare</i>	→	<i>giocher-</i>	<i>giocherei, giocheresti, giocherebbe ...</i>
<i>pagare</i>	→	<i>pagher-</i>	<i>pagherei, pagheresti, pagherebbe ...</i>

Many verbs that end in *-iare*, (such as *cominciare*, *lasciare*, *mangiare*, and *noleggare*) change *-ia* to *-e*.

Verb		Stem	Conjugations
<i>cominciare</i>	→	<i>comincer-</i>	<i>comincerei, cominceresti, comincerebbe ...</i>
<i>lasciare</i>	→	<i>lascer-</i>	<i>lascerei, lasceresti, lascerebbe ...</i>
<i>mangiare</i>	→	<i>manger-</i>	<i>mangerei, mangeresti, mangerebbe ...</i>



What's What

The conditional tense of the verbs *dovere*, *potere*, and *volere* express "should," "could," and "would like."

Stem Changing Verbs

Let's look at some of those stem changing verbs again. Try finishing the conjugations.

Verb	Stem	Conditional
<i>andare</i> (to go)	<i>andr-</i>	<i>andrei, andresti ...</i>
<i>bere</i> (to drink)	<i>berr-</i>	<i>berrei, berresti ...</i>
<i>dare</i> (to give)	<i>dar-</i>	<i>darei, daresti ...</i>
<i>fare</i> (to do/make)	<i>far-</i>	<i>farei, faresti ...</i>
<i>rimanere</i> (to remain)	<i>rimarr-</i>	<i>rimarrei, rimarresti ...</i>
<i>sapere</i> (to know)	<i>sapr-</i>	<i>saprei, sapresti ...</i>
<i>stare</i> (to stay)	<i>star-</i>	<i>starei, staresti ...</i>
<i>tenere</i> (to hold)	<i>terr-</i>	<i>terrei, terresti ...</i>
<i>vedere</i> (to see)	<i>vedr-</i>	<i>vedrei, vedresti ...</i>
<i>venire</i> (to come)	<i>verr-</i>	<i>verrei, verresti ...</i>



As a Rule

The verb *piacere* is used in the conditional to indicate that something would be pleasing to you.

Ti piacerebbe andare al cinema? Would you like to go to the movies?

Si, mi piacerebbe andarci. Yes, I'd like to go (there).

Coulda, Shoulda, Woulda

The verbs *dovere* (to have to), *potere* (to be able to), and *volere* (to want) are often used in the conditional tense. When you should do something, you use the verb *dovere*. When you could do something, use the verb *potere*. When you would like something, use *volere*. These verbs in the conditional are often used with the infinitive form of another verb.

Dovere, Potere, and Volere

Subject	Dovere	Potere	Volere
<i>io</i>	<i>dovrei</i>	<i>potrei</i>	<i>vorrei</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>dovresti</i>	<i>potresti</i>	<i>vorresti</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>dovrebbe</i>	<i>potrebbe</i>	<i>vorrebbe</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>dovremmo</i>	<i>potremmo</i>	<i>vorremmo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>dovreste</i>	<i>potreste</i>	<i>vorreste</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>dovrebbero</i>	<i>potrebbero</i>	<i>vorrebbero</i>

Dovresti studiare di più.

You should study more.

Andare in Italia potrebbe essere una buona idea.

Going to Italy could be a good idea.

Vorresti bere un tè?

Would you like to drink a tea?



La Bella Lingua

To form the conditional past tense, as in “I would have gone” or “He would have eaten,” simply use the conditional form of the appropriate helping verb *avere* or *essere* + the past participle. The past conditional is most often used in conjunction with the subjunctive mood.

Practice Makes Perfetto

Translate the following sentences into Italian:

1. I'd like to go to Italy for the summer.
2. We should leave; it's getting late.
3. I could come later.
4. Sofia, would you like to see a film?
5. I'd like a big house in the country.
6. I would be rich with a million dollars.

The Least You Need to Know

- The conditional is formed by adding the conditional endings to the stem of the verbs.
- Many irregular stems are the same as used in the future tense.
- To express that you should, could, or would like, you must use the conditional form of the verbs *dovere*, *potere*, and *volere*.
- The verb *piacere* is used in the conditional to indicate that something would be pleasing to you and is used like the verb *volere*, as in “would like.”



Money Matters

In This Chapter

- ▶ Banking terms
- ▶ Business lingo and titles
- ▶ The subjunctive
- ▶ The past absolute

Money can't buy you love, but you sure can have fun spending it. For people doing business in Italy and for those fortunate enough to have the opportunity to stay in Italy for an extended *periodo*, this chapter gives you the terms you need to open a bank account, take out a mortgage, or make an investment. It also teaches you the subjunctive, a tense used most often when one is thinking about a hypothetical situation (such as, you guessed it, living in Italy).

Bank on It

Let's face it, banking terms are neither sexy nor fun, but they are absolutely *necessario*. Money talks, and so do you.



Did You Know?

Founded in 1472, Monte dei Paschi di Siena is one of the oldest banks in the world. The official currency used at the time was the *florin* (named after Florence), but credit as we know it today was an alien concept until the creation of the *cambiale*—the first example of an official document stating one’s debt to another. In today’s world, we call this a check.

Mini Dictionary of Banking Terms

The Bank	<i>La Banca</i>
account	<i>il conto</i>
... checking account	<i>... il conto corrente</i>
... savings account	<i>... il conto di deposito</i>
amount due (balance)	<i>corrispettivo non pagato</i>
amount paid	<i>corrispettivo riscosso</i>
automated teller machine	<i>Bancomat/lo sportello</i>
balance	<i>l'estratto conto</i>
bank	<i>la banca</i>
... savings bank	<i>... la cassa di risparmio</i>
bank account	<i>il conto bancario</i>
bill	<i>la bolletta, il conto, la fattura</i>
bill of sale	<i>l'atto di vendita</i>
bills payable	<i>gli effetti passivi</i>
bills receivable	<i>gli effetti attivi</i>
to borrow	<i>prendere in prestito</i>
branch	<i>la filiale</i>
cash	<i>i contanti</i>
cashier	<i>il cassiere</i>
change	<i>gli spiccioli</i>
change (transaction)	<i>il cambio</i>
check	<i>l'assegno</i>
checkbook	<i>il libretto degli assegni</i>
checking account	<i>il conto corrente</i>
coins	<i>le monete</i>
credit	<i>il credito</i>
currency (foreign)	<i>la valuta</i>

The Bank	La Banca
customer	<i>il cliente</i>
debt	<i>il debito</i>
deposit	<i>il deposito</i>
down payment	<i>l'anticipo</i>
employee	<i>l'impiegato</i>
endorse	<i>la girata</i>
exchange rate	<i>il tasso di scambio</i>
final payment	<i>il saldo</i>
guarantee	<i>la garanzia</i>
holder	<i>il titolare</i>
installment plan	<i>il piano di pagamento</i>
interest	<i>l'interesse</i>
... compound	<i>... composto</i>
... rate	<i>... tasso di</i>
investment	<i>l'investimento</i>
invoice	<i>la fattura</i>
loan	<i>il prestito</i>
long term	<i>a lungo termine</i>
monthly statement	<i>l'estratto conto</i>
mortgage	<i>il mutuo</i>
overdrawn account	<i>il conto scoperto</i>
overdrawn check	<i>l'assegno scoperto</i>
payment	<i>il pagamento</i>
percentage	<i>la percentuale</i>
promissory note	<i>la cambiale</i>
quarter	<i>il trimestre</i>
rate	<i>la rata</i>
receipt	<i>la ricevuta</i>
revenue	<i>i ricavi</i>
safe	<i>la cassaforte</i>
sale	<i>la vendita</i>
savings book	<i>il libretto di risparmio</i>
short term	<i>a breve termine</i>
signature	<i>la firma</i>
stock	<i>l'azione</i>
sum	<i>la somma</i>
teller	<i>l'impiegato di banca</i>
total	<i>il totale</i>
traveler's check	<i>travel check</i>
window	<i>lo sportello</i>

Do you need to cancel a check? Open an account? Take out a loan to continue your fabulous Italian vacation? You may need to know the verbs in the following table. Verbs used in idiomatic expressions are in parenthesis to remind you they need to be conjugated.

Banking Lingo

Verb	Il Verbo
to annul/cancel	<i>annullare</i>
to balance the accounts	<i>(fare) tornare i conti</i>
to cash	<i>incassare</i>
to change money	<i>(cambiare) i soldi</i>
to close an account	<i>(chiudere) il conto</i>
to deposit	<i>depositare</i>
to do the accounting	<i>(tenere) i conti</i>
to endorse	<i>girare</i>
to fill out (a form)	<i>riempire, compilare</i>
to go to the bank	<i>(andare) in banca</i>
to invest	<i>investire</i>
to loan	<i>prestare</i>
to manage	<i>occuparsi</i>
to open an account	<i>(aprire) un conto</i>
to pay by check	<i>(pagare) con assegno</i>
to pay cash	<i>(pagare) in contanti</i>
to save	<i>risparmiare</i>
to sign	<i>firmare</i>
to take out a loan	<i>(prendere) in prestito</i>
to transfer	<i>trasferire</i>
to withdraw	<i>ritirare</i>

Transactions

You already have all the skills you need to express your needs at the bank, so let's practice a little. Use the conditional of *volere* (*Vorrei ...*) to tell the nice folks at the bank you would like to do the following:

1. Open a checking account
2. Take out a loan
3. Change some money
4. Cash a check
5. Make a deposit
6. Make a withdrawal



La Bella Lingua

If you're in business, these titles will help you know who's who:

Chief Executive Officer	<i>Amministratore Delegato</i>
President	<i>Presidente</i>
Vice president	<i>Vice Presidente</i>
Director	<i>Direttore</i>
Consultant	<i>Consulente</i>
Manager	<i>Manager</i>
Sales representative	<i>Commesso</i>

The Wheel of Life

These days, with multitasking as the norm, it's more difficult to pinpoint professions. The terms in the following table will help you talk about where you fit in.

Trades

Trade	<i>Mestiere</i>	Trade	<i>Mestiere</i>
banking	<i>banca</i>	insurance	<i>assicurazioni</i>
communications	<i>comunicazioni</i>	law	<i>legge</i>
computers	<i>computer</i>	manufacturing	<i>produzione</i>
construction	<i>costruzioni</i>	marketing	<i>marketing</i>
design	<i>design</i>	medicine	<i>medicina</i>
development	<i>sviluppo</i>	public relations	<i>pubbliche relazioni</i>
education	<i>istruzione, pedagogia</i>	publishing	<i>editoria</i>
engineering	<i>ingegneria</i>	real estate	<i>immobiliari</i>
fashion	<i>moda</i>	retail	<i>vendita al dettaglio</i>
finance	<i>finanza</i>	sales	<i>vendite</i>
food services	<i>alimentazione</i>	software	<i>software</i>
government	<i>governo</i>		

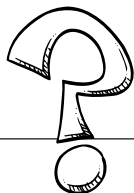
Everyone Has Needs: *Il Congiuntivo* (The Subjunctive)

Il congiuntivo is not pink eye; it's the subjunctive. The subjunctive is a mood, not a tense, and it expresses wishes, feelings, and doubt. It's the mood you use to express your hunches, your dreams, and your musings. As opposed to describing what is, the subjunctive describes what might be.



La Bella Lingua

Several English business terms have made their way into Italian, including the words for "business," "computer," "software," and "fax."



What's What

The **present subjunctive** can be used to refer to either the present or the future. The **past subjunctive** talks about things you "wished had happened."

You use the subjunctive every time you express your opinion or describe a hypothetical situation. When the fiddler on the roof starts singing, he's using the subjunctive mood in the imperfect tense: "If I *were* a rich man"

Using the Subjunctive

The subjunctive is most often used in dependent clauses introduced by *che*, (meaning "that," as in "I think that ..." or "It's important that ...").

Penso che Marcello arrivi domani.

I think that Marcello is arriving tomorrow.

È importante che lui parli con un dottore.

It's important that he speak to a doctor.

The present subjunctive is formed by adding the subjunctive endings to the stem of the verb. Unlike future and conditional stems, most subjunctive stems change little from the infinitive.

Unless you are using a proper noun, you need to use the singular subject pronouns (*io, tu, lui/lei/Lei*) to distinguish the singular forms from one another. The pronouns are not necessary for the plural forms. The examples presented in the following three tables are given with *che* to familiarize you with this construction.

Present Subjunctive Examples

<i>Parlare</i>	<i>Vendere</i>	<i>Offrire</i>	<i>Capire</i>
<i>che io parli</i>	<i>che io venda</i>	<i>che io offra</i>	<i>che io capisca</i>
<i>che tu parli</i>	<i>che tu venda</i>	<i>che tu offra</i>	<i>che tu capisca</i>
<i>che lui/lei/Lei parli</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei venda</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei offra</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei capisca</i>
<i>che parliamo</i>	<i>che vendiamo</i>	<i>che offriamo</i>	<i>che capiamo</i>

<i>Parlare</i>	<i>Vendere</i>	<i>Offrire</i>	<i>Capire</i>
<i>che parliate</i>	<i>che vendiate</i>	<i>che offriate</i>	<i>che capiate</i>
<i>che parlino</i>	<i>che vendano</i>	<i>che offrano</i>	<i>che capiscano</i>

È difficile che lui venda la casa a quel prezzo.

Non penso che Maria capisca.

It's difficult for him to sell the house at that price.

I don't think that Maria understands.



As a Rule

The subjunctive is used when

1. Two different clauses exist (dependent and independent) pertaining to two different subjects.
2. Those clauses are joined by **che**.
3. One of these clauses expresses need, emotion, doubt, or an opinion:

Need: *È necessario che lui vada da un dottore.* It's necessary for him to go to the doctor.

Doubt: *Dubito che vinca la nostra squadra.* I doubt that our team will win.

Opinion: *Credo che tu sia la più bella donna del mondo.* I think that you are the most beautiful woman in the world.

Emotion: *Ho paura che sia troppo tardi per andarci.* I am afraid it's too late to go there.

The verbs *essere* and *avere* are both irregular.

Essere (to Be)

Essere

che io sia

che tu sia

che lui/lei/Lei sia

che siamo

che siate

che siano

Penso che Luisa sia bella.

Credo che siano a casa.

I think that Luisa is beautiful.

I believe that they are at home.

Avere (to Have)

Avere

che io **abbia**

che tu **abbia**

che lui/lei/Lei **abbia**

che **abbiamo**

che **abbiate**

che **abbiano**

*Penso che Tiziana **abbia** ragione.*

*È un peccato che non **abbiano** il tempo di venire.*

I think that Tiziana is right.

It's a shame that they don't have time to come.

Oh, So Moody

Oh, those irregularities. It should be no surprise at this point that there are several verbs with irregular subjunctive forms.

Irregular Verbs in the Present Subjunctive

Verb	Irregular Present Subjunctive
<i>andare</i>	<i>vada, vada, vada, andiamo, andiate, vadano</i>
<i>dare</i>	<i>dia, dia, dia, diamo, diate, diano</i>
<i>dire</i>	<i>dica, dica, dica, diciamo, diciate, dicano</i>
<i>dovere</i>	<i>debba, debba, debba, dobbiamo, dobbiate, debbano</i>
<i>fare</i>	<i>faccia, faccia, faccia, facciamo, facciate, facciano</i>
<i>mantenere</i>	<i>mantenga, mantenga, mantenga, manteniamo, manteniato, mantengano</i>
<i>piacere</i>	<i>piaccia, piaccia, piaccia, piacciamo, piacciate, piacciano</i>
<i>potere</i>	<i>possa, possa, possa, possiamo, possiate, possano</i>
<i>rimanere</i>	<i>rimanga, rimanga, rimanga, rimaniamo, rimaniato, rimangano</i>
<i>salire</i>	<i>salga, salga, salga, saliamo, saliate, salgano</i>
<i>sapere</i>	<i>sappia, sappia, sappia, sappiamo, sappiate, sappiano</i>
<i>stare</i>	<i>stia, stia, stia, stiamo, stiate, stiano</i>
<i>tenere</i>	<i>tenga, tenga, tenga, teniamo, teniate, tengano</i>
<i>venire</i>	<i>venga, venga, venga, veniamo, veniate, vengano</i>
<i>volere</i>	<i>voglia, voglia, voglia, vogliamo, vogliate, vogliano</i>

Dependent Clauses and the Subjunctive

The following expressions are all dependent clauses requiring the subjunctive mood. What makes a dependent clause? If a phrase cannot stand on its own, it is dependent. "I think that ..." depends on the independent clause, something like, "... it's

raining.” You use the subjunctive when you’re not sure of something. It could be raining or not.



As a Rule

When negating a sentence, you must place the word *non* between the subject pronoun and the subjunctive:

È possibile che io non possa venire. It’s possible that I can’t come.

Express Yourself

Expression	L'Espressione
<i>Expressions of Wishing, Emotion, Need, and Doubt</i>	
I am happy that ...	<i>Sono contento che ...</i>
I am sorry that ...	<i>Mi dispiace che ...</i>
I believe that ...	<i>Credo che ...</i>
I desire that ...	<i>Desidero che ...</i>
I doubt that ...	<i>Dubito che ...</i>
I imagine that ...	<i>Immagino che ...</i>
I think that ...	<i>Penso che ...</i>
I want that ...	<i>Voglio che ...</i>
<i>Impersonal Expressions and Conjunctions</i>	
although ...	<i>sebbene ...</i>
before ...	<i>prima che ...</i>
even though ...	<i>benché ...</i>
in case ...	<i>nel caso che ...</i>
It seems that ...	<i>Sembra che ...</i>
It’s difficult that ...	<i>È difficile che ...</i>
It’s easy that ...	<i>È facile che ...</i>
It’s good/bad that ...	<i>È bene/male che ...</i>
It’s important that ...	<i>È importante che ...</i>
It’s incredible that ...	<i>È incredibile che ...</i>

continues

Express Yourself (continued)

Expression	L'Espressione
<i>Impersonal Expressions and Conjunctions</i>	
It's likely (probable) that ...	<i>È probabile che ...</i>
It's necessary that ...	<i>Bisogna che ...</i>
It's not important that ...	<i>Non importa che ...</i>
It's possible/impossible that ...	<i>È possibile/impossibile che ...</i>
It's strange that ...	<i>È strano che ...</i>
provided that ...	<i>purché ...</i>
so that ...	<i>affinché ...</i>
unless ...	<i>a meno che ...</i>
until ...	<i>finché non ...</i>
without ...	<i>senza che ...</i>

Mi sembra che tu sia intelligente.

It seems to me that you are intelligent.

*Sebbene io non possa suonare il violino,
mi piace ascoltarlo.*

Although I can't play the violin,
I like listening to it.



Attenzione!

You can avoid the subjunctive altogether when the subject is the same for both the dependent and the independent clauses by using *di* plus the infinitive:

Penso di andare al cinema.

I'm thinking of going to the movies.

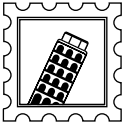
Practice Makes Perfetto

Paolo hopes she can go to Italy this summer to study the language. She wants her friend Silvia to join her on an excursion. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the subjunctive.

1 aprile
 Cara Silvia:
 Spero che tu ____ (stare) bene.

Ho ricevuto la tua lettera. È probabile che io ____ (venire) in Italia quest'estate. Penso che ____ (essere) una buon'idea per imparare la lingua e voglio che tu ____ (venire) con me in Sardegna. Mi dicono che l'isola ____ (essere) molto bella. Ti piace l'idea? Che cosa ne pensi? Basta che tu mi ____ (scrivere) la tua risposta. Sono contenta che la tua famiglia ____ (stare) bene. Scrivimi!

Un abbraccio forte,
 Paola



Silvia d'Argento
Via Flaminia 23
00100 Roma
Italia

The Past (Present Perfect) Subjunctive

To make the past subjunctive (*passato del congiuntivo*), you'll need to use the present subjunctive form of the auxiliary verbs *avere* or *essere* + the past participle of your verb. Remember that verbs requiring *essere* as their auxiliary reflect gender and number in the participle. You use the past (or "perfect") subjunctive when the action expressed by the verb of the dependent clause occurred before the action expressed by the verb in the independent clause. Study the following examples.

Past Subjunctive

<i>Avere + Telefonare</i>	<i>Essere + Andare</i>
<i>che io abbia telefonato</i>	<i>che io sia andato(a)</i>
<i>che tu abbia telefonato</i>	<i>che tu sia andato(a)</i>
<i>che lui/lei/Lei abbia telefonato</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei sia andato(a)</i>
<i>che noi abbiamo telefonato</i>	<i>che siamo andati(e)</i>
<i>che voi abbiate telefonato</i>	<i>che siate andati(e)</i>
<i>che loro abbiano telefonato</i>	<i>che siano andati(e)</i>

Sono contenta che tu abbia telefonato.

I am happy that you telephoned.

Sembra che lui sia diventato pazzo.

It seems that he has gone crazy.

Purely Speculation: The Imperfect Subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive (*imperfetto del congiuntivo*) is most often used when someone is talking about what they *would* do *if*, as in “If I *were* rich, I would buy a villa,” or “If I *had* more time, I would stay in better shape.”

Imperfetto

Parlare	Vendere	Offrire	Capire
<i>che io parlassi</i>	<i>che io vendessi</i>	<i>che io offrissi</i>	<i>che io capissi</i>
<i>che tu parlassi</i>	<i>che tu vendessi</i>	<i>che tu offrissi</i>	<i>che tu capissi</i>
<i>che lui/lei/Lei parlasse</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei vendesse</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei offrisse</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei capisse</i>
<i>che parlassimo</i>	<i>che vendessimo</i>	<i>che offrissimo</i>	<i>che capissimo</i>
<i>che parlaste</i>	<i>che vendeste</i>	<i>che offriste</i>	<i>che capiste</i>
<i>che parlassero</i>	<i>che vendessero</i>	<i>che offrissero</i>	<i>che capissero</i>

The Past Was Perfect

The possibilities are endless once you start mixing and matching auxiliary verbs in compound tenses. The past perfect subjunctive (*trapassato del congiuntivo*) is created by using the imperfect subjunctive of your auxiliary verb (*avere* or *essere*) + the past participle of the verb you are conjugating.

Trapassato

Parlare	Partire
<i>che io avessi parlato</i>	<i>che io fossi partito(a)</i>
<i>che tu avessi parlato</i>	<i>che tu fossi partito(a)</i>
<i>che lui/lei/Lei avesse parlato</i>	<i>che lui/lei/Lei fosse partito(a)</i>
<i>che avessimo parlato</i>	<i>che fossimo partiti(e)</i>
<i>che aveste parlato</i>	<i>che foste partiti(e)</i>
<i>che avessero parlato</i>	<i>che fossero partiti(e)</i>

Once Upon a Time: Il Passato Remoto

The *passato remoto* (also called the past definite and the past absolute) is a tense that goes so far back that it doesn't even have an equivalent in English. Although it translates to the simple past, as in “I went,” the *passato remoto* requires you to look at time differently.

The *passato remoto* is the tense you hear when a story begins, “Once upon a time” It is the tense used in literature, fables, and historical references to describe an event that took place at a specific time in the distant past. A highly irregular verb tense, at

times it is difficult to determine the infinitive of a conjugation. Although rarely used in daily speech, an understanding of the *passato remoto* is necessary in order to read Italian literature and poetry (which you definitely don't want to miss!).



Attenzione!

The *passato remoto* is used almost exclusively in written language. You will occasionally hear it spoken in place of the *passato prossimo* as part of various dialects.

Past Absolute Examples

Subject	<i>Parlare</i>	<i>Vendere</i>	<i>Capire</i>
<i>io</i>	<i>parlai</i>	<i>vendei</i>	<i>capii</i>
<i>tu</i>	<i>parlasti</i>	<i>vendesti</i>	<i>capisti</i>
<i>lui/lei/Lei</i>	<i>parlò</i>	<i>vendè</i>	<i>capì</i>
<i>noi</i>	<i>parlammo</i>	<i>vendemmo</i>	<i>capimmo</i>
<i>voi</i>	<i>parlaste</i>	<i>vendeste</i>	<i>capiste</i>
<i>loro</i>	<i>parlarono</i>	<i>venderono</i>	<i>capirono</i>

Dante scrisse La Divina Commedia nel 1307.

Dante wrote *The Divine Comedy* in 1307.

Ci Fu Una Volta (Once Upon a Time)

The *passato remoto* is used in *fiabe* (fables) and *racconti* (stories). These ancient forms of the verbs *essere* and *avere* are virtually unrecognizable from the present-tense conjugations.

Essere (to Be)

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>io fui</i>	I was	<i>noi fummo</i>	we were
<i>tu fosti</i>	you were	<i>voi foste</i>	you were
<i>lui/lei/Lei fu</i>	he/she was; You were	<i>loro furono</i>	they were

Avere (to Have)

Italian	English	Italian	English
<i>io ebbi</i>	I had	<i>noi avemmo</i>	we had
<i>tu avesti</i>	you had	<i>voi aveste</i>	you had
<i>lui/lei/Lei ebbe</i>	he/she/You had	<i>loro ebbero</i>	they had

Cose Da Vedere

The following has been excerpted from a travel brochure promoting the *la bellissima città di San Gimignano*. See if you can identify the use of the *passato remoto*.

Cose Da Vedere

San Gimignano prende il nome dal vescovo di Modena morto nel 387. Nel 1099 divenne libero Comune. Combattè contro i vescovi di Volterra e le città vicine. La peste del 1348 e la successiva crisi portarono San Gimignano nel 1353 alla sottomissione a Firenze.

What Am I?

After all your hard work, you should be able to make sense of this *indovinello toscano* (Tuscan riddle).

*Son la bella del palazzo;
Casco in terra e non mi ammazzo;
Faccio lume al gran Signore,
Son servita con amore.*

What am I?

Hint: I'm edible. (The answer is in Appendix A, "Answer Key.")

The Least You Need to Know

- If you need to open a bank account or deal with money matters, it's helpful to have the terms.
- The subjunctive is a mood, not a tense, and it is used to express opinions, thoughts, feelings, and desires.
- The absolute past is used primarily in the written language and is very irregular.

Answer Key

Chapter 2

Practice Makes Perfetto

1. dentro
2. stomaco
3. entro
4. informazioni riservate
5. interno

Chapter 4

How Intelligente You Are

1. posizione
2. incredibile
3. nazione
4. presenza
5. identità
6. pessimismo
7. prudente
8. continente
9. religioso
10. differenza

Masculine Nouns

1. airplane
2. anniversary
3. arch
4. actor
5. bus
6. coffee
7. color
8. communism
9. continent
10. cotton
11. director
12. dictionary
13. doctor
14. elephant
15. fact
16. group
17. idiot
18. lemon
19. mechanic
20. motor
21. museum
22. nose
23. odor
24. paradise
25. president
26. perfume
27. program
28. respect
29. salary
30. service
31. socialism
32. spirit
33. student
34. taxi
35. tea
36. telephone
37. train

Feminine Nouns

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. art | 16. expression | 31. nation |
| 2. bicycle | 17. holiday, party, festivity | 32. person |
| 3. carrot | 18. figure | 33. possibility |
| 4. guitar | 19. fountain | 34. probability |
| 5. class | 20. form | 35. profession |
| 6. condition | 21. fortune | 36. region |
| 7. conversation | 22. idea | 37. religion |
| 8. culture | 23. identity | 38. rose |
| 9. curiosity | 24. inflation | 39. sculpture |
| 10. depression | 25. salad | 40. temperature |
| 11. diet | 26. lamp | 41. tourist |
| 12. difference | 27. letter | 42. university |
| 13. discussion | 28. list | 43. violence |
| 14. emotion | 29. medicine | |
| 15. experience | 30. music | |

How Much Do You Understand Already?

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. The city is beautiful. | 4. The museum is interesting. |
| 2. The restaurant is terrible. | 5. The service is good. |
| 3. The jacket is big. | 6. The mountain is high (tall). |

A Piece of Cake

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. to allude | 17. to glorify |
| 2. to attribute | 18. to imply |
| 3. to fall, to drop | 19. to indicate |
| 4. to consist | 20. to intend |
| 5. to change, to convert | 21. to navigate |
| 6. to correspond | 22. to occupy |
| 7. to deliberate | 23. to offend |
| 8. to detest | 24. to offer |
| 9. to defend | 25. to operate |
| 10. to descend | 26. to pronounce |
| 11. to discuss | 27. to recommend |
| 12. to disgust | 28. to represent |
| 13. to dissolve | 29. to resist |
| 14. to examine | 30. to receive |
| 15. to form | 31. to respond |
| 16. to function | |

Translation Please

1. Italy is part of the continent of Europe.
2. The student studies mathematics and history.
3. The actor is very famous in the movies.
4. The mechanic repairs the automobile.
5. The cook prepares a salad and an appetizer.
6. The doctor speaks with the patient.
7. The family desires a modern and big apartment.
8. The Japanese tourist visits the museum and the cathedral.
9. The president presents the plan (the program).
10. Robert prefers classical music.

What's Your Take?

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. La cioccolata è deliziosa. | 6. Il dottore è sincero. |
| 2. Il ristorante è eccellente. | 7. Lo studente è intelligente. |
| 3. La città è splendida e magnifica. | 8. Il museo è importante. |
| 4. Il profumo è elegante. | 9. La cattedrale è alta. |
| 5. La conversazione è interessante. | 10. Il treno è veloce. |

Are You Well Read?

Dante—*The Divine Comedy*
 Di Lampedusa—*The Leopard*
 Eco—*The Name of the Rose*

Machiavelli—*The Prince*
 Morante—*History*
 Pirandello—*6 Characters in Search of an Author*

Chapter 5**Did You Know Trivia**

July and August

Chapter 6**Practice Makes Perfetto**

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. la casa (f.) | 6. l'estate (f.) |
| 2. il cane (m.) | 7. la chiesa (f.) |
| 3. l'albero (m.) | 8. lo straniero (m.) |
| 4. il piatto (m.) | 9. la cattedrale (f.) |
| 5. la lezione (f.) | 10. il pianeta (m./irregular) |

La Pratica

- | | |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. i libri | 4. le stazioni |
| 2. i gatti | 5. gli amici |
| 3. le ragazze | 6. le amichi |

What Does It Mean?

1. gli aeroplani (airplanes)
2. i bambini (children)
3. la birra (beer)
4. i dollari (dollars)
5. l'invenzione (invention)
6. il libro (book)
7. il nome (name, noun)
8. la notte (night)
9. l'odore (odor)
10. le ragazze (girls)
11. le scuole (schools)
12. gli stranieri (foreigners)
13. i supermercati (supermarkets)
14. le tavole (tables)
15. la vacanza (vacation)
16. i viaggi (the trips)

Practice Those Plurals

1. Cerco le cartoline.
2. Cerco le riviste.
3. Cerco le collane.
4. Cerco i profumi.
5. Cerco le cravatte.
6. Cerco le penne.

What Have You Learned About Gender?

1. Mature actress (40 to 50 years old) sought with the ability to speak English and French for interpreting the role of countess. Distinct look. Send resume with photo to Via Garibaldi 36, Roma.
2. Strong actor, athletic, young with light hair sought to interpret the role of Caesar. Present yourself on June 25 at 9:00 at Superforte gym, second floor.
3. Very sexy men and women sought to appear nude in beach scene: various ages. No experience necessary. Telephone 06/040357.

Chapter 7

Name That Subject

1. The stars (they)
2. Jessica (she)
3. Leslie (she)
4. My mother (she)
5. Louis (he)
6. The food (it)
7. Italian (it)
8. Anna (she)

Subject to Interpretation

1. Davide: David takes the bus.
2. Io: I eat fish.
3. Patrizia e Raffaella: Patrizia and Raffaella study art.
4. L'insalata: The salad is fresh.
5. La farmacia: The pharmacy is open.
6. Lo studente: The student speaks with the professor.
7. Io e Gianni: Gianni and I are going to Italy.
8. La ragazza: The girl is going home.

Hey You!

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. tu | 5. Loro |
| 2. voi | 6. tu |
| 3. loro | 7. Lei, tu (depending on your relationship) |
| 4. voi, Lei (singular) | |

Chapter 8**Practice Makes Perfetto**

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. lavora | 4. parlo |
| 2. aspettiamo | 5. passate |
| 3. abiti | 6. preparano |

Practice Makes Perfetto II

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. spendono | 4. vediamo |
| 2. scrivo | 5. risolve |
| 3. accendi | 6. prendete |

Chapter 9**Come Sei Intelligente!**

- | | |
|---------|----------|
| 1. è | 4. sono |
| 2. sei | 5. siete |
| 3. sono | |

Chitchat

- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1. stiamo | 4. sono |
| 2. sta | 5. è |
| 3. sto | 6. è |

Fill In the Blanks

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1. C'è | 5. Ci sono |
| 2. Ci sono | 6. Ci sono |
| 3. Ci sono | 7. Ci sono |
| 4. C'è | 8. c'è |

Express Yourself

1. ho fame
2. ho freddo
3. sono stanco, sono stanca, ho sonno
4. ho ___ anni
5. ho vergogna

Back to Your Roots

1. Olivier è francese e abita a Parigi.
2. Patrizia è cattolica e ha cinque sorelle.
3. Primo Levi è ebreo.
4. Massimo è di origine italiana.
5. Ci sono molti turisti giapponesi in Italia.

Eureka!

1. il museo: Eccolo!
2. il ristorante: Eccolo!
3. la banca: Eccola!
4. il negozio: Eccolo!
5. la strada: Eccola!
6. la stazione: Eccola!
7. l'albergo: Eccolo!
8. il bar: Eccolo!
9. l'ospedale: Eccolo!
10. l'autobus: Eccolo!
11. lo stadio: Eccolo!
12. il supermercato: Eccolo!

Chapter 10

A Sense of Belonging

1. la sua casa
2. la mia scuola
3. i suoi libri
4. i suoi libri
5. il tuo amico

One Yellow Banana, Please

1. bianca; pulita (The white house is clean.)
2. vecchio (The Colosseo is very old.)
3. alte (The mountains in Switzerland are high.)
4. chiuso (The store is closed on Sundays.)
5. economico (This hotel is inexpensive.)
6. tirchio (The Scrooge is a very cheap man.)

Make the Connection

Definite Article	Translation	Quello	Translation
1. il libro	the book	quel libro	that book
2. i libri	the books	quei libri	those books
3. la penna	the pen	quella penna	that pen
4. le penne	the pens	quelle penne	those pens
5. l'articolo	the article	quell'articolo	that article
6. gli articoli	the articles	quegli articoli	those articles
7. lo studente	the student	quello studente	that student
8. gli studenti	the students	quegli studenti	those students

The More Things Change

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. dolcemente | 6. regolarmente |
| 2. sinceramente | 7. difficilmente |
| 3. intelligentemente | 8. probabilmente |
| 4. necessariamente | 9. solamente |
| 5. velocemente | 10. gentilmente |

Chapter 11**In the Comfort Zone**

Available to passengers on board are Italian and foreign magazines, blankets and pillows, medicine, stationery, toys for children, pens, postcards, cigarettes, Italian sparkling wines, wine, beer, and various beverages.

Going, Going, Gone

- | | |
|----------|------------------|
| 1. vanno | 4. andiamo |
| 2. vado | 5. andate; vanno |
| 3. vai | |

All Verbed Up and Everywhere to Go

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. prendo | 4. vai |
| 2. andiamo | 5. prendete |
| 3. prendono | 6. va |

Switcharoo

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. alla festa | 4. nell'armadio |
| 2. in piazza | 5. degli spaghetti |
| 3. in macchina | |

Tell Me What to Do

aiutare: Aiuta! Aiuti!
 mangiare: Mangia! Mangi!
 portare: Porta! Porti!
 telefonare: Telefona! Telefoni!

La Dogana (Customs)

Form I-94

Immigration

You are kindly asked to respond to the following questions (surname, name, birthdate, nationality, etc.). Please fill out only the front of the form. You are also kindly asked to keep this form in your passport. One form is necessary for every member of the family. Please fill it out using capital letters.

1. Last Name
2. Name
3. Date of Birth: Day/Month/Year
4. Citizenship
5. Sex: Male/Female
6. Passport Number
7. Airline and Flight Number
8. Place of Residence
9. City from which visa was obtained
10. Date of visa: Day/Month/Year

Chapter 12

Time Will Tell

1. Andiamo al cinema alle sei.
2. Il volo parte alle otto e venticinque di mattino.
3. La cena è alle sette.
4. C'è l'autobus per Verona a mezzogiorno.
5. Sono le quattro e quarantaquattro. (That's a mouthful, isn't it?)
6. C'è il treno per Roma alle due e trentatrè.
7. Andiamo a fare la colazione alle sette e mezzo.

Ask Away

(Cinzia)

Come ti chiami? Dove abiti? Perché sei in Italia? Cosa studi? Come viaggi? Con chi? Quanto tempo passate in Italia? Dove andate? Quando ritorni?

(Il Signore Pesce)

Come si chiama? Qual è la Sua professione? Parla l'inglese? Di dov'è Lei? Quanti figli ha? Come si chiamano i figli? Quando venite a New York?

Practice Those Conjugations

(chiedere) chiedo, chiedi, chiede, chiediamo, chiedete, chiedono
(prendere) prendo, prendi, prende, prendiamo, prendete, prendono
(prenotare) prenoto, prenoti, prenota, prenotiamo, prenotate, prenotano
(ritornare) ritorno, ritorni, ritorna, ritorniamo, ritornate, ritornano
(scendere) scendo, scendi, scende, scendiamo, scendete, scendono

What to Do, What to Do

1. facciamo: Why don't we take a spin?
2. fare: I'm going to the supermarket to do the shopping.
3. fa: The tourist takes a picture.
4. fa: The student is asking a question at the information booth.
5. fa: The child makes the bed.

Chapter 13

Room Service Please

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Mi serve della carta da lettera.
Vorrei la carta de lettera. | 4. Mi serve la sveglia.
Vorrei la sveglia. |
| 2. Mi serve la chiave.
Vorrei la chiave. | 5. Mi serve una saponetta in più.
Vorrei una saponetta in più. |
| 3. Mi serve un asciugamano in più.
Vorrei un asciugamano in più. | |

Practice Makes Perfetto

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. due coperte | 5. ristoranti |
| 2. cuscino | 6. una camera, una stanza |
| 3. un asciugacapelli, un fon | 7. una bottiglia d'acqua minerale |
| 4. chiave | |

Feeling Moody: The Modal Verbs

Any one of the answers given is sufficient.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. voglio, devo, posso | 6. possiamo, vogliamo, dobbiamo |
| 2. vuoi | 7. volete |
| 3. deve, vuole | 8. può |
| 4. voglio | 9. vuole, deve |
| 5. vogliono, devono | |

Learning by Example

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Avete bisogno di | 4. Andiamo a |
| 2. Impari a | 5. Smetto di |
| 3. Cristoforo continua a | 6. Finiscono di |

Practice Makes Perfetto II

- | | |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. voglio | 4. credete di |
| 2. finisce di | 5. devi |
| 3. aiutano a | 6. fare |

Chapter 14

Give Your Mind a Trip

- | | |
|------|------|
| 1. b | 5. a |
| 2. e | 6. g |
| 3. f | 7. d |
| 4. b | |

The Dating Game

1. Il mese scorso
2. L'anno scorso
3. L'anno prossimo
4. Fra dieci anni
5. La primavera scorsa
6. L'inverno prossimo
7. Sette anni fa
8. Ieri notte
9. Ieri sera
10. Stamattina

Dating Dilemmas

1. Christmas
2. New Year's
3. Your birthday
4. Your parent's anniversary

Quando Quando Quando?

1. Il mio compleanno è ...
2. Vado in vacanza ...
3. L'anniversario dei miei è il ...

Quale Festa?

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| December 6: San Nicola's day | December 25: Christmas |
| December 8: The Immaculate Conception | December 26: Santo Stefano's day |
| December 13: Santa Lucia's day | January 1: New Year's day |
| December 24: Christmas Eve | January 6: The Epiphany |

Chapter 15

Your Turn

1. trovare: trovo, trovi, trova, troviamo, trovate, trovano
2. andare: vado, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno
3. passare: passo, passi, passa, passiamo, passate, passano
4. fare: faccio, fai, fa, facciamo, fate, fanno
5. ritornare: ritorno, ritorni, ritorna, ritorniamo, ritornate, ritornano

Practice Makes Perfetto

1. Pasquale **fa** una passeggiata in piazza.
2. **Vado** a vedere un film.
3. **Andiamo** ad ascoltare l'opera.
4. Giuseppe e Marta **fanno** una foto del castello.
5. **Fate** un giro in macchina.
6. **Prendi** l'autobus.

Yes or No

- | | |
|-------|-----------|
| 1. mi | 4. mi, ti |
| 2. mi | 5. mi |
| 3. mi | |

A Refresher

1. Sono americano(a). Sono d'origine americana.
2. Sono francese. Sono d'origine francese.
3. Sono spagnolo(a). Sono d'origine spagnola.
4. Sono greco(a). Sono d'origine greca.
5. Sono irlandese. Sono d'origine irlandese.

Making Progress

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Stiamo guardando. | 4. Stanno dormendo. |
| 2. Stai scrivendo. | 5. Sto leggendo. |
| 3. Sta cucinando. | 6. Sto pulendo. |

Chapter 16**Man**

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1. i pantaloni | 4. le scarpe |
| 2. la cintura | 5. l'ombrello |
| 3. la maglia, il golf | |

Woman

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. il cappotto, il giubbotto | 5. il cappello |
| 2. la sciarpo | 6. le calze |
| 3. la gonna | 7. la borsa |
| 4. i guanti | |

Who's Who

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. La mangiamo. | 5. Li vedo. |
| 2. Dante e Boccaccio vogliono mangiarla. | 6. La bacia. |
| 3. Lo prendo. | 7. La comprate. |
| 4. Mario lo scrive. | 8. La capisce? |

Who's Who II

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Desideriamo parlarvi. | 5. Le offro un caffè. |
| 2. Mario e Giorgio ti danno un regalo. | 6. I nonni danno le caramelle a loro. |
| 3. Carlo le telefona. | 7. Gli offro una birra. |
| 4. Lo studente gli fa una domanda. | 8. Ci augurano una buona notte. |

Who's Who—Final Round

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Lo guardate. | 5. Danno i libri a loro. |
| 2. Lo regalo a Lorenzo. | 6. Lo conosco molto bene. |
| 3. La vede? | 7. Li danno ai bambini. |
| 4. Gli regalo un mazzo di fiori. | 8. Lo accettiamo con piacere. |

Chapter 17

Di Bocca Buona

Bere come una spugna.
Di bocca buona.
Una ciliegia tira l'altra.
Non me ne importa un fico secco.
Fare la frittata.
Fino al midollo.
Liscio come l'olio.
Un osso duro.
Dire pane al pane e vino al vino.

Mangiare pane e cipolla.

Togliersi il pane di bocca.
Di pasta buona.
Avere lo spirito di patata.
Essere un sacco di patate.
Fare polpette di ...
Rosso come un peperone.

To drink like a sponge.
A good mouth (a good eater).
One cherry pulls the other.
I don't care one dry fig's worth.
To make an omelette of things.
To the marrow.
Smooth as oil.
A hard bone.
To call bread bread and wine wine
(to call a spade a spade).
To eat bread and onion. (To live on bread
and water.)
To give bread from your mouth.
Of good pasta (good natured).
To have a potato's sense of humor.
To be a sack of potatoes.
To make meatballs of ...
Red as a pepper.

Some Practice

1. Sì, ne hanno. No, non ne hanno.
2. Sì, ne abbiamo. No, non ne abbiamo.
3. Sì, ne bevo. No, non ne bevo.
4. Sì, c'è ne. No, non c'è ne.

Facciamo La Spesa

l'acqua minerale
una bottiglia di vino rosso
del pane
un po' di formaggio
le olive

un po' di prosciutto
della frutta
un cavatappi
un coltello

Using the Verb *Piacere*

1. piace
2. piace
3. piacciono
4. piace
5. piacciono
6. piace

Using the Verb *Piacere* II

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ti piacciono i dolci?
Sì, mi piacciono i dolci.
No, non mi piacciono i dolci. 2. Ti piace la pasta?
Sì, mi piace la pasta.
No, non mi piace la pasta. 3. Ti piacciono gli spaghetti?
Sì, mi piacciono gli spaghetti.
No, non mi piacciono gli spaghetti. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Ti piacciono le acciughe?
Sì, mi piacciono le acciughe.
No, non mi piacciono le acciughe. 5. Ti piacciono i fichi?
Sì, mi piacciono i fichi.
No, non mi piacciono i fichi. 6. Ti piace il fegato?
Sì, mi piace il fegato.
No, non mi piace il fegato. |
|---|--|

Minestra di Riso e Limone**Ingredients**

8 cups of broth

1 cup of Arborio rice

3 egg yolks

 $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of grated Parmigiano-Reggiano

1 teaspoon of grated lemon rind

1 teaspoon of lemon juice

1. Place broth in pan and bring to boil point. Add the rice; cover the pan and allow it to cook for 20 minutes.
2. In the meantime, beat the eggs, add the cheese, grated lemon rind, and lemon juice.
3. When the rice is cooked, mix the eggs into the soup, beating continually. Warm the soup and serve immediately (serves four people).

Chapter 18**A Bellini Please** $\frac{2}{3}$ cup (160 ml.) of peach purée

1 teaspoon of raspberry purée

1 bottle of Prosecco (or Asti Spumante or champagne)

In every glass of wine or sparkling wine, mix 7 teaspoons of the peach purée. Add 2–3 drops of the raspberry purée. Add wine and serve immediately.

Test Your Reflexes

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. mi alzo 2. si conoscono 3. ti diverti 4. lavarsi | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. ti chiami 6. ci telefoniamo 7. si sente 8. si sposano |
|--|---|

Chapter 19

Make a Date

1. Perché non ci incontriamo domani alle tre?
2. Ti va di nuotare?
3. Andiamo in montagna la settimana prossima.
4. Perché non andare al museo?
5. Vuoi giocare a tennis con me?

Chapter 20

Stressful Exercise

- | | |
|-------|------------|
| 1. te | 4. lei |
| 2. sè | 5. lui |
| 3. me | 6. me, lei |

Go On and Brag a Little

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Tu sei la più bella donna del mondo. | 4. Mi sento meglio, grazie. |
| 2. Il panorama è bellissimo.
La vista è bellissima. | 5. Va in Italia quest'estate? Sì, ci vado. |
| 3. Lui è tanto simpatico quanto bello. | |

Chapter 21

Tell Me Where It Hurts

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Mi fa male il ginocchio. | 4. Mi fa male la gola/Ho mal di gola. |
| 2. Mi fanno male le spalle. | 5. Mi fa male il dente/Ho mal di denti. |
| 3. Mi fanno male i piedi. | 6. Mi fa male la caviglia. |

Fill in the Spazio

dire: dicevo, diceva, dicevate, dicevano
fare: facevi, faceva, facevamo, facevano
bere: bevevo, bevevi, bevevamo, bevevate

La Pratica

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------|
| 1. guardavo | 6. abitavano |
| 2. eravamo, andavamo | 7. faceva, era |
| 3. lavorava, preparava | 8. tornavo |
| 4. piaceva | 9. vedevamo |
| 5. aveva | 10. alzava |

What's Done Is Done

siamo arrivati, brillava, faceva, viaggiavamo, era, siamo andati, abbiamo visto, siamo andati

A Review

1. Scrivere

ho scritto	scrivevo
hai scritto	scrivevi
ha scritto	scriveva
abbiamo scritto	scrivevamo
avete scritto	scrivevate
hanno scritto	scrivevano

2. Spedire

ho spedito	spedivo
hai spedito	spedivi
ha spedito	spediva
abbiamo spedito	spedivamo
avete spedito	spedivate
hanno spedito	spedivano

3. Leggere

ho letto	leggevo
hai letto	leggevi
ha letto	leggeva
abbiamo letto	leggevamo
avete letto	leggevate
hanno letto	leggevano

4. Mandare

ho mandato	mandavo
hai mandato	mandavi
ha mandato	mandava
abbiamo mandato	mandavamo
avete mandato	mandavate
hanno mandato	mandavano

Chapter 22

Back to the Future

andrai, andrà, andrete, andranno
 dovrai, dovrà, dovremo, dovrete, dovranno
 potrai, potremo, potrete, potranno
 saprai, saprà, sapremo, saprete
 vedrai, vedrà, vedremo, vedranno
 berrà, berremo, berrete, berranno
 rimarrai, rimarrà, rimarranno
 terrai, terrà, terremo, terrete, terranno
 verrai, verrà, verremo, verrete
 vorrai, vorrà, vorremo, vorrete, vorranno

In the Future

avrò, dovrò, dovrò comperò andrò, vorrò, sarò, prenderò, arriveranno

Chapter 23

How's Your Italian?

Trastevere. Apartment for rent. 40 square meters. 2nd floor. Lots of light, renovated. References required. Don't waste my time.

Testaccio. Building for sale. 4 floors, 8 apartments: needs restoration. No agencies.

Via Flaminia. House for sale or rent. Total square meters 180. Shaded garden 1500 square meters. Best offer. Installment plan. Call during meal times.

Downtown. Room for rent for tourists in large apartment. Use of kitchen. Maximum stay 3 weeks—1 week deposit.

Practice Makes Perfetto

1. Vorrei andare in Italia per l'estate.
2. Dovremmo partire; è tardi.
3. Potrei venire più tardi.
4. Sofia, vorresti vedere un film?
5. Vorrei una grande casa in campagna.
6. Sarei ricco(a) con un milione di dollari.

Chapter 24

Transactions

1. Vorrei aprire un conto corrente.
2. Vorrei prendere in prestito.
3. Vorrei cambiare i soldi.
4. Vorrei incassare un assegno.
5. Vorrei depositare i soldi.
6. Vorrei ritirare i soldi.

Cara Silvia

1. stia
2. venga
3. sia
4. venga or venissi (the imperfect subjunctive)
5. sia
6. scriva
7. stia

April 1

Dear Silvia:

I hope that everything is going well.

I received your letter. I will probably come to Italy this summer. I think it's necessary for learning the language. I would be so pleased if you came with me to Sardegna. They tell me the island is very beautiful. What do you think? Do you like the idea? It's enough if you write me your response. I am happy your family is well.

Write me!

A big hug,

Paola

Cose Da Vedere

San Gimignano took its name from the Bishop of Modena who died in 387 A.D. In 1099 it became a free Township. It fought against the bishops of Volterra and bordering cities. The plague of 1348 and successive crisis brought San Gimignano to the submission of Florence in 1353.

What Am I?

The following is an adaptation of the poem, altered slightly to recreate the rhyme.

*I am the beauty of the palace;
I fall on the ground without malaise;
I shine for the Grand Lord above,
I am always served with love.*

What am I?—un'oliva (an olive)

Glossary

All feminine nouns (f.), irregular masculine nouns (m.), and plural (pl.) nouns are indicated. Irregular past participles are given in parentheses.

English to Italian

A

a, an: un, uno, un', una	advise, to: consigliare	angry: arrabbiato
abandon, to: abbandonare	aerobics: l'aerobica (f.)	animal: l'animale (m.)
abbey: l'abbazia (f.)	affection: l'affetto	animated, lively: animato
able: capace	affectionate: affettuoso, affezionato	announce, to: annunciare
able, to be (can): potere	affirm, to: affermare	answer: la risposta (f.)
aboard: bordo, a	after: dopo	antibiotics: gli antibiotici (m. pl.)
abolish, to: abolire	afternoon: il pomeriggio	antiques: l'antiquariato
about: circa	again: ancora	any: qualsiasi
about: di	against: contro	any: qualunque
above all: soprattutto	age: l'età (f.)	apartment: l'appartamento
above, on: sopra	agency: l'agenzia (f.)	aperitif: l'aperitivo
abroad: all'estero	agent: l'agente (m./f.)	apologize, to: scusarsi
absolutely: assolutamente	aggressive: aggressivo	appetizer: l'antipasto
academy: l'accademia (f.)	agile: agile	applaud, to: applaudire
accent: l'accento	ago: fa	apple: la mela (f.)
accept, to: accettare	agreement: l'accordo	appreciate, to: apprezzare
access: l'accesso	agriculture: l'agricoltura (f.)	approach, to: avvicinarsi
accident: l'incidente (m.)	air: l'aria (f.)	approve of, to: approvare
accompany, to: accompagnare	air conditioning: l'aria condizionata (f.)	apricot: l'albicocca (f.)
accomplish, to: compiere, superare	airplane: l'aereo	April: aprile
accountant: il/la contabile (m./f.)	airport: l'aeroporto	aquarium: l'acquario
achieve, to: realizzare	alarm clock: la sveglia (f.)	archeology: l'archeologia (f.)
acoustic: acustico	alcohol: l'alcol (m.)	architect: l'architetto/ l'architetta (f.)
acquire, to: acquistare	alcoholic: alcolico	architecture: l'architettura (f.)
across: attraverso	alive: vivo	area: l'area (f.)
action: l'azione (f.)	All Saint's Day (Nov. 1): Ognissanti	area code: il prefisso
active: attivo	allergic: allergico	argue, to: discutere (discusso), litigare
activity: l'attività (f.)	allergy: l'allergia (f.)	aria, air, appearance: l'aria (f.)
actor: l'attore	alley: il vicolo	aristocratic: aristocratico
actress: l'attrice (f.)	almost: quasi	arm: il braccio (pl. le braccia)
ad: l'annuncio pubblicitario	alms: l'elemosina (f.)	aroma: l'aroma (m.), l'odore (m.)
add, to: aggiungere (aggiunto)	alone: solo	around: intorno a
address: l'indirizzo	alphabet: l'alfabeto	arrival: l'arrivo
adjective: l'aggettivo	already: già	arrive, to: arrivare
admire, to: ammirare	also: anche, inoltre, pure	art: l'arte (f.)
admission charge: il prezzo d'entrata	although: benché, sebbene	arthritis: l'artrite (f.)
adorable: adorabile	always: sempre	artichoke: il carciofo
adult: l'adulto	ambition: l'ambizione (f.)	article: l'articolo
advance, in: in anticipo	ambulance: l'ambulanza (f.)	artist: l'artista (m./f.)
advantage: il vantaggio	American: americano	ashtray: il portacenere (m.)
adventure: l'avventura (f.)	amphitheater: l'anfiteatro	ask, to: chiedere (chiesto)
adverb: l'avverbio	ample: ampio	aspirin: l'aspirina (f.)
	analysis: l'analisi (f.)	assault, to: assaltare
	ancestor: l'antenato	assistance: l'assistenza (f.)
	anchovy: l'acciuga (f.)	association: l'associazione (f.)
	ancient: antico	Assumption Day (August 15): Ferragosto
	and: e, ed (before vowels)	astrology: l'astrologia (f.)

astronaut: l'astronauta (m./f.)
 at: a, in
 at least: almeno
 athlete: l'atleta (m./f.)
 athletics: l'atletica (f.)
 ATM: il Bancomat
 atrium: l'atrio (m.)
 attach, to: attaccare
 attack: l'attacco (m.)
 attention!/warning!: attenzione!
 attitude: l'atteggiamento
 attract, to: attirare
 attribute, to: attribuire
 August: agosto
 aunt: la zia (f.)
 Australian: australiano
 Austrian: austriaco
 authoritarian: autoritario
 automatic: automatico
 automobile: la macchina (f.),
 l'automobile (f.), l'auto (f.)
 autumn: l'autunno (m.)
 available: disponibile
 avalanche: la valanga (f.)
 avoid, to: evitare
 awaken, to: svegliarsi
 away: via

B

baby: il bambino
 baby bottle: il biberon (m.)
 bachelor: lo scapolo
 back, behind: indietro
 backpack: lo zaino
 backward: arretrato
 bacon: la pancetta (f.)
 bad: male
 bag: (purse) la borsa (f.)
 baker: il fornaio
 balcony: il balcone (m.)
 ball: la palla (f.)
 bank: la banca (f.)
 bar: il bar (m.)
 barber: il barbiere (m.)
 Baroque: barocco
 bartender: il/la barista (m./f.)
 base: la base (f.)
 basement: la cantina (f.)
 basketball: la pallacanestro, il
 basket
 bathroom: il bagno
 battery: la batteria (f.), la pila (f.)
 bay: la baia (f.)
 be, to: essere (stato), stare (stato)
 beach: la spiaggia (f.)
 bean: il fagiolo
 bear: l'orso
 beard: la barba (f.)

beast: la bestia (f.)
 beat, to: battere
 beauty: la bellezza (f.)
 because: perché
 bed: il letto
 beef: il manzo
 beer: la birra (f.)
 before: prima
 begin, to: iniziare, cominciare
 beginning: l'inizio
 behave, to: comportarsi
 behavior: il comportamento
 behind: dietro
 believe, to: credere
 bell: la campana (f.)
 bell pepper: il peperone (m.)
 bell tower: il campanile (m.)
 belong, to: appartenere
 belt: la cintura (f.)
 bench: la panchina (f.)
 beneath: sotto
 berth: la cuccetta (f.)
 beside, next to: accanto a
 best: il/la migliore
 best wishes!: auguri!
 bet, to: scommettere
 (scommesso)
 better: meglio
 between: tra
 beverage: la bibita (f.)
 Bible: la Bibbia (f.)
 big, large: grande
 bill: il conto
 biodegradable: biodegradabile
 biology: la biologia (f.)
 bird: l'uccello
 birth: la nascita (f.)
 birthday: il compleanno
 bishop: il vescovo
 bitter: amaro
 black: nero
 blanket: la coperta (f.)
 blind: cieco
 blond: biondo
 blood: il sangue (m.)
 blouse: la camicetta (f.)
 blue: blu
 boarding: l'imbarco
 boat: la barca (f.)
 body: il corpo
 boil, to: bollire
 bone: l'osso (pl. le ossa)
 book: il libro
 bookstore: la libreria (f.)
 boot: lo stivale (m.)
 border: la frontiera (f.)
 boring: noioso
 born, to be: nascere (nato)
 boss: il padrone/la padrona (f.)
 both: entrambi, tutt'e due

bottle: la bottiglia (f.)
 bottom: il fondo
 boulevard: il viale (m.)
 box: la scatola (f.)
 box (theater): il palco
 boy: il ragazzo
 bra: il reggiseno
 bracelet: il braccialetto
 brain: il cervello
 brand: la marca (f.)
 brass: l'ottone
 bread: il pane (m.)
 break, to: rompere (rotto)
 breakdown: il guasto
 breakfast: la prima colazione (f.)
 breath: il respiro
 bridge: il ponte (m.)
 brief: breve
 briefs: gli slip (m. pl.)
 bring, to: portare
 British: inglese
 broadcast, to: trasmettere
 (trasmesso)
 broken: rotto
 bronchitis: la bronchite (f.)
 bronze: il bronzo
 brooch: la spilla (f.)
 broth: il brodo
 brother: il fratello
 brother-in-law: il cognato
 brown: castano, marrone
 bruise: la contusione (f.), il livido
 brush: la spazzola (f.)
 buffoon: il buffone (m.)
 build, to: costruire
 building: l'edificio, il palazzo
 bulletin: il bollettino
 burn, to: bruciare
 bus: l'autobus (m.), la corriera (f.),
 il pullman (m.)
 busy: impegnato, occupato
 but: ma, però
 butcher: il macellaio
 butcher shop: la macelleria (f.)
 butter: il burro
 button: il bottone (m.)
 buy, to: comprare
 by: da, in

C

cabin: la cabina (f.)
 cable: il cavo
 cable car: la funivia (f.)
 cafeteria: la mensa (f.)
 cake: la torta (f.)
 call oneself, to: chiamarsi
 call, to: chiamare
 calm: calmo, sereno

- calm, to: calmare
 camera: la macchina fotografica (f.)
 camping: il campeggio
 Canadian: canadese
 cancer: il cancro
 candidate: il candidato
 candle: la candela (f.)
 candy: la caramella (f.)
 canyon: il burrone (m.)
 cap: il berretto
 capable: capace
 cape: il mantello
 car: *See* automobile.
 car rental: l'autonoleggio
 card: la carta (f.)
 care: la cura (f.)
 career: la carriera (f.), il lavoro
 careful: attento
 carnation: il garofano
 carpenter: il falegname (m.)
 carrot: la carota (f.)
 cash: i contanti (m. pl.)
 cash register: la cassa (f.)
 castle: il castello
 cat: il gatto
 catalogue: il catalogo
 category: la categoria (f.)
 cathedral: la cattedrale (f.)
 Catholic: cattolico
 cave: la grotta (f.)
 ceiling: il soffitto
 celebrate, to: celebrare, festeggiare
 cemetery: il cimitero
 center: il centro
 central: centrale
 century: il secolo
 ceramic: la ceramica (f.), la terracotta (f.)
 certain: certo
 certificate: il certificato
 chain: la catena (f.)
 chair: la sedia (f.)
 challenge, to: sfidare
 championship: il campionato
 change, to: cambiare
 channel: il canale (m.)
 chaotic: caotico
 chapel: la cappella (f.)
 character: il carattere (m.), il personaggio
 characteristic: caratteristico
 check: l'assegno
 check, to: controllare
 cheek: la guancia (f.)
 cheese: il formaggio
 cherry: la ciliegia (f.)
 chess: gli scacchi (m. pl.)
 chest: il petto
 chimney: il camino
 chin: il mento
 China: la Cina
 Chinese: cinese
 chocolate: la cioccolata (f.)
 choose, to: scegliere (scelto)
 chorus (choir): il coro
 Christian: cristiano
 Christmas, Merry: Natale, Buon
 church: la chiesa (f.)
 cigar: il sigaro
 cigarette: la sigaretta (f.)
 cinema: il cinema (m.)
 circle: il circolo
 circus: il circo
 citizen: il cittadino/la cittadina (f.)
 citizenship: la cittadinanza (f.)
 city: la città
 civic: civico
 civil: civile
 class: la classe (f.)
 classical: classico
 classification: la classificazione (f.)
 clause: la clausola (f.)
 clean, to: pulire
 clear: chiaro
 clever: furbo (slang), intelligente
 client: il/la cliente (m./f.)
 cliff: la costiera (f.), la rupe (f.)
 climate: il clima (m.)
 cloakroom: il guardaroba
 clock: l'orologio
 close, to: chiudere (chiuso)
 closed: chiuso
 clothing: l'abbigliamento
 cloud: la nuvola (f.)
 coast: la costa (f.)
 coat: il cappotto, il giubbotto
 coffee: il caffè (m.)
 coin: la moneta (f.)
 cold: freddo (adj.), il raffreddore (m.)
 collaborate, to: collaborare
 colleague: il/la collega (m./f.)
 colony: la colonia (f.)
 color: il colore (m.)
 comb, to: pettinare
 come, to: venire
 comfort: il conforto
 commandment: il comandamento
 communicate, to: comunicare
 communism: il comunismo
 community: la comunità (f.)
 company: l'azienda (f.), la ditta (f.), la società (f.)
 comparison: il paragone (m.)
 complain, to: lamentarsi
 compliment: il complimento
 compose, to: comporre (composto)
 composition: la composizione (f.)
 concentration: la concentrazione (f.)
 concept: il concetto
 conception: la concezione (f.)
 concert: il concerto
 conclude, to: concludere (concluso)
 condition: la condizione (f.)
 condom: il profilattico, il preservativo
 condominium: il condominio
 conference: la conferenza (f.), il congresso
 confess, to: confessare
 conflict: il conflitto
 congratulations!: congratulazioni! auguri!
 conjugate, to: coniugare
 conjugation: la coniugazione (f.)
 connection: la coincidenza (f.)
 conquest, to: conquistare
 consecutive: consecutivo
 consequence: la conseguenza (f.)
 consider, to: considerare
 console, to: consolare
 consonant: la consonante (f.)
 constitution: la costituzione (f.)
 consumption: il consumo
 contact: il contatto
 contact, to: contattare
 contain, to: contenere
 contemporary: contemporaneo
 contest: il concorso, la gara (f.)
 continent: il continente (m.)
 continue, to: continuare
 contraceptive: il contraccettivo
 contrast: il contrasto
 convenient: comodo, pratico
 convent: il convento
 conversation: la conversazione (f.)
 convince, to: convincere (convinto)
 cook, to: cucinare, cuocere (cotto)
 cooked: cotto
 cookie: il biscotto
 copper: il rame
 copy: la copia (f.)
 cork: il tappo
 corkscrew: il cavatappi (m.)
 corn: il mais (m.)
 cornmeal: la polenta (f.)
 correct: corretto
 correct, to: correggere (corretto)
 correspond, to: corrispondere (corrisposto)
 cosmetics: i cosmetici (m. pl.)
 cosmetics shop: la profumeria (f.)
 cost: il costo, il prezzo
 cost, to: costare
 costly: costoso

costume: il costume (m.)
 cotton: il cotone (m.)
 cough: la tosse (f.)
 count: il conte, il conto
 count, to: contare
 counter: il banco, lo sportello
 countess: la contessa (f.)
 country: la campagna (f.),
 il paese (m.)
 couple: la coppia (f.)
 courage: il coraggio
 course: il corso
 court: la corte (f.)
 courteous: cortese
 cousin: il cugino/la cugina (f.)
 cover charge: il coperto
 cow: la vacca (f.)
 crazy: matto, pazzo
 cream: la crema (f.), la panna (f.)
 create, to: creare
 creation: la creazione (f.)
 credit: il credito
 credit card: la carta di credito (f.)
 crib: la culla (f.)
 crisis: la crisi (f.)
 cross: la croce (f.)
 cross, to: attraversare
 cross-country skiing: lo sci
 di fondo
 crossing: l'incrocio
 crowded: affollato
 cruise: la crociera (f.)
 crunchy: croccante
 cry, to: piangere (pianto)
 Cuban: cubano
 cube: il cubo
 cultivate, to: coltivare
 cultural: culturale
 culture: la cultura (f.)
 cup: la coppa (f.), la tazza (f.)
 curiosity: la curiosità (f.)
 curious: curioso
 curly: riccio
 currency: la valuta (f.),
 la moneta (f.)
 current event: l'attualità (f.)
 curtain: la tenda (f.)
 curve: la curva (f.)
 customs: la dogana (f.)
 cut, to: tagliare
 cute, pretty: carino
 cutlet: la braciola (f.),
 la costoletta (f.)
 cycling: il ciclismo

D

daddy: papà, babbo
 dairy store: la latteria (f.)

dam: la diga (f.)
 damaged: danneggiato
 damned: dannato
 dance: il ballo, la danza (f.)
 danger: il pericolo
 dangerous: pericoloso
 dark: il buio, scuro (adj.)
 darn!: accidenti!
 date: la data (f.)
 daughter: la figlia (f.)
 daughter-in-law: la nuora (f.)
 day: il giorno, la giornata
 dead: morto
 deaf: sordo
 dear: caro
 death: la morte (f.)
 December: dicembre
 decide, to: decidere (deciso)
 decision: la decisione (f.)
 declare, to: dichiarare
 decrease, to: diminuire
 dedicate, to: dedicare
 defect: il difetto
 defend: difendere (difeso)
 define, to: definire
 definition: la definizione (f.)
 degree: il grado (temp.), la laurea
 (f.) (diploma)
 delay: il ritardo
 delicious: delizioso
 democracy: la democrazia (f.)
 democratic: democratico
 demonstrate, to: dimostrare
 Denmark: la Danimarca (f.)
 density: la densità (f.)
 dentist: il/la dentista (m./f.)
 depart, to: partire
 department: il dipartimento
 department store: il grande
 magazzino
 departure: la partenza (f.)
 depend, to: dipendere (dipeso)
 descend, to (get off): scendere
 (sceso)
 deserve, to: meritare
 desk: la scrivania (f.)
 dessert: il dolce
 destination: la destinazione (f.)
 destiny: il destino
 destroy, to: distruggere (distrutto)
 detergent: il detersivo
 detour: la deviazione (f.)
 develop, to: sviluppare
 diabetes: il diabete (m.)
 dialogue: il dialogo, il discorso
 diamond: il diamante (m.)
 diaper: il pannolino
 diarrhea: la diarrea (f.)
 dictatorship: la dittatura (f.)
 diction: la dizione (f.)
 dictionary: il dizionario

die, to: morire (morto)
 diet: la dieta (f.)
 difference: la differenza (f.)
 different: differente, diverso
 difficult: difficile
 digest, to: digerire
 digestion: la digestione (f.)
 dine, to: cenare
 dining room: la sala da pranzo (f.)
 dinner: la cena (f.)
 direct: diretto
 direction: la direzione (f.),
 l'indicazione (f.)
 director: il direttore/la direttrice
 (f.), il/la regista (m./f.)
 dirty: sporco
 discothèque: la discoteca (f.)
 discount: lo sconto
 discover, to: scoprire (scoperto)
 discuss, to: discutere (discusso)
 discussion: il discorso,
 la discussione (f.)
 distance: la distanza (f.)
 distinguish, to: distinguere
 (distinto)
 distracted: distratto
 dive: il tuffo
 divide, to: dividere (diviso)
 division: la divisione (f.)
 divorced: divorziato
 do, to: fare (fatto)
 dock: il molo
 doctor: il dottore/la dottoressa (f.)
 il medico
 document: il documento
 dog: il cane (m.)
 dollar: il dollaro
 dolphin: il delfino
 dome: la cupola (f.), il duomo
 door: la porta (f.)
 doorbell: il campanello
 double: doppio
 down: giù
 dozen: la dozzina (f.)
 draw, to (design): disegnare
 drawing: il disegno
 dream, to: sognare
 dress oneself, to: vestirsi
 dress: il vestito
 drink, to: bere (bevuto)
 drive, to: guidare
 driver's license: la patente (f.)
 drown, to: annegare
 drug: la droga (f.)
 druggist: il droghiere
 drugstore: la drogheria (f.)
 drum: il tamburo
 dry: asciutto, secco
 dry cleaner: la lavanderia
 a secco, la tintoria (f.)

dub, to: doppiare
 duchess: la duchessa (f.)
 duck: l'anatra (f.)
 duke: il duca (m.)
 during: durante, mentre
 dust: la polvere (f.)

E

each: ciascuno, ogni, ognuno
 eagle: l'aquila (f.)
 ear: l'orecchio
 earn, to: guadagnare
 earrings: gli orecchini (m. pl.)
 earth: la terra (f.)
 east: est, Oriente
 Easter Monday: lunedì
 dell'Angelo, Pasquetta (f.)
 Easter, Happy: Pasqua, Buona
 easy: facile
 eat, to: mangiare
 eat breakfast, to: fare la prima
 colazione
 eat dinner, to: cenare
 eat lunch, to: pranzare
 economy: l'economia (f.)
 effect: l'effetto
 efficient: efficiente
 effort: la fatica (f.), lo sforzo
 egg: l'uovo (pl. le uova)
 eggplant: la melanzana (f.)
 Egypt: l'Egitto
 eighteen: diciotto
 eighth: ottavo
 eighty: ottanta
 elderly: anziano
 election: l'elezione (f.)
 electricity: l'elettricità (f.)
 elegant: elegante
 element: l'elemento
 elevator: l'ascensore (m.)
 eleven: undici
 eliminate, to: eliminare
 embassy: l'ambasciata (f.)
 embroider, to: ricamare
 emergency: l'emergenza (f.)
 emigrate, to: emigrare
 empire: l'impero
 empty: vuoto
 end: la fine (f.)
 enemy: il nemico
 energetic: dinamico
 engineer: l'ingegnere
 England: l'Inghilterra (f.)
 English: inglese
 engraved: inciso
 enjoy oneself, to: divertirsi
 enormous: enorme
 enough: abbastanza, basta!

enter, to: entrare
 entrance: l'entrata (f.), l'ingresso
 entrepreneur: l'imprenditore
 envelope: la busta (f.)
 environment: l'ambiente
 Epiphany (Jan. 6): la Befana (f.),
 l'Epifania (f.)
 equipped: attrezzato
 error: l'errore (m.)
 escape, to: scappare
 essay: il saggio
 essence: l'essenza (f.)
 essential: essenziale
 establish, to: stabilire
 et cetera: eccetera
 Europe: l'Europa (f.)
 even: persino
 evening: la sera (f.), la serata
 event: l'avvenimento, l'evento
 ever: mai
 every: ogni
 everybody: ognuno
 everyone: tutti
 everything, all: tutto
 everywhere: dappertutto
 evil: cattivo, il male
 evoke, to: evocare
 exact: esatto
 exactly: esattamente
 exaggerate, to: esagerare
 exam: l'esame (m.)
 exam, to: esaminare
 excavate, to: scavare
 excellent: eccellente, ottimo
 except: eccetto
 excerpt: la citazione (f.)
 exchange: il cambio, lo scambio
 exchange, to: scambiare
 exclude, to: escludere (escluso)
 excursion: l'escursione (f.),
 la gita (f.)
 excuse me!: permesso!
 excuse, to: scusare
 exercise: la ginnastica (f.)
 exist, to: esistere (esistito)
 exit: l'uscita (f.)
 exit, to: uscire
 exotic: esotico
 expense: la spesa (f.)
 expensive: caro
 experience: l'esperienza (f.)
 expiration: la scadenza (f.)
 explain, to: spiegare
 explode, to: esplodere (esplosivo)
 export, to: esportare
 express: espresso
 express, to: esprimere (espresso)
 expression: l'espressione (f.)
 eye: l'occhio (pl. gli occhi)
 eyeglasses: gli occhiali (m. pl.)

F

fable: la favola (f.), la fiaba (f.)
 fabric: la stoffa (f.), il tessuto
 face: la faccia (f.), il viso
 fact: il fatto
 factory: la fabbrica (f.)
 fair: la fiera (f.)
 faith: la fede (f.)
 fall in love, to: innamorarsi
 fall, to: cadere
 family: la famiglia (f.)
 famous: famoso
 fantasy: la fantasia (f.)
 far: lontano
 far-sighted: presbite
 fare: la tariffa (f.)
 farm: la fattoria (f.)
 farmer: il contadino/
 la contadina (f.)
 fascinate, to: affascinare
 fascism: il fascismo
 fasten, to: allacciare
 fat: grasso
 father: il padre (m.)
 father-in-law: il suocero
 faucet: il rubinetto
 fear: la paura (f.)
 Feast of the Assumption:
 l'Assunzione (f.)
 feather: la piuma (f.)
 February: febbraio
 feel, to: sentirsi
 feeling: il sentimento,
 la sensazione (f.)
 felt: il feltro
 ferry: il traghetto
 fever: la febbre (f.)
 fiancé: il fidanzato
 fiancée: la fidanzata (f.)
 field: il campo, il prato
 fifteen: quindici
 fifth: quinto
 fifty: cinquanta
 fight, to: combattere
 filet: il filetto
 fill out, to (a form): riempire
 fill up, to (a gas tank): fare il
 pieno
 film: il film (m.), la pellicola (f.)
 filter: il filtro
 finally: finalmente
 finance: la finanza (f.)
 finance, to: finanziare
 find, to: trovare
 fine: la multa (f.)
 finger: il dito (pl. le dita)
 finish, to: finire
 fire: il fuoco

firefighter: il pompiere (m.),
 il vigile del fuoco
 fire, to: licenziare
 fireplace: il caminetto
 firm: fisso
 first aid: pronto soccorso
 first: primo
 fiscal: fiscale
 fish: il pesce (m.)
 fish store: la pescheria (f.)
 fist: il pugno
 flea: la pulce (f.)
 flight: il volo
 floor: il pavimento, il piano
 Florence: Firenze
 florist: il fioraio
 flour: la farina (f.)
 flower: il fiore (m.)
 flu: l'influenza (f.)
 fly: la mosca (f.)
 fly, to: volare
 foam: la schiuma (f.)
 fog: la nebbia (f.)
 follow, to: seguire
 food: il cibo
 foot: il piede (m.)
 for: per
 foreigner: lo straniero/
 la straniera (f.)
 forest: la foresta (f.)
 forgive, to: perdonare
 fork: la forchetta (f.)
 form: la forma (f.), il modulo
 formal: formale
 formulate, to: formulare
 fortress: la fortezza (f.), la rocca (f.)
 fortune: la fortuna (f.)
 forty: quaranta
 forward: avanti
 founded: fondare
 fountain: la fontana (f.)
 fourteen: quattordici
 fourth: quarto
 fox: la volpe (f.)
 fragile: fragile
 France: la Francia (f.)
 free: libero
 free of charge: gratis
 French: francese
 frequent, to: frequentare
 fresh: fresco
 friar: il frate (m.)
 Friday: venerdì
 fried: fritto
 friend: l'amico/l'amica (f.)
 friendship: l'amicizia (f.)
 frighten, to: spaventare
 frog: la rana (f.)
 from: di, da
 fruit: la frutta (f.)

frying pan: la padella (f.)
 fulfillment: l'adempimento
 full: pieno
 function, to: funzionare
 funeral: il funerale (m.)
 funny: buffo
 fur: la pelliccia (f.)
 furnishings: l'arredamento
 furrier shop: la pellicceria (f.)
 future: il futuro

G

gain weight, to: ingrassare
 game: il gioco, la partita (f.)
 game room: la sala giochi (f.)
 garage: il garage (m.)
 garden: il giardino, l'orto
 garlic: l'aglio
 gas pump: il distributore
 di benzina
 gas tank: il serbatoio
 gasoline: la benzina (f.)
 gate: il cancello
 generous: generoso
 genesis: la genesi (f.)
 genre: il genere (m.)
 geography: la geografia (f.)
 German: tedesco
 Germany: la Germania
 gerund: il gerundio
 get drunk, to: ubriacarsi
 get on, to (climb): salire
 get up, to: alzarsi
 ghost: l'anima, il fantasma (m.)
 gift: il regalo, il dono
 girl: la ragazza (f.),
 la fanciulla (f.) (Tuscany)
 give, to (a present): regalare
 give, to: dare
 glad: contento
 gladly!: volentieri!
 glance: l'occhiata (f.)
 glass (drinking): il bicchiere (m.)
 glass (material): il vetro
 gloves: i guanti (m. pl.)
 go, to: andare
 goat: la capra (f.)
 god: il dio
 goddess: la dea (f.)
 godfather: il padrino
 gold: l'oro
 good: buono
 good day: buon giorno
 good: bravo
 gothic: gotico
 government: il governo
 grace: la grazia (f.)
 grade: il voto

gram: il grammo
 grammar: la grammatica (f.)
 granddaughter: la nipote (f.)
 grandfather: il nonno
 grandmother: la nonna (f.)
 grandson: il nipote (m.)
 grapefruit: il pompelmo
 grapes: l'uva (f.)
 grappa: la grappa (f.)
 gravity: la gravità
 gray: grigio
 Greek: greco
 green: verde
 greengrocer's: il fruttivendolo
 greet, to: salutare
 grill: la griglia (f.)
 grilled: alla griglia
 groceries: gli alimentari (m. pl.)
 ground: la terra
 ground floor: il pianterreno
 group: il gruppo
 grow, to: crescere (cresciuto)
 guarantee, to: garantire
 guess, to: indovinare
 guest: l'ospite (m./f.)
 guide: la guida (f.)
 guitar: la chitarra (f.)
 gym: la palestra (f.)
 gym suit: la tuta da ginnastica (f.)
 gynecologist: il ginecologo/
 la ginecologa (f.)

H

habit: l'abitudine (f.)
 hair: il pelo
 hair (on head): i capelli (m. pl.)
 hair dryer: il fon (m.)
 half: la metà, mezzo (adj.)
 hall: la sala (f.)
 ham: il prosciutto cotto
 hand: la mano (f.) (pl. le mani)
 handle: la maniglia (f.)
 hanger: la gruccia (f.),
 la stampella (f.)
 happen, to: capitare, succedere
 (successo)
 happiness: l'allegria (f.),
 la felicità (f.)
 happy: allegro, felice
 Happy Birthday!: Buon
 Compleanno!
 Happy Easter!: Buona Pasqua!
 Happy Holidays!: Buone Feste!
 Happy New Year!: Buon Anno!
 harbor: il porto
 hard: duro
 haste: la fretta (f.)
 hat: il cappello

hate, to: odiare
 have to, to (must): dovere
 have, to: avere
 hazel nut: la nocciola (f.)
 he: lui, egli
 head: la testa (f.)
 headlight: il faro
 health: la salute (f.)
 healthy: sano
 hear, to: sentire, udire
 heart: il cuore (m.)
 heart attack: l'infarto
 heat: il riscaldamento
 heaven: il cielo, il paradiso
 heavy: pesante
 hectogram: l'ettogrammo
 (*abb.* l'etto)
 height: l'altezza (f.)
 helicopter: l'elicottero
 hell: l'inferno
 hello: ciao, buon giorno;
 pronto! (telephone)
 helmet: il casco, l'elmetto
 help: aiuto!
 help, to: aiutare
 hen: la gallina (f.)
 here: ecco, qua, qui
 hernia: l'ernia (f.)
 hide, to: nascondere (nascosto)
 highway: l'autostrada (f.)
 hill: la collina (f.)
 hire, to: assumere (assunto)
 history: la storia (f.)
 hitchhiking: l'autostop (m.)
 hobby: l'hobby (m.),
 il passatempo
 holiday: la festa (f.)
 Holland: l'Olanda
 homeland: la patria (f.)
 homemade: della casa,
 fatto in casa
 homework: il compito
 honest: onesto
 honey: il miele (m.)
 honeymoon: la luna di miele (f.)
 honor: l'onore (m.)
 hope: la speranza (f.)
 hope, to: sperare
 horoscope: l'oroscopo
 horse: il cavallo
 horse riding: l'equitazione (f.)
 hospital: l'ospedale
 hostel: l'ostello
 hot: caldo
 hotel: l'albergo, l'hotel (m.)
 hour: l'ora (f.)
 house: la casa (f.)
 housewife: la casalinga (f.)

how: come
 how much?: quanto?
 however: comunque, tuttavia
 hug, to: abbracciare
 human: l'umano
 humble: umile
 humidity: l'umidità (f.)
 humor: l'umore
 hunger: la fame (f.)
 husband: il marito
 hymn: l'inno

I

I: io
 ice: il ghiaccio
 ice-cream: il gelato
 ice-cream parlor: la gelateria (f.)
 idea: l'idea (f.)
 ideal: l'ideale (m.)
 identification card: la carta
 d'identità (f.)
 identify, to: identificare
 identity: l'identità (f.)
 idiom: l'idioma (f.)
 idol: l'idolo
 if: se
 ignorant: ignorante
 ignore, to: ignorare
 illness: la malattia (f.)
 illustrate, to: illustrare
 illustration: l'illustrazione (f.)
 image: l'immagine (f.)
 imagination: l'immaginazione (f.)
 imagine, to: immaginare
 imitation: l'imitazione
 immaculate: immacolato
 immediately: subito
 immense: immenso
 immigration: l'immigrazione (f.)
 imperative: l'imperativo
 imperfect: l'imperfetto
 import, to: importare
 important: importante
 impossible: impossibile
 impression: l'impressione (f.)
 improve, to: migliorare
 in: a, in
 in a hurry: in fretta
 in care of (c/o): presso
 in fact: infatti
 in front of: davanti a
 in season: della stagione
 include, to: includere (incluso)
 increase, to: aumentare
 incredible: incredibile
 indefinite: l'indefinito
 independence: l'indipendenza (f.)
 index: l'indice (m.)

India: l'India
 Indian: indiano
 indicate, to: indicare
 indigestion: l'indigestione (f.)
 indirect: indiretto
 indispensable: indispensabile
 indoor: dentro, al coperto
 industry: l'industria (f.)
 inexpensive: economico
 infection: l'infezione (f.)
 inferior: inferiore
 infinitive: l'infinito
 inflammation: l'infiammazione (f.)
 inflation: l'inflazione (f.)
 inform, to: informare
 information: l'informazione (f.)
 information office: l'ufficio
 informazioni
 ingredient: l'ingrediente (m.)
 inhabitant: l'abitante (m./f.)
 injection: l'iniezione (f.),
 la puntura (f.)
 injury: la ferita (f.)
 inn: la pensione (f.),
 la locanda (f.)
 insect: l'insetto
 insect bite: la puntura (f.)
 insecure: insicuro
 insert, to: inserire
 inside: dentro
 insist, to: insistere
 inspiration: l'ispirazione (f.)
 instead: invece
 institute: l'istituto
 instruction: l'istruzione (f.)
 insulin: l'insulina (f.)
 insurance: l'assicurazione (f.)
 insure, to: assicurare
 intelligent: intelligente
 intend, to: intendere (inteso)
 intention: l'intenzione (f.)
 interesting: interessante
 intermission: l'intermezzo,
 l'intervallo
 internal: interno, dentro
 international: internazionale
 interpret, to: interpretare
 interpreter: l'interprete
 interrupt, to: interrompere
 (interrotto)
 interval: l'intervallo
 interview: il colloquio
 interview: l'intervista (f.)
 introduce, to: introdurre
 (introdotto)
 invitation: l'invito
 invite, to: invitare
 Ireland: l'Irlanda (f.)
 Irish: irlandese

iron: il ferro (steel), il ferro
da stiro

irregular: irregolare
is: è
island: l'isola (f.)
issue: la questione (f.)
issued: rilasciato
Italian: italiano
Italy: l'Italia (f.)
itinerary: l'itinerario
ivy: l'edera (f.)

J

jack (car): il cric (m.)
jacket: la giacca (f.)
jail: il carcere (m.)
January: gennaio
Japan: il Giappone
Japanese: giapponese
jeans: jeans
Jesus: Gesù
jeweler's: l'oreficeria (f.)
jewelry store: la gioielleria (f.)
Jewish: ebreo
joke: la barzelletta (f.)
joke, to: scherzare
journalist: il/la giornalista (m./f.)
joy: la gioia (f.)
judge, to: giudicare
juice: il succo
July: luglio
June: giugno
just: giusto, proprio

K

keep, to: tenere
ketchup: il ketchup
key: la chiave (f.)
kill, to: uccidere (ucciso)
kilogram: il chilogrammo
(*abb.* il chilo)
kilometer: il chilometro
kind: gentile
kindergarten: l'asilo
kindness: la gentilezza (f.)
king: il re
kiss: il bacio
kiss, to: baciare
knife: il coltello
knock, to: bussare
know, to (someone): conoscere
(conosciuto)
know, to (something): sapere
knowledge: la conoscenza (f.)
Kosher: Kosher

L

lace: il merletto
lack, to (be missing): mancare
lake: il lago
lamb: l'agnello
lamp: la lampada (f.)
land, to: sbarcare
landing: l'atterraggio
landlord: il padrone di casa
lane: la corsia (f.)
language: la lingua
large: grande, grosso
last: scorso, ultimo
last, to: durare
late: tardi
Latin: latino
laugh, to: ridere (riso)
laundry: il bucato
laundry service: la lavanderia (f.)
law: il Diritto, la giurisprudenza
(f.)
la legge (f.)
lawyer: l'avvocato
lazy: pigro
lead, to: condurre (condotto)
leaf: la foglia (f.)
learn, to: imparare
leather: il cuoio, la pelle (f.)
leave, to: partire
leave, to (behind): lasciare
left: sinistro
leg: la gamba (f.)
lemon: il limone (m.)
lemonade: la limonata (f.)
lend, to: prestare
length: la lunghezza (f.)
leopard: il leopardo
less: meno
lesson: la lezione (f.)
letter: la lettera (f.)
lettuce: la lattuga (f.)
level: il livello
liberty: la libertà (f.)
license: la patente (f.)
license plate: la targa (f.)
lie down, to: sdraiarsi
life: la vita (f.)
light: la luce (f.)
light bulb: la lampadina (f.)
light, to: accendere (acceso)
lightening flash: il lampo
line: la linea (f.)
linen: il lino
linguistics: la linguistica (f.)
lip: il labbro
liquor: il liquore (m.)
list: l'elenco
listen to, to: ascoltare

liter: il litro
literature: la letteratura (f.)
little: piccolo, (a little) un po'
live, to: abitare, vivere (vissuto)
lively: vivace
liver: il fegato
living room: il salotto,
il soggiorno
load, to: caricare
loaf: la pagnotta (f.)
loan: il mutuo
lobster: l'aragosta (f.)
local: locale
lodge, to: alloggiare
logistics: la logistica (f.)
long: lungo
long-distance call:
l'interurbana (f.)
look, to: guardare
lose weight, to: dimagrire
lose, to: perdere (perso)
lost and found: l'ufficio
oggetti smarriti
lotion: la lozione (f.)
love: l'amore (m.)
love, to: amare
lunch: il pranzo
lung: il polmone (m.)
luxury: lusso

M

magazine: la rivista (f.)
magic: la magia (f.)
magnificent: magnifico
maid: la domestica (f.)
maiden name: il nome da nubile
mail: la posta (f.)
mail, to: inviare, spedire
mailbox: la cassetta postale (f.)
maintain, to: mantenere
majority: la maggioranza (f.)
man: l'uomo
manage, to: dirigere (diretto)
management: l'amministrazione
(f.)
manager: il/la dirigente (m./f.)
manner: la maniera (f.), il modo
manufacture, to: fabbricare
map: la carta (f.), la mappa (f.)
marble: il marmo
March: marzo
marina: la marina (f.), il lido
mark, to: segnare
market: il mercato
marmalade: la marmellata (f.)
married: sposato
marry, to: sposare
marvelous: meraviglioso

masculine: maschile
 mass: la messa (f.)
 matches: i fiammiferi (m. pl.)
 mathematics: la matematica (f.)
 matrimony: il matrimonio
 maximum: il massimo
 May: maggio
 maybe: forse
 mayor: il sindaco
 me: mi, a me
 meadow: il prato
 meal: il pasto
 meaning: il significato, il senso
 means: il mezzo
 measure: la misura (f.)
 meat: la carne (f.)
 meatball: la polpetta (f.)
 mechanic: il meccanico
 medicine: la medicina (f.)
 meet, to: incontrare
 meeting: il congresso,
 la riunione (f.)
 melon: il melone (m.)
 mentality: la mentalità (f.)
 menu: la lista (f.), il menù
 merchandise: la merce (f.)
 merchant: il/la mercante (m./f.)
 message: il messaggio
 messenger: il corriere
 metal: il metallo
 method: il metodo
 Mexico: il Messico
 Middle Ages: il Medioevo
 midnight: la mezzanotte (f.)
 migraine: l'emicrania (f.)
 mile: il miglio (pl. le miglia)
 milk: il latte (m.)
 mind: la mente (f.)
 minister: il ministro
 minority: la minoranza (f.)
 mint: la menta (f.)
 minute: il minuto
 mirror: lo specchio
 misfortune: la disgrazia (f.)
 misfortune, bad luck:
 la sfortuna (f.)
 Miss, young lady: la signorina (f.)
 mix, to: mischiare
 model: il modello
 modern: moderno
 modest: modesto
 mom, mother: la mamma (f.)
 moment: l'attimo
 moment: il momento
 monastery: il monastero
 Monday: lunedì
 money: il denaro, i soldi (m. pl.)
 money exchange office:
 l'ufficio cambio
 money order: il vaglia
 postale (m.)

month: il mese (m.)
 monthly: mensile
 monument: il monumento
 moon: la luna (f.)
 more: più
 more than, in addition to: oltre
 morning: la mattina (f.)
 morsel, nibble: il bocconcino
 mosaic: il mosaico
 mosquito: la zanzara (f.)
 mother: la madre (f.)
 mother-in-law: la suocera (f.)
 motive: il motivo
 motor: il motore (m.)
 motorcycle: la motocicletta (f.)
 mountain: la montagna (f.)
 mourn, to: lamentare
 mouse: il topo
 mouth: la bocca (f.)
 movie director: il/la regista (m./f.)
 Mr.: il signore (m.)
 Mrs.: la signora (f.)
 much: molto
 municipality: il comune (m.)
 muscle: il muscolo
 museum: il museo
 mushroom: il fungo
 music: la musica (f.)
 musician: il/la musicista (m./f.)
 Muslim: musulmano
 mustard: la senape (f.)
 mute: muto
 myth: il mito

N

name: il nome (m.)
 name of spouse: il nome del
 coniuge
 napkin: la salvietta (f.),
 il tovagliolo
 narrative: la narrativa (f.)
 nation: la nazione (f.)
 nationality: la nazionalità (f.)
 native language: la madrelingua
 (f.)
 natural: naturale
 nature: la natura (f.)
 nature preserve: la riserva
 naturale (f.)
 nausea: la nausea (f.)
 near: vicino
 near-sighted: miope
 necessary: necessario
 necessity: la necessità (f.)
 neck: il collo
 necklace: la collana (f.)
 need: il bisogno
 need, to: avere bisogno
 negative: il negativo

neighbor: il vicino/la vicina (f.)
 neighborhood: il quartiere (m.)
 neither: neppure
 neither ... nor: né ... né
 nephew: il nipote
 nervous: nervoso
 nest: il nido
 never: mai
 new: nuovo
 news: la notizia (f.)
 news program: il telegiornale (m.)
 newspaper: il giornale (m.),
 il quotidiano
 newspaper vendor: il giornalaio
 newsstand: l'edicola (f.)
 next: prossimo
 nice: simpatico
 niece: la nipote
 night: la notte (f.)
 nightmare: l'incubo
 nineteen: diciannove
 ninety: novanta
 ninth: nono
 no entrance: vietato l'ingresso
 no one: nessuno
 no parking: divieto di sosta
 nocturne: notturno
 noisy: rumoroso
 noon: mezzogiorno
 normal: normale
 north: nord
 Norway: la Norvegia
 nose: il naso
 not: non
 not even: neanche, nemmeno
 notebook: il quaderno
 nothing: niente, nulla
 notwithstanding: nonostante
 noun: il nome (m.)
 novel: il romanzo
 November: novembre
 now: adesso, ora
 number: il numero
 nurse: l'infermiera (f.)

O

object: l'oggetto
 obligation: l'obbligo
 oblige, to: obbligare
 obsession: la mania (f.)
 obtain, to: ottenere
 obvious: ovvio
 occasion: l'occasione (f.)
 occupy, to: occupare
 ocean: l'oceano
 October: ottobre
 of: di
 offer: l'offerta (f.)
 office: l'ufficio

often: spesso
oil: l'olio
old: vecchio
olive: l'oliva (f.)
on: su
on board: a bordo
on purpose: apposta
one: uno
one hundred: cento
one-way street: senso unico
onion: la cipolla (f.)
only: solamente
open: aperto
open, to: aprire (aperto)
operation: l'operazione (f.)
opinion: l'opinione (f.)
opposite: il contrario
opposite: opposto
optician: l'ottico
or: o, oppure
orange: l'arancia (f.)
order: l'ordine (m.)
order, to: ordinare
ordinal: ordinale
oregano: l'origano
origin: l'origine (f.)
original: originale
other: altro
outdoor: all'aperto
outfit: l'abito
outside: fuori
oven: il forno
overcoat: il cappotto, il soprabito
overdone: scotto, troppo cotto
owner: il proprietario

P

package: il pacco
page: la pagina (f.)
pain: il dolore (m.)
paint: la vernice (f.)
paint, to: dipingere (dipinto)
painter: il pittore/la pittrice (f.)
painting: la pittura (f.), il quadro
pair: il paio (pl. le paia)
panorama: il panorama (m.)
pants: i pantaloni (m. pl.)
paper: la carta (f.)
paradise: il paradiso
parents: i genitori (m. pl.)
park: il parco
parking lot: il parcheggio
parsley: il prezzemolo
part: la parte (f.)
participate, to: partecipare
pass, to: passare
passing: il sorpasso
passion: la passione (f.)

passport: il passaporto
past: il passato
pasta: la pasta (f.)
pastry shop: la pasticceria (f.)
path: il sentiero, la via (f.)
paw: la zampa (f.)
pay, to: pagare
payment: il pagamento
pea: il pisello
peace: la pace (f.)
peach: la pesca (f.)
peak: il picco
peanut: la nocciolina (f.)
pear: la pera (f.)
pedagogy: la didattica (f.)
pen: la penna (f.)
penalty: la multa (f.), la pena (f.)
pencil: la matita (f.)
peninsula: la penisola (f.)
people: la gente (f.)
pepper: il pepe (m.)
percentage: il per cento,
la percentuale (f.)
perception: la percezione (f.)
perfume: il profumo
period: il periodo, il punto
permit, to: permettere (permesso)
person: la persona (f.)
pharmacy: la farmacia (f.)
phase: la fase (f.)
philosophy: la filosofia (f.)
phonetics: la fonetica (f.)
photocopy: la fotocopia (f.)
photograph: la fotografia (f.)
phrase: la frase (f.)
physics: la fisica (f.)
pie: la torta (f.)
piece: il pezzo
piece of furniture: il mobile (m.)
pig: il maiale
pill: la pillola (f.)
pillow: il cuscino
pink: rosa
pistol: la pistola (f.)
place: il locale (m.), il luogo,
il posto
plain: la pianura (f.)
plan: il programma (m.)
planet: il pianeta (m.)
plant: la pianta (f.)
plastic: la plastica (f.)
plate: il piatto
plateau: l'altopiano
play, to: giocare
play, to (an instrument): suonare
please: per favore, per piacere
please hold!: attendere prego!
please, to (to like): piacere
(piaciuto)
pleasing: piacevole

pleasure: il piacere (m.)
plural: plurale (m.)
pocket: la tasca (f.)
poem, poetry: la poesia (f.)
poet: il poeta (m.), la poetessa (f.)
poison: il veleno
police: la polizia (f.)
police headquarters:
la questura (f.)
police officer: il carabiniere (m.),
il poliziotto, il vigile
political party: il partito
politics: la politica (f.)
polluted: inquinato
pollution: l'inquinamento
pond: lo stagno
poor: povero
Pope: il Papa (m.)
population: la popolazione (f.)
pork: il maiale (m.), il porco
portion: la porzione (f.)
portrait: il ritratto
Portugal: Portogallo
position: la posizione (f.)
possibility: la possibilità
possible: possibile
post office: l'ufficio postale
postage stamp: il francobollo
postal carrier: il postino
postcard: la cartolina (f.)
potato: la patata (f.)
poultry: il pollame (m.)
poverty: la miseria (f.),
la povertà (f.)
practice: la pratica (f.)
praise, to: lodare
pray, to: pregare
prayer: la preghiera (f.)
precise: preciso
prefer, to: preferire
preference: la preferenza (f.)
pregnant: incinta
prepare, to: preparare
prescription: la ricetta (f.)
present: il presente
present, to: presentare
preservatives: i conservanti
(m. pl.)
president: il presidente
price: il prezzo
priest: il prete (m.)
prince: il principe (m.)
princess: la principessa (f.)
principal: principale
print: la stampa (f.)
printing: la tipografia (f.)
prison: il carcere (m.),
la prigione (f.)
private property: la proprietà
privata (f.)

problem: il problema (m.)
 produce, to: produrre (prodotto)
 product: il prodotto
 production: la produzione (f.)
 profession: la professione (f.)
 professor: il professore/
 la professoressa (f.)
 progress: il progresso
 progressive: progressivo
 prohibited: vietato, proibito
 prohibition: il divieto,
 la proibizione (f.)
 project: il progetto
 promise, to: promettere
 (promesso)
 pronoun: il pronome (m.)
 pronounce, to: pronunciare
 pronunciation: la pronuncia (f.)
 propose, to: proporre (proposto)
 protect, to: proteggere (protetto)
 Protestant: protestante
 proud: orgoglioso
 proverb: il proverbio
 provided that: purché
 psychology: la psicologia (f.)
 public: il pubblico
 publicity: la pubblicità (f.)
 pull, to: tirare
 punctual: puntuale
 pupil: l'allievo, lo scolaro
 pure: puro
 purple: viola
 purse: la borsa (f.)
 push, to: spingere (spinto)
 put, to: mettere (messo)
 pyramid: la piramide (f.)

Q

quality: la qualità (f.)
 quantity: la quantità (f.)
 queen: la regina (f.)
 question, to: domandare
 quickly, early: presto
 quit, to: smettere (smesso)
 quote, to: citare

R

Rabbi: il rabbino
 rabbit: il coniglio
 race: la corsa (f.)
 racket: la racchetta (f.)
 radiator: il radiatore (m.)
 radio: la radio (f.)
 rail car: il vagone (m.)
 railroad: la ferrovia (f.)
 rain: la pioggia (f.)

rain, to: piovere
 raincoat: l'impermeabile (m.)
 raise, to: alzare
 rare: raro, al sangue
 rarely: raramente
 raspberry: il lampone (m.)
 rather: piuttosto
 raw: crudo
 razor: il rasoio
 read, to: leggere (letto)
 ready: pronto
 really: davvero, veramente
 receipt: la ricevuta (f.),
 lo scontrino
 receive, to: ricevere
 recent: recente
 reception: il ricevimento
 recipe: la ricetta (f.)
 recite, to: recitare
 record: il disco
 red: rosso
 reflect, to: riflettere (riflesso)
 reflexive: il riflessivo
 refreshment: la bevanda (f.)
 refrigerator: il frigorifero
 refuge: il rifugio
 refund: il rimborso
 region: la regione (f.)
 regret, to (to be sorry):
 dispiacersi (dispiaciuto)
 relationship: il rapporto
 relative: il/la parente (m./f.)
 relaxing: rilassante
 religion: la religione (f.)
 remain, to: rimanere (rimasto)
 remainder: il resto
 remember, to: ricordare
 Renaissance: il Rinascimento
 render, to: rendere (reso)
 rent: l'affitto
 rent, to: affittare, noleggiare
 repair, to: riparare
 repeat, to: ripetere
 report: la cronaca (f.), il rapporto
 represent, to: rappresentare
 reptile: il rettile (m.)
 republic: la repubblica (f.)
 request: la richiesta (f.)
 reservation: la prenotazione (f.)
 reserve, to: prenotare
 reserved: riservato
 reservoir: la riserva d'acqua (f.)
 residence: il domicilio,
 la residenza (f.)
 resident: l'abitante (m./f.)
 resign, to: licenziarsi
 resistance: la resistenza (f.)
 resolve, to: risolvere (risolto)
 respect, to: rispettare
 respond, to: rispondere (risposto)

responsible: responsabile
 restaurant: il ristorante (m.)
 result: il risultato
 return, to: ritornare, tornare
 revision: la revisione (f.)
 rheumatism: il reumatismo
 rhythm: il ritmo
 rib: la costola (f.)
 rice: il riso
 rich: ricco
 riddle: l'indovinello
 right: destro
 right (legal): il diritto
 ring: l'anello
 ripe: maturo
 river: il fiume (m.)
 roasted: arrosto
 robbery: la rapina (f.)
 rock: la pietra (f.), la roccia (f.)
 roll of film: il rullino
 romantic: romantico
 roof: il tetto
 room: la camera (f.), la stanza (f.)
 root: la radice (f.)
 rope: la corda (f.)
 rose: la rosa (f.)
 round-trip (ticket): il biglietto
 round-trip (ritorno)
 route: il percorso, la via
 row: la fila (f.)
 ruckus: il baccano
 ruins: le rovine (f. pl.)
 run, to: correre (corso)
 rush hour: l'ora di punta (f.)
 Russia: la Russia (f.)
 Russian: russo

S

sad: triste
 safe: sicuro
 sailboat: la barca a vela (f.)
 saint: il santo/la santa (f.)
 salad: l'insalata (f.)
 salary: il salario
 sale: i saldi (m. pl.), la svendita (f.)
 sales clerk: il commesso/
 la commessa (f.)
 salmon: il salmone (m.)
 salt: il sale (m.)
 same: stesso
 sand: la sabbia (f.)
 sandwich: il panino
 Saturday: sabato
 sauce: la salsa (f.)
 saucepan: la casseruola (f.),
 il tegame (m.)
 sausage: la salsiccia (f.)
 say, to: dire (detto)

scarf: la sciarpa (f.)	shoe repair: il calzolaio	smoke, to: fumare
scene: la scena (f.)	shoe store: la calzoleria (f.)	snack: lo spuntino
schedule: l'orario, la tabella (f.)	shop: la bottega (f.), il negozio	snake: il serpente (m.)
school: la scuola (f.)	shop window: la vetrina (f.)	snob: lo snob
science: la scienza (f.)	short: basso, corto	snow: la neve (f.)
science fiction: la fantascienza (f.)	shorten, to: accorciare	so: così
scissors: le forbici (f. pl.)	shorts: i calzoncini (m. pl.)	so-so: così così
scooter: il motorino	shout, to: gridare, urlare	soap: il sapone (m.)
Scotland: la Scozia	show: lo spettacolo, la mostra (f.)	soccer: il calcio, il football
screwdriver: il cacciavite (m.)	(art)	soccer player: il calciatore (m.)
sculpture: la scultura (f.)	shower: la doccia (f.)	socks: le calze (f. pl.), i calzini
sea: il mare (m.)	shrimp: il gambero	(m. pl.)
sea shell: la conchiglia (f.)	shy: timido	sofa: il divano
search, to: cercare	Sicilian: siciliano	soft: soffice
season: la stagione (f.)	Sicily: la Sicilia	sold out: esaurito
seat: il posto, il sedile	sick: ammalato	soldier: il soldato
seat belt: la cintura di	side: il lato, il fianco	some: alcuni/alcune, qualche
sicurezza (f.)	side dish: il contorno	some of: ne
second: secondo	sidewalk: il marciapiede (m.)	someone: qualcuno
secretary: il segretario/	sign: il cartello, il segno	something: qualcosa
la segretaria (f.)	signal: il segnale (m.)	sometimes: qualche volta,
sedative: il sedativo	signature: la firma (f.)	talvolta
see you later!: arrivederci!	signify, to: significare	son: il figlio
ci vediamo!	silence: il silenzio	son-in-law: il genero
see, to: vedere (visto)	silk: la seta (f.)	soon: subito, presto
seem, to: sembrare	silver: l'argento	soul: l'anima (f.)
sell, to: vendere	simple: semplice	soup: la minestra (f.), la zuppa (f.)
semester: il semestre (m.)	since: poiché, da quando	south: sud
Senate: il Senato	sincere: sincero	space: lo spazio
send, to: inviare, mandare,	sing, to: cantare	Spain: la Spagna (f.)
spedire	singer: il/la cantante (m./f.)	Spanish: spagnolo
sender: il/la mittente (m./f.)	single: singolo	sparkling wine: lo spumante (m.)
sensation: la sensazione (f.)	single room: il monolocale (m.)	special: speciale
sentence: la frase (f.)	singular: singolare	spend, to: spendere (speso)
sentiment: il sentimento	sink: il lavandino	spice: la spezia (f.)
separate, to: separare	sister: la sorella (f.)	spicy: piccante
separated: separato	sister-in-law: la cognata (f.)	spider: il ragno
September: settembre	sit, to: sedersi	spirit: l'anima, lo spirito
serenade: la serenata (f.)	situation: la situazione (f.)	spiritual: spirituale
serious: grave, serio	sixteen: sedici	splendid: splendido
service: il servizio	sixty: sessanta	spoiled: guasto, rovinato
set: fisso, fissato	size: la misura (f.), la taglia (f.)	sponge: la spugna (f.)
set, to: apparecchiare	sketch: lo schizzo	spoon: il cucchiaino
seventeen: diciassette	ski, to: sciare	sport: lo sport (m.)
seventh: settimo	skiing: lo sci (m.)	sports ground: il campo sportivo
seventy: settanta	skirt: la gonna (f.)	spouse: lo sposo/la sposa (f.)
severe: severo	sky: il cielo	spring: la sorgente (f.),
sex: il sesso	sled: lo slittino	la primavera (f.) (season)
sexuality: la sessualità	sleep: il sonno	squid: i calamari (m. pl.)
shadow: l'ombra (f.)	sleep, to: dormire	stadium: lo stadio
shame: la vergogna (f.)	sleeping bag: il sacco a pelo	stage: il palcoscenico
share, to: condividere (condiviso)	sleeping pill: il sonnifero	stain: la macchia (f.)
shave, to: radersi	slender: magro, snello	stairs: la scala (f.), le scale (f. pl.)
she: lei, ella	slide: la diapositiva (f.)	stall: la bancarella (f.)
sheet: il lenzuolo	slope: la pista (f.), la discesa (f.)	star: la stella (f.)
sheet of paper: il foglio	slow down: rallentare	state: lo stato
shingle: la tegola (f.)	small: piccolo	statement: l'affermazione (f.)
ship: la nave (f.)	small bag: il sacchetto	station: la stazione (f.)
shirt: la camicia (f.)	smell, to: odorare, sentire	stationery store: la cartoleria (f.)
shoe: la scarpa (f.)	smile, to: sorridere (sorriso)	statue: la statua (f.)

steak: la bistecca (f.)
 steal, to: rubare
 steel: l'acciaio
 step: il passo
 stepfather: il patrigno
 stepsister: la sorellastra (f.)
 stewardess: la hostess (f.)
 still (again): ancora
 stingy: avaro, tirschio
 stitch: il punto
 stockings: le calze (f. pl.), i collant
 stomach: lo stomaco, la pancia
 stone: la pietra (f.), il sasso
 stop: la fermata (f.)
 stop, to: fermare
 storm: la tempesta (f.)
 story: la storia (f.)
 stove: la stufa (f.)
 straight: diritto
 strange: strano
 straw: la cannuccia (f.), il fieno (hay)
 strawberry: la fragola (f.)
 stream: il rio
 stream: il ruscello
 street: la strada (f.), la via (f.)
 stress: lo stress
 stress, to: stressare
 strike: lo sciopero
 stroll, to: passeggiare
 strong: forte
 struggle: la lotta (f.)
 student: lo studente/
 la studentessa (f.)
 study: lo studio
 study, to: studiare
 stuff: la roba (f.)
 stuffed: ripieno
 stupendous: stupendo
 stupid: stupido
 subject: la materia (f.),
 il soggetto
 subscription: l'abbonamento
 substitute, to: sostituire
 subtitle: il sottotitolo
 suburbs: la periferia (f.)
 subway: la metropolitana (f.)
 succeed, to: riuscire
 such: tale
 suffer, to: soffrire (sofferto)
 suffice, to: bastare
 sugar: lo zucchero
 suit: l'abito, il vestito
 suitable: adatto
 summer: l'estate (f.)
 sun: il sole (m.)
 Sunday: domenica
 sunrise: l'alba (f.)
 sunset: il tramonto
 supermarket: il supermercato
 sure: sicuro

surgery: la chirurgia (f.)
 surgeon: il chirurgo/la chirurga (f.)
 surname: il cognome (m.),
 il nome di famiglia
 surprise: la sorpresa (f.)
 surprise, to: sorprendere
 (sorpreso)
 surround, to: circondare
 swallow: la rondine (f.)
 swallow, to: inghiottire
 swamp: la palude (f.)
 swear, to: giurare
 sweater: la maglia (f.)
 Sweden: la Svezia (f.)
 sweet: dolce
 swim, to: nuotare
 swimming pool: la piscina (f.)
 Switzerland: la Svizzera
 symbol: il simbolo
 symphony: la sinfonia (f.)
 symptom: il sintomo
 synagogue: la sinagoga (f.)
 synthetic: sintetica
 system: il sistema (m.)

T

table: il tavolo (restaurant),
 la tavola
 tablecloth: la tovaglia (f.)
 tablet: la compressa (f.)
 tag: l'etichetta (f.)
 tailor: il sarto
 take, to: prendere (preso)
 tall: alto
 tan, to: abbronzarsi
 tape: l'adesivo, il nastro
 task: il compito, l'impegno
 taste: il gusto, il sapore (m.)
 taste, to: assaggiare
 tax: la tassa (f.)
 taxi: il tassì
 taxi meter: il tassametro
 tea: il tè (m.)
 teach, to: insegnare
 teacher: l'insegnante (m./f.)
 team: la squadra (f.)
 telephone: il telefono
 telephone call: la telefonata (f.)
 telephone card: la carta
 telefonica (f.)
 telephone, to: telefonare
 tell, to: dire (detto), raccontare
 temple: il tempio
 tender: tenero
 tent: la tenda (f.)
 tenth: decimo
 terrace: il terrazzo
 thank you!: grazie!
 thank, to: ringraziare
 that: quello/quella
 that which: ciò, quel che
 theater: il teatro
 theme: il tema (m.)
 then: allora, poi
 there: ci, lì/là
 there is: c'è
 therefore: perciò, quindi
 thermometer: il termometro
 they: loro
 thief: il ladro
 thin: magro
 thing: la cosa (f.)
 think, to: pensare
 third: terzo
 thirst: la sete (f.)
 thirteen: tredici
 thirty: trenta
 this: questo
 this evening: stasera
 this morning: stamattina
 thought: il pensiero
 thousand: mille (pl. mila)
 three: tre
 throw, to: buttare
 thunder: il tuono
 Thursday: giovedì
 thus: dunque
 ticket: il biglietto
 ticket counter: la biglietteria (f.)
 tide: la marea (f.)
 tie: la cravatta (f.)
 tie, to: legare
 tight: stretto
 tile: la piastrella (f.)
 time: l'ora (f.), il tempo
 tip: la mancia (f.)
 tire: il pneumatico
 tired: stanco
 tissue: il fazzoletto
 to: a, in
 tobacco shop: la tabaccheria (f.)
 today: oggi
 toe: il dito (pl. le dita)
 together: insieme
 toilet: il gabinetto, la toilette (f.)
 toilet paper: la carta igienica (f.)
 token: il gettone (m.)
 tolerance: la tolleranza (f.)
 toll: il pedaggio
 toll-free number: il numero
 verde
 tomato: il pomodoro
 tomorrow: domani
 tongue: la lingua (f.)
 tonight: stanotte
 too: troppo
 tooth: il dente (m.)
 toothbrush: lo spazzolino
 da denti
 toothpaste: il dentifricio

topic: l'argomento, il soggetto
 total: totale
 touch, to: toccare
 tour: il giro
 tourism: il turismo
 tourist: il/la turista (m./f.)
 toward: verso
 tower: la torre (f.)
 town square: la piazza (f.)
 toy: il giocattolo
 track: il binario
 tradition: la tradizione (f.)
 traffic: il traffico
 traffic light: il semaforo
 tragic: tragico
 train: il treno
 transfer, to: trasferirsi
 transform, to: trasformare
 translate, to: tradurre (tradotto)
 translation: la traduzione (f.)
 transport, to: trasportare
 trash: i rifiuti (m. pl.)
 trash can: il bidone della
 spazzatura
 travel, to: viaggiare
 tree: l'albero
 tremendous: tremendo
 trip: il viaggio
 tropical: tropicale
 trouble: il guaio
 truck: il camion (m.)
 true: vero
 trust: la fiducia (f.)
 trust, to: fidarsi
 truth: la verità (f.)
 try, to: provare
 tub: la vasca (f.)
 Tuesday: martedì
 tulip: il tulipano
 tunnel: la galleria (f.),
 il sotterraneo
 turn: il turno
 turn off, to: spegnere (spento)
 twelve: dodici
 twenty: venti
 two: due
 type, kind: la specie (f.), il tipo

U

ugly: brutto
 umbrella: l'ombrello
 uncle: lo zio
 uncomfortable: scomodo
 understanding: la comprensione
 (f.)
 understood!: capito!
 underwear: la biancheria
 intima (f.)
 unemployed: disoccupato

unfortunately: purtroppo
 unhealthy: malato
 unified: unificato
 unique: unico
 united: unito
 United States: gli Stati Uniti
 (m. pl.)
 unmarried: celibe (m.), nubile (f.)
 unpleasant: antipatico, spiacevole
 until: fino a
 unusual: insolito
 urgent: urgente
 usage: l'uso
 use, to: usare
 useless: inutile
 usual: solito

V

vacation: la vacanza (f.)
 vaccination: la vaccinazione (f.)
 vacuum cleaner: l'aspirapolvere
 (m.)
 validate, to: convalidare
 validated: convalidato
 validity: la validità
 valise: la valigia (f.)
 valley: la valle (f.)
 value: il valore (m.)
 variation: la variazione (f.)
 variety: la varietà (f.)
 various: vario
 vase: il vaso
 VAT/sales tax: I.V.A. (Imposta
 Valore Aggiunto)
 veal: il vitello
 vegetables: la verdura (f.)
 vegetarian: vegetariano
 vehicle: il veicolo
 velocity: la velocità
 vengeance: la vendetta (f.)
 verb: il verbo
 very: molto
 victim: la vittima (f.)
 view: la vista (f.)
 villa: la villa (f.)
 village: il villaggio
 vine: la vigna (f.)
 vinegar: l'aceto
 violence: la violenza (f.)
 violet: la violetta (f.)
 visible: visibile
 visit: la visita (f.)
 visit, to: visitare
 vitamin: la vitamina (f.)
 vocabulary: il vocabolario
 voice: la voce (f.)
 volleyball: la pallavolo (f.)
 vote, to: votare
 vowel: la vocale (f.)

W

wait, to: aspettare
 waiter: il cameriere
 waiting room: la sala d'attesa (f.)
 waitress: la cameriera (f.)
 walk, to: camminare, passeggiare
 wall: il muro, la parete (f.)
 wallet: il portafoglio
 walnut: la noce (f.)
 want, to: volere
 war: la guerra (f.)
 warm: caldo
 warm, to: riscaldare
 warn, to: avvertire
 warning: l'avviso
 wash, to: lavare
 wasp: la vespa (f.)
 watch: l'orologio
 water: l'acqua (f.)
 wave: l'onda (f.)
 we: noi
 weak: debole
 wear, to: indossare, portare
 weather: il tempo
 Wednesday: mercoledì
 week: la settimana (f.)
 weekend: il fine settimana
 weigh, to: pesare
 weight: il peso
 welcome! greetings!: benvenuto!
 well (adv.): bene
 well: il pozzo
 west: ovest, l'Occidente
 wet: bagnato
 what: che, che cosa
 wheel: la ruota (f.)
 when: quando
 where: dove
 wherever: ovunque
 which: quale
 while: mentre
 whistle, to: fischiare
 white: bianco
 who: chi
 wholesale: all'ingrosso
 why: perché
 wide: largo
 widespread: diffuso
 widow: la vedova (f.)
 widower: il vedovo
 wife: la moglie (f.)
 wild: selvaggio, selvatico
 willing: disposto
 win, to: vincere (vinto)
 wind: il vento
 window: la finestra (f.),
 il finestrino
 windshield: il parabrezza (m.)

wine: il vino
 wine bar: l'enoteca (f.)
 winery: l'azienda vinicola (f.)
 winter: l'inverno
 wise: saggio
 wish: il desiderio, la voglia (f.)
 witch: la strega (f.)
 with: con
 within: fra
 without: senza
 wolf: il lupo
 woman: la donna (f.),
 la femmina (f.),
 la signora (f.)
 wood: il legno
 woods: il bosco, la selva (f.)
 wool: la lana (f.)
 work: il lavoro
 work, to: lavorare
 worker: l'impiegato, l'operaio
 world: il mondo
 worm: il baco
 worried: preoccupato
 worry: il, preoccuparsi
 worse: peggio
 wrap, to: incartare
 write, to: scrivere (scritto)
 writer: lo scrittore/
 la scrittrice (f.)
 wrong: il torto
 wrong, to be: sbagliare

X-Y

x-ray: la radiografia (f.)
 yawn, to: sbadigliare
 year: l'anno
 yell, to: gridare
 yellow: giallo
 yes: sì
 yesterday: ieri
 yoga: lo yoga (m.)
 yogurt: lo yogurt (m.)
 you: Lei (polite), tu (familiar),
 voi (plural)
 you are welcome!: prego!
 young: giovane

Z

zero: zero
 zipper: la cerniera (f.)
 zone: la zona (f.)
 zoo: lo zoo

Italian to English

A

a, ad (before vowels): at, in,
 to, by
 a bordo: on board
 abbandonare: to abandon
 abbastanza: enough
 l'abbazia (f.): abbey
 l'abbigliamento: clothing
 l'abbonamento: subscription
 abbracciare: to hug
 abbronzarsi: to get tanned
 l'abitante (m./f.): resident,
 inhabitant
 abitare: to live
 l'abito: outfit, suit
 l'abitudine (f.): habit
 abolire: to abolish
 l'accademia (f.): academy
 accanto a: beside, next to
 accendere (acceso): to light,
 to turn on
 l'accento: accent
 l'accesso: access
 accettare: to accept
 l'acciaio: steel
 accidenti!: darn!
 l'acciuga (f.): anchovy
 accompagnare: to accompany
 accorciare: to shorten
 accordo: agreement
 l'aceto: vinegar
 l'acqua (f.): water
 acqua non potabile: do not
 drink water
 l'acquario: aquarium
 acquistare: to acquire
 acustico: acoustic
 adatto: suitable, appropriate
 l'adempimento: fulfillment
 adesso: now
 adorabile: adorable
 l'adulto: adult
 l'aereo: airplane
 l'affare (m.): business, deal
 l'aeroporto: airport
 affascinare: to fascinate
 affermare: to affirm, to assert
 l'affermazione (f.): statement
 l'affetto: affection
 affettuoso: affectionate
 affittare: to rent
 affittasi: for rent
 l'affitto: rent
 affollato: crowded
 l'agente (m./f.): agent
 l'agenzia (f.): agency
 l'aggettivo: adjective
 aggiungere (aggiunto): to add
 aggressivo: aggressive
 agile: agile
 l'aglio: garlic
 l'agnello: lamb
 agosto: August
 l'agricoltura (f.): agriculture
 aiutare: to help
 aiuto!: help!
 al coperto: indoor
 al forno: grilled
 al sangue: rare
 l'alba (f.): sunrise
 l'albergo: hotel
 l'albero: tree
 l'albicocca (f.): apricot
 l'alcol: alcohol (m.)
 alcolico: alcoholic
 alcuni/alcune: some
 l'alfabeto: alphabet
 gli alimentari (m. pl.): groceries
 all'aperto: outdoor, open air
 allacciare: to fasten, to buckle
 l'allegria (f.): happiness
 allegro: happy
 allenarsi: to train (sports)
 l'allergia (f.): allergy
 allergico: allergic
 l'allievo: pupil
 alloggiare: to lodge
 allora: then
 almeno: at least
 altezza (f.): height
 alto: tall
 l'altopiano: plateau
 altro: other
 alzare: to raise, lift
 alzarsi: to get up
 amare: to love
 amaro: bitter
 l'ambasciata (f.): embassy
 l'ambiente: environment (m.)
 l'ambizione: ambition
 l'ambulanza (f.): ambulance
 americano: American
 l'amicizia (f.): friendship
 l'amico/l'amica (f.): friend
 ammalato: sick, ill
 l'amministrazione (f.): manage-
 ment, administration
 ammirare: to admire
 l'amore (m.): love
 ampio: ample
 l'anatra (f.): duck
 l'analisi (f.): analysis
 anche: also
 ancora: still, again, yet
 andare: to go
 andata e ritorno: round-trip
 (ticket)

l'anello: ring
 l'anfiteatro: amphitheater
 l'anima (f.): spirit
 l'animale (m.): animal
 animato: animated, lively
 annegare: to drown
 l'anno: year
 l'anno bisestile: leap year
 annoiarsi: to get bored
 annunciare: to announce
 l'antenato: ancestor
 gli antibiotici (m. pl.): antibiotics
 antico: ancient, antique
 l'antipasto: appetizer
 antipatico: unpleasant, disagreeable
 l'antiquariato: antiques
 anzi: and even, but rather
 anziano: elderly
 l'aperitivo: aperitif
 aperto: open, (all'aperto) outside
 apparecchiare: to set
 appartamento: apartment
 appartenere: to belong
 applaudire: to applaud
 apposta: on purpose, deliberately
 apprezzare: to appreciate
 approvare: to approve of
 aprile: April
 aprire (aperto): to open
 l'aquila (f.): eagle
 l'aragosta (f.): lobster
 l'arancia (f.): orange
 l'archeologia (f.): archeology
 l'architettura (f.): architecture
 l'area (f.): area
 l'argento: silver
 l'argomento: topic, subject
 l'aria (f.): aria, air, appearance
 l'aria condizionata (f.): air conditioning
 aristocratico: aristocratic
 l'aroma (f.): aroma
 arrabbiarsi: to get angry
 arrabbiato: angry
 l'arredamento: furnishings
 arretrato: backward
 arrivare: to arrive
 arrivederci!: see you later!
 l'arrivo: arrival
 arrosto: roasted
 l'arte (f.): art
 l'articolo: article
 l'artista (m./f.): artist
 l'artrite (f.): arthritis
 l'ascensore (m.): elevator
 asciutto: dry
 ascoltare: to listen to
 l'asilo: kindergarten, day-care center

aspettare: to wait for
 l'aspirapolvere (m.): vacuum cleaner
 l'aspirina (f.): aspirin
 assaggiare: to taste
 assaltare: to assault
 l'assegno: check
 assicurare: to ensure, insure
 l'assicurazione (f.): insurance
 l'assistenza (medica) (f.): assistance, insurance (health)
 l'associazione (f.): association
 assolutamente: absolutely
 assumere (assunto): to hire, to assume
 l'Assunzione (f.): Feast of the Assumption
 l'astrologia (f.): astrology
 l'astronauta (m./f.): astronaut
 l'atleta (m./f.): athlete
 l'atletica: athletics
 l'atrio (m.): atrium
 attaccare: to attach, to attack
 l'attacco (m.): attack
 l'atteggiamento: attitude
 attendere prego!: please hold!
 attento: careful, attentive
 attenzione!: attention! warning!
 l'atterraggio: landing
 l'attimo: moment
 attirare: to attract
 l'attività (f.): activity
 attivo: active
 l'atto: document, record
 l'attore: actor
 attraversare: to cross
 attraverso: across
 attrezzato: equipped
 attribuire: to attribute
 l'attrice (f.): actress
 attuale: actual, current
 l'attualità (f.): current event
 auguri!: best wishes!
 aumentare: to increase
 australiano: Australian
 austriaco: Austrian
 l'autobus (m.): bus
 automatico: automatic
 l'automobile (f.) (*abb. auto*): car
 l'autonoleggio: car rental
 l'autore: author
 autoritario: authoritarian
 l'autostop (m.): hitchhiking
 l'autostrada (f.): highway
 l'autunno (m.): autumn
 avanti: forward
 avaro: stingy
 avere: to have
 l'avvenimento (m.): event
 avvenire: to happen

l'avventura (f.): adventure
 l'avverbio (m.): adverb
 avvertire: to warn
 avvicinarsi: to approach, to get near
 l'avvocato: lawyer
 l'azienda (f.): firm, company
 l'azione (f.): action
 azzurro: light blue

B

il babbo: dad
 il baccano: ruckus
 baciare: to kiss
 il bacio: kiss
 il baco: worm
 bagnato: wet
 il bagno: bath
 la baia (f.): bay
 il balcone (m.): balcony
 il ballo: dance
 il bambino: baby, child
 la banca (f.): bank
 la bancarella (f.): stall, booth
 il banco: counter
 il Bancomat: ATM
 il bar (m.): bar, café
 la barba (f.): beard
 il barbiere (m.): barber
 la barca (f.): boat
 la barca a vela (f.): sailboat
 il/la barista (m./f.): bartender
 barocco: Baroque
 la barzelletta (f.): joke
 la base (f.): base
 basso: short, low
 bastare: to be enough, to suffice
 battere: to beat
 la batteria (f.): battery
 la bellezza (f.): beauty
 benché: although
 bene: well
 benvenuto!: welcome! greetings!
 la benzina (f.): gasoline
 bere (bevuto): to drink
 il berretto: cap
 la bestia (f.): beast
 la bevanda (f.): refreshment
 la biancheria intima (f.): underwear
 bianco: white
 la Bibbia (f.): Bible
 il biberon (m.): baby bottle
 la bibita (f.): refreshment, beverage
 il bicchiere (m.): glass
 la biglietteria (f.): ticket counter
 il biglietto: ticket
 il binario: track, platform

biodegradabile: biodegradable	i calamari (m. pl.): squid	il carciofo: artichoke
la biologia (f.): biology	il calciatore (m.): soccer player	caricare: to load
biondo: blond	il calcio : soccer, kick	carino: cute, pretty
la birra (f.): beer	caldo: heat, hot (adj.)	la carne (f.): meat
il biscotto: cookie	calmare: to calm	caro: dear, expensive
bisognare: to be necessary	le calze (f. pl.): stockings	la carota (f.): carrot
la bistecca (f.): steak	i calzini (m. pl.): socks	la carriera (f.): career
blu: blue	il calzolaio: shoe repair	la carta (f.): paper
la bocca (f.): mouth	la calzoleria (f.): shoe store	la carta di credito (f.): credit card
il bocconcino: morsel, nibble	i calzoncini (m. pl.): shorts	la carta d'identità: identification card
il bollettino: bulletin, news	cambiare: to change,	la carta igienica (f.): toilet paper
bollire: to boil	to exchange	la carta stradale (f.): map
bordo, a: aboard	il cambio: exchange	la carta telefonica (f.): telephone card
la borsa (f.): bag, purse	la camera (f.): room	il cartello: sign
la borsetta (f.): purse, bag	la cameriera (f.): waitress, maid	la cartoleria (f.): stationery store
il bosco: woods	il cameriere: waiter	la cartolina (f.): postcard
la bottega (f.): shop	la camicetta (f.): blouse	la casa (f.): house, home
la bottiglia (f.): bottle	la camicia (f.): shirt	la casalinga (f.): housewife
il bottone (m.): button	il caminetto: fireplace	il casco: helmet
il braccialetto: bracelet	il camino: chimney	la cassa (f.): cash register
il braccio; le braccia (pl.): arm	il camion (m.): truck	la casseruola (f.): saucepan
bravo: good, able	camminare: to walk	la cassetta postale (f.): mailbox
la braciola (f.): cutlet	la campagna (f.): country,	castano: brown
breve: brief, short	countryside	il castello: castle
la brioche (f.): brioche, croissant	la campana (f.): bell	il catalogo: catalogue
britannico: British	il campanello: doorbell	la categoria (f.): category
il brodo: broth	il campanile (m.): bell tower	la catena (f.): chain
la bronchite (f.): bronchitis	il campeggio: camping	la cattedrale (f.): cathedral
il bronzo: bronze	il campionato: match,	cattivo: bad, evil, naughty
bruciare: to burn	championship	cattolico: Catholic
bruno: brown haired	il campo: field	il cavallo: horse
brutto: ugly	il campo sportivo: sports ground	il cavatappi (m.): corkscrew
il bucato: laundry	canadese: Canadian	il cavo: cable
buffo: funny	il canale (m.): channel	celebrare: to celebrate
il buffone (m.): buffoon, clown,	il cancello: gate	celibe: unmarried, single (m.)
fool	il cancro: cancer	la cena (f.): dinner
il buio: dark	la candela (f.): candle	cenare: to dine
Buon Anno!: Happy New Year!	il candidato: candidate	cento: one hundred
Buon Compleanno!: Happy	il cane (m.): dog	centrale: central
Birthday!	la cannuccia (f.): drinking straw	il centro: center, downtown
Buon giorno!: Good day, hello!	il canottaggio: canoeing	la ceramica (f.): ceramic
Buon Natale!: Merry Christmas!	il/la cantante (m./f.): singer	cercare: to search, look for
Buona Feste!: Happy Holidays!	cantare: to sing	la cerniera (f.): zipper
Buona Pasqua!: Happy Easter!	la cantina (f.): basement, cellar	il certificato: certificate
buono: good	caotico: chaotic	certo: certain, sure, of course!
il burro: butter	capace: capable	il cervello: brain
il burrone (m.): canyon	il capello: strand of hair	che: what, who, which, that
bussare: to knock	i capelli (m. pl.): hair (on head)	che cosa: what
la busta (f.): envelope	capitare: to happen	chi: who? whom? the one who
la bustina (f.): bag	capito!: understood!	la chiacchiera (f.): chat
buttare: to throw	la cappella (f.): chapel	chiacchierare: to chat
	il cappello: hat	chiamare: to call
	il cappotto: overcoat	chiamarsi: to call oneself
	la capra (f.): goat	(to be named)
	la carabiniere (m.): police officer	chiaro: clear, light
	la caramella (f.): candy	la chiave (f.): key
	il carattere (m.): character	chiedere (chiesto): to ask
	caratteristico: characteristic,	la chiesa (f.): church
	typical	il chilogrammo: kilogram
	il carcere (m.): jail, prison	

C

c'è: there is
 la cabina (f.): cabin
 il cacciavite (m.): screwdriver
 cadere: to fall
 il caffè (m.): coffee, café

il chilometro: kilometer	il coltello: knife	la conoscenza (f.): knowledge, acquaintance
la chirurgia (f.): surgery	coltivare: to cultivate	conoscere (conosciuto): to know someone
il chirurgo/la chirurga (f.): surgeon	il comandamento: commandment	conquistare: to conquest
la chitarra (f.): guitar	combattere: to fight	consecutivo: consecutive
chiudere (chiuso): to close	come: how, like, as	la conseguenza (f.): consequence
chiuso: closed	cominciare: to begin, to start	i conservanti (m. pl.): preservatives
la chiusura festiva (f.): closed for the holidays	il commesso/la commessa (f.): sales clerk	considerare: to consider
ci: there	comodo: convenient, comfortable	consigliare: to advise, to recommend
ciao: hello, hi, bye	compiere: to accomplish	consolare: to console
ciascuno: each, each one	il compito: homework, task, chore	la consonante (f.): consonant
il cibo: food	il compleanno: birthday	il consumo: consumption, waste
il ciclismo: cycling	il complimento: compliment	il contadino/ la contadina (f.): farmer, peasant
cieco: blind	comporre (composto): to compose	i contanti (m. pl.): cash
il cielo: sky, heaven	il comportamento: behavior	contare: to count
la ciliegia (f.): cherry	comportarsi: to behave	contattare: to contact
il cimitero: cemetery	la composizione (f.): composition	il contatto: contact
la Cina: China	comprare: to buy	il conte: count
il cinema (m.): cinema	la comprensione (f.): understanding	contemporaneo: contemporary
cinese: Chinese	la compressa (f.): tablet, pill	contenere: to contain
cinquanta: fifty	il comune (m.): municipality; common (adj.)	contento: glad, satisfied
la cintura (f.): belt	comunicare: to communicate	la contessa (f.): countess
la cintura di sicurezza (f.): seat belt	il comunismo: communism	contestare: to challenge, dispute
ciò: that which	la comunità: community	il continente (m.): continent
la cioccolata (f.): chocolate	comunque: however, no matter how	continuare: to continue
la cipolla (f.): onion	con: with	il conto: check, bill, account
circa: about, approximately	la concentrazione (f.): concentration	il contorno: side dish
il circo: circus	il concerto: concert	il contraccettivo: contraceptive
il circolo: circle	il concetto: concept	il contrario: opposite
circondare: to surround	la concezione (f.): conception	il contrasto: contrast
citare: to quote	la conchiglia (f.): sea shell	contro: against
la citazione (f.): excerpt, quote	concludere (concluso): to conclude	controllare: to check
la città: city	il concorso: contest, exam	il controllo: check, control
la cittadinanza (f.): citizenship	la condizione (f.): condition	la contusione (f.): bruise
il cittadino/la cittadina (f.): citizen	condividere (condiviso): to share	convalidare: to validate
civico: civic	il condizionale (m.): conditional (verb mood)	convalidato: validated
civile: civil	il condominio: condominium	il convento: convent
la classe (f.): class	condurre (condotto): to lead, to carry out	la conversazione (f.): conversation
classico: classical	la conferenza (f.): conference, lecture	convincere (convinto): to convince
la classificazione (f.): classification	confessare: to confess	la coperta (f.): blanket, cover
il/la cliente (m./f.): client, customer	il conflitto: conflict	il coperto: cover charge
il clima (m.): climate	il conforto: comfort, convenience	la copia (f.): copy
la cognata (f.): sister-in-law	congratularsi: congratulations!	la coppa (f.): cup
il cognato: brother-in-law	il congresso: meeting, conference	la coppa (f.): couple
il cognome (m.): surname	il coniglio: rabbit	il coraggio: courage
la coincidenza (f.): connection, coincidence	coniugare: to conjugate	la corda (f.): rope
la colazione (f.): breakfast, lunch	la coniugazione (f.): conjugation	il coro: chorus, choir
collaborare: to collaborate		il corpo: body
la collana (f.): necklace		correggere (corretto): to correct
i collant (m. pl.): stockings		correre (corso): to run
il/la collega (m./f.): colleague		corretto: correct
la collina (f.): hill		il corriere: messenger, courier
il collo: neck		la corriera (f.): bus
il colloquio: interview		corrispondere (corrisposto): to correspond
la colonia (f.): colony		la corsa (f.): race
il colore (m.): color		

la corsia (f.): lane
 il corso: course
 la corte (f.): court
 cortese: courteous
 la cosa: cosa c'è?: thing, what:
 what is it?
 così: so, thus
 così così: so-so
 i cosmetici (m. pl.): cosmetics
 la costa (f.): coast
 il costo: cost, price
 costare: to cost
 la costiera (f.): cliff
 la costituzione (f.): constitution
 la costola (f.): rib
 costoso: costly, expensive
 la costoletta (f.): cutlet
 costruire: to build, construct
 il costume (m.): costume
 il cotone (m.): cotton
 cotto: cooked
 la cravatta (f.): tie
 creare: to create
 la creazione (f.): creation
 credere: to believe
 il credito: credit
 la crema (f.): cream
 crescere (cresciuto): to grow
 il cric (m.): jack (car)
 la crisi (f.): crisis
 cristiano: Christian
 croccante: crunchy
 la croce (f.): cross
 la crociera (f.): cruise
 la cronaca (f.): report
 la crostata (f.): pie
 crudo: raw, uncooked
 cubano: Cuban
 il cubo: cube
 la cuccetta (f.): berth
 il cucchiaino: spoon
 cucinare: to cook
 il cugino/la cugina (f.): cousin
 cui: whom, that, which
 la culla (f.): crib
 la cultura (f.): culture
 culturale: cultural
 cuocere (cotto): to cook
 il cuoio: leather
 il cuore (m.): heart
 la cupola (f.): dome
 la cura (f.): care
 curare: to care for, to look after
 la curiosità (f.): curiosity
 curioso: curious, strange
 la curva (f.): curve
 il cuscino: pillow

D

da: from, by
 Danimarca: Denmark
 dannato: damned
 danneggiato: damaged
 la danza (f.): dance
 dappertutto: everywhere
 dare: to give
 la data (f.): date
 davanti a: in front of
 davvero: really
 la dea (f.): goddess
 debole: weak
 decidere (deciso): to decide
 decimo: tenth
 la decisione (f.): decision
 dedicare: to dedicate
 definire: to define
 la definizione (f.): definition
 il delfino: dolphin
 delizioso: delicious
 della casa: homemade
 della stagione: in season
 democratico: democratic
 la democrazia (f.): democracy
 il denaro: money
 la densità (f.): density
 il dente (m.): tooth
 il dentifricio: toothpaste
 il/la dentista (m./f.): dentist
 dentro: inside
 il desiderio: wish, desire
 la destinazione (f.): destination
 il destino: destiny
 destro: right
 il detersivo: detergent
 la deviazione (f.): detour
 di: of, about, from
 di solito: usually
 il diabete (m.): diabetes
 il dialogo: dialogue
 il diamante (m.): diamond
 la diapositiva (f.): slide
 la diarrea (f.): diarrhea
 dicembre: December
 dichiarare: to declare
 diciannove: nineteen
 diciassette: seventeen
 diciotto: eighteen
 la didattica (f.): pedagogy,
 teaching
 la dieta (f.): diet
 dietro a: behind
 difendere (difeso): to defend
 il difetto: defect
 la differenza (f.): difference
 difficile: difficult
 diffuso: widespread, diffuse

la diga (f.): dam
 digerire: to digest
 dimagrire: to lose weight
 diminuire: to decrease
 dimostrare: to demonstrate
 la dimostrazione (f.):
 demonstration
 dinamico: energetic
 il dio: god
 il dipartimento: department
 dipendere (dipeso): to depend
 dipingere (dipinto): to paint
 dire (detto): to say, to tell
 diretto: direct
 il direttore/la direttrice (f.):
 director
 la direzione (f.): direction
 dirigere (diretto): to manage,
 to direct
 diritto: straight (adv.)
 il Diritto: law
 il disco: record
 il discorso: speech, discussion
 la discoteca (f.): discothèque
 la discussione (f.): discussion
 discutere (discusso): to discuss
 disegnare: to draw
 il disegno: drawing, design
 la disgrazia (f.): misfortune
 disoccupato: unemployed
 dispiacere (dispiaciuto):
 to be sorry
 disponibile: available
 disposto: willing
 la distanza (f.): distance
 distinguere (distinto):
 to distinguish
 distratto: distracted, absent
 minded
 il distributore di benzina:
 gas pump
 distruggere (distrutto): to destroy
 il dito (pl. le dita): finger, toe
 la ditta (f.): firm, business
 la dittatura (f.): dictatorship
 il divano: sofa
 diverso: different
 divertirsi: to enjoy oneself
 dividere (diviso): to divide
 divieto: prohibition
 divieto di sosta: no parking
 la divisione (f.): division
 divorziare: to get divorced
 divorziato: divorced
 il dizionario: dictionary
 la dizione (f.): diction
 la doccia (f.): shower
 il documento: document
 dodici: twelve
 la dogana (f.): customs

dolce: sweet
 il dolce: dessert
 il dollaro: dollar
 il dolore (m.): pain
 domandare: to question
 domani: tomorrow
 domenica: Sunday
 la domestica (f.): maid
 il domicilio: residence
 la donna (f.): woman
 dopo: after (prep.),
 afterward (adv.)
 doppiare: to dub
 doppio: double
 dormire: to sleep
 il dottore/la dottoressa (f.):
 doctor
 dove: where
 dovere: to have to, to must
 la dozzina (f.): dozen
 la droga (f.): drug
 la drogheria (f.): grocery store
 il duca (m.): duke
 due: two
 la duchessa (f.): duchess
 il duomo: cathedral, dome
 dunque: thus, then
 durante: during
 durare: to last
 duro: hard, tough

E

e, ed (before vowels): and
 è: is
 ebbene: well then, so
 ebreo: Hebrew, Jewish
 eccellente: excellent
 eccetera: et cetera
 eccetto: except
 ecco: here is, there is
 l'economia (f.): economy
 economico: inexpensive
 l'edera (f.): ivy
 l'edicola (f.): newsstand
 l'edificio: building
 l'effetto: effect
 efficiente: efficient
 Egitto: Egypt
 elegante: elegant
 l'elemosina (f.): alms
 elementare: elementary
 l'elenco: list, directory
 l'elettricità (f.): electricity
 l'elezione (f.): election
 l'elicottero: helicopter
 eliminare: to eliminate
 l'emergenza (f.): emergency
 l'emigranza (f.): migraine
 emigrare: to emigrate

enorme: enormous
 l'enoteca (f.): wine bar
 entrambi: both
 entrare: to enter
 l'entrata (f.): entrance
 l'Epifania (f.): Epiphany (Jan. 6)
 l'equitazione (f.): horse riding
 l'ernia (f.): hernia
 l'errore (m.): error
 esagerare: to exaggerate
 l'esame (m.): exam
 esaminare: to exam
 esattamente: exactly
 esatto: exact
 esaurito: sold out
 escludere (escluso): to exclude
 l'escursione (f.): excursion
 esistere (esistito): to exist
 esotico: exotic
 l'esperienza (f.): experience
 esplodere (esploso): to explode
 esportare: to export
 l'espressione (f.): expression
 espresso: express
 esprimere (espresso): to express
 l'essenza (f.): essence
 essenziale: essential
 essere (stato): to be
 est: east
 l'estate (f.): summer
 l'estero: abroad
 l'età (f.): age
 l'etichetta (f.): tag, label
 l'etto: hectogram
 l'Europa (f.): Europe
 l'evento: event
 evitare: to avoid
 evocare: to evoke

F

fa: ago
 la fabbrica (f.): factory
 fabbricare: to manufacture
 la faccenda (f.): thing, matter,
 chore
 la faccia (f.): face
 facile: easy
 la facoltà (f.): school
 il fagiolo: bean
 il falegname (m.): carpenter
 la fame (f.): hunger
 la famiglia (f.): family
 famoso: famous
 la fantascienza (f.): science fiction
 la fantasia (f.): fantasy
 il fantasma (m.): ghost, phantom
 fare (fatto): to do, to make
 la farina (f.): flour
 la farmacia (f.): pharmacy

il faro: headlight, lighthouse
 il fascismo: fascism
 la fase (f.): phase
 fastidio: bother, annoyance
 la fatica (f.): effort
 il fatto: fact
 la fattoria (f.): farm
 la favola (f.): fable
 il fazzoletto: tissue
 febbraio: February
 la febbre (f.): fever
 la fede (f.): faith
 il fegato: liver
 felice: happy
 il feltro: felt
 la femmina (f.): woman, female
 la ferita (f.): injury
 fermare: to stop
 la fermata (f.): stop
 fermo: still
 Ferragosto: Assumption Day
 (Aug. 15)
 il ferro: iron
 la ferrovia (f.): railroad
 la festa (f.): holiday
 festeggiare: to celebrate
 la fiaba (f.): fable, tale
 i fiammiferi (m. pl.): matches
 il fianco: side
 fidarsi: to trust
 la fidanzata (f.): fiancée
 il fidanzato: fiancé
 la fiducia (f.): trust
 fiero: proud
 la fiera (f.): fair
 la figlia (f.): daughter
 il figlio: son
 la fila (f.): line, row
 il filetto: filet
 la filosofia (f.): philosophy
 il filtro: filter
 finalmente: finally
 la finanza (f.): finance
 finanziario: to finance
 la fine (f.): end
 il fine settimana: weekend
 la finestra (f.): window
 finire: to finish
 fino a: until, as far as
 il fioraio: florist
 il fiore (m.): flower
 Firenze: Florence
 la firma (f.): signature
 fisso: firm, fixed
 fiscale: fiscal
 fischiare: to whistle
 la fisica (f.): physics
 fissare: to set up
 fisso: set, fixed
 il fiume (m.): river
 il fuoco: fire

la foglia (f.): leaf
 il foglio: sheet of paper
 il fon (m.): hair dryer
 fondato: founded
 il fondo: bottom
 la fonetica (f.): phonetics
 la fontana (f.): fountain
 il football: soccer, football
 le forbici (f. pl.): scissors
 la forchetta (f.): fork
 la foresta (f.): forest
 la forma (f.): form
 il formaggio: cheese
 formale: formal
 formulare: to formulate,
 to compose
 il fornaio: baker
 il forno: oven
 forse: maybe
 forte: strong
 la fortezza (f.): fortress
 la fortuna (f.): fortune
 la fotocopia (f.): photocopy
 la fotografia (f.): photograph
 fra: within, in, between, among
 fragile: fragile
 la fragola (f.): strawberry
 francese: French
 la Francia (f.): France
 il francobollo: postage stamp
 la frase (f.): phrase, sentence
 il frate (m.): friar
 il fratello: brother
 freddo: cold
 frequentare: to frequent
 fresco: fresh
 la fretta (f.): haste, hurry
 il frigorifero: refrigerator
 fritto: fried
 la frontiera (f.): border
 la frutta (f.): fruit
 il fruttivendolo: greengrocer's
 fumare: to smoke
 il fumetto: comic strip
 il funerale (m.): funeral
 il fungo: mushroom
 la funivia (f.): cable car, gondola
 funzionare: to function, to work
 il fuoco: fire
 fuori: outside
 furbo: clever, sly (slang)
 il futuro: future

G

il gabinetto: toilet
 la galleria (f.): tunnel, gallery
 la gallina (f.): hen
 la gamba (f.): leg

il gambero: shrimp
 la gara (f.): contest
 il garage (m.): garage
 garantire: to guarantee
 il garofano: carnation
 il gatto: cat
 il gattopardo: leopard
 la gelateria (f.): ice-cream parlor
 il gelato: ice-cream
 il genere (m.): genre, type
 il genero: son-in-law
 generoso: generous
 la genesi (f.): genesis
 i genitori (m. pl.): parents
 gennaio: January
 la gente (f.): people
 gentile: kind, polite
 la gentilezza (f.): kindness
 la geografia (f.): geography
 la Germania (f.): Germany
 il gerundio: gerund
 Gesù: Jesus
 il gettone (m.): token
 il ghiaccio: ice
 già: already
 la giacca (f.): jacket
 giallo: yellow
 la ginnastica (f.): gymnastics,
 exercise
 il Giappone (m.): Japan
 giapponese: Japanese
 il giardino: garden
 il ginecologo/la ginecologa (f.):
 gynecologist
 giocare: to play
 il giocattolo: toy
 il gioco: game
 la gioia (f.): joy
 la gioielleria (f.): jewelry store
 il giornalaio: newspaper vendor
 il giornale (m.): newspaper
 il/la giornalista (m./f.): journalist
 la giornata (f.): day
 il giorno: day
 giovane: young
 giovedì: Thursday
 girare: to spin, to shoot (a film)
 il giro: tour
 la gita (f.): excursion
 giù: down
 il giubbotto: coat
 giudicare: to judge
 giugno: June
 giurare: to swear
 la giurisprudenza (f.): law
 giusto: just, right, correct
 la gonna (f.): skirt
 gotico: gothic
 il governo: government
 la grammatica (f.): grammar
 il grammo: gram

grande: big, large
 la grappa (f.): grappa
 grasso: fat
 gratis: free of charge
 grave: serious, grave
 la gravità (f.): gravity
 la grazia (f.): grace
 grazie!: thank you!
 la Grecia: Greece
 greco: Greek
 greggio: raw, crude
 gridare: to yell, to shout
 grigio: gray
 la griglia (f.): grill
 grosso: large
 il grotto (f.): cave
 la grucciona (f.): hanger
 il gruppo: group
 i guanti (m. pl.): gloves
 guadagnare: to earn
 il guaio: trouble
 la guancia (f.): cheek
 guardare: to look at, to watch
 il guardaroba (m.): cloakroom
 guasto: spoiled, rotten
 il guasto: breakdown
 la guerra (f.): war
 la guida (f.): guide
 guidare: to drive
 gustare: to taste
 il gusto: taste

H

l'hobby (m.): hobby
 l'hockey (m.): hockey
 la hostess (f.): stewardess
 l'hotel (m.): hotel

I

I.V.A. (Imposta Valore Aggiunto):
 VAT/sales tax
 l'idea (f.): idea
 l'ideale (m.): ideal
 identificare: to identify
 l'identità (f.): identity
 l'idioma (f.): idiom
 l'idolo: idol
 ieri: yesterday
 ignorante: ignorant
 ignorare: to ignore
 illustrare: to illustrate
 l'illustrazione (f.): illustration
 l'imbarco: boarding
 l'imitazione (f.): imitation
 immacolato: immaculate
 immaginare: to imagine

l'immaginazione (f.):
imagination
l'immagine (f.): image
immenso: immense
l'immigrazione (f.): immigration
imparare: to learn
l'impegno: commitment, task
l'imperativo: imperative
l'imperetto: imperfect
l'impermeabile: raincoat
l'impero: empire
l'impiegato: worker, employee,
official
importante: important
importare: to import, to matter
impossibile: impossible
l'imprenditore: entrepreneur
l'impressione (f.): impression
imprestare: to lend
in: in, to, at
in fretta: in a hurry
incartare: to wrap
l'incidente (m.): accident
incinta: pregnant
inciso: engraved
includere (incluso): to include
incominciare: to begin, to start
incontrare: to meet
incredibile: incredible
l'incrocio: crossing
l'incubo: nightmare
l'indefinito: indefinite
indiano: Indian
indicare: to indicate
l'indicazione (f.): direction,
indication
l'indice (m.): index
indietro: back, behind
l'indigestione (f.): indigestion
l'indipendenza (f.):
independence
indiretto: indirect
l'indirizzo: address
indispensabile: indispensable
indossare: to wear
indovinare: to guess
l'indovinello: riddle
l'industria (f.): industry
l'infarto: heart attack
infatti: in fact
inferiore: inferior, lower
l'infermiera (f.): nurse
l'inferno: hell
l'infezione (f.): infection
l'infiammazione (f.):
inflammation
l'infinito: infinitive
l'inflazione (f.): inflation
l'influenza (f.): flu
informare: to inform

l'informazione (f.):
information
l'ingegnere: engineer
l'Inghilterra (f.): England
inghiottire: to swallow
inglese: English
ingrassare: to get fat
l'ingrediente (m.): ingredient
l'ingresso: entrance
l'ingrosso: wholesale
l'iniezione (f.): injection
iniziare: to begin
l'inizio: beginning
innamorarsi: to fall in love with
l'inno: hymn
inoltre: also
l'inquinamento: pollution
inquinato: polluted
l'insalata (f.): salad
l'insegnante (m./f.): teacher
insegnare: to teach
inserire: to insert
l'insetto: insect
insicuro: insecure
insieme: together
insistere (insisto): to insist
insolito: unusual
l'insulina (f.): insulin
intelligente: intelligent
intendere (inteso): to mean
l'intenzione (f.): intention
interessante: interesting
l'intermezzo: intermission
internazionale: international
interno: internal, inside
interpretare: to interpret
l'interprete: interpreter
interrogativo: interrogative
interrompere (interrotto):
to interrupt
l'interurbana (f.): long-
distance call
l'intervallo: interval
l'intervista (f.): interview
intorno a: around
introdurre (introdotta):
to introduce
inutile: useless
invece: instead
l'inverno: winter
inviare: to mail, to send
invitare: to invite
l'invito: invitation
io: I
l'Irlanda: Ireland
irlandese: Irish
irregolare: irregular
l'iscritto: student, member
l'isola (f.): island
l'ispirazione (f.): inspiration
l'istituto: institute

l'istruzione (f.): instruction
l'Italia (f.): Italy
italiano: Italian
l'itinerario: itinerary

J-K

i jeans: jeans

Kosher: Kosher
il ketchup: ketchup

L

là: there
la Befana (f.): Epiphany
(January 6)
il labbro: lip
il ladro: thief
lamentare: to mourn, to grieve
lamentarsi: to complain
il lago: lake
la lampada (f.): light
la lampadina (f.): light bulb
il lampo: lightning flash
il lampone (m.): raspberry
la lana (f.): wool
largo: wide
lasciare: to let, to leave behind
latino: Latin
il lato: side
il latte (m.): milk
la latteria (f.): dairy store
la lattuga (f.): lettuce
la laurea (f.): degree
la lavanderia (f.): laundry service
la lavanderia a secco: dry cleaner
il lavandino: sink
lavare: to wash
lavorare: to work
il lavoro: work
leccare: to lick
legare: to tie
la legge (f.): law
leggere (letto): to read
leggero: light
il legno: wood
lei: she, her
Lei (polite): you
il lenzuolo: sheet
la lettera (f.): letter
la letteratura (f.): literature
il letto: bed
la lezione (f.): lesson
li: there
libero: free
la libertà (f.): liberty
la libreria (f.): bookstore
il libretto: libretto, little book

il libro: book
 licenziare: to fire someone
 licenziarsi: to resign
 la limonata (f.): lemonade
 il limone (m.): lemon
 la linea (f.): line
 la lingua (f.): language, tongue
 la linguistica (f.): linguistics
 il lino: linen
 il liquore (m.): liquor
 la lista (f.): list, menu
 litigare: to argue, to fight
 il litro: liter
 il livello: level
 locale: local
 il locale (m.): place
 lodare: to praise
 la logistica (f.): logistics
 lontano: far
 loro: they
 la lotta (f.): struggle
 la lozione (f.): lotion
 la luce (f.): light
 luglio: July
 lui: he, him
 la luna (f.): moon
 la luna di miele (f.): honeymoon
 lunedì: Monday
 lunedì dell'Angelo: Easter Monday
 la lunghezza (f.): length
 lungo: long
 il luogo: place
 il lupo: wolf
 lusso: luxury

M

ma: but
 la macchia (f.): stain
 la macchina (f.): automobile,
 car, machine
 la macchina fotografica (f.):
 camera
 il macellaio: butcher
 la macelleria (f.): butcher shop
 la madre (f.): mother
 la madrelingua (f.): native
 language
 il magazzino: department store
 maggio: May
 la maggioranza (f.): majority
 la magia (f.): magic
 la maglia (f.): sweater, pullover
 il magnetofono: tape recorder
 magnifico: magnificent
 magro: thin
 mai: never, ever
 il maiale (m.): pork, pig
 il mais (m.): corn

malato: unhealthy, sick
 la malattia (f.): illness
 il male: evil; fa male: it hurts
 la mamma (f.): mom, mother
 la mancia (f.): tip
 mancare: to lack, to be missing
 mandare: to send
 mangiare: to eat
 la mania (f.): obsession
 la maniera (f.): manner, way
 la maniglia (f.): handle
 la mano (f.; pl. le mani): hand
 il mantello: cape
 mantenere: to maintain
 il manzo: beef
 la marca (f.): brand, type
 il marciapiede (m.): sidewalk
 il mare (m.): sea
 la marea (f.): tide
 la marina (f.): marina
 il marito: husband
 la marmellata (f.): jam
 il marmo: marble
 marrone: brown
 martedì: Tuesday
 marzo: March
 maschile: masculine
 il massimo: maximum
 la matematica (f.): mathematics
 la materia (f.): subject
 la matita (f.): pencil
 il matrimonio: matrimony
 la mattina (f.): morning
 matto: crazy
 maturo: ripe, mature
 il meccanico: mechanic
 la medicina (f.): medicine
 il medico: doctor
 il Medioevo: Middle Ages
 meglio: better
 la mela (f.): apple
 la melanzana (f.): eggplant
 il melone (m.): melon,
 cantaloupe
 meno: less
 la mensa (f.): cafeteria
 mensile: monthly
 la menta (f.): mint
 la mentalità (f.): mentality
 la mente (f.): mind
 il mento: chin
 mentre: while
 il menù (m.): menu
 meraviglioso: marvelous
 il/la mercante (m./f.): merchant
 il mercato: market
 la merce (f.): merchandise
 mercoledì: Wednesday
 meritare: to deserve
 il merletto: lace

il mese (m.): month
 la messa (f.): mass
 il messaggio: message
 Messico (f.): Mexico
 la metà: half
 il metallo: metal
 il metodo: method
 la metropolitana (f.): subway
 mettere (messo): to put, to place
 la mezzanotte (f.): midnight
 mezzo: half
 il mezzo: means
 mezzogiorno: noon
 mi: me, to me
 il miele (m.): honey
 il miglio (pl. le miglia): mile
 migliorare: to improve
 il/la migliore: the best
 mille (pl. mila): thousand
 la minestra (f.): soup
 il ministro: minister
 la minoranza (f.): minority
 minore: smaller, less
 il minuto: minute
 miope: near-sighted
 mischiare: to mix
 la miseria (f.): poverty
 misto: mixed
 la misura (f.): measure, size
 il mito: myth
 il/la mittente (m./f.): sender
 il mobile (m.): piece of furniture
 il modello: model
 moderno: modern
 modesto: modest
 il modo: manner, method, way
 il modulo: form
 la moglie (f.): wife
 il molo: dock
 molto: a lot, much, very
 il momento: moment
 il monastero: monastery
 il mondo: world
 la moneta (f.): coin
 monolocale (m.): single room,
 studio
 la montagna (f.): mountain
 il monumento: monument
 morbido: soft, smooth
 morire (morto): to die
 la morte (f.): death
 il mosaico: mosaic
 la mosca (f.): fly (insect)
 la mostra (f.): show (art)
 il motivo: motive
 la motocicletta (f.): motorcycle
 il motore (m.): motor
 il motorino: scooter
 la multa (f.): fine, ticket
 il muro: wall

il muscolo: muscle
 il museo: museum
 la musica (f.): music
 il/la musicista (m./f.): musician
 mussulmano: Muslim
 muto: mute
 il mutuo: loan

N

la narrativa (f.): narrative, story, fiction
 nascere (nato): to be born
 la nascita (f.): birth
 nascondere (nascosto): to hide
 il naso: nose
 il nastro: tape
 Natale, Buon: Christmas, Merry
 la natura (f.): nature
 naturale: natural
 la nausea (f.): nausea
 la nave (f.): ship
 la nazionalità (f.): nationality
 la nazione (f.): nation
 ne: some of, about it
 né ... né: neither ... nor
 neanche: not even
 la nebbia (f.): fog
 la necessità (f.): need, necessity
 necessario: necessary
 il negativo: negative
 il negozio: shop
 il nemico: enemy
 nemmeno: not even
 neppure: neither, not even
 nero: black
 nervoso: nervous
 nessuno: no one, nobody
 la neve (f.): snow
 il nido: nest
 niente: nothing
 il nipote: grandson, nephew
 la nipote: granddaughter, niece
 la nocciola (f.): hazelnut
 la nocciolina (f.): peanut
 la noce (f.): walnut
 noi: we
 noioso: boring
 noleggiare: to rent
 il nome (m.): noun, name
 il nome da nubile: maiden name
 il nome del coniuge: name of spouse
 il nome di famiglia: surname
 non: not
 la nonna (f.): grandmother
 il nonno: grandfather
 nono: ninth
 nonostante: notwithstanding
 nord: north

normale: normal
 la Norvegia: Norway
 la notizia (f.): news
 la notte (f.): night
 il notturno: nocturne
 novanta: ninety
 novembre: November
 la novità (f.): news
 nubile: unmarried
 nulla: nothing
 il numero: number
 il numero verde: toll-free number
 la nuora (f.): daughter-in-law
 nuotare: to swim
 nuovo: new
 la nuvola (f.): cloud

O

o: or
 obbligare: to oblige
 l'obbligo: obligation
 l'occasione (f.): occasion, bargain
 gli occhiali (m. pl.): eyeglasses
 l'occhiata (f.): glance
 l'occhio: eye
 l'Occidente: West
 occupare: to occupy
 occupato: busy, occupied
 l'oceano: ocean
 odiare: to hate
 odorare: to smell
 l'odore (m.): aroma, odor
 l'offerta (f.): offer
 gli oggetti smarriti (m. pl.): lost property
 l'oggetto: object
 oggi: today
 ogni: each, every
 Ognissanti: All Saint's Day (Nov. 1)
 ognuno: everybody
 l'Olanda (f.): Holland
 l'olio: oil
 l'oliva(f.): olive
 oltre: more than, in addition to
 l'ombra (f.): shadow
 l'ombrello: umbrella
 l'onda (f.): wave
 onesto: honest
 l'onore (m.): honor
 l'opera (f.): opera, work
 l'operaio: worker
 l'operazione (f.): operation
 l'opinione (f.): opinion
 opposto: opposite
 oppure: or
 l'ora (f.): hour, now
 l'ora di punta (f.): rush hour
 l'orario: schedule

ordinale: ordinal
 ordinare: to order
 l'ordine (m.): order
 gli orecchini (m. pl.): earrings
 l'orecchio: ear
 l'oreficeria (f.): jeweler's, goldsmith's
 orgoglioso: proud
 Oriente: East, Orient
 l'origano: oregano
 originale: original
 l'origine (f.): origin
 l'oro: gold
 l'orologio: watch, clock
 l'oroscopo: horoscope
 l'orso: bear
 l'orto: garden
 l'oscuro: dark, obscure
 l'ospedale (m.): hospital
 l'ospite (m./f.): guest
 l'osso (pl. le ossa): bone
 l'ostello: hostel
 ottanta: eighty
 ottavo: eighth
 ottenere: to obtain
 ottico: optician
 ottimo: excellent, best
 ottobre: October
 l'ottone: brass
 ovest: west
 ovunque: wherever
 ovvio: obvious

P

il pacco: package, parcel
 la pace (f.): peace
 la padella (f.): frying pan
 il padre (m.): father
 il padrino: godfather
 il padrone/la padrona (f.): boss, landlord, owner
 il paese (m.): country, town
 il pagamento: payment
 pagare: to pay
 la pagina (f.): page
 la pagnotta (f.): loaf
 il paio (pl. le paia): pair
 il palazzo: building, palace
 il palco: box (theater)
 il palcoscenico: stage
 la palestra (f.): gym
 la palla (f.): ball
 la pallacanestro (f.): basketball
 la pallavolo (f.): volleyball
 la palude (f.): swamp, marsh
 la pancetta (f.): bacon
 la panchina (f.): bench
 il pane (m.): bread
 la panetteria (f.): bakery

il panino: sandwich	per favore: please	più: more
la panna (f.): cream	per piacere: please	la piuma (f.): feather
il pannolino: diaper	la pera (f.): pear	piuttosto: rather
il panorama (m.): panorama, view	il percento: percentage	la plastica (f.): plastic
i pantaloni (m. pl.): pants	la percezione (f.): perception	plurale (m.): plural
il Papa (m.): Pope	perché: why, because	il pneumatico: tire
il papà (m.): daddy, pop	perciò: therefore	un po': a little
il parabrezza (m.): windshield	il percorso: route	poco: not very much
il paradiso: paradise	perdere (perso): to lose	la poesia (f.): poem, poetry
il paragone (m.): comparison	perdonare: to pardon	poi: then, afterward
il parcheggio: parking lot	il pericolo: danger	poiché: since
il parco: park	pericoloso: dangerous	la polenta (f.): corn meal
il/la parente (m./f.): relative	la periferia (f.): suburbs	la politica (f.): politics
parere (parso): to seem, to appear	permesso!: excuse me!	la polizia (f.): police
la parete (f.): inside wall	il periodo: period	il poliziotto: police officer
la parte (f.): part	permettere (permesso): to permit	il pollame (m.): poultry
partecipare: to participate	però: but, however	il polmone (m.): lung
la partenza (f.): departure	persino: even	la polpetta (f.): meatball
partire: to depart, to leave	la persona (f.): person	la polvere (f.): dust
la partita (f.): game, match	il personaggio: character, type (of person)	il pomeriggio: afternoon
il partito: political party	pesante: heavy	il pomodoro: tomato
Pasqua: Easter	pesare: to weigh	il pompelmo: grapefruit
il passaporto: passport	la pesca (f.): peach	il pompiere (m.): firefighter
passare: to pass	il pesce (m.): fish	il ponte (m.): bridge
il passatempo: hobby	la pescheria (f.): fish store	la popolazione (f.): population
il passato: past	il peso: weight	il porco: pig, pork
passaggiare: to stroll	pettinare: to comb	la porta (f.): door
la passeggiata (f.): stroll, walk	il petto: chest	il portabagagli (m.): porter
la passione (f.): passion	il pezzo: piece	il portacenere (m.): ashtray
il passo: step	il piacere (m.): pleasure	il portafoglio: wallet
la pasta (f.): pasta, pastry	piacersi (piaciuto): to be pleasing, to like	portare: to bring, to carry
la pasticceria (f.): pastry shop	piacevole: pleasing	il porto: harbor, port
il pasto: meal	il pianeta (m.): planet	il Portogallo: Portugal
la patata (f.): potato	piangere (pianto): to cry	la porzione (f.): portion
la patente (f.): driver's license	il pianterreno: ground floor	la posizione (f.): position
la patria (f.): homeland	il piano: floor, (adv.) softly	possibile: possible
il patrigno: stepfather	la pianta (f.): plant	la possibilità (f.): possibility
il patto: agreement, pact	la pianura (f.): plain	la posta (f.): mail, post office
la paura (f.): fear	la piastrella (f.): floor tile	il postino: postal carrier
il pavimento: floor	il piatto: plate	il posto: seat, place
pazzo: crazy	la piazza (f.): town square	potere: to be able to, to can
peccato!: what a shame!	piccante: spicy	povero: poor
il pedaggio: toll	il picco: peak	il pozzo: well
peggio: worse	piccolo: small	pranzare: to dine, to eat lunch
il pelo: hair	il piede (m.): foot	il pranzo: lunch, supper
la pelle (f.): skin, leather	pieno: full	la pratica (f.): practice
la pelletteria (f.): furrier shop	la pietra (f.): stone	pratico: convenient, practical
la pelliccia (f.): fur	pigro: lazy	il prato: field
la pellicola (f.): film	la pila (f.): battery	preciso: precise
la pena (f.): penalty	la pillola (f.): pill	la preferenza (f.): preference
la penisola (f.): peninsula	la pioggia (f.): rain	preferire: to prefer
la penna (f.): pen, feather	piovere: to rain	il prefisso: area code
pensare: to think	la piramide (f.): pyramid	pregare: to pray, to beg, to ask
il pensiero: thought, idea	la piscina (f.): swimming pool	la preghiera (f.): prayer
la pensione (f.): inn	il pisello: pea	prego!: you are welcome!
il pepe (m.): pepper	la pista (f.): track, trail, slope	prendere (preso): to take
il peperone (m.): bell pepper	la pistola (f.): pistol	prenotare: to make a reservation
per: for, in order to	la pittura (f.): painting	la prenotazione (f.): reservation
		preoccuparsi: to worry
		preoccupato: worried

preparare: to prepare
 presbite: far-sighted
 presentare: to present
 il presente (m.): present
 il presidente: president
 presso: in care of (c/o)
 presto: quickly, early
 il prete (m.): priest
 il prezzemolo: parsley
 il prezzo: price
 il prezzo d'entrata: admission charge
 la prigione (f.): prison
 prima: before
 la primavera (f.): spring
 primo: first, before
 principale: principal, main
 il principe: prince
 la principessa (f.): princess
 il problema (m.): problem
 il prodotto: product
 produrre (prodotto): to produce
 la produzione (f.): production
 la professione (f.): profession
 il professore/la professoressa (f.): professor
 il profilattico: condom
 la profumeria (f.): cosmetics shop
 il profumo: perfume
 il progetto: project
 il programma (m.): plan, program
 progressivo: progressive
 il progresso: progress
 promettere (promesso): to promise
 il pronome (m.): pronoun
 pronto: ready, hello (telephone)
 pronto soccorso: first aid
 la pronuncia (f.): pronunciation
 pronunciare: to pronounce
 proporre (proposto): to propose
 la proposizione (f.): clause
 il proprietario: owner
 la proprietà privata (f.): private property
 proprio: just, really
 il prosciutto: ham
 prossimo: next
 proteggere (protetto): to protect
 protestante: Protestant
 provare: to try, to experience
 il proverbio: proverb
 la psicologia (f.): psychology
 la pubblicità (f.): publicity
 il pubblico: public
 il pugno: fist
 la pulce (f.): flea
 pulire: to clean
 il pullman (m.): bus
 il punto: period, point, stitch

la puntura (f.): injection, insect bite
 puntuale: punctual
 purché: provided that
 pure: also
 puro: pure
 purtroppo: unfortunately

Q

qua: here
 il quaderno: notebook
 il quadro: painting, picture
 qualche: some
 qualche volta: sometimes
 qualcosa: something
 qualcuno: someone
 quale: which
 la qualità (f.): quality
 qualsiasi: any
 qualunque: any
 quando: when
 la quantità (f.): quantity
 quanto?: how much?
 quaranta: forty
 il quartiere (m.): neighborhood
 quarto: fourth, quarter
 quasi: almost
 quattordici: fourteen
 quello/quella: that
 la questione (f.): matter
 questo: this one
 la questura (f.): police headquarters
 qui: here
 quindi: therefore
 quindici: fifteen
 quinto: fifth
 quotidiano (adj.): daily
 il quotidiano: daily paper

R

il rabbino: Rabbi
 la racchetta (f.): racket
 raccontare: to tell (a story)
 radersi: to shave
 il radiatore (m.): radiator
 la radice (f.): root
 la radio (f.): radio
 la radiografia (f.): x-ray
 il raffreddore (m.): cold
 la ragazza (f.): girl
 il ragazzo: boy
 il ragno: spider
 rallentare: slow down
 il rame (m.): copper
 la rana (f.): frog
 il rapido: express train

la rapina (f.): robbery
 il rapporto: relationship
 rappresentare: to represent
 raramente: rarely, seldom
 raro: rare, scarce
 il rasoio: razor
 la razza (f.): breed, race
 il re: king
 realizzare: to achieve
 recente: recent
 recitare: to recite
 regalare: to give a present
 il regalo: gift, present
 il reggiseno: bra
 la regina (f.): queen
 la regione (f.): region
 il/la regista (m./f.): movie director
 la religione (f.): religion
 rendere (reso): to render, to give back
 la repubblica (f.): republic
 la residenza (f.): residence
 la resistenza (f.): resistance
 respiro: breath
 responsabile: responsible
 restare: to remain, to stay
 il resto: remainder, rest
 il rettile (m.): reptile
 il reumatismo: rheumatism
 la revisione (f.): revision
 ricamare: to embroider
 riccio: curly
 ricco: rich
 la ricetta (f.): recipe, prescription
 ricevere: to receive
 il ricevimento: reception
 la ricevuta (f.): receipt
 la richiesta (f.): request
 ricordare: to remember
 ridere (riso): to laugh
 riempire: to fill out (a form)
 i rifiuti (m. pl.): trash
 il riflessivo: reflexive
 riflettere (riflesso): to reflect
 il rifugio: refuge
 rilasciato: issued
 rilassante: relaxing
 rimanere (rimasto): to remain
 il rimborso: refund
 il Rinascimento: the Renaissance
 ringraziare: to thank
 il rio: stream
 riparare: to repair
 ripetere: to repeat
 ripieno: stuffed, filled
 il riscaldamento: heat
 riscaldare: to warm, to heat
 la riserva d'acqua (f.): reservoir
 la riserva naturale (f.): nature preserve

riservato: reserved
 il riso: rice
 risolvere (risolto): to resolve
 rispettare: to respect
 rispondere (risposto): to respond
 la risposta (f.): answer, response
 il ristorante (m.): restaurant
 il risultato: result
 il ritardo: delay
 il ritmo: rhythm
 ritornare: to return
 il ritratto: portrait
 riuscire: to succeed
 la rivista (f.): magazine
 la roba (f.): stuff, things
 la rocca (f.): fortress
 la roccia (f.): rock
 romantico: romantic
 il romanzo: novel, fiction, romance
 rompere (rotto): to break
 la rondine (f.): swallow (bird)
 rosa: pink
 la rosa (f.): rose
 rosso: red
 rotto: broken
 le rovine (f. pl.): ruins
 rubare: to steal
 il rubinetto: faucet
 il rullino: roll of film
 rumoroso: noisy
 la ruota (f.): wheel
 la rupe (f.): cliff
 il ruscello: stream
 russo: Russian

S

sabato: Saturday
 la sabbia (f.): sand
 il sacchetto: small bag
 il sacco a pelo: sleeping bag
 saggio: wise
 il saggio: essay
 la sala (f.): room, hall
 la sala d'attesa (f.): waiting room
 la sala da pranzo (f.): dining room
 la sala giochi (f.): game room
 il salario: salary
 il saldo: sale, discount
 il sale (m.): salt
 salire: to climb, to mount
 il salmone (m.): salmon
 il salotto: living room, lounge
 la salsa (f.): sauce
 la salsiccia (f.): sausage
 i salumi (m. pl.): cold cuts, meats
 salutare: to greet

la salute (f.): health
 la salvietta (f.): napkin
 il sangue (m.): blood
 il santo/la santa (f.): saint
 sapere: to know something
 il sapone (m.): soap
 il sapore (m.): taste
 il sarto: tailor
 sbadigliare: to yawn
 sbagliare: to be mistaken
 sbarcare: to land, to disembark
 gli scacchi (m. pl.): chess
 la scadenza (f.): expiration
 la scala (f.): stairs
 scambiare: to exchange
 lo scambio: exchange
 lo scapolo: bachelor
 scappare: to escape, to run away
 la scarpa (f.): shoe
 la scatola (f.): box
 scavare: to excavate
 scegliere (scelto): to choose
 scemo: silly, idiotic
 la scena (f.): scene
 scendere: to descend, to get off
 scherzare: to joke
 la schiuma (f.): foam
 lo schizzo: sketch
 lo sci (m.): skiing
 lo sci di fondo: cross-country skiing
 sciare: to ski
 la sciarpa (f.): scarf
 la scienza (f.): science
 lo sciopero: strike
 scocciare: to bother, annoy
 scommettere (scommesso): to bet
 scomodo: uncomfortable
 lo sconto: discount
 lo scontrino: receipt
 scoprire (scoperto): to discover
 scorso: last, past
 scotto: overdone
 la Scozia (f.): Scotland
 lo scrittore/la scrittrice (f.): writer
 la scrivania (f.): desk
 scrivere (scritto): to write
 la scultura (f.): sculpture
 la scuola (f.): school
 scuro: dark
 scusare: to excuse
 scusarsi: to apologize
 sdraiarsi: to lie down
 se: if
 sé: oneself (himself, herself ...)
 sebbene: although
 secco: dry
 il secolo: century
 secondo: second
 il sedativo: sedative

sedersi: to sit down
 la sedia (f.): chair
 sedici: sixteen
 il segnale (m.): signal, sign
 segnare: to mark, to note
 il segno: sign
 la segretaria (f.): secretary
 seguente: following
 seguire: to follow
 la selva (f.): woods, forest
 selvaggio: wild, savage
 selvatico: wild, untamed
 il semaforo: traffic light
 sembrare: to seem
 il semestre (m.): semester
 semplice: simple
 sempre: always
 la senape (f.): mustard
 la Senato: Senate
 la sensazione (f.): sensation, feeling
 senso unico: one-way street
 il sentiero: path, track
 il sentimento: feeling, sentiment
 sentire: to hear, to smell, to taste
 sentirsi: to feel
 senza: without
 separare: to separate
 separato: separated
 la sera (f.): evening
 il serbatoio: gas tank
 la serenata (f.): serenade
 sereno: calm, good weather
 serio: serious
 il serpente (m.): snake
 il servizio: service
 sessanta: sixty
 il sesso: sex
 la sessualità (f.): sexuality
 la seta (f.): silk
 la sete (f.): thirst
 settanta: seventy
 settembre: September
 la settimana (f.): week
 settimo: seventh
 severo: severe, strict
 sfidare: to challenge
 la sfortuna (f.): misfortune, bad luck
 lo sforzo: effort
 si: oneself, each other, one, they
 sì: yes
 la Sicilia (f.): Sicily
 siciliano: Sicilian
 sicuro: safe, sure
 sé: oneself (himself, herself ...)
 la sigaretta (f.): cigarette
 il sigaro: cigar
 significare: to signify
 il significato: meaning
 la signora (f.): Mrs., Ms., woman
 il signore (m.): Mr., Sir, man

la signorina (f.): Miss, young lady
 il silenzio: silence
 il simbolo: symbol
 simpatico: nice, kind
 la sinagoga (f.): synagogue
 sincero: sincere
 il sindaco: mayor
 la sinfonia (f.): symphony
 singolare: singular
 singolo: single
 sinistro: left
 sintetica: synthetic
 il sintomo: symptom
 il sipario: curtain (theater)
 il sistema (m.): system
 la situazione (f.): situation
 gli slip (m. pl.): briefs
 lo slittino: sled
 smettere (smesso): to quit
 snello: slender
 lo snob: snob
 la società (f.): company
 soffice: soft
 il soffitto: ceiling
 soffrire (sofferto): to suffer
 il soggetto: subject
 sognare: to dream
 solamente: only
 il soldato: soldier
 i soldi (m. pl.): money
 il sole (m.): sun
 solito: usual
 solo: alone
 il sonnifero: sleeping pill
 il sonno: sleep
 sono: I am, they are
 sopra: above, on
 il soprabito: overcoat
 soprattutto: above all
 sordo: deaf
 la sorella (f.): sister
 la sorellastra (f.): stepsister, half-sister
 la sorgente (f.): spring
 il sorpasso: passing
 sorprendere (sorpreso): to surprise
 la sorpresa (f.): surprise
 sorridere (sorriso): to smile
 la sosta (f.): stop, pause
 sostituire: to substitute
 il sotterraneo: tunnel
 sotto: beneath
 il sottotitolo: subtitle
 la Spagna (f.): Spain
 spaventare: to scare, to frighten
 lo spazio: space
 la spazzatura (f.): trash can
 la spazzola (f.): brush
 lo spazzolino da denti: toothbrush

lo specchio: mirror
 speciale: special
 la specie (f.): type, kind
 spedire: to send
 spegnere (spento): to turn off
 spendere (speso): to spend
 la speranza (f.): hope
 sperare: to hope
 la spesa (f.): expense, shopping
 spesso: often
 lo spettacolo: show
 la spezia (f.): spice
 la spiaggia (f.): beach
 spiegare: to explain
 la spilla (f.): brooch, pin
 spingere (spinto): to push
 lo spirito: spirit
 spirituale: spiritual
 splendido: splendid
 sporco: dirty
 lo sport (m.): sport
 lo sportello: counter, window
 sposare: to marry
 sposato: married
 lo sposo/la sposa (f.): spouse
 la spugna (f.): sponge
 lo spumante (m.): sparkling wine
 lo spuntino: snack
 la squadra (f.): team
 stabilire: to establish
 lo stadio: stadium
 la stagione (f.): season
 lo stagno: swamp
 stamattina: this morning
 la stampa (f.): print, press
 stanco: tired
 stanotte: tonight
 la stanza (f.): room
 stare (stato): to be, to remain, to stay
 stasera: this evening
 lo stato: state, government, condition
 gli Stati Uniti (m. pl.): United States
 la statua (f.): statue
 la stazione (f.): station
 la stella (f.): star
 stesso: same
 lo stivale (m.): boot
 la stoffa (f.): fabric, cloth
 lo stomaco: stomach
 la storia (f.): history, story
 la strada (f.): street
 lo straniero: foreigner, (adj.) foreign
 strano: strange
 la strega (f.): witch
 stressare: to stress
 stretto: tight

lo studente/la studentessa (f.): student
 studiare: to study
 lo studio: study
 la stufa (f.): stove
 stupendo: stupendous
 su, sul, sulla: on top of, on, up
 subito: soon, immediately
 succedere (successo): to happen
 il succo: juice
 sud: south
 la suocera (f.): mother-in-law
 il suocero: father-in-law
 suonare: to sound, to play
 superare: to overcome, to accomplish
 il supermercato: supermarket
 la sveglia (f.): alarm clock
 svegliarsi: to wake up
 la svendita (f.): sale
 la Svezia (f.): Sweden
 sviluppare: to develop
 la Svizzera (f.): Switzerland

T

la tabaccheria (f.): tobacco shop
 la tabella (f.): schedule, time table
 la taglia (f.): size
 tagliare: to cut
 tale: such, like, similar
 talvolta: sometimes
 il tamburo: drum
 tanto: so much, so many, a lot
 il tappo: cork
 tardi: late
 la targa (f.): license plate
 la tariffa (f.): fare, charge
 la tasca (f.): pocket
 la tassa (f.): tax
 il tassametro : taxi meter
 il tassì (m.): taxi
 la tavola (f.): dinner table
 il tavolo: table (restaurant)
 la tazza (f.): cup
 te: you
 il tè (m.): tea
 il teatro: theater
 tedesco: German
 il tegame (m.): saucepan
 la tegola (f.): shingle
 telefonare: to telephone
 la telefonata (f.): telephone call
 il telefono: telephone
 il telegiornale (m.): news program
 il tema (m.): theme
 la tempesta (f.): storm
 il tempio: temple

il tempo: weather, time
 la tenda (f.): tent
 tenere: to hold, to keep
 tenero: tender, affectionate
 il termometro: thermometer
 la terra (f.): earth, dirt
 la terracotta (f.): ceramic
 il terrazzo: terrace
 terzo: third
 la tessera (f.): card, ticket
 la testa (f.): head
 il tetto: roof
 timido: shy
 il tipo: type, kind
 la tipografia (f.): printing
 tirare: to pull
 tirschio: stingy
 toccare: to touch
 la toilette (f.): toilet
 la tolleranza (f.): tolerance
 il topo: mouse
 tornare: to return
 la torre (f.): tower
 la torta (f.): cake
 il torto: wrong, fault
 la tosse (f.): cough
 totale: total
 la tovaglia (f.): tablecloth
 tovagliolo: napkin
 tra: between
 la tradizione (f.): tradition
 tradurre (tradotto): to translate
 la traduzione (f.): translation
 il traffico: traffic
 il traghetto: ferry
 tragico: tragic
 il tramonto: sunset
 trasferirsi: to transfer, to move
 trasformare: to transform
 trasmettere (trasmesso):
 to broadcast
 trasportare: to transport
 trattare: to treat
 tre: three
 tredici: thirteen
 tremendo: tremendous
 il treno: train
 trenta: thirty
 triste: sad
 tropicale: tropical
 troppo: too
 trovare: to find
 tu: you (familiar)
 il tuffo: dive
 il tulipano: tulip
 il tuono: thunder
 il turismo: tourism
 il/la turista (m./f.): tourist
 il turno: turn
 tutt'e due: both

tuttavia: however, yet
 tutti: everyone
 tutto: everything, all

U

ubriacarsi: to get drunk
 l'uccello: bird
 uccidere (ucciso): to kill
 udire: to hear
 l'ufficio: office
 l'ufficio cambio: money
 exchange office
 l'ufficio informazioni: informa-
 tion office
 l'ufficio oggetti smarriti:
 lost and found
 l'ufficio postale: post office
 ultimo: last
 l'umano: human
 l'umidità (f.): humidity
 umile: humble
 l'umore: humor, mood
 un: a, an, one
 una: a, an, one
 undici: eleven
 unico: unique, only
 unificato: unified
 unito: united
 uno: one, a, an
 l'uomo: man
 l'uovo (pl. le uova): egg
 urbano: city, local
 urgente: urgent
 urlare: to shout
 usare: to use
 uscire: to exit
 l'uscita (f.): exit
 l'uso: usage
 l'uva (f.): grapes

V

la vacanza (f.): vacation
 la vacca (f.): cow
 la vaccinazione (f.): vaccination
 il vaglia postale (m.): money
 order
 il vagone (m.): rail car
 la valanga (f.): avalanche
 la validità (f.): validity
 la valigia (f.): bag, valise, suitcase
 la valle (f.): valley
 il valore (m.): value
 la valuta (f.): currency, money
 il vantaggio: advantage
 la variazione (f.): variation
 la varietà (f.): variety

vario: various
 la vasca (f.): tub
 il vaso: vase
 vecchio: old
 vedere (visto): to see
 la vedova (f.): widow
 il vedovo: widower
 il veicolo: vehicle
 vegetariano: vegetarian
 il veleno: poison
 la velocità (f.): velocity
 vendere: to sell
 la vendetta (f.): vengeance
 la vendita (f.): sale
 venerdì: Friday
 venire: to come
 venti: twenty
 il vento: wind
 veramente: really
 il verbo: verb
 verde: green
 la verdura (f.): vegetables
 la vergogna (f.): shame
 la verità (f.): truth
 la vernice (f.): paint
 vero: true, genuine
 verso: toward, near, about
 il vescovo: bishop
 la vespa (f.): wasp
 vestire: to dress
 il vestito: dress, suit
 la vetrina (f.): shop window
 il vetro: glass
 la vettura (f.): carriage,
 railroad car
 vi: (adv.) there, to you
 la via (f.): street, way
 via: away
 viaggiare: to travel
 il viaggio: trip
 il viale (m.): boulevard, avenue
 vicino: neighbor, near (adj.)
 il vicolo: alley, lane
 vietato: prohibited
 vietato di sosta: no parking
 vietato l'ingresso: no entrance
 il vigile: police officer
 il vigile del fuoco: firefighter
 la vigna (f.): vine
 la villa (f.): villa
 il villaggio: village
 vincere (vinto): to win
 il vino: wine
 viola: purple
 la violetta (f.): violet (flower)
 la violenza (f.): violence
 visibile: visible
 la visita (f.): visit
 visitare: to visit
 il viso: face

la vista (f.): view
la vita (f.): life
la vitamina (f.): vitamin
il vitello: veal
la vittima (f.): victim
vivace: lively
vivere (vissuto): to live
vivo: alive
il vocabolario: vocabulary
la vocale (f.): vowel
la voce (f.): voice
la voglia (f.): wish, desire
voi: you (plural)
volare: to fly
volentieri!: gladly!
volere: to want
il volo: flight
la volpe (f.): fox
la volta (f.): time, occurrence
votare: to vote
il voto: grade
vuoto: empty

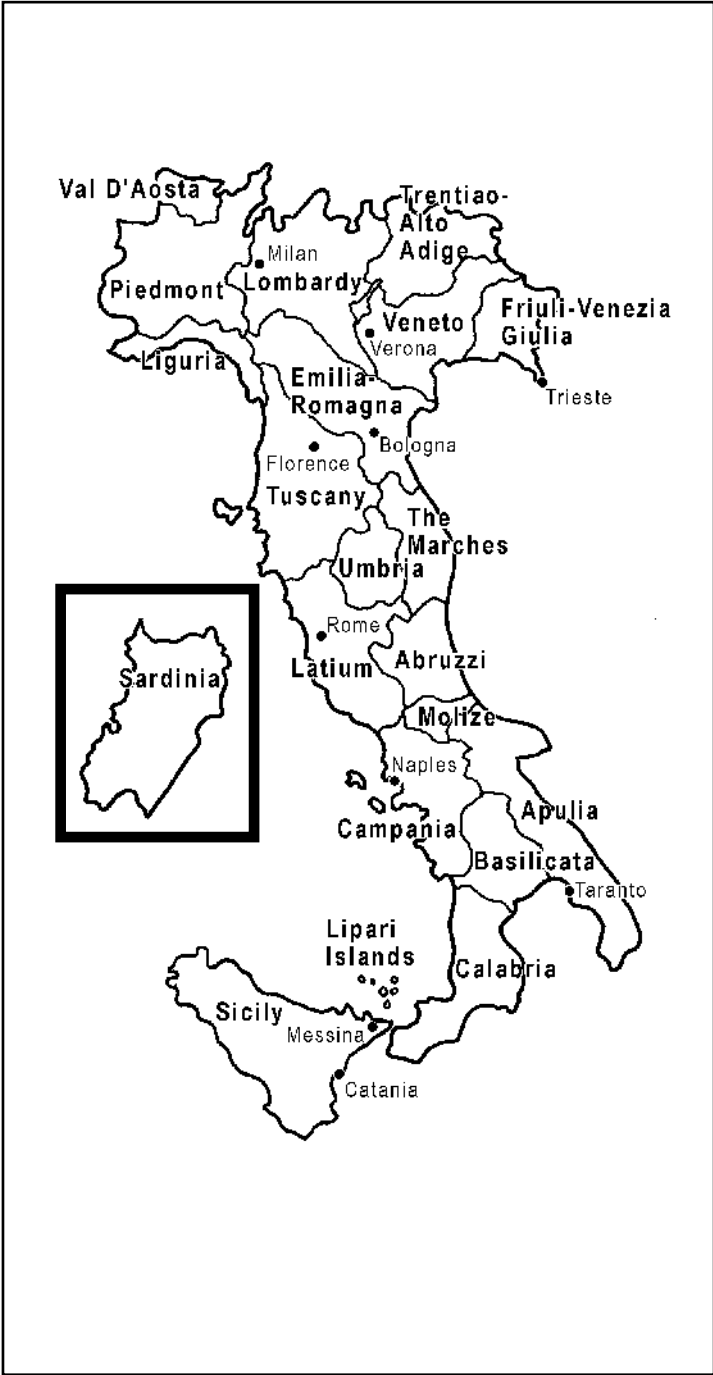
Y

lo yoga (m.): yoga
lo yogurt (m.): yogurt

Z

lo zaino: backpack
la zampa (f.): paw, leg
la zanzara (f.): mosquito
zero: zero
la zia (f.): aunt
lo zio: uncle
la zona (f.): zone, section
lo zoo: zoo
lo zucchero: sugar
la zuppa (f.): soup

Map of Italy



An Idiot's Guide to Additional Resources

By no means comprehensive, the following titles and Web sites are worthy of a glance.

Grammar Plus

Supplement your Italian grammar library with anyone of the following titles:

Colaneri, John and Vincent Luciani. *501 Italian Verbs*. Barron's Educational Series, 1992.

Graziano, Carlos. *Italian Verbs and Essentials of Grammar*. Passport Books, 1986.

Piluso, Robert V. *Italian Fundamentals*. Barron's Educational Series, 1992

Ragusa, Olga. *Essential Italian Grammar*. Dover Publications, 1972.

La Dolce Vita

Some of the many books written that portray one aspect or another of Italian life include:

Barzini, Luigi. *The Italians*. Simon & Schuster Trade, 1996.

Calvino, Italo. *Italian Folktales*. Harcourt Trade Publishers, 1992.

Costantino, Mario, and Lawrence Gambella. *The Italian Way*. NTC Contemporary Publishing Company, 1995.

Grizzuti Harrison, Barbara. *Italian Days*. Grove/Atlantic, 1998.

Hofmann, Paul. *That Fine Italian Hand*. Henry Holt and Company, 1991.

Mayes, Frances. *Under the Tuscan Sun*. Chronicle Books, 1996.

Morante, Elsa. *History: A Novel*. Steerforth Press, 2000.

Spender, Matthew. *Within Tuscany*. Penguin USA, 1992.

The Internet

Use the Internet to supplement your Italian studies. Following are several suggested Web sites:

About Italian Language Subjects

<http://www.italian.about.com/mlibrary.htm>

Thousands of annotated links arranged by topics including grammar, vocabulary, lessons and exercises, idiomatic expressions, online dictionaries, translation, and children's Italian.

Acquerello Italiano

<http://www.acquerello-italiano.com/aihome.php3>

Sample audio excerpts from the audiocassette magazine for intermediate and advanced speakers. Includes a transcript of the program with a glossary and study supplement.

Audio Anthology of Italian Literature

<http://www.ilnarratore.com/index2.html>

Classical and contemporary Italian texts read by narrators, stage actors, and writers available as MP3 audio file downloads.

BBC Italian Language Online For Adults

<http://www.bbc.co.uk/education/languages/italian/index.shtml>

Transcripts of the popular BBC television program devoted to Italian and supplementary exercises.

Coniugare I Verbi

<http://www.virgilio.it/servizi/verbi/>

High-performance, automatic verb conjugation and resource for studying a crucial part of the language.

Research Edition of The Divine Comedy

http://www.divinecomedy.org/divine_comedy.html

Three full editions of *The Divine Comedy* online, graphics, maps of the afterlife, and sample manuscript pages from printed versions of Dante. Listen to *The Inferno* as recited by Vittorio Gassman.

Italian Embassy

<http://www.italyemb.org>

Useful addresses, telephone numbers, directions, travel information, events, and other links.

Il Cinema

The following are some additional movie suggestions. These film classics have entertained millions of people.

1900 (Bertolucci)

The Age of the Medici (Rossellini)

Amarcord (Fellini)

Amore (Rossellini)

L'Avventura (Antonioni)

Ciao Professore! (Wertmuller)

City of Women (Fellini)

La Famiglia (Scola)

The Garden of the Finzi-Continis
(De Sica)

Johnny Stecchino (Benigni)

Marcello Mastroianni: I Remember (Anna Maria Tatò)

Miracle in Milan (De Sica)

Night of the Shooting Stars (Paolo and Vittorio Taviani)

Nights of Cabiria (Fellini)

Open City (Rossellini)

Paisan (Rossellini)

Swept Away (Wertmuller)

The Spider's Stratagem (Bertolucci)

Two Women (De Sica)

Index

A

- a* (to)
following verb *andare* (to go), 153
preposition, infinitive verbs requiring *a*, 200-201
- a.c. (*avanti Cristo*), 214
- A.D. (*Anno Domini*), 212-213
- abbreviations, bilingual dictionaries, 17
- absolutes, forming superlatives from adjectives, 338
- accents (pronunciation), 26
acute, 26
grave, 26
written, 26
- accessories, shopping, 246
- action in progress, forming the present progressive tense, 237-238
- acute accent, 26
- adjectives, 18, 136-148, 335-338
absolutes, forming superlatives, 336-338
antonyms, 140
bello, 143
buono (good), 144
cognates, 44
colors, 140-142
idiomatic expressions, 142
communicating with a realtor, 373
comparisons, 335
equality, 338
emotions and characteristics, 138-139
forming adverbs from, 144
practicing, 147-148
modifying, endings, 136-137
nationalities, 123-124
practicing, 126
possessive, 122
practicing, 138
quello, practicing, 143
religions, 125
weather vocabulary, 208
- adverbs, 18, 144-148
compound tenses, 319
con plus a noun, 147
ecco, 126-127
forming from adjectives, 144
practicing, 147-148
- irregular adverbs of quantity, 146
place, 147
placement, 145-146
superlatives, 337
time, 146
- advertisements, real estate, 373
- affirmative responses to questions, 109
- "after the hour" time expressions, 176
- agreement, gender, 70
- ailments, saints, 347
- air travel
expressions, 152
verbs, 151
vocabulary, 149-152
- alphabet, spelling your name, 36
- amenities/necessities, hotels, 189
- anatomy of a verb, present-tense conjugations, 94-95
- andare* (to go), 152, 229
followed by *a* (to), 153
followed by *in* (to), 153
idiomatic expressions, 65
practicing, 154
- animals, 225-226
- Anno Domini* (A.D.), 212-213
- answering questions, double negatives, 109-110
- antonyms, adjectives, 140
- apostrophes (indicates the dropping of the final vowel), 27
- appetizers (meals), 289
- appointments, making a date, 306
- are* family, first conjugation verbs, 94-100
celebrare example, 96
conjugation
exceptions, 100-101
practicing, 101
- articles
definite, 41
forming plurals, 79
noun markers, 70
indefinite articles, 71-72
singular, definite articles, 70
- arts, 307
cinema/film, 307-308
music, 309-310
- opera, 310
glossary of terms, 311
storytelling, 310
terms, 312
- asking questions, 109, 178
answering, double negatives, 109-110
c'è and *ci sono*, 116
practicing, 178
tags, 109
- astrology terms
atmosphere, 217
zodiacal signs, 217-218
- audiocassettes, listening to Italian, 37
- avanti Cristo* (a.c.), 214
- avere* (to have), 117-119, 314-316
conditional tense, 375
forming the past, 315
irregular past participles, 315-316
future tense, 364
idiomatic expressions, 66, 118-119
present perfect tense, transitive verbs, 314
rules of usage, 118

B

- backgrounds (nationalities), 123-124
- banking terms, 381
expressions, 384
trades/professions, 385
transactions, 384
- bars, 285
caffè, il (coffee), 286
- "be," irregular verb forms, 112
asking about someone else, 122
c'è and *ci sono*, 116
asking questions, 116
creating negative statements, 116
practicing translations, 116-117
essere, 112-116
stare, 113-116
- "before the hour" time expressions, 176
- Bellini*, 295

bello (adjective), 143
 beverages, 270, 295
 Bellini, 295
 wines, 294
 bilingual dictionaries, 7, 16
 abbreviations, 17
 grammatical listings, 19
 bills, hotels, 192
 body parts, 341
 expressions of pain/
 discomfort, 343
 use of *farsi* to express hurt,
 342-343
 brain games, vocabulary, 305
buono (good), adjective, 144
 buying a home
 adjectives, 373
 verbs, 372

C

c letter combinations, pronunciation, 32
c'è, use with third-person *essere*,
 116
 asking questions, 116
 creating negative statements,
 116
 practicing translations,
 116-117
caffè, il (coffee), 286
 calls, telephone operation, 356
 camera shop vocabulary, 331
 cardinal numbers, 172-174
 using punctuation marks with,
 174
 cars, vocabulary, 167
 expressions, 171
 inside the car, 168
 necessary tools, 170
 parts and predicaments,
 169-170
 renting a car, 168
 sample communication, 172
 signs, 171
 types of roads, 169
cartoleria, la (stationery store), 243
 centuries, 212
 a.c. (*avanti Cristo*), 214
 A.D. (*Anno Domini*), 212-213
 after year 1000, 213
 changing gender depending on
 profession, 77, 120
 characteristics of nouns. *See* adjectives
 cheeses, 267
ci, denoting place, 339-340
ci sono, use with third-person
essere, 116

asking questions, 116
 creating negative statements,
 116
 practicing translations,
 116-117
 cinema/film, 307-308
 clarity, subject pronouns, 87
 classical Latin, history of Italian
 language, 12-13
 climate, weather vocabulary,
 207-208
 clothing, shopping, 245, 251
 conversion table for sizes, 248
 coffee (*caffè, il*), 286
 cognates, 39
 adjectives, 44
 converting words to Italian by
 changing the endings, 43
 English words used in Italian,
 46
 false, 40-47
 nouns, 45
 feminine, 45-46
 masculine, 45
 places, 41-42
 practicing, 47-51
 time, 41-43
 verbs, 48-49
 colloquialisms. *See* idiomatic
 expressions
 colors, adjectives, 140-142
 idiomatic expressions, 142
 combinations of letters, pronun-
 ciation, 31
 letter *c*, 32
 letter *g*, 32-33
 letter *s*, 33-34
 commands. *See* imperatives
 commas, indicating time, 84
 commitment to learning, 8-9
 communication by telephone,
 355
 communicating with the oper-
 ator, 358-359
 expressions, 357-358
 types of calls, 356
 vocabulary, 356-357
 comparisons, forming from
 adjectives, 335
 equality, 338
 compound tenses
 adverbs, 319
 direct object pronouns,
 319-320
 double object pronouns, 321
 future perfect, 367
 indirect object pronouns, 320
con plus a noun, in lieu of an
 adverb, 147

conditional tense, 374
avere (to have), 375
essere (to be), 375
 forming, 374
 endings, 374-376
 stem-changing verbs, 377
 verbs, 377
 practicing use, 378
 conjugation
 andare (to go), 153
 avere (to have), 117-118
 conoscere (to know someone),
 135
 determining subject pronouns,
 85-86
 clarity, 87
 direct objects, 86
 emphasis, 87
 forms of "you," 88-89
 indirect objects, 86
 politeness, 87
 practicing, 87-88
 versus object pronouns, 87
dovere (to have to, must),
 97-198
essere (to be), 112
fare (to make or do some-
 thing), 182
 future tense, 366-367
 irregular verbs, 202
 andare (to go), 229
 dire (to say/tell), 231
 fare (to do/make), 229
 passare (to pass), 229
 practicing conjugation of,
 230
 rimanere (to remain), 228
 ritornare (to return), 230
 trovare (to find/visit), 229
 uscire (to go out/exit), 227
 venire (to come), 227-228
piacere (to be pleasing to), 275
potere (to be able to), 196-197
 practicing, 353-354
 regular verbs, 94
 anatomy of a verb, 94
 first conjugation (*-are* fam-
 ily), 94-101
 present-tense conjugations,
 95
 second-conjugation (*-ere*
 family), 94, 102-105
 third conjugation (*-ire* fam-
 ily), 94, 106-107
salire (to climb), 182
sapere (to know something),
 134
stare (to be), 113
 travel-related verbs, 182
volere (to want), 195-196

- conjunctions, subjunctive mood, 389-390
- conoscere* (to know someone), 135
- consonants
pronunciation of, 29
double consonants, 35
- continents, 235
- contractions
forming from prepositions, 157-158
showing possession with *di*, 131
- converting English words to Italian, changing the endings, 43
- cooking terms, 278
- corresponding planets, days of the week, 60
- cosmetics store, vocabulary, 349
- countries, telling someone where you are from, 234-237
- courses (meals), 287
appetizers and side dishes, 289
first, 288
menu, sample, 289
second, 288
- ## D
-
- dairy products, 267
- dates, 212
centuries, 212
a.c. (*avanti Cristo*), 214
A.D. (*Anno Domini*), 212-213
after year 1000, 213
holidays, 216-217
months, 212
past time, 214
practicing, 215
time-related words, 214
- days of the week, 58
corresponding planets, 60
- definite articles, 41
forming plurals, 79
singular, 70
- demonstrative pronouns ("this" and "these"), 135
introducing family members, 135-136
- denoting place, *ci* and *vi*, 339-340
- dependent clauses, subjunctive mood, 388-390
- describing your needs, 325
asking others to speak slowly, 326
camera shop, 331
dry cleaner's, 329
electronics store, 332
grooming vocabulary, 327-328
stylists' lingo, 328-329
- help phrases, 326-327
- jeweler's, 331
- keeping it simple, 326
- missing passport, 332-333
- optician's, 330
- shoemaker's, 330
- writing down questions, 326
- descriptive adjectives, 136
antonyms, 140
bello, 143
buono (good), 144
colors, 140-142
idiomatic expressions, 142
- emotions and characteristics, 138-139
- modifying, endings, 136-137
- practicing, 138
- quello*, 143
- desserts/sweets, 295
- determining gender, 69
agreement, 70
either-gender nouns, 73
exceptions to the rules, 75
changing gender depending on profession, 77, 120
disconcerting genders, 75-76
fruits, 78
misbehaving feminine nouns, 77
misbehaving masculine nouns, 76
- noun markers, 70
indefinite articles, 71-72
singular, definite articles, 70
- nouns ending in *e*, 74
practicing, 78-84
singular nouns, 72
- di*
plus noun, indicating "some of" a larger quantity, 273
preposition, infinitive verbs requiring *di*, 199-200
- dialects, history of Italian language, 13
Tuscan Italian, 14
- dictionaries, bilingual, 7, 16
abbreviations, 17
grammatical listings, 19
- diminutives, 13
- dining out, 281
bars, 285
caffè, il (coffee), 286
courses, 287
appetizers and side dishes, 289
first, 288
second, 288
- drinks, 295
Bellini, 295
wines, 294
- etiquette, 286-287
- menu, sample, 289
- pizza, 289-290
- preparation terms, 291
- restaurants, 281-282
asking for what you want, 282-283
common phrases, 282
table-setting vocabulary, 283-284
returning food, phrases to use, 293-294
special needs phrases, 292
spices and seasonings, 291-292
sweets/desserts, 295
- diphthongs, pronunciation of, 34-35
- dire* (to say/tell), 231
- direct object pronouns, 253-255
compound tenses, 319-320
practicing, 257-258
- direct objects, 86
- directions, imperatives, 159
most common commands, 160
negative commands, 160
practicing, 161
regular imperative endings, 159
- diretto* train, 180
- discomfort expressions, 343-345
idiomatic expressions, 346
serious medical conditions, 345-347
- disconcerting genders, exception to gender determination rules, 75-76
- diseases/health conditions, vocabulary, 347-348
- disjunctive pronouns, 333
practicing use, 334
rules, 334
- double
consonants, pronunciation of, 35
negatives, responding to questions, 110
object pronouns, 296
compound tenses, 321
- doubt, expressions of, subjunctive mood, 386
dependent clauses, 388-390
imperfect, 392
irregular forms, 388
past, 391
past perfect, 392
present, 386-388

dovere (to have to, must), 197-198
drawing from other language experiences, 21-22
drinks, 270, 295
 Bellini, 295
 wines, 294
driving cars, vocabulary, 167
 expressions, 171
 inside the car, 168
 necessary tools, 170
 parts and predicaments, 169-170
 renting a car, 168
 sample communication, 172
 signs, 171
 types of roads, 169
drugstore/pharmacy vocabulary, 348
 questions for the pharmacist, 349
dry cleaner's vocabulary, 329

E

ecco, 126-127
Edith Wharton's Italian Gardens, 267
either-gender nouns, determining gender of, 73
electronic messages, 359-360
electronics store vocabulary, 332
emotions (adjectives), 138-139
emphasis, subject pronouns, 87
endings
 conditional tense, 374-376
 forming plurals, 78-79
 always plural nouns, 83
 irregular plural nouns, 82-83
 noun markers, 79
 practicing, 81-83
 rules, 80
 spelling, 81
future tense, 363
imperatives, 159
imperfect tense, 351
 essere (to be) exceptions, 351
 practicing use, 352-353
modifying descriptive adjectives, 137
verbs, 50
English words, used in Italian, 46
entertainment, 303
 arts, 307
 cinema/film, 307-308
 music, 309-310
 opera, 310-311
 terms, 312
 brain games, 305
 making a date, 306
 playing field, 305
 sports vocabulary, 303-305
equality, forming comparisons from adjectives/adverbs, 338
-*ere* family, second-conjugation verbs, 94, 102-103
 practicing conjugation, 105
 scrivere example, 102
espresso train, 180
essere (to be), 112
 asking about someone else, 122
 c'è and ci sono, 116
 asking questions, 116
 creating negative statements, 116
 practicing translations, 116-117
conditional tense, 375
forming the past, 316
future tense rules, 364
rules of usage, 114-116
use in present perfect tense, intransitive verbs, 314-318
etiquette, dining out, 286-287
etymology (study of words), 15
exceptions
 conjugation, regular -*are* verbs, 100-101
 gender-determination rules, 75
 changing gender depending on profession, 77, 120
 disconcerting genders, 75-76
 fruits, 78
 misbehaving feminine nouns, 77
 misbehaving masculine nouns, 76
exclamations, 57-61
expressions
 air travel, 152
 asking for help, 326-327
 asking for the kind of room you want, 188-189
 asking for what you need, 189-191
 banking, 384
 car travel, 171
 communicating that you don't understand, 161
 food shopping, 273
 food-related, 268
 hotels, 191
 negotiating or paying for a room, 192

how often, 215-216
idiomatic, 61-68
 andare (to go), 65
 colors, 142
 fare (to make or do something), 183
 food-related, 268
 health issues, 346
 opinion phrases, 66
 slang, 62
 time expressions, 64
 travel and transportation, 63
 avere (to have), 118-119
 weather, 206
imperatives, negative commands, 160
introductions, 136
pain/discomfort, 343-345
 idiomatic expressions, 346
 serious medical conditions, 345-347
post-office operations, 361
restaurants, asking for what you want, 282-283
returning food, phrases to use, 293-294
shopping, 247-248
special needs phrases (when dining out), 292
telephone, 357-358
 communicating with the operator, 358-359
time, 175-176
 after the hour, 176
 "before the hour," 176
 practicing, 177
travel-related, 181
weather vocabulary, leisure expressions, 210-211

F

fables, using past definite tense (*passato remoto*), 393-394
fabrics, shopping, 250-251
false cognates, 40-47
family members, 129
 introductions, 135
 helpful expressions, 136
fare (to make or do something), 182, 229
 idiomatic expressions, 183
 practicing, 184
farsi, expressing that something hurts, 342-343
fax, using, 359-360

- feelings, subjunctive mood, 386
 dependent clauses, 388-390
 expressions, 118
 imperfect, 392
 irregular forms, 388
 past, 391
 past perfect, 392
 present, 386-388
- feminine gender, 69
 agreement, 70
 either-gender nouns, 73
 exceptions to the rules, 75
 changing gender depending on profession, 77, 120
 disconcerting genders, 75-76
 fruits, 78
 misbehaving feminine nouns, 77
 misbehaving masculine nouns, 76
 noun cognates, 45-46
 noun markers, 70
 indefinite articles, 71-72
 singular, definite articles, 70
 nouns ending in *e*, 74
 practicing gender determination, 78-84
 singular nouns, 72
- film/cinema, 307-308
Fine Art of Italian Cooking, The, 267
- first conjugation verbs (*-are* family), 94-100
celebrare example, 96
 conjugation exceptions, 100-101
 practicing conjugation, 101
- first course (meals), 288
- fish, 268-269
- flashcards, 7
- flowers, shopping, 250
- food
 idiomatic expressions, 268
 returning food, phrases to use, 293-294
 shopping, 261
 dairy products, 267
 drinks, 270
 expressing quantity, 271-272
 fish and seafood, 268-269
 food labels, 263
 fruits and nuts, 264
 idiomatic expressions, 273
 indicating "some of" a larger quantity, 273-274
 meats, 265
- pasta, 269
 practicing putting together
 a shopping list, 274
 sweets, 271
 vegetables, 262-263
 verbs, 273
 vocabulary, 261
- special needs phrases, 292
- spices, 291
 verbs, 264
- forming
 adverbs from adjectives, 144-148
 conditional tense, 374
avere (to have), 375
 endings, 374, 376
essere (to be), 375
 stem-changing verbs, 377
 verbs, 377
- plurals, 78-79
 always plural nouns, 83
 irregular plural nouns, 82-83
 noun markers, 79
 practicing, 81-83
 rules, 80
 spelling, 81
 present progressive tense, 238
- forms of "you," determining subject pronouns, 88-89
- From the Tables of Tuscan Women*, 267
- fruits, 264
 gender determination based on context, 78
- furniture and accessories, vocabulary, 370
- future perfect tense, 367
- future tense, 363
avere (to have), 364
 endings, 363
essere (to be) rules, 364
 irregular stems, 365-366
 patterns, 365
 practicing conjugation, 366-367

G

- g* letter combinations, pronunciation, 32-33
- gender, 69
 either-gender nouns, 73
 exceptions to the rules, 75
 changing gender depending on profession, 77, 120
 disconcerting genders, 75-76
 fruits, 78

- misbehaving feminine nouns, 77
 misbehaving masculine nouns, 76
- masculine versus feminine, 69
 agreement, 70
 noun markers, 70
 indefinite articles, 71-72
 singular, definite articles, 70
 nouns ending in *e*, 74
 practicing gender determination, 78-84
 singular nouns, 72
- Giusto?* (question tag), 109
- Gods, Roman and Greek equivalents, 126
- grammar, 17
 adjectives, 18, 136
 antonyms, 140
bello, 143
buono (good), 144
 colors, 140-142
 emotions and characteristics, 138-139
 forming comparisons, 335-338
 forming superlatives, 336-338
 modifying, 136-137
 nationalities, 123-126
 possessive, 122
 practicing, 138
quello, 143
 religions, 125
- adverbs, 18, 144
 compound tenses, 319
con plus a noun, 147
ecco, 126-127
 forming from adjectives, 144-148
 forming superlatives, 337
 irregular adverbs of quantity, 146
 place, 147
 placement, 145-146
 time, 146
- bilingual dictionary listings, 19
- disjunctive pronouns, 333
 practicing use, 334
 rules, 334
- imperatives, 159
 most common commands, 160
 negative commands, 160
 practicing, 161
 regular imperative endings, 159
- nouns, 17

object pronouns, 253-254
 direct object pronouns, 255-258, 319-320
 double object pronouns, 321
 indirect object pronouns, 255-259, 320
 practicing, 257-259
 rules, 254
 objects versus subjects, 21
 passive voice, *si* construction, 162
 prepositions, 18, 154-156
 forming contractions, 157-158
 rules, 156
 pronouns, 18
 reflexive pronouns, 297-298
 working with conjugated verbs, 298
 reflexive verbs, 299
 changing meaning when made reflexive, 300-301
 practicing use, 301
 reciprocity, 302
 rules, 300
 verbs, 18
 conjugated, 18
 infinitives, 18, 50, 198-201
 intransitive, 18
 irregular verbs, 201-202
 modal verbs, 195-198
piacere (to be pleasing to), 275-278
 transitive, 18
 grave accent, 26
 Greek Gods, Roman equivalents, 126
 greetings, 53
 communications, 57
 important phrases, 55-56
 introductions, 53
 informal phrases, 56
 polite form of address, 54-55
 grooming vocabulary, 327-328
 stylists' lingo, 328-329
 group I regular *-ire* verbs, 106-107
 group II regular *-ire* verbs, 107

H

habitual patterns, imperfect tense, 350
 endings, 351-353
Harry's Bar Cookbook, The, 267
 have (*avere*), 117-118
 idiomatic expressions, 118-119
 rules of usage, 118

healthcare issues
 body parts vocabulary, 341
 diseases/health conditions, 347-348
 expressions of pain/discomfort, 343-345
 idiomatic expressions, 346
 pharmacy/drugstore vocabulary, 348
 questions for the pharmacist, 349
 serious medical conditions, 345-347
 use of *farsi* to express hurt, 342-343
 help phrases, 326-327
 helping verbs, 112
 historical figures, zodiacal signs, 219
 history of Italian language
 classical Latin, 12-13
 dialects, 13
 Tuscan Italian, 14
 etymology, 15
 holidays, 216-217
 homes, vocabulary, 369
 advertisements, 373
 communicating with a realtor, 371-373
 furniture and accessories, 370
 hotels, 187
 amenities/necessities, 189
 asking for the kind of room you want, 188-189
 asking for what you need, 189-191
 invoices, bills, and receipts, 192
 negotiating or paying for a room, 192
 practicing vocabulary and expressions, 192
 tipping, 193
 useful expressions, 191
 vocabulary, 187-188
 hour (time), idiomatic expressions, 64
 "how about," making a suggestion, 232-233
 hypothetical situations, subjunctive mood, 386
 dependent clauses, 388-390
 imperfect, 392
 irregular forms, 388
 past, 391
 past perfect, 392
 present, 386-388

I

idiomatic expressions, 61-68
andare (to go), 65
 colors, 142
fare (to make or do something), 183
 food-related, 268
 health issues, 346
 opinion phrases, 66
 slang, 62
 time expressions, 64
 travel and transportation, 63
avere (to have), 118-119
 weather, 206
il (singular, masculine definite article), 71
 immersing yourself in the Italian language, 6
 bilingual dictionaries, 7
 commitment, 8-9
 flashcards, 7
 making tapes of yourself speaking, 8
 multilingual owner's manuals, 7
 radio, 7
 studying with a partner, 7
 watching Italian movies/television, 7
 imperatives, 159
 indirect object pronouns, 257
 most common commands, 160
 negative commands, 160
 practicing, 161
 regular imperative endings, 159
 imperfect subjunctive mood, 392
 imperfect tense, 350
 endings, 351
essere (to be) exceptions, 351
 practicing use, 352-353
 practicing conjugation, 353-354
 impersonal expressions, subjunctive mood, 389-390
 important phrases, 55-56
in (to), following verb *andare* (to go), 153
In Nonna's Kitchen, 267
 indefinite articles, 71
 feminine, 72
 masculine, 71
 indirect object pronouns, 253-256
 compound tenses, 320
 following the imperative (command), 257
 practicing, 258-259

- indirect objects, 86
 inequality
 forming comparisons from adjectives, 335
 forming superlatives from adjectives, 336
 absolutes, 338
 forming superlatives from adverbs, 337
 infinitive verbs, 94
 anatomy of a verb, 94
 present-tense conjugations, 95
 practicing, 201
 requiring preposition *a*, 200-201
 requiring preposition *di*, 199-200
 with prepositions, 198-199
 without prepositions, 199
 infinitives verbs, 18, 50
 informal phrases, greetings/salutations, 56
 communicating that you are studying Italian, 57
 information questions, traveling, 177-178
 Internet, listening to Italian, 38
 interrogative pronouns, *quale* (which or what), 166
 intransitive verbs, 18
 use of *essere* (to be) in present perfect tense, 314-318
 introductions, 53
 family members, 129-135
 demonstrative pronouns, 135-136
 helpful expressions, 136
 informal phrases, 56
 polite form of address, 54-55
 invoices, hotels, 192
 -ire family, third-conjugation verbs, 94, 106
 capire example, 107
 dormire example, 106
 group I, 106-107
 group II, 107
 irregular adjectives, comparatives and superlatives, 336
 absolutes, 338
 irregular
 adverbs
 comparatives and superlatives, 337
 quantity, 146
 forms of the subjunctive mood, 388
 past participles, *avere* (to have), 315-316
 plural nouns, 82-83
 stems, future tense, 365-366
- irregular verbs
 andare (to go), 152
 followed by *a* (to), 153
 followed by *in* (to), 153
 practicing, 154
 andare (to go), 229
 avere (to have), 117-118
 idiomatic expressions, 118-119
 rules of usage, 118
 conjugation
 dire (to say/tell), 231
 fare (to do/make), 229
 passare (to pass), 229
 practicing, 230
 rimanere (to remain), 228
 ritornare (to return), 230
 trovare (to find/visit), 229
 uscire (to go out/exit), 227
 venire (to come), 227-228
 essere (to be), 112
 asking about someone else, 122
 c'è and ci sono, 116-117
 rules of usage, 114-116
 stare, 113
 review, 201-202
 Italian regions, 235-236
Italian Verbs and Essentials of Grammar, 17
- J-K**
-
- jeweler's vocabulary, 331
 jewelry, shopping, 244
- kitchen items, vocabulary, 284-285
- L**
-
- l'* (singular, masculine or feminine definite article), 71
la (singular, feminine definite article), 71
 labels on food, 263
 language CDs, listening to Italian, 38
 Latin, classical, history of Italian language, 12-13
 Latium, 12
 "let's," making a suggestion, 232
 letter combinations, pronunciation, 31
 letter *c*, 32
 letter *g*, 32-33
 letter *s*, 33-34
 letter writing, 362
- lifestyle, 303
 arts, 307
 cinema/film, 307-308
 music, 309-310
 opera, 310-311
 terms, 312
 brain games, 305
 making a date, 306
 playing field, 305
 sports vocabulary, 303-305
 listening to Italian, 37
 audiocassettes, 37
 Internet audio samples, 38
 language CDs, 38
 music, 38
 literary titles, practicing cognate translations, 52
lo (singular, masculine definite article), 71
- M**
-
- making a suggestion, 231
 "how about," 232-233
 "let's," 232
non, 233
perche non, 232
 responding, 233
volere (to want), 233
 masculine gender, 69
 agreement, 70
 either-gender nouns, 73
 exceptions to the rules, 75
 changing gender depending on profession, 77, 120
 disconcerting genders, 75-76
 fruits, 78
 misbehaving feminine nouns, 77
 misbehaving masculine nouns, 76
 noun cognates, 45
 noun markers, 70
 indefinite articles, 71
 singular, definite articles, 70
 nouns ending in *e*, 74
 practicing gender determination, 78-84
 singular nouns, 72
 measuring, metric system, 271-272
 meats, 265
 medical issues
 diseases/health conditions, 347-348
 expressions of pain/discomfort/sickness, 344-345

idiomatic expressions, 346
 serious medical conditions, 345-347
 pharmacy/drugstore vocabulary, 348
 questions for the pharmacist, 349
 members of the family, 129
 introductions, 135
 demonstrative pronouns, 135-136
 helpful expressions, 136
 menu sample, 289
 merchandise, stores, 241
 accessories, 246
 clothing, 245-251
 expressions, 247-248
 fabrics, 250-251
 flowers, 250
 jewelry, 244
 stationery store (*la cartoleria*), 243
 metric system, 271-272
 misbehaving nouns (exceptions to gender-determination rules)
 feminine, 77
 masculine, 76
 modal verbs, 195
dovere (to have to, must), 197-198
potere (to be able to), 196-197
 practicing, 198
volere (to want), 195-196
 modes of shipment, post-office operations, 361
 modes of transportation, 165-166
 cars, 167
 expressions, 171
 inside the car, vocabulary, 168
 necessary tools, 170
 parts and predicaments, 169-170
 renting a car, 168
 sample communication, 172
 signs, 171
 types of roads, 169
 interrogative pronoun *quale* (which or what), 166
 phrases, 181
 public transportation, 172
 cardinal numbers, 172-174
 getting around, 179-180
 time expressions, 175-177
 trains, 180
 verbs, 181
fare (to make or do something), 182-184

practicing conjugation, 182
salire (to climb), 182
 modifying adjectives, endings, 136-137
 money, banking terms, 381
 expressions, 384
 trades/professions, 385
 transactions, 384
 months of the year, 58-59, 212
 moods, subjunctive, 386
 dependent clauses, 388-390
 imperfect, 392
 irregular forms, 388
 past, 391
 past perfect, 392
 present, 386-388
 motives for learning Italian, 16
 music, 309-310
 listening to Italian, 38
 mythological archetypes, 126

N

nationalities, 123-124
 practicing, 126
 telling someone where you are from, 236-237
ne partitive pronoun, indicating "some of" a larger quantity, 273-274
 needs (describing your needs), 325
 asking others to speak slowly, 326
 camera shop, 331
 dry cleaner's, 329
 electronics store, 332
 grooming vocabulary, 327-328
 stylists' lingo, 328-329
 help phrases, 326-327
 idiomatic expressions, 118-119
 jeweler's, 331
 keeping it simple, 326
 missing passport, 332-333
 optician's, 330
 shoemaker's, 330
 writing down questions, 326
 negative
 commands, 160
 responses to questions, 109
 statements, *non* with *c'è* and *ci sono*, 116
No? (question tag), 109
non, making a suggestion, 233
Nonna's Kitchen, In, 267
 noun markers, 70
 forming plurals, 79
 indefinite articles, 71

feminine, 72
 masculine, 71
 singular, definite articles, 70
 nouns, 17
 always plural nouns, 83
 cognates, 45
 feminine, 45-46
 masculine, 45
 either-gender nouns, 73
 ending in *e*, determining gender, 74
 irregular plural nouns, 82-83
 singular, determining gender, 72
 numbers
 cardinal, 172-174
 using punctuation marks with, 174
 ordinal, 194
 rules, 195

O

object pronouns, 127, 253-254
 direct object pronouns, 255
 practicing, 257-258
 double object pronouns, 296
 indirect object pronouns, 255-256
 following the imperative (command), 257
 practicing, 258-259
 practicing, 257-259
 rules, 254
 versus subject pronouns, 87
 objects (grammar) versus subjects, 21
 opera, 310
 glossary of terms, 311
 storytelling, 310
 operators (telephone), communicating with, 358-359
 opinion phrases, idiomatic expressions, 66
 optician's vocabulary, 330
 ordering in restaurant, ordinal numbers, 194-195
 orders, imperatives, 159
 most common commands, 160
 negative commands, 160
 practicing, 161
 regular imperative endings, 159
 ordinal numbers, 194-195
 origin, telling someone where you are from, 236-237

P

- pain expressions, 343-345
farsi, expressing something hurts, 342-343
 idiomatic expressions, 346
 serious medical conditions, 345-347
- partitive pronoun *ne*, indicating "some of" a larger quantity, 273-274
- partnerships, studying the language with a friend, 7
- parts of a car, vocabulary, 169-170
- parts of speech (grammar), 17
 adjectives, 18
 adverbs, 18
 nouns, 17
 prepositions, 18
 pronouns, 18
 verbs, 18
 conjugated, 18
 infinitives, 18, 50
 intransitive, 18
 transitive, 18
- passare* (to pass), 229
- passive voice, *si* construction, *si prega* (please), 162
- passport, vocabulary to describe missing passport, 332-333
- past absolute. *See* past, definite tense
- past
 definite tense, 392-393
 fables and stories, use in, 393-394
 participle, construction from present perfect tense, 314
 avere (to have), 315
 essere (to be), 316
 irregular past participles, 315-316
 regular endings, 314
 perfect subjunctive mood, 392
 subjunctive mood, 391
 time, dates, 214
- pasta, 269
- patterns, future tense endings, 365
- pendolino-ETR* train, 180
- perché non ...*, making a suggestion, 232
- pharmacy/drugstore vocabulary, 348
 questions for the pharmacist, 349
- physical conditions, *avere* (to have), 66
- piacere* (to be pleasing to), 275-278
- pizza, 289-290
- placement, adverbs, 145-146
- places
 adverbs, 147
 cognates, 41-42
 denoting with *ci* and *vi*, 339-340
 sightseeing, 223
- planets, 217
 corresponding to days of the week, 60
- playing field, vocabulary, 305
- please, to (*si prega*), passive voice, 162
- plurals, 78-79
 always plural nouns, 83
 irregular plural nouns, 82-83
 noun markers, 79
 practicing, 81-83
 rules, 80
 spelling, 81
- polite form of address, greetings/salutations, 54-55
- politeness, subject pronouns, 87
- possession, 131
 di contractions, 131
 possessive adjectives, 122, 131-134
- post-office operations, 360-361
 expressions, 361
 modes of shipment, 361
- potere* (to be able to), 196-197
- predicaments, cars (vocabulary), 169-170
- prendere* (to take), 154
- preparation terms (meats and vegetables), 291
- prepositions, 18, 154-158
 forming contractions, 157-158
 rules, 156
 with infinitive verbs, 198-199
 leaving out the preposition, 199
 practicing, 201
 requiring preposition *a*, 200-201
 requiring preposition *di*, 199-200
- present perfect tense, 313
 adverbs, 319
 constructing the past participle, 314
 avere (to have), 315
 essere (to be), 316
 irregular past participles, 315-316
 regular endings, 314
- direct object pronouns, 319-320
- double object pronouns, 321
- indirect object pronouns, 320
- practicing conjugation, 353-354
 when to use *avere* (to have), transitive verbs, 314
 when to use *essere* (to be), intransitive verbs, 314-318
- present progressive tense, forming, 237-238
- present subjunctive mood, 386-388
- present-tense conjugations, regular verbs, 95
- professional titles, changing genders, 77, 120
- pronouns
 disjunctive. *See* disjunctive pronouns
 subject pronouns. *See* subject pronouns
- pronunciation, 25
 accents, 26
 acute, 26
 grave, 26
 written, 26
 consonants, 29
 double consonants, 35
 days of the week, 58
 corresponding planets, 60
 exclamations, 60-61
 idiomatic expressions, 67-68
 andare (to go), 65
 opinion phrases, 66
 time expressions, 64
 travel and transportation, 63-64
 letter combinations, 31
 letter *c*, 32
 letter *g*, 32-33
 letter *s*, 33-34
 months of the year, 58-59
 rolling *R*'s, 28
 stress, 27
 vowels, 28
 diphthongs, 34-35
 practicing, 31
- public transportation, 172
 cardinal numbers, 172-174
 using punctuation marks with, 174
 getting around, 179-180
 time expressions, 175-176
 after the hour, 176
 before the hour, 176
 practicing, 177
 trains, 180

Q

quale (which or what), interrogative pronouns, 166
 quantity
 expressions, food shopping, 271
 metric system, 271-272
 irregular adverbs of quantity, 146
quello, adjective, 143
 questions (asking), 109, 178
 answering, double negatives, 109-110
 c'è and ci sono, 116
 tags, 109

R

radio, 7
 RAI (Italian television and radio network), 7
rapido train, 180
 real estate
 advertisements, 373
 communicating with a realtor, 371-372
 adjectives, 373
 verbs for renting/buying, 372
 home vocabulary (furniture and accessories), 369-370
 realtors, communicating needs, 371-372
 adjectives, 373
 verbs for renting/buying, 372
 reasons to learn Italian, 4-6
 receipts, hotels, 192
 reciprocity, reflexive verbs, 302
 reflexive pronouns, 297-298
 practicing use, 301
 working with conjugated verbs, 298
 reflexive verbs, 299
 changing meaning when made reflexive, 300-301
 practicing use, 301
 reciprocity, 302
 rules, 300
regionale train, 180
 regions, Italian, 235-236
 regular verbs, 94
 anatomy of a verb, 94
 first conjugation, *-are* family, 94-101
 prendere (to take), 154
 present-tense conjugations, 95

second-conjugation, *-ere* family, 94-105
 third conjugation, *-ire* family, 94, 106-107
 religions, 125
 renting a car, vocabulary, 168-170
 expressions, 171
 parts and predicaments, 169-170
 signs, 171
 renting a home, verbs, 372
 Republic of Italy, statistics, 239
 responding
 to a suggestion, 233
 to questions, double negatives, 109-110
 restaurants (dining out), 281-284
 asking for what you want, 282-283
 common phrases, 282
 returning food, phrases to use, 293-294
 table-setting vocabulary, 283-284
 rhotacism, 28
rimanere (to remain), 228
ritornare (to return), 230
 rolling *R*'s (pronunciation), 28
 Roman Gods, Greek equivalents, 126
 Romance languages, rules, 22
 rules
 disjunctive pronouns, 334
 forming plurals, 80
 object pronouns, 254
 ordinal numbers, 195
 prepositions, 156
 reflexive verbs, 300
 Romance languages, 22
 use of *avere* (to have), 118
 use of *essere* (to be)
 future tense, 364
 versus *stare* (to be), 114-116

S

s letter combinations, pronunciation, 33-34
 saints, invoking in ailments, 347
salire (to climb), 182
 salutations, 53
 communications, 57
 important phrases, 55-56
 introductions, 53
 informal phrases, 56
 polite form of address, 54-55
 sample menu, 289
sapere (to know something), 134

seafood, 268-269
 seasonings, 291-292
 seasons, weather vocabulary, 210
 second-conjugation verbs
 (*-ere* family), 94-105
 practicing conjugation, 105
 scrivere (to write) example, 102
 second course (meals), 288
 shoemaker's, vocabulary, 330
 shopping
 food, 261
 dairy products, 267
 drinks, 270
 expressing quantity, 271-272
 fish and seafood, 268-269
 food labels, 263
 fruits and nuts, 264
 idiomatic expressions, 268
 indicating "some of" a
 larger quantity, 273-274
 meats, 265
 pasta, 269
 practicing putting together
 a shopping list, 274
 sweets, 271
 vegetables, 262-263
 verbs, 264
 verbs and expressions, 273
 vocabulary, 261
 stores, 241
 accessories, 246
 clothing, 245-251
 expressions, 247-248
 fabrics, 250-251
 flowers, 250
 jewelry, 244
 stationery store (*la cartoleria*), 243
 showing possession, 131
 di contractions, 131
 possessive adjectives, 131-134
 si construction, passive voice, *si prega* (please), 162
 sickness
 farsi, expressing that something hurts, 342-343
 pain/discomfort expressions, 343-345
 idiomatic expressions, 346
 serious medical conditions, 345-347
 saints, 347
 side dishes (meals), 289
 sightseeing
 making a suggestion, 231
 "how about," 232-233
 "let's," 232
 non, 233
 perché non ..., 232

- responding, 233
volere (to want), 233
 verbs, 225
andare (to go), 229
fare (to do/make), 229
passare (to pass), 229
 practicing conjugation, 230
rimanere (to remain), 228
ritornare (to return), 230
trovare (to find/visit), 229
uscire (to go out/exit), 227
venire (to come), 227-228
 where to go and what to do, 223
 signs, car travel, 171
 singular
 definite articles, 70
 nouns, determining gender, 72
 sizes (clothing), conversion table for, 248
 slang words/phrases, 62
 “some of,” indicating “some of” a larger quantity
 di + noun, 273
 partitive pronoun *ne*, 273-274
 special needs phrases, dining out, 292
 spelling
 forming plurals, 81
 names, 36
 spices and seasonings, 291-292
 sports, vocabulary, 303-305
stare (to be), 112-113
 rules of usage, 114-116
 stationery store (*la cartoleria*), 243
 statistics, Republic of Italy, 239
 stem-changing verbs, conditional tense, 377
 stems, infinitive verbs, 94
 present-tense conjugations, 95
 stores, 241
 accessories, 246
 clothing, 245-251
 conversion table for sizes, 248
 cosmetics, vocabulary, 349
 expressions, 247-248
 fabrics, 250-251
 flowers, 250
 jewelry, 244
 stationery store (*la cartoleria*), 243
 stories (fables), use of past definite tense, 393-394
 stressed pronouns. *See* disjunctive pronouns
 stress (pronunciation), 27
 structure of Italian, basic rules, 22
- subject pronouns, 85-86
 clarity, 87
 direct objects, 86
 emphasis, 87
 forms of “you,” 88
 indirect objects, 86
 politeness, 87
 practicing, 87-88
 versus object pronouns, 87
 subjects (grammar) versus objects, 21
 subjunctive mood, 386
 dependent clauses, 388-390
 imperfect, 392
 irregular forms, 388
 past, 391
 past perfect, 392
 present, 386-388
 suffixes
 diminutives, 13
 superlatives, 13
 suggestions, 231
 “how about,” 232-233
 imperatives, 159
 most common commands, 160
 negative commands, 160
 practicing, 161
 regular imperative endings, 159
 “let’s,” 232
non, 233
perché non ..., 232
 responding, 233
 volere (to want), 233
 superlatives, 13
 forming from adjectives, 336
 absolutes, 338
 forming from adverbs, 337
 sweets/desserts, 271, 295
- T**
-
- table-settings, vocabulary, 283-284
 tags, asking questions, 109
 tailor’s, vocabulary, 252
 tapes, making tapes of yourself
 speaking Italian, 8
 telephone, 355
 communicating with the operator, 358-359
 expressions, 357-358
 types of calls, 356
 vocabulary, 356-357
 temperature, weather vocabulary, 209
- tenses
 compound tenses, future perfect, 367
 conditional, 374
 avere (to have), 375
 essere (to be), 375
 forming, 374-377
 practicing use, 378
 future, 363
 avere (to have) rules, 364
 endings, 363
 essere (to be) rules, 364
 irregular stems, 365-366
 patterns, 365
 practicing conjugation, 366-367
 imperfect, 350
 endings, 351-353
 practicing conjugation, 353-354
 past definite, 392-393
 fables and stories, 393-394
 present perfect, 313
 constructing the past participle, 314-316
 practicing conjugation, 353-354
 when to use *avere* (to have), 314
 when to use *essere* (to be), 314-318
 present perfect tense
 adverbs, 319
 direct object pronouns, 319-320
 double object pronouns, 321
 indirect object pronouns, 320
 present progressive, forming, 237-238
 third-conjugation verbs (*-ire* family), 94, 106
 capire example, 107
 dormire example, 106
 group I, 106-107
 group II, 107
 time
 adverbs, 146
 cognates, 41-43
 commas, 84
 expressions, 175-176
 after the hour, 176
 “before the hour,” 176
 practicing, 177
 “how often” expressions, 215-216
 idiomatic expressions, 64
 time-related words, dates, 214
 tipping, hotel services, 193

trades/professions, banking, 385
trains, 180
 diretto, 180
 espresso, 180
 pendolino-ETR, 180
 rapido, 180
 regionale, 180
transactions, banking, 384
transitive verbs, 18
 use of *avere* (to have) in present perfect tense, 314
translation, practicing cognates, 51
 literary titles, 52
transportation modes, 165-166
 cars, 167
 expressions, 171
 inside the car, vocabulary, 168
 necessary tools, 170
 parts and predicaments, 169-170
 renting a car, 168
 sample communication, 172
 signs, 171
 types of roads, 169
 idiomatic expressions, 63
 interrogative pronoun *quale* (which or what), 166
 phrases, 181
 public transportation, 172
 cardinal numbers, 172-174
 getting around, 179-180
 time expressions, 175-177
 trains, 180
 verbs, 181
 fare (to make or do something), 182-184
 practicing conjugation, 182
 salire (to climb), 182
travel, 149
 air travel
 expressions, 152
 verbs, 151
 vocabulary, 149-152
 expressing that you don't understand, 161
 getting lost, imperatives (directions), 159-161
 hotels, 187
 amenities/necessities, 189
 asking for the kind of room you want, 188-189
 asking for what you need, 189-191
 invoices, bills, and receipts, 192
 negotiating or paying for a room, 192

 practicing vocabulary and expressions, 192
 tipping, 193
 useful expressions, 191
 vocabulary, 187-188
idiomatic expressions, 63
information questions, 177-178
modes of transportation, 165-166
 cars, 167-172
 interrogative pronoun *quale* (which or what), 166
 public transportation, 172-180
ordinal numbers, rules, 194-195
phrases, 181
verbs, 181
 andare (to go), 152
 fare (to make or do something), 182-184
 practicing conjugation, 182
 prendere (to take), 154
 salire (to climb), 182
 trovare (to find/visit), 229
 vocabulary, practicing, 211
Tuscan Italian, 14

U

un (singular, masculine indefinite article), 71
un' (singular, feminine indefinite article), 72
una (singular, feminine indefinite article), 72
uno (singular, masculine indefinite article), 71
uscire (to go out/exit), 227

V

vegetables, 262-263
venire (to come), 227-228
verbs, 18
 air travel, 151
 cognates, 48-49
 practicing, 50
 conditional tense, 377
 conjugated, 18
 conoscere (to know someone), 135
 endings, 50
 food-oriented, 264
 helping, 112
 infinitives, 18, 50, 198-201

 practicing, 201
 requiring preposition *a*, 200-201
 requiring preposition *di*, 199-200
 with prepositions, 198-199
 without prepositions, 199
intransitive, 18
irregular
 andare (to go), 152-154
 avere (to have), 117-119
 dire (to say/tell), 231
 essere (to be), 112-117, 122
 practicing, 202
 review, 201-202
modal, 195
 dovere (to have to, must), 197-198
 potere (to be able to), 196-197
 practicing, 198
 volere (to want), 195-196
piacere (to be pleasing to), 275-276
 practicing use, 277-278
reflexive, 299
 changing meaning when made reflexive, 300-301
 practicing use, 301
 reciprocity, 302
 rules, 300
regular, 94
 anatomy of a verb, 94
 first conjugation (*-are* family), 94-101
 prendere (to take), 154
 present-tense conjugations, 95
 second-conjugation (*-ere* family), 94, 102-105
 third conjugation (*-ire* family), 94, 106-107
 renting/buying a home, 372
 sapere (to know something), 134
sightseeing, 225
 andare (to go), 229
 fare (to do/make), 229
 making a suggestion, 231-233
 passare (to pass), 229
 practicing conjugation, 230
 rimanere (to remain), 228
 ritornare (to return), 230
 trovare (to find/visit), 229
 uscire (to go out/exit), 227
 venire (to come), 227-228
subject pronouns, 85-86
 clarity, 87
 direct objects, 86

emphasis, 87
 forms of "you," 88-89
 indirect objects, 86
 politeness, 87
 practicing, 87-88
 versus object pronouns, 87
 transitive, 18
 travel-related, 181
 fare (to make or do something), 182-184
 practicing conjugation, 182
 salire (to climb), 182
Vero? (question tag), 109
vi, denoting place, 339-340
 vocabulary
 accessories, 246
 air travel, 149-152
 arts, 307
 cinema/film, 307-308
 music, 309-310
 opera, 310-311
 terms, 312
 banking, 381
 expressions, 384
 trades/professions, 385
 transactions, 384
 body parts, 341
 brain games, 305
 camera shop, 331
 cars, 167
 expressions, 171
 inside the car, 168
 necessary tools, 170
 parts and predicaments, 169-170
 renting a car, 168
 sample communication, 172
 signs, 171
 types of roads, 169
 clothing, 245, 251
 cooking terms, 278
 cosmetics store, 349
 diseases/health conditions, 347-348
 dry cleaner's, 329
 electronics store, 332
 fabrics, 250-251
 flowers, 250
 food labels, 263
 food shopping, 261
 dairy products, 267
 drinks, 270
 expressing quantity, 271-272
 fish and seafood, 268-269
 fruits and nuts, 264
 idiomatic expressions, 268
 indicating "some of" a larger quantity, 273-274
 meats, 265
 pasta, 269
 practicing a shopping list, 274
 sweets, 271
 vegetables, 262-263
 verbs and expressions, 273
 food-oriented verbs, 264
 grooming terms, 327-328
 stylists' lingo, 328-329
 homes, 369
 advertisements, 373
 communicating with a realtor, 371-373
 furniture and accessories, 370
 hotels, 187-188
 amenities/necessities, 189
 asking for the kind of room you want, 188-189
 asking for what you need, 189, 191
 invoices, bills, and receipts, 192
 negotiating or paying for a room, 192
 practicing, 192
 useful expressions, 191
 jewelry, 244, 331
 kitchen items, 284-285
 letter writing, 362
 missing passport, 332-333
 optician's, 330
 pharmacy/drugstore, 348
 questions for the pharmacist, 349
 planning a date, 306
 playing field, 305
 post-office operations, 360-361
 expressions, 361
 modes of shipment, 361
 public transportation, 172
 cardinal numbers, 172-174
 getting around, 179-180
 time expressions, 175-177
 trains, 180
 shoemaker's, 330
 sightseeing, 223-230
 making a suggestion, 231-233
 verbs, 225-230
 sports, 303, 305
 stores, 241
 la cartoleria (stationery store), 243
 table-settings, 283-284
 tailor's, 252
 telephone, 356-357
 travel, 211

weather, 206
 adjectives, 208
 climate, 207-208
 expressions of leisure, 210-211
 seasons, 210
 temperature, 209
volere (to want), 195-196
 making suggestion, 233
 vowels, pronunciation, 28
 diphthongs, 34-35
 practicing, 31
 vulgarities, 62

W-X

weather, 205-206
 idiomatic expressions, 206
 vocabulary, 206
 adjectives, 208
 climate, 207-208
 expressions of leisure, 210-211
 seasons, 210
 temperature, 209
 week days, 58
 corresponding planets, 60
 what (*quale*), 166
 which (*quale*), 166
 wines, 294
 wishes, subjunctive mood, 386
 dependent clauses, 388-390
 imperfect, 392
 irregular forms, 388
 past, 391
 past perfect, 392
 present, 386-388
 writing
 letters, 362
 numbers, 174
 written accent, 26

Y-Z

"you" forms, determining subject pronouns, 88-89
 zodiacal signs, historical figures, 218-219



IDIOTSGUIDES.COM

Introducing a new and different Web site

Millions of people love to learn through *The Complete Idiot's Guide*® books. Discover the same pleasure online in **idiotsguides.com**—part of The Learning Network.

Idiotsguides.com is a new and different Web site, where you can:

- ✿ Explore and download more than 150 fascinating and useful mini-guides—FREE! Print out or send to a friend.
- 🌐 Share your own knowledge and experience as a mini-guide contributor.
- 💬 Join discussions with authors and exchange ideas with other lifelong learners.
- 📖 Read sample chapters from a vast library of *Complete Idiot's Guide*® books.
- ✂ Find out how to become an author.
- ✂ Check out upcoming book promotions and author signings.
- 🏠 Purchase books through your favorite online retailer.



Learning for Fun. Learning for Life.

IDIOTSGUIDES.COM • LEARNINGNETWORK.COM